NOTICE.

THE delay in the issue of No. 1 of the Extra-Series texts for 1867 is due to the Series itself not having been started till the latter half of that year, to the addition to *William of Palerne* of the fragment of the Alliterative Romance of *Alexander*, and to the very great care with which the Glossarial Index to these poems has been compiled and verified.[1]

The copy of the MS. of *Chaucer's Prose Works*, Pts. 1-2, has long been made, but it cannot go to press till the MS. of the translation of Boethius, with which it must be collated, has been received from the University of Cambridge. That MS., long since applied for, is promised this month, and on its receipt the work will be got on with as quickly as possible. There can be little doubt that the whole of the *Boethius* —Parts 1 and 2 of *Chaucer's Prose Works*—will be completed this year, as well as *Havelok the Dane*, on which Mr Skeat is already at work. *Caxton's Book of Curtesy*, *Havelok*, and *Chaucer's Prose Works*, Pt. 2, comprise the Society's issue for 1868.

Mr Alexander J. Ellis's Treatise on *The Pronunciation of Chaucer and Shakspere*, which was announced as part of *Chaucer's Prose Works*, will probably form a separate volume of five or six hundred pages, and will be included in the 1867 issue. This volume is nearly ready for press, and will be published in conjunction with the Philological and Chaucer Societies. The Editor and printer will endeavour to complete it in 1868, but may not be able to do so till early in 1869.

2

[1] *Note by* Mr Skeat. "Even now I am conscious of a slip. *Nory*, explained to mean *nurse* (as in the former edition), should rather be a *nurseling* or foster-child. See Halliwell."

May, 1868.

THE ROMANCE OF

William of Palerne:

(OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

THE ROMANCE OF "WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF")

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH AT THE COMMAND OF
SIR HUMPHREY DE BOHUN, ABOUT A.D. 1350;

TO WHICH IS ADDED A FRAGMENT

OF THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF

Alisaunder;

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN BY THE SAME AUTHOR,
ABOUT A.D. 1340;

THE FORMER RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE LIBRARY OF KING'S
COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;

THE LATTER NOW FIRST EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE
BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD;

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,

MDCCCLXVII.

THE ROMANCE OF

William of Palerne:

(OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

THE ROMANCE OF "WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF")

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH AT THE COMMAND OF
SIR HUMPHREY DE BOHUN, ABOUT A.D. 1350;

TO WHICH IS ADDED A FRAGMENT

OF THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF

Alisaunder;

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN BY THE SAME AUTHOR,
ABOUT A.D. 1340;

THE FORMER RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE LIBRARY OF KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;

THE LATTER NOW FIRST EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD;

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,
LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE; AUTHOR OF "A MŒSO-GOTHIC GLOSSARY," EDITOR OF "PIERS PLOWMAN," ETC.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCCLXVII.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

CONTENTS.

PREFACE.

INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE:"

§ 1. The "Extra Series" of the E. E. T. S. § 2. "William and the Werwolf;" edition of 1832. § 3. Missing portions supplied from the French. § 4. The story. § 5. Description of the MS. i

Preface to the edition of 1832; by Sir F. Madden. (Reprinted.) vii

Note on the word "Werwolf;" by Sir F. Madden ... xxv

INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER:"

§ 1. Alliterative Romances of *Alexander*. § 2. The *Alisaunder* in MS. Greaves 60, by the author of *William of Palerne*. § 3. Description of MS. Greaves 60. § 4. The Story. § 5. Its origin. § 6. On the dialect of the poems. § 7. On the distinction between "thou" and "ye." xxix

WILLIAM OF PALERNE 1

THE GESTES OF THE WORTHIE KING AND EMPEROUR, ALISAUNDER OF MACEDOINE 177

Notes to "William of Palerne" 219

Notes to "Alisaunder" 236

Glossarial Index 250

Index of Names 324

PREFACE.

INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

§ 1. THE "Extra Series" of the publications of the Early English Text Society, of which this is the first volume, is intended to be supplementary to the ordinary series in such a way as to expedite the printing of the whole quantity of work to be printed. It has been proposed that it shall be reserved entirely for reprints and re-editions, and this rule will in general be adhered to. At the same time, a little laxity of definition must be allowed as to what constitutes a *reprint*. Thus, the editions of "Piers Plowman" (Text A) and of "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," being entirely new, and from entirely new sources, have been issued with the ordinary Series, though both have been edited before more than once; whilst, on the other hand, more than a thousand lines, never before printed, have purposely been included in the present volume, as belonging to the same date, and as having been written by the same author as the rest.

§ 2. Of the two poems here printed, it is the former that has been edited before, in a volume of which the title is—"The Ancient English Romance of WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF; edited from an unique copy in King's College Library, Cambridge; with an introduction and glossary. By Frederick Madden, Esq., F.R.S., F.S.A., M.R.S.L., Assistant-Keeper of the MSS. in the British Museum. London: printed by William Nicol, Shakspeare-Press. MDCCCXXXII." It forms one of the "Roxburghe Club" series, and only a limited number of copies were printed.

The thorough excellence of both the text and glossary of this edition is known to all who have had the opportunity of access to it, and it has always ranked as a contribution of great importance to our knowledge of Early English literature. Sir F. Madden justly claims to have been one of the first editors who insisted on the necessity of strict and literal accuracy, and it is impossible to say how much we owe to him, directly and indirectly. His edition is, in fact, almost a facsimile of the MS., being printed in black-letter, and with all the contractions of the original, a table of these being added to explain them to the reader. A copy of it having been provided for my use, it was sent to the printer, after I had expanded all the contractions by the use of italic letters, numbered the lines, inserted marks of punctuation, and added side-notes. Had the proof-sheets been corrected by this only, the volume would have contained no error of importance; but I judged it to be due to Sir F. Madden and to subscribers to make it absolutely correct (as I hope it now is, in the text at least,) by reading the proof-sheets with the MS. itself, to which I had ready access through the kindness of Mr Bradshaw, Fellow of King's College, and our University Librarian.[1] I have also added a few words within square brackets where there are obvious omissions; they are chiefly taken from Sir F. Madden's notes. As his glossary contained references to the *pages*, and our object is to have references to the *lines* of the poem, I have re-written it entirely, incorporating with it the more difficult words in the fragment of "Alisaunder." For the sidenotes, most of the notes at the end, and indeed for the whole volume in its present state, I am alogether responsible; but I consider it as no little gain that Sir F. Madden, with very great kindness, has looked over the revises of the whole work, and I am much indebted to him for his suggestions. The glossary is, of course, copied from his almost wholly; but to some illustrative notes that are left entirely in his own words I have drawn special attention by attaching to them the letter "—M." He has also per-

[1] May not some of the alleged difficulty of the study of Old English be fairly attributed to the shameful inaccuracy of some of the texts? The portion of "William and the Werwolf" printed by Hartshorne is, in places, simply inexplicable.

mitted the reprinting of his preface to the former edition, and of his note on the word "Werwolf" (with fresh additions).

§ 3. We are also under great obligations to M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris. To him we owe the transcript of a considerable portion of the beginning of the French version of the poem, enabling me to supply the missing portions of the English version at pp. 1—6 and 19—23, and further to compare the French with the English throughout the first 500 lines; some of the results of which comparison will be found in the "Notes." He even did more; for he secured for us the accuracy of the portions printed by comparing the proof-sheets with the MS. Bibl. de L'Arsenal, *Belles Lettres*, 178, from which his transcript was made.

§ 4. THE STORY.

Most of the details of the story can be gathered from the "Index of Names" at the end of the volume, and from the head-lines and side-notes, but a *brief* sketch of it may be acceptable.

Embrons, King of Apulia, by his wife Felice, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, had a fair son named William. The brother of Embrons, wishing to be heir to the throne, bribed two ladies, Gloriande and Acelone, to murder the child. But at this very time, as the child was at play (at Palermo), a wild wolf caught him up, ran off with him, swam the Straits of Messina, and carried him away to a forest near Rome, not injuring, but taking great care of him. But while the wolf went to get some food for him, the child was found by a cowherd, who took him home and adopted him. (Now you must know that the wolf was not a true wolf, but a *werwolf* or *man-wolf;* he had once been Alphouns, eldest son of the King of Spain, and heir to the crown of Spain. His stepmother Braunde, wishing her son Braundinis to be the heir, enchanted him so that he became a werwolf.) One day the Emperor of Rome, going out a-hunting, lost his way, and met with the boy William, with whom he was much pleased, and took the child from the cowherd behind him on his horse to Rome, and committed him to the care of his own daughter Melior, to be her page. William, growing up beloved by *everybody*, attracted, as might have been expected, the love of Melior in particular; who, in a long but amusing soliloquy, concludes that, though she is degrading herself to think upon a foundling, she finds it harder still *not* to think of him, and seeks the advice of her dear friend Alisaundrine, a daughter of the Duke of Lombardy. This young damsel bids her be at ease, and, having some slight knowledge of witchcraft, causes William to dream of Melior, and to fall in love with her hope-

lessly. All his consolation is to sit in Melior's garden, and he considers himself sufficiently fed by gazing at her window the whole day. Worn out by this, he falls asleep there, and is found by the two ladies, and, by Alisaundrine's devices, the young couple are soon betrothed; but it has to be kept a great secret, lest the emperor should come to hear of it. About this time the emperor's lands are invaded by the Duke of Saxony. William, knighted for the occasion, is, by his prowess, the chief instrument of the invader's defeat; a defeat which the duke takes so much to heart that he shortly dies of grief. The emperor thanks and praises William greatly, very much to his daughter's delight. But the next circumstance is untoward enough. The Emperor of Greece (who be it remembered, is William's grandfather) sends an embassy, headed by Lord Roachas, to ask the hand of Melior for his son Partenedon. The emperor at once accepts the proposal, and the Emperor of Greece and Prince Partenedon set out for Rome. William falls ill at the news, but is soon recovered by the expressions of devoted constancy which he receives from Melior. The Greeks arrive at Rome, and great preparations are made; what is to be done? Melior and William consult their unfailing friend Alisaundrine, who, not knowing what else to do, steals the skins of two white bears from the royal kitchen, sews her friends up in them, and lets them out by a postern-gate from Melior's garden, and bids them a sad farewell. But they had been observed; for a Greek, walking in this garden, had seen, to his great astonishment, two bears walking off on their hind legs, and tells his companions of his adventure, for which he is well laughed at, nothing more being thought of it at the time. The lovers hurry away till they find a den, wherein they conceal themselves, but fear to die of hunger. In this strait the werwolf finds them, and brings them sodden beef and two flasks of wine, having robbed two men whom he met carrying them. Meanwhile, great are the preparations for the wedding, which is to take place at St Peter's church. But at the last moment, *where is the bride?* The Emperor of Rome, frantic with rage, questions Alisaundrine, who evades his questions, but at last avows her conviction that, if *William* cannot be found, neither will *Melior*. William is indeed missing, and the Greek's story about the two white bears is at once understood, and a hue and cry is raised after them. They are not found, and the Greeks return to their own country. The lovers, still disguised as bears, and guided and fed by the werwolf, flee to Benevento, where they are nearly caught, but escape by the werwolf's help. Finding their disguise is known, they dress up as a hart and hind, and at last, after a strange adventure at Reggio, cross the Straits of Messina to Palermo, the werwolf still guiding them. Palermo is in a state of siege. King Embrons is dead, and Felice is queen, but is hard pressed by the Spaniards, as the King of Spain has asked the hand of her daughter Florence (William's sister) for his son Braundinis, and, on her refusal, has come to enforce his claim. Queen Felice has a dream of happy omen, and, perceiving the hart and hind, dresses herself also in a hind's skin, and goes to meet them, welcoming them and offering them protection, if

William will deliver her from the Spaniards. Rejoiced at this, William, on Embrons' horse, and with a werwolf painted on his shield, performs marvels, and takes both the King and Prince of Spain prisoners, never to be released till the wicked Queen Braunde shall disenchant the werwolf. She is sent for, and arrives, and reverses the charm, restoring Alphouns to his right shape, for which she is pardoned; and the Prince Alphouns receives great praises for his kindness to William, it being now seen that he did but steal him away to save his life from the plots of King Embrons' brother. By way of further reward, he is to marry Florence, and William is, of course, to marry Melior. William sends a message to this effect to Melior's father, who, for joy to hear that she is alive, promises to come to the wedding, and to bring Alisaundrine with him. At the same time the Emperor of Greece, Queen Felice's father, sends Partenedon his son to Palermo to help the queen against the Spaniards; but the prince is not a little chagrined at finding that he has come to see Melior, whom he once wooed, and whom he lost at the last moment, married to the husband of her own choice. Seeing no help for it, however, he submits as well as he can. But there is another disappointed suitor, Prince Braundinis; can nothing be done for him? It is at once arranged that he can marry Alisaundrine, and the triple wedding of William and Melior, Alphouns and Florence, Braundinis and Alisaundrine, is celebrated in one day; after which, Partenedon returns to Greece, and the Spaniards return to Spain. The Emperor of Rome dying, William is elected to succeed him as emperor, and is crowned at Rome; and Alphouns, his steadfast friend, who has become King of Spain on his father's death, is present at the joyful ceremony. And thus the Queen of Palermo lived to see her dream come true, that her right arm reached over Rome and her left arm lay over Spain; for her son was the emperor of the former country, and her daughter queen of the latter; nor was the kind cowherd forgotten, for his adopted son gave him an earldom, and brought him out of his care and poverty.

It ought to be remarked that the curious fancies about the enchantment of Alphouns into a werwolf, and the dressing up of William and Melior, firstly in the skins of two white bears and afterwards in the skins of a hart and a hind, as also the wearing of a hind's skin by the Queen of Palermo, form the true groundwork of the story, and no doubt, at the time, attracted most attention. To a modern reader this part of the narrative becomes tedious, and one wonders why the disguises were kept on so long. But as a whole, the story is well told, and the translator must have been a man of much poetic power, as he has considerably improved upon his original. For further remarks upon him, see Sir F. Madden's preface, and the "Introduction to Alisaunder."

§ 5. DESCRIPTION OF THE MS.

In addition to Sir F. Madden's remarks, I may observe that the size of the pages of the volume is about 12 inches by 8, and the class-mark is No. 13. The folios have been renumbered, it being ascertained that the missing leaves are the first three and the tenth. Thus *fol.* 1 of the former edition is now called *fol.* 4, and *fol.* 7 is now *fol.* 11. With this slight change, the numbering of the folios in the margin furnishes a ready way of comparing the two editions.[1]

The volume consists of two MSS. :—

I. William of Palerne, here printed; containing 86 leaves (of which three are lost);

II. An imperfect copy of the Lives of the Saints, &c., attributed to Robert of Gloucester, and containing—

1. A description of bible-subjects for Lent, with the passion of Christ, &c.: Begins (fol. 1)—

"Seint marie dai in Leinte · among oþer daies gode"—

ends, "Now ihesu for þe swete crois · þat þou were on ydo
Bring [vs] to þe blisse of h[e]uene · þat þou vs bouȝtest to.
AMEN."

2. *Judas.* Begins (fol. 32)—"Ivdas was a luþer brid · þat Ihesu solde to þe rode;" ends—"þer we weneþ þat he be."

3. *Pilate,* (fol. 34). "Pilatus was a luþer man · and come of a luþer more;" ends—"fram so deolfol cas."

4. *Seint Marie Egiptiak,* (fol. 37 *b*). "Seint Marie Egipciake · in egipte was y-bore;" ends—"þoru penaunce þat heo gan lede."

5. *Seint Alphe,* (fol. 40 *b*). "Seint alphe þe martir · þat good man was ynow;" ends—"to þe blisse of heuene wende. AMEN."

6. *Seint George,* (fol. 43). "Seint George þe holi man · as we findeþ of him y-write;" ends—"lete vs alle þider wende. AMEN."

7. *Seint Dunston,* (fol. 44 *b*). "Seint Dunston was in Engelonde. icome of gode more;" ends—"þat aungles þi soule to bere. AMEN."

8. *Seint Aldelme,* (fol. 46 *b*). "Seint Aldelme þe confessour was man of good liue;" ends—"þat he is on ido. AMEN."

[1] See also the *Note* at the end of the Glossarial Index.

9. *Seint Austyn*, (fol. 47 *b*). "Seint Austyn þat brouȝte · *cristen*dom to Engelonde;" ends—"ȝif we were wel vnderstonde."

The last poem is imperfect, but has lost *only four lines*, which I venture here to transcribe from MS. Laud. 108, fol. 31 *b*, to complete it:—

"His day is toward þe ende of May · for in þat day he wende
Out of þis lijf to iheſu criſt · þat after him þo sende
Bidde we ȝeorne ſeint Auſtin · þat *cri*ſtindom so brouȝte
þat we moten to þulke Ioye come · to ȝwan ore louerd uſ bouȝte."

The Lives of *Judas*, *Pilate*, and *Seint Dunston* have been printed for the Philological Society, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1862.

Of the names scribbled on the margins of the MS., the one which occurs most frequently is that of Nicholas Williams, to whom it must have belonged in the sixteenth century. We find, on fol. 45, the entry, "Nicholas Williams was poysond, but by God's grace escaped it. Gloria patri, Amen. by lacon in Salop." Lacon is a township in the parish of Wem, some ten miles due N. of Shrewsbury.

For remarks upon the *dialect* of the poems, see the end of the "Introduction to Alisaunder," p. xxxvii.

PREFACE TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF 1832.

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

The Romance of "William and the Werwolf," contained in the present volume, is printed from an unique MS. preserved in the Library of King's College, Cambridge, and its literary history renders it of more than common interest to the poetical antiquary. It is to the memorable Rowleian controversy we are indebted for the first notice of this poem in its English dress. In that singular dispute, in which Jacob Bryant, Fellow of King's College, and the Rev. Jeremiah Milles, D.D., Dean of Exeter, so notably distinguished themselves in defence of the pseudo-Rowley and his writings, the former, by a piece of good fortune, stumbled on the Romance, and, still more fortunately for us, resolved to force it into his service

in support of the antiquity of Chatterton's forgeries. Accordingly, in his "Observations," 8vo. Lond. 1781, pp. 14—23, he gives a short account of the poem, with a few extracts from it. His argument tends to prove it written in a provincial dialect, and for this purpose he produces a list of words, which he pronounces of a local nature. But however profound Bryant may have been as a classic scholar, he possessed very little, or rather, no knowledge of the formation or genius of the old English language. Indeed, his attempt to prove Chatterton's poetry the production of the 15th century, is quite sufficient to acquit him of any such pretensions. The consequence is natural. Nearly all the words considered by him provincial, are to be met with in every other writer of the period, and even those of rarer occurrence are, for the most part, found in the Scottish alliterative Romances of the same century.[1] But the citations made by Bryant from this MS. were sufficient at a somewhat later period to attract the attention of the kennel of 'black-letter hounds' then in full cry after the pothooks of Shakspeare's prompter's book, and George Steevens, I believe, applied for permission to inspect it. The volume was then in the hands of Dr Glynne, Senior Fellow of King's College, who, like Bryant, was a sturdy Rowleian,[2] and he, fancying

[1] Bryant's blunders in explaining these words are marvellous. A few instances, which may be compared with the Glossary at the end of this volume, will serve to show how little he understood the subject. Thus, he interprets *arnd*, around; *bourds*, a public house or shop; *bretages*, bridges; *kud*, good; *kinne*, can; *maid*, madam; *welt*, held; *warder*, further; *boggeslyche*, boyishly! Many are also copied so incorrectly that they can scarcely be recognised, as *eni* for *em*, *asthis* for *aschis*, *gemlych* for *gamlyche*, *kevily* for *kenely*, *komchaunce* for *konichaunce*, *wlouks* for *wlonke*, *satheli* for *scathli*, *neege* for *neise* [*neiȝe*], *henden* for *hiezeden* [*hiȝeden*], *feyful* for *feizful* [*feiȝful*], *wyeth* for *wyes*, *fayte* for *fayre*, *path* for *paye*. And yet this is the man who pretended to judge of Chatterton's forgeries, and even correct them by his own notions of Rowley's fancied original. We may truly apply to him some of the precious lines he wastes his commentary on:

"Wordes wythoute sense fulle groffyngelye he twynes,
Cotteynge his storie off as wythe a sheere;
Waytes monthes on nothynge, & hys storie donne,
Ne moe you from ytte kenne, than gyf you neere begonne."
p. 69. *Ed. Tyrwhitt.*

[2] Dr Glynne bequeathed to the British Museum the original parchments fabricated by Chatterton, which now remain a 'damning proof,' were any wanted, of the imposture. They present a series of the most contemptible and clumsy forgeries.

that an examination of the book might not assist the claims of Rowley to originality, very prudently locked the treasure up, and there it slumbered till it was once more brought to light by the Rev. C. H. Hartshorne, about the year 1824.[1] By permission of the Provost, about 560 lines of the commencement were copied, and they form a portion of a volume intitled "Ancient Metrical Tales," published in 1829, 8vo., pp. 256—287. Of the inaccuracy of this transcript I shall say nothing, as it will sufficiently appear by comparison with the text now printed.

Having thus briefly stated the mode in which this MS. became known to the public, the next point of inquiry will be the author of the poem in its present shape; and here, I regret to add, no information can be gained. All we know on the subject is derived from the writer himself, who tells us, he translated it from the French at the command of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford. These are his words, at the end of the first *fytte* or passus:

> Thus passed is the first pas of this pris tale,
> And ȝe that loven and lyken to listen ani more,
> Alle wiȝth on hol hert to the heiȝ king of hevene,
> Preieth a pater noster prively this time,
> *For the hend Erl of Herford, sir Humfray de Bowne,*
> *The king Edwardes newe, at Glouseter that ligges,*
> *For he of Frensche this fayre tale ferst dede translate,*
> *In ese of Englysch men, in Englysch speche.*—(fol. 3.)

And at the end of the poem, in similar but in fuller terms:

> *In thise wise hath William al his werke ended,*
> *As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,*
> And as his witte him wold serve thouȝh it were febul[2] . . . .
> But faire frendes, for Goddes love, and for ȝour owne mensk,

MSS. Add. 5766. A.B.C. Alas, for the shade of Rowley! [For specimens of these poems, and critical remarks upon them, see Warton, Hist. English Poetry. § xxvi.—W. W. S.]

[1] Weber has, indeed, pointed it out as one of those Romances worthy of publication, but he never saw the MS. itself. See Metr. Rom. Introd. p. lxviii.

[[2] Sir F. Madden did not quote these first three lines in this place (though he quoted them farther on, see p. xxii); but it is worth while to observe that they tell us the poet's own Christian name, which (like his hero's) was *William*.—W.W.S.]

ȝe that liken in love swiche thinges to here,
Preiȝeth for that gode Lord that gart this do make,
The hende Erl of Hereford, Humfray de Boune;
The gode king Edwardes douȝter was his dere moder;
He let make this mater in this maner speche,
For hem that knowe no Frensche, ne never understo[nd]:
Biddith that blisful burn that bouȝt us on the rode,
And to his moder Marie, of mercy that is welle,
ȝif the Lord god lif, wil he in erthe lenges,
And whan he wendes of this world, welthe with-oute ende,
To lenge in that liking joye, that lesteth ever more.—(fol. 82.)

It has been the more necessary to quote these passages at length, in order to correct the absurd mistakes of Bryant, who, not understanding the phrases, "at Glouseter that *ligges*," and "ferst *dede* translate," nor the import of the line, "ȝif the Lord god lif," &c., has supposed, first, that the Earl himself had made a prior translation to the one before us, and secondly, that he was dead and buried at Gloucester, when the second version was undertaken! It is scarcely necessary to point out, that the words "ferst *dede* translate," only mean first *caused* to be translated, and are strictly synonymous with "*gart* this do make," and "*let* make." Then, as to the Earl's lying dead at Gloucester, the Poet can have no such meaning, for at the conclusion of the Romance he begs his hearers to pray to God and the Virgin to give the Earl "good life," and after his decease, eternal felicity. The line simply means, resident or dwelling at Gloucester,[1] and although the term *to ligge* was in subsequent times more often used in the sense understood by Bryant, yet there is no reason, in the above instance, to depart from its original and obvious meaning.

[1] In the 21 Edw. 3, Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, obtained the royal license to embattle his Manor-Houses in the Counties of Gloucester, Essex, Middlesex, and Wiltshire. In the former of these only one mansion is mentioned, that of Whitenhurst, or Wheatenhurst, situated about eight miles south from Gloucester, and it is very probable that this is the spot alluded to in general terms by the Poet. We know, moreover, that the Earl was not buried at Gloucester, but at the Augustine Friars, in London, which he had himself re-edified in 1354. See Dugdale, Baron. i. 184; Rudder's Gloucest. p. 813; and Stowe's Survey, p. 185.

The nobleman thus alluded to was the sixth Earl of Hereford of the name of Bohun, and third son of Humphrey de Bohun, fourth Earl of Hereford, and Elizabeth Plantagenet, seventh daughter of King Edward the First; consequently he was nephew to King Edward the Second, as intimated in the poem, and first cousin to King Edward the Third. He succeeded to the earldom at the age of twenty-four, on the death of his brother John without issue, 20th Jan., 1335-6, and died, unmarried, 15th Oct., 1361.[1] We are, therefore, enabled to fix the date of the composition of the English Romance with sufficient accuracy, nor shall we greatly err, if we refer it to the year 1350. This will agree extremely well with the scanty notices transmitted to us of De Bohun's life, which, like most of those relating to the belted barons of this chivalric period, are chiefly of a military character.[2] Yet it may be doubted whether, as a soldier, the Earl of Hereford was at any time distinguished, and whether he may not have been confounded by Froissart with his brother, the Earl of Northampton. And this conjecture corresponds with the instrument preserved in Rymer,[3] dated 12th June, 1338, by which the King ratifies Humphrey de Bohun's resignation of his hereditary office of Constable of England, in favor of his brother, "*tam ob corporis sui inbecillitatem, quàm propter infirmitatem diuturnam qua detinetur, ad officium Constabulariæ exercendum,*" &c. We may, therefore, with

[1] Dugd. Baron. i. 184.; Milles, p. 1072.

[2] In 1337, he was entrusted with the guard of the important garrison of Perth in Scotland. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). Three years afterwards he is said to have taken a part, together with his warlike brother, William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton, in the battle of the Sluys, fought in the King's presence, (Froissart, by Lord Berners, f. 30. Ed. 1525), and commemorated by Laurence Minot, a contemporary poet. The next year, 1341, we meet with him in the magnificent feast and jousts held by the King at London in honor of the Countess of Salisbury—the same to whom the noble Order of the Garter is said to owe its origin (Froissart, f. 46). In 1342, he was ordered to provide forty men of arms and sixty archers for the King's service in Britanny, and to attend the Council at London, to treat concerning their wages. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). In 1346 he accompanied the King into France to relieve the town of Aguillon, then besieged by the French, (Froissart, f. 59 *b*); but it is not stated by our historians whether he was present at the famous battle of Cressy, fought shortly after. In 1359, he again attended the King on a similar expedition, (Froissart, f. 100), and nothing further is recorded of him till his death, which took place two years afterwards.

[3] Vol. v. p. 52.

great probability conclude, that the Earl's weak state of bodily health exempted him from taking an active part in the warfare of the time, although he might have assisted the King with his counsels. To the same cause we may doubtless ascribe that love for literature which induced him to cause the Romance of William and the Werwolf to be translated from the French,—not, as is evident, for his own use, since French was then the language of the Court, but for the benefit of those persons of the middle class, to whom the French language was unknown. By the influence of a similar motive, we possess the translations made by Robert of Brunne at the commencement of this century:

"Not for the lerid bot the lewed,
For tho that in this land wonn,
That the Latyn no Frankys conn,
For to haf solace and gamen,
In felawschip whanne thai sit samen."[1]

Higden's testimony to the prevalence of French in the education of gentlemen's children at that period is very precise, and it became so much the fashion towards the middle of the century, that a proverb was made of inferior persons who attempted to imitate the practice of the higher classes: "Jack wold be a gentylman yf he coude speke Frensshe."[2] Trevisa adds, that "this was moche used tofore the grete deth [1349], but syth it is somdele chaunged;" which was, doubtless, accelerated by the Act passed in 1362, ordering all pleadings to be in the English tongue, and much more by the popular compositions of Gower, Chaucer, and the author of Piers Plouhman. From all these circumstances it would seem most probable that the work was executed after the Earl's return from France, in 1349, between which year and his second expedition in 1359, he appears to have resided on his estates. That this style of composition was much admired and encouraged in England during the 14th century is apparent from the alliterative Romances still extant of the period. But it is very seldom we are indulged with the names of the persons by whom or for whom these poems were written, and, in

[1] Prol. to Chron. ap. Hearne, Pref. p. xcvi.
[2] Descr. of Brit. c. 15. Ed. 1515. *Jul. Notary.*

that respect, the present poem becomes more intitled to notice, from its introducing us to a nobleman, whose claims to biography are so very feeble, and who would never otherwise have been known as a patron of literature.

The history, however, of the Romance does not conclude here. We must next trace it in its original form; and here, also, we shall find some circumstances which render it worthy of attention. The origin and progress of French poesy, both of the Trouvères and Troubadours, have been successfully illustrated by Fauchet, Roquefort,[1] De la Rue, Raynouard, and others, but, more particularly, by the authors of the *Histoire Litteraire de la France.* From these authorities we know that many Romances were composed by the Norman poets previous to the year 1200, which subsequently became the text-books of the English versifiers of the 14th century. Most of these were founded on the two great sources of fiction throughout Europe; the exploits of Charlemagne and his *Douze Pairs*, and of Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table, amplified from the fictitious histories of Turpin and Geoffry of Monmouth. The chief exceptions to this cycle of poetry at the period we are treating of, are the Romances of Havelok, Horn, Benoit's Guerre de Troie, Garin le Loherain, Alexander, Athys et Porfilias, Florimond, Gerard de Rousillon, and, perhaps, some few others composed by Raoul de Houdane, and Thiebaut de Mailli, all of which come under the class

[1] When speaking of our English Romances, Roquefort is by no means to be relied on. Thus, describing the English *Kyng Horn*, he says it was composed in the 8th or 9th century. He then confounds it with the Frankish fragment of Hildebrand and Hathubrand, published by Eckard, and takes Ritson to task, for saying that the French text was the original; who would not, he writes, have committed such an error, if he had consulted MS. Harl. 2253, where the Romance exists in Anglo-Saxon!!! The reply is easy. The copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Harleian MS. was written about the year 1300, and it was from this very MS. Ritson published his text. The editor of the present volume [i. e. of the edition of 1832] was fortunate enough to discover another copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Bodleian, of the same age, which, in many respects, gives preferable readings. M. Roquefort goes on to call the Auchinleck MS. a collection of *French* poetry, &c. See his Dissertation "*De l'état de la Poésie Françoise dans les xii. et xiii. siecles.*" 8vo. Paris, 1815, pp. 48, 49. [NOTE. There is a still better copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Cambridge University Library, first printed for the Bannatyne Club by Mr T. Wright, and reprinted by Mr Lumby in his edition, published for the E. E. T. S. in 1866.—W. W. S.]

of *Romans mixtes.* Among these also we are intitled to place our Romance of William and the Werwolf, the title of which in the original, is, *Roman de Guillaume de Palerne.* The popularity of this singular tale, (which one would suppose was formed on some Italian tradition, picked up by the Norman adventurers in Apulia and Sicily), must have been considerable, since in the ancient inventories of the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy, taken in 1467 and 1487, we find no less than three copies of it.[1] At present, the catalogues of MSS. in England have been searched in vain for the poem, and in France, on a similar inquiry being made, only *one* copy has been discovered, preserved in the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, at Paris,[2] and, to all appearance, is the same MS. which was formerly at Brussels.[3] By the obliging attentions of M. Van Praet, the distinguished Librarian of the Bibliothèque Royale, the Editor is enabled to give some account of this unique volume. It is a vellum MS. of a small folio size, consisting of 157 leaves, and written in double columns of 31 lines each, towards the close of the thirteenth century. It contains the *Roman d' Escouffle* (fol. 1—77), and the *Roman du Guillaume de Palerne.* The latter commences thus:

Nus ne se doit celer ne taire, &c.,[4]

and ends in the following manner:

Del roi Guill*iaume* et de sa mere,
De ses enfans et de son guerre, (?)
De son empire et de son regne,
Trait li estoires ci a fin.
Cil q*ui* tos iors fu et sans fin
Sera, et pardoune briement,
Il gart *la contesse Yolent,*
La bonne dame, la lcial,
Et il descort son cors de mal.

[1] See a curious volume, intitled "Bibliothèque Protypographique." 4to. Paris, 1830, pp. 199, 302, 323.

[2] Marked *Belles Lettres,* 178.

[3] See the work just cited, p. 323. It is there called of the *fourteenth* century.

[[4] Here Sir F. Madden quotes the first 24 lines, which I omit, as, by the great kindness of M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale, I am enabled to give much longer extracts; see pp. 1—6, and 19—23, of this book.—W. W. S.]

Cest liure fist diter et faire,
Et de Latin en Roumans traire.
Proions dieu por la bonne dam[e]
Que*n* bon repos en mete lame,
Et il nous doinst ce deseruir,
Q*ua* boine fin puissons venir. Amen.
Explicit li Roumans de Guilliaume de Palerne.

The lady here referred to can be no other than Yoland, eldest daughter of Baldwin IV., Count of Hainault, and Alice of Namur. She was married, first, to Yves, or Yvon, Count of Soissons, surnamed *le Viel*, who is characterised by an old Chronicler as a nobleman "de grande largesse, et sage sur tous les Barons de France."[1] On his death, without issue, which took place in 1177, she married, secondly, Hugh Candavene IV., Count of St. Paul, by whom she had two daughters, the eldest of which carried the title into the family of Chastillon. By the union of Judith, daughter of Charles the Bold, with Baldwin I., Count of Flanders, the Countess Yoland claimed descent from the blood of Charlemagne, and by the marriage of her brother Baldwin the Courageous with Margaret of Alsace, heiress of Flanders and Artois, she became aunt to Baldwin VI., Count of Hainault and Flanders, who in 1204 was elected Emperor of Constantinople,[2] and to Isabel of Hainault, who, in 1180, shared the throne of Philip Augustus, King of France. Such was the splendid alliance of the lady to whom our poem owes its origin. In accordance with the prevailing taste of the age, we find the Counts of Hainault and Flanders distinguished patrons of poesy. Chrestien de Troyes is said to have dedicated several of his Romances to Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, who died in 1191,[3] and Baldwin V., Count of Hainault,

[1] Du Chesne; Hist. de la Maison de Chastillon, fol. Par. 1621. *Preuves*, p. 33.

[2] The author of the analysis of this Romance, in the *Nouv. Bibl. des Romans*, t. ii. p. 41, who copies from the printed prose version, hereafter to be noticed, makes a singular mistake, by confounding the Countess of St. Paul with Yoland, sister of the Emperor Baldwin, and wife of Peter de Courteney, who was subsequently, in her right, Emperor of Constantinople, and died in 1221. He says also, that the Countess Yoland found the Romance among the papers of her nephew after his death [1205], but this is a mere invention of the writer himself, and contradicted by the original text.

[3] Hist. Litt. de la France, xiii. 193.

having found at Sens, in Burgundy, a MS. of the Life of Charlemagne, gave the work at his death [1195] to his sister Yoland (the same lady above mentioned), who caused it to be translated into French prose.[1] We have once more to lament that the author of our original (most probably, a native of Artois,) should have concealed his name, but the time of its composition may be assigned between 1178, the probable date of her marriage with the Count of St. Paul, and the year 1200. The Count died at Constantinople before 1206, and Yoland did not, in all probability, survive him long. She was, certainly, alive in 1202, as appears from an instrument in Du Chesne. This Romance may therefore be ranked among the earliest of those composed at the close of the 12th century, and it is surprising it should have been overlooked by Roquefort and the Benedictines.

At a much later period, apparently, at the beginning of the 16th century, this poem was converted into French prose. Three editions of it are known to book-collectors; the first printed at Paris, by Nicolas Bonfons, 4to *litt. goth.*;[2] the second at Lyons, 1552, by Olivier Arnoult, 4to;[3] and a third at the same place (probably a reprint) by the widow of Louis Coste, *s. a.* about 1634. The 'traducteur,' in a short preface, tells us he obtained the original by gift of a friend, and finding the language to be "romant antique rimoyé, en

[1] Ib. xiii. 386. Fauchet, Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Françoise, fol. Par. 1581; p. 34.

[2] Copies of this exist in the British Museum, and in Mr Douce's library. In the former there is a note in the handwriting of Ritson, who supposes it to have proceeded from the press of Nicholas, the *father* of John Bonfons, whose *son* Nicholas printed from about 1550 to 1590. The title is as follows: "*L'Historie du noble preux & vaillant Cheualier Guillaume de Palerne. Et de la belle Melior. Lequel Guillaume de Palerne fut filz du Roy de Cecille. Et par fortune & merueilleuse auenture deuint vacher. Et finablement fut Empereur de Rome souz la conduicte dun Loupgaroux filz au Roy Despagne.*" The text is accompanied with wood-cuts. This volume is noticed both by Du Verdier, t. iv. p. 169, Ed. Juvigny, and Bibl. des Romans, t. ii. p. 245, but neither of these writers mention the author. [NOTE. Besides these three, there is a *fourth* edition, printed at Rouen by Louys Costé (about 1620?), of which there is now a copy in the British Museum (class-mark 12513 *e*). It is in Roman type, not black-letter, and seems to be merely copied from the first edition. A search for a particular passage shewed that both prose versions omit the portion contained in ll. 2449—2567.—W. W. S.]

[3] See Dr Dibdin's Tour, vol. ii. p. 337, who describes a copy of this, and the later edition, in the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal.

sorte non intelligible ne lisible," he turned it into modern French, with some additions of his own, for the assistance of those who might wish to read it: "Car en icelle lisant," he adds, "pourra l'on veoir plusieurs faictz d'armes, d'amours, & fortunes innumerables, & choses admirables, q' aduindre*nt* au preux & vaillant cheualier Guillaume de Palerne, duquel l'histoire port le nom." He afterwards adverts to the Countess Yoland, and her nephew Baldwin, Emperor of Constantinople, who was slain by the infidels at the siege of Adrianople, in 1205. And adds: "Pour l'ho*n*neur de laquelle & de si haut empereur pouuo*ns* facillement accroistre les choses au present liure contenues." Whether the story will appear quite so credible at the present day is rather questionable. The French bibliographers are silent as to the author of this prose version, and Dr Dibdin's sagacity seems to have failed him here. But at the end of the volume is an acrostic of twelve lines, the first letters of which form the name of *Pierre Durand*, who, no doubt, is the compiler. Any further information respecting him I have been unable to obtain, unless he is the same with the Pierre Durand, Bailli of Nogent le Rotrou, en Perche, mentioned by Lacroix du Maine, who adds, that he was an excellent Latin poet, and composed many inedited verses both in Latin and French.[1] No notice is supplied of the period at which he lived. It was, most likely, from this prose translation, that the imperfect analysis of the Romance was borrowed, printed in the *Nouvelle Bibliothèque des Romans*, tom. ii. pp. 41—68, 12mo. Par. an. vi. [1808] where it is placed in the class of "Romans de Féerie," although professedly extracted from a MS. of the 14th century.

By the assistance of Durand's version we are enabled to judge of the accuracy of the English versifier, since they both translate from the same text, and it is surprising how closely the latter has adhered to his original. Another advantage gained from it is to supply the *hiatus* which, unfortunately, occur in the English poem. To avoid the prolixity of the prose author, the substance of the passages wanting, is here annexed:[2]

[1] Bibl. Françoises, tom. ii. p. 272; ed. 1772. He is said also to have had an *ænigma* or rebus in the front of his house, which seems to indicate the same taste which prompted the composition of the acrostic cited above.

[[2] These missing passages are supplied in this re-edition from the original rimed French version.—W. W. S.]

"There was formerly a King of Sicily, named Ebron, who was also Duke of Calabria and Lord of Apulia; rich and powerful above all other princes of his time. He married Felixe, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, and not long after their union, they were blessed with a son named William, the hero of the present story. The infant was intrusted to the care of two sage and prudent ladies, named Gloriande and Esglantine, who were chosen to superintend his nurture and education. But the brother of King Ebron, foreseeing that his succession to the throne would be now impeded, soon formed a resolution to destroy the boy, and, by means of promises and bribes so wrought on the governesses, that they at length consented to a plan by which both the Prince and King were to be put to death. At that time the Court was held at the noble city of Palerne [Palermo], adjoining to which was a spacious garden, abounding with flowers and fruits, in which the King was often accustomed to take his recreation. But one day, when Ebrons was walking here, accompanied by the Queen and the Prince (then about four years old), attended by the two governesses, an event took place which turned all their joy into the deepest consternation and grief. For, whilst the King's brother and the two ladies were holding a secret conference how to carry their project into execution, a huge werwolf, with open jaws and bristled mane, suddenly rushed forth from a thicket, at which the ladies were so terrified, that they swooned away, and the rest fled, leaving the child alone, who was immediately carried off, without injury, by the beast. The King ordered pursuit to be made, but in vain, for the swiftness of the animal soon enabled him to distance his pursuers; to the great distress of the monarch and his court. The werwolf bore the child away to a place of safety, and thence, pursuing his course night and day, at length conveyed him to a forest, not far from the city of Rome, where he remained some time, taking care to provide what was necessary for his sustenance; and having dug a deep pit, and strewed it with herbs and grass for William to sleep on, the beast was accustomed to fondle the boy with his paws in the same manner a nurse would have done."

Here commences the English Romance, which, with the exception of a folio (or 72 lines) missing between ff. 6—7, proceeds regularly to the end. This second defect occurs at the close of the Emperor's speech to his daughter Melior, and the text again begins with Melior's reproaches to herself for loving William. What intervenes may be easily supplied, even from fancy, but in the prose Romance we read as follows:

"The Emperor's daughter received the infant, which proved of so gentle a disposition, that it seemed to have been bred at court all its life-time. It was soon clothed in dresses of silk and velvet, and

became the plaything of the fair Melior. 'Et alors,' says the writer, 'le faisoit mout beau veoir: car en toute la court ny auoit si bel enfant que luy, ne si aduenant. Sobre estoit en son manger & boire, facilemens fut apprins à seruir les dames à tables; a tous ieux, & à deuiser & à dire ioyeuses sornetes a tous propos.' But above all, William studied how best to serve his lady and mistress Melior, whom he loved above every one else. As he advanced in age he began to share in the chivalrous exercises of the time; to bear arms, ride on the great horse, and practise various feats of strength, all for the love of Melior, his 'mie'; and so great a favourite was he with all the ladies and demoiselles, that Melior heard of nothing but his praises. The Emperor, too, was so fond of William, as to keep him constantly by his side. In the mean time, the Princess would often withdraw to her chamber to dwell secretly on the personal attractions and graceful demeanor of William, and was at length so pierced by love's keen arrow, that she could not refrain from sighing, and desiring to hold him in her arms. But then again, considering with herself, that a lady of her noble birth ought not to bestow her affection on any one but a Knight of her own rank, she often vainly endeavoured to drive William from her thoughts."

The remaining part of *la belle Melior's* soliloquy will be found in our poem, and the translation is sufficiently *naïve* to be interesting even to those who may, in general, despise the simple language of our old Romances.

The tradition developed in this story, and which forms its chief feature, namely, the transformation of a human being into a wolf, but still retaining many of the attributes of his nature, has been so learnedly and ably discussed by the author of the Letter annexed to the present remarks,[1] as to render any additional illustration unnecessary. But it may not be improper here to suggest, that the belief in this notion in the southern provinces of Europe may have been partly derived through the medium of the Northmen, among whom, as appears from various authorities, it was very general. A curious story of a *were-bear* in Rolf Kraka's Saga is quoted by Sir Walter Scott,[2] which has some slight features of resemblance with our werwolf, and it is singular, that this metamorphosis should have been accomplished by striking the person transformed with a glove of *wolf-skin*. In the

[1] [In the Edition of 1832, a Letter by the Hon. Algernon Herbert, addressed to Lord Cawdor, on the subject of Werewolves, was annexed to the Preface.—W. W. S.]

[2] Border Minstr. ii. 110, ed. 1803. [The story, condensed, is given in S. Baring-Gould's Book of Werewolves, pp. 21—27.—W. W. S.]

Volsunga Saga, also, cap. 12, we read of the similar change of Sigmund and Siufroth into wolves.[1] In general, the transformation was supposed to be accomplished, as in our Romance, by the aid of certain magical unguents.[2] With regard to the supposed form of these werwolves, and whether they differed from those of natural wolves, I have searched many writers, without much success, but Boguet informs us, that in 1521, three sorcerers were executed, who confessed they had often become *Loupsgaroux*, and killed many persons.[3] A painting was made to commemorate the fact, in which these werwolves were each represented with a knife in his right paw. This picture, we are told, was preserved in the church of the Jacobins, at Pouligny,[4] in Burgundy. One distinctive mark, however, of a werwolf is said to have been the absence of a tail,[5] yet this does not seem to correspond with the vulgar notions on the subject, since in the wooden cut prefixed to the prologue of the prose translation of this Romance, representing the werwolf carrying off the infant Prince of Palermo, there certainly appears a tail of due proportions.

On the style in which this poem is written, and its peculiarities of language, it is needless to dwell long. The history of our alliterative poetry has already been illustrated by Percy, Warton, and Conybeare, and the principle on which it was composed, even to so late a date as the middle of the 16th century, is sufficiently known.[6] The

[1] Biörner's Kämpa-Dæter, fol. 1737. [See S. Baring-Gould's Book of Werewolves, p. 18.—W. W. S.]

[2] See *Discours des Sorciers*, par Henry Boguet, 12mo. Lyon, 1608. 2de ed. pp. 363, 369; Verstegan's *Restitution of Decayed Intelligence*, 4to. Antv. 1605, p. 237; Jamieson's Dictionary, in v. *Warwolf*, and Nynauld's treatise *De la Lycanthropie*, 8vo., Par. 1625, where several of these ointments are described.

[3] Another account says *two* sorcerers, named Pierre Bourgot and Michel Verdung. See *A Book on Werewolves*, by S. Baring-Gould, p. 69.]

[4] Boguet, p. 341. Wierus *de Præstigiis*, lib. v. c. 10.

[5] Boguet, pp. 340, 361. [A little girl described a werwolf as "resembling a wolf, but as being shorter and stouter; its hair was red, *its tail stumpy*, and the head smaller than that of a genuine wolf." See the story in S. Baring-Gould's Book on Werewolves, p. 91.—W. W. S.]

[6] See Essay in the Reliques of English Poetry, vol. ii.; Warton's Hist. of Engl. Poetry, vol. ii. § 10, 8vo. ed.; Whitaker's Introductory Discourse to Piers Plouhman, and Conybeare's Essay on Anglo-Saxon Metre, prefixed to the Illustrations of Anglo-Saxon Poetry, 8vo., Lond. 1826. [In the new edition of Bp Percy's Folio MS. by Hales and Furnivall, Percy's Essay has been replaced by a fuller and longer one by myself, to which I beg leave to refer the reader.—W. W. S.]

lines in the poem consist of an indeterminate number of syllables, from eleven to thirteen, but sometimes more or less, which, like Piers Plouhman, and other compositions of this class, may be divided into distichs, at the cæsural pause, so as to give them the Saxonic character on which they are all formed. Thus, for instance:

Hit bi-*f*el in that *f*orest,
there *f*ast by-side,
There *w*oned a *w*el old cherl,
that *w*as a couherde,
That *f*ele winterres in that *f*orest
*f*ayre had kepud, &c.

It adds, however, to the value of this Romance, that we have in it the earliest specimen of unrimed alliterative metre yet discovered; for of the other pieces of this kind extant, there is not one which may not be placed subsequent to Piers Plouhman, composed after the year 1362.[1] It is also matter of satisfaction to be able to fix the date of this work prior to the period which produced such writers as Gower and Chaucer. We can now trace the English language step by step from the year 1300, since the writings of Robert of Gloucester, Robert of Brunne, Robert Davies, William of Shoreham,[2] Robert Rolle, and Laurence Minot, lead us up to the precise period when our poem was composed, and which forms the connecting link with Langland and the subsequent writers. Without deciding with Bryant, that our Romance betrays very distinctly a provincial dialect, we may accede to his conjecture of its author being, probably, a native of Gloucestershire, or an adjoining county; although the orthography by no means betrays that decided western pronunciation

[1] Mr Conybeare is certainly mistaken in assigning the Romances of Sir Gawayn and Alexander to the 13th century, as I shall endeavour to show in another place. [See Sir F. Madden's notes to Sir Gawayn. See on the other hand my "Introduction to Alisaunder," (p. xxx), which poem is now found to be somewhat earlier than "William of Palerne."—W. W. S.]

[2] The poems of this writer, who flourished from 1320 to 1340, are preserved in an unique MS. belonging to Alexander Henderson, Esq., of Edinburgh, who intends, at some period or other, giving them to the public. [*The Religious Poems of William de Shoreham* were edited for the Percy Society by T. Wright, M.A., London, 1849. The MS. is now MS. Additional 17376 in the British Museum.—W. W. S.]

which characterises the poems ascribed to Robert of Gloucester. Of his ability as a poet we ought on the whole to form a favorable judgment; and when we consider the fetters imposed on him by the metre he adopts, and by the closeness of his translation, we may readily forgive the repetitions he abounds in, as well as the somewhat tedious minuteness of his narrative. There are some lines, such as for instance these:

And than so throli thouȝtes thurlen myn herte,
That I ne wot in the world where it bi comse;

and again,

So many maner minstracie at that mariage were,
That when thei made here menstracie, eche man wende
That heven hastili and erthe schuld hurtel to gader;

which would seem to mark the author capable of better things. But the poet shall plead his own apology, in some lines at the close of the Romance:

In this wise hath William al his werke ended,
As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,
And as his witte him wold serve, thouȝh it were febul;
But thouȝh the metur be nouȝt mad at eche mannes paye,
Wite him nouȝt that it wrouȝt, he wold have do beter
Ȝif is witte in eny weiȝes wold him have served.

It would seem from this, as if the alliterative form of alexandrine verse had not yet become popular, and was, in fact, but lately introduced. It is worth observing also, that the number of French words here introduced, will serve to exonerate Chaucer from the charge made against him of debasing the English language by Gallicisms. Such a remark could only have come from one ignorant of what early English literature owes to our continental neighbours.

There are some minuter details respecting the grammatical construction of the poem, which perhaps deserve notice, such as the use of the present tense for the past, as *askes*, *arise*, *bere*, *seweth*, &c., for *asked*, *arose*, *bore*, *sewede*, &c., the use of the singular for the plural (if, indeed, it be not a contracted form of the plural, which I am inclined to believe, like *childer* from *childeren*), in the instances of *daie*,

dede, *burgeys*, *bere*, &c., for *daies*, *dedes*, *burgeyses*, *beres*, &c.; but the fact is, these are not peculiarities, but authorised by usage, and many similar forms are retained, even at present, in familiar conversation, particularly among the lower classes.

It only remains to give a brief description of the MS. from which the present poem has been transcribed. It is a moderate-sized folio, written on vellum soon after the middle of the 14th century, and consisting of 130 folios, 82 of which are occupied by the Romance. A quire is wanting at the commencement, and a single leaf shortly after. The text is disposed in single columns, of 36 lines in a page, and the writing is in a remarkably distinct, but rather thick and inelegant, letter, with small blue and red initials.[1] . . . .

At the conclusion of the Romance, f. 86, is written in a hand of the early part of the 16th century as follows:[2] "Praye we all to that heaven kinge that made all ye world off nowght to p*ard*o*n* the solle of hu*m*fray boune, that was erlle of herfo*rd*, for hys grete dylygens and peyns takynge to translate thys boke owt off freynche In to englys; to ye entent to kepe youythe from ydellnes, [he] hathe sete furthe thys goodly story, wher apon we showld bestow *our* tym apon the holy day, & suche other tym*es* when we haue lytle or nothynge a doyng ell*es*, & In so doynge ye may put awey all ydell thowght*es* & pensyffnes [of] harte, for the wyche traueyll pray we all to that heuy*n* kynge to graunt hym eternall lyf for hys good wyll." The rest of the volume is occupied by a portion of the Metrical Lives of the Saints, composed in the reign of Edward the First, and written in a different and rather earlier hand. The lives are those of *Judas*, *Pilatus*, *Seint Marie Egiptiak*, *Seint Alphe*, *Seint George*, *Seint Dunston*, *Seint Aldelme*, *and Seint Austyn*.[3] There are several other

[1 I here omit the words "A fac-simile of the first seven lines is subjoined," which are followed by the fac-simile itself. The marks of abbreviation are explained further on; see p. xxiv. A peculiarity of the MS. is that the initial letter of every line is separated from the rest by a slight space, as in Sir F. Madden's edition. The central metrical pause is *nowhere* marked by a dot. I am responsible for the *insertion* of these, which will, I believe, be found to assist the reader.—W. W. S.]

[2 These words were clearly suggested by the concluding lines of the poem, and it was hence, perhaps, that Bryant adopted the idea that Sir Humphrey translated the French *himself*.—W. W. S.]

[3 There is a poem preceding *Judas*, and belonging to the same series. See the first lines, &c., on p. vi.—W. W. S.]

perfect copies of these curious legends in existence. With respect to the history of this MS. volume before it was presented to King's College Library, I could gain no information, nor even the name of the donor. There are several names scribbled on the margins, but all of a late period, and of no importance.

The Romance has been printed, as nearly as possible, in exact accordance with the MS., and not the slightest liberty has been taken, either with the punctuation or the orthography. It is, in short, as near a fac-simile of the original as could be imitated by typography. But for the convenience of those unacquainted with the mode of contracting words in old MSS., a list of the abbreviations is placed at the end of these remarks. The Glossary has been compiled with much care, and rendered as comprehensive as possible, but with all due regard to avoid unnecessary prolixity. Only those words are illustrated which appeared absolutely to require it: it being deemed in other cases sufficient to mark the immediate derivation of the term.

The Editor, in conclusion, has to express his thanks to the Rev. George Thackeray, D.D., Provost of King's College, for his permission to copy the MS.; and also to Martin Thackeray, Esq., M.A., Vice Provost; John Heath, Esq., M.A., Dean; and George Crauford Heath, Esq., M.A., Bursar of the College, for their very obliging attentions during the residence made among them.

FREDERICK MADDEN.

British Museum, January 6th, 1832.

MARKS OF ABBREVIATION.

ꝯ, *con* or *com*, as ꝯseil, ꝯfort—[*con*seil, *com*fort].

ʳ, *er*, above the line, as þidʳe, daungʳ, manʳ, sʳue, wintʳres, þʳe, gouʳne, vʳaly—[þid*er*e, daung*er*, man*er*, s*er*ue, wi*nter*res, þ*er*e, gou*er*ne, v*er*aly]. After pʳ, *re*, as pʳstely—[p*re*stely].

ihc, *Ihesus*.*

ꝑ, *per* or *par*, as ꝑile, ꝑtizes, sꝑe—[p*er*ile, p*ar*tizes, sp*er*e].

[* See note to l. 692. W. W. S.]

ꝓ, *pro*, as ꝓfite, ꝓue—[p*ro*fite, p*ro*ue].

q, *quod*—[q*uod*].

ⁱ, *ri*, above the line, as pⁱnce, cⁱft—[p*ri*nce, c*ri*st].

ʳ, *ra*, above the line, as fm̃, g̃ce, pỹ—[f*ra*m, g*ra*ce, p*ra*y]—sometimes *a*, as Willm̃—[Will*ia*m]. *

~, *ur*, above the line, as m̃þe, tñe, õ—[m*ur*þe, t*ur*ne, o*ur*].

The simple stroke over a letter denotes the absence of *m* or *n*, as sū, hī, hoūd—[su*m*, hi*m*, hou*n*d].

NOTE ON THE WORD "WERWOLF."

(*Reprinted, with additions, from the edition of* 1832.)

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

THIS term has the same meaning, and is compounded of the same elements, as the λυκ-ανθρωπος of the Greeks. From the high antiquity of the tradition respecting werewolves, and its having been current among the Celtic as well as Gothic nations, we find the expression in most of the dialects formed from each of the parent languages, and all corresponding to the signification above affixed of *man-wolf*, i. e. a wolf partaking of the nature of man, or, in other words, a man changed, by magical art, into the temporary form of a wolf. All the northern lexicographers agree in this interpretation, as applied to the Su.-G. *warulf*, Teut. *werwolf*, *währwolf*, Sax. *werewulf*, Dan. *varulf*, Belg. *waer wolf*, *weer wolf*, Scotch, *warwolf*, *werwouf*, &c., but as the very learned and ingenious author of the Letter addressed to Lord Cawdor on the subject of Werewolves, prefixed to the present poem, [i. e. in the edition of 1832,] has called their united opinion in question, it may be worth while to discuss more fully the truth of the usual derivation. It is true, that the hypothesis of Mr Herbert, which deduces the first part of the phrase from the Teutonic *wer*, bellum, (whence the French *guerre*, and the Dutch *were* have been formed) may be, in some measure, countenanced by the similar compounds of *wær-boda*, a herald, *were-man*, a soldier, *were-wall*, a defence in war, &c., as well as by the instance of a warlike machine made by King Edward the First, called *war-wolf*, and rightly interpreted by Matthew of Westminster *lupus belli*, p. 449, the *ludgare* or *loup de guerre* of Peter Langtoft, vol. ii. 326. But in conceding thus much, it

[* The mark really is a roughly written *a*, and means an abbreviation wherein *a* occurs, commonly *ra* or *ia*.—W. W. S.]

must be remarked, that all these latter terms are used in a military sense, and could not otherwise be interpreted. They bear no analogy whatever to the *were-wolf* of our Poem, which, supposing we receive it in the sense contended for by the author of the Letter, viz. a *wolf of war*, conveys no distinct or very intelligible meaning. On the other hand, the plain, obvious signification of man-wolf is consonant to the fabulous tradition of the phrase, and to the genius of the languages in which it has been adopted. Only one example of this word in Anglo-Saxon has been found. It occurs in the ecclesiastical laws of King Canute, ap. Wilkins, p. 133, § 26, where, after describing the duties of Pastors of the Church, the text proceeds: "thæt syndon bisceopas and mæssepreostas, the godcunde heorda bewarian and bewerian sceolan, mid wislican laran, thæt *se wodfreca were wulf* to swithe ne slyte, ne to fela ne abite of godcundre heorde," i. e. "Such are the bishops and priests, who shall guard and defend the holy flock with their wise doctrine, that the furious were-wolf may not too greatly tear or lacerate the members of it." Here the term is applied to the Devil, not, as Wachter remarks, "quod Diabolus sit *lycanthropos*, sed quod homines rapiat et occidat;" and the metaphor is evidently drawn from the story of the metamorphosis of a man into a wolf, and subsequent attacks on his own race. The derivation from *wer*, or *wera*, a man, does not, as the author of the Letter supposes, rest on slight authority. One glance at Lye, who has nearly three columns filled with instances, would satisfy him in this respect. It is the Gothic *wair* (Luke viii. 27, ix. 14), Su.-Goth. *wär*, Isl. *ver*, Teut. *wer*, Francic *uuara*, Celtic *Gur*, *Gwr*, or *Ur*, Irish *fair*, *fear*, Latin *vir*, Barb. Lat. *bar-o*, Span. *var-on*, and French *bar-on*; all of which may be referred to a primitive root, expressive of existence. But an unquestionable evidence in the case before us is that of Gervase of Tilbury, who wrote in the reign of Henry II., when the Saxon language had suffered no very material change, and who, assuredly, must be allowed to know the meaning of his own maternal tongue. He writes thus: "Vidimus enim frequenter in Anglia per lunationes homines in lupos mutari, quod hominum genus *Gerulfos* Galli nominant, Angli vero *werewlf* dicunt; *were* enim Anglicè virum sonat, *wlf*, lupum." *Otia Imp. ap. Scriptt. Brunsv.* p. 895. The modern French express the term by *loupgarou*, concerning which it is truly said by Wachter, "mire nugantur eruditi." The sum of these *nugæ* may be found collected in Menage, and the Dictionnaire de Trevoux; to which may be added the conjectures noticed in the *Cœlum Astronomico-Poeticum* of Cœsius, p. 295. But the etymology of the Saxon, Teutonic, and Suio-Gothic phrase will here equally well apply. One of the Lays of Marie, an Anglo-Norman poetess, who wrote about the middle of the thirteenth century, is founded on a Breton fable of a werwolf, and she thus alludes to the appellation:

"*Bisclaueret* ad nun en Bretan,
Garwaf, l'apelent li Norman;

Iadis le poeit hume oir,
E souent suleit auenir,
Humes plusurs *garual* deuindrent,
E es boscages meisun tindrent;
Garualf cet beste saluage," &c.
MS. Harl. 978. f. 152. b.[1]

Roquefort (who has taken some liberties in printing this passage) justly observes, that the Norman *Garvalf* or *Garwaf* is derived from, and the same with, the Saxon and Teutonic term. It may, indeed, have been brought by the Normans from Scandinavia, for in Verelius I find "*Vargulfur*, Brett. Str. [*Bretta Streinglekr Roberti Abbatis*] Biselaretzlïod, Lycantropos. Som löperwarg." *Index Scytho-Scand.* fol. 1691. Whence he has derived the second term, is not clear, nor is it elsewhere explained, but it appears the same with the *Bisclaveret* of Marie (whose writings could not have been known to Verelius), which is supposed by Ritson, Metr. Rom. iii. 331, to be a corruption of *Bleiz-garv*, loup sauvage, for which, in more modern times, the natives of Britanny used *Den-bleiz*, homme-loup. See Rostrenen and Pelletier. *Garv* or *Garo*, is explained in these writers, *âpre*, *cruel*, yet there is great reason to doubt whether when coupled with *bleiz* it has not, like the Norman *garou*, *guaroul*, been borrowed from a Gothic source. That *loup* is superfluous, and that *garou* of itself expresses *man-wolf* is evident from the passages in Gervase of Tilbury and Marie, and may be confirmed by the following authorities. "*Warou*, loup-garou." Dict. Roman, Walon, &c. 4to. Bouillon, 1777. "*Warou*, *warous*, *warrou*, Garou, espèce de loup." *Roquefort.* So, in a MS. Life of the Virgin, quoted by Charpentier, in his Supplement to Du Cange,

"De culuevre nous font anguile,
Aignel de *Waroul* & de leu."

And in the life of St Bernard, Opp. 2, p. 1288. "Transiens autem per quandam villam audivit ab incolis ejusdem loci, duas feras immanissimas, quæ *uuigo varol-i* [appellebantur], in nemore proxime desævire." In the same manner the Scotch have formed their *Wurl*, *Wroul*, and *Worlin*, as appears from Jamieson. Roquefort also gives us the term in another shape, "*Loup-beroux*," but this again is nothing more than the Teut. *Bærwolf*, homo-lupus, from *bar*, vir, which is only a dialectical variation of *Wer*. A similar instance of retaining a pleonastic interpretation is presented in the word *luke-warm*, where *warm* is an adjunct of no real utility, since *luke* means warm by itself, and was anciently so used. For more minute details respecting the etymology here adopted, the philologist is referred to Ihre, Wachter, Kilian, and Jamieson.

Mr Herbert has remarked, at p. 42 of his letter, that "among the Erse or Gael of Erin, the notion of lycanthropy was prevalent; we

[1] In Thoms's "Lays and Legends," 1834, is a translation of this *Lai de Bisclaveret*.

read of their voracious cannibalism on the ocular and undeniable testimony of St Jerome, and another author pretends that a certain Abbot in the district of Ossory had obtained from heaven a decree that two persons of that district (a married couple) should every seven years be compelled to leave the country in the shape of wolves, but, at the end of those years, they might if yet living return to their homes and native shape, and two other persons were condemned in their place to the like penalty for another seven years. J. Brompton, Chron. p. 1078." In the Latin Poem "de rebus Hibernie admirandis," of the 12th or 13th century, preserved in the Cotton MS. Titus D. xxiv (and printed in the *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, ii. 103), are some lines descriptive of the werwolf, from which we learn that at that period there were men in Ireland who could change themselves into wolves and worry sheep, leaving their real bodies behind them; and (as in the traditions of other countries), if they happened to be wounded, the injury would also appear on their bodies.[1]

Allusion is also made to a similar story in Malory's *Morte d'Arthure*, where mention is made of "Sir Marrok the good knyghte, that was bitrayed with his wyf, for she made hym seuen yere a *werwolf*." Morte d'Arthure, lib. xix. c. xi.; ed. Southey, ii. 385.

In the "Maister of Game," a treatise on Hunting, composed for Henry the Fifth, then Prince (I quote from MS. Sloane 60), is the following passage.

[1] Sunt homines quidam Scottorum gentis habentes
Miram naturam, majorum ab origine ductam,
Qua cito quando volunt ipsos se vertere possunt
Nequiter in formas lacerantum dente luporum,
Unde videntur oves occidere sæpe gementes;
Sed cum clamor eos hominum, seu cursus eorum
Fustibus aut armis terret, fugiendo recurrunt.
Cum tamen hoc faciunt, sua corpora vera relinquunt,
Atque suis mandant ne quisquam moverit illa.
Si sic eveniat, nec ad illa redire valebunt.
Si quid eos lædat, penetrent si vulnera quæque,
Vere in corporibus semper cernuntur eorum;
Sic caro cruda hærens in veri corporis ore
Cernitur a sociis, quod nos miramur et omnes. (*Rel. Ant.* ii. 105.)

Cf. *Spenser*, View of the State of Ireland, ed. Todd, p. 522 (Moxon, 1856); and *O'Brien*, Round Towers of Ireland, p. 468.

Speaking of the Wolf—(fol. 43)—

"And somme ther ben . . . that eten children and men, and eten non other fleische from that tyme that thei ben acharmed with mannes fleisch. For rather thei wolden be deed. And thai ben cleped *werewolves*, for that men schulden be *war* of hem.[1] And thei ben so cawtelous, that whenne thei sailen a man, thei haue an holding vppon hem or the man se hem. And ȝit, if men se hem, thei wol come vpon him gynnously, that he ne be take and slayn. For thei can wonder wel kepe hem from any harneyse that any man bereth," &c.[2]

INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER."

§ 1. The fragment of the *Romance of Alisaunder* at the end of this volume is now printed for the first time from MS. Greaves 60 (in the Bodleian Library), where it was discovered by Sir Frederick Madden. There are no less than *four* MSS. containing fragments *in*

[1] An odd etymology! This sentence is quoted by Halliwell, in his Dictionary of Archaisms, s. v. *A-charmed*, from MS. Bodley, 546.

[[2] It seems unnecessary to enter into further details concerning this curious superstition; for the reader may consult Mr Herbert's Letter (which is too diffuse to be reprinted here); or, if that be not easily accessible, may refer to "The Book of Were-wolves," by S. Baring-Gould, M.A., which the author defines as being "a monograph on a peculiar form of popular superstition, prevalent among all nations, and in all ages." The following references to a few of the most interesting passages may be useful. *Herodotus*, bk. iv. c. 105 (in which the Neurians are said to change themselves into wolves once a year for a few days); *Virgil*, Ecl. viii. 95—99; *Ovid*, Met. i. 237 (where Lycaon, King of Arcadia, is changed by Jupiter into a wolf); a story from *Petronius*, quoted at length both by Herbert (p. 7), and Baring-Gould (p. 11); *Olaus Magnus*, Historia de Gent. Septent. Basil. lib. xviii. c. 45; *Gervase of Tilbury*, Otia Imperialia, Dec. i. c. 15, p. 895; *Camden*, Britannia, vol. iv. p. 293, ed. 1806; *King James I.*, Dæmonologie, L. iii. p. 125; &c. See also Thorpe's Northern Mythology. In the present poem, the chief instrument of Alphonse's re-transformation is a *ring* (l. 4424). The following quotation (which I render into English from the German) may serve to illustrate this:—"By help of a magic girdle or *ring* men could change themselves and others into the forms of beasts; into *wolves*, bears, horses, cats, swans, geese, ravens, and crows. The most notorious and perhaps the oldest of these changes is that into the *Werwolf* or *loup-garou*. Even this might be classed amongst the instances of Rune-magic (*Runenzaubers*), for runic characters may have been scratched upon the girdle or ring, or magic formularies may have been repeated whilst putting it on." *Karl Simrock*, Handbuch der Deutschen Mythologie; Bonn, 1855; p. 537. The latter method was the one adopted by Queen Braundins (l. 4433).—W. W. S.]

alliterative verse upon this subject, of which two are merely different copies of the same poem. The four fragments are these: A, that contained in MS. Greaves 60; B, that contained in MS. Bodley 264, which relates to Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists; C, that in MS. Ashmole 44; and D, a second copy of the *same* poem as C, in MS. Dublin. D. 4. 12, beginning at a later place, and ending at an earlier one. Of these, A, B, and C seem to be distinct from each other, and by different authors, the last bearing traces of a *northern*, the former two of a *western* dialect. The two latter are printed at length in "The Alliterative Romance [? Romances] of Alexander," ed. Rev. J. Stevenson, printed for the Roxburghe Club, 1849. They are, however, of different dates, for the Ashmolean MS. can hardly be older than about A.D. 1450, and "there seems no reason to conclude that the poem is anterior to the date of the MS. from which it is printed," as Mr Stevenson justly observes. Fragment B is probably older. It is bound up with the splendid French MS. of Alexander, one of the chief treasures of the Bodleian library. Sir F. Madden says of it,[1] that "the writing of this portion is of the reign of Henry the Sixth,[2] nor is there any reason to believe the poem itself very much earlier than the year 1400." It treats at length of Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists, and of the letters that passed between him and Dindimus, "lord of Bragmanus lond," a subject which is introduced much more briefly in Passus xviii. of fragment C. But fragment A, which is now only found in a copy evidently written in the sixteenth century (the original MS. having been lost), is not only older than both these, but may fairly claim to be the *oldest existing specimen* of English alliterative verse, unmixed with rime, and of the usual type, since the Conquest.[3] This point is, moreover, easily ascertained in the manner following.

§ 2. In the first place, it was conjectured by Sir F. Madden, from internal evidence, that it was written by the author of *William of Palerne;* and nothing can be stronger than the internal evidence, if

[1] See notes to Sir Gawayne, ed. Madden; Bannatyne Club, 1839; p. 304.

[2] May it not be even a little earlier?

[3] *Seinte Marherete*, written before A.D. 1200 in a more negligent metre, is here excepted.

it be weighed with sufficient care. The resemblance in the language, style, and method of versification is extraordinary; there is the same "run" upon certain words and phrases, and we even find (what we should hardly have expected to find), lines almost identical in their expression in the two poems. If we find in *William of Palerne* (which poem I shall briefly denote by *Werwolf*) the phrase,

"þat þei nere semli serued · & sette at here riȝttes" (l. 4906),

we can match this from *Alisaunder*, l. 980, by the phrase,

"As soone as þei were sett · & serued too-rightes;"

and it would be difficult to discover two lines more closely related than are these:—

"It betid in a time · tidly thereafter" (*Alis.* 974), and,
"But þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after" (*Werw.* 1416).

But even such coincidences as these are less convincing than the peculiar recurrence of certain phrases, such as *to waite at a window* (see note to Alis. l. 760), *doluen and ded* (see note to Alis. l. 1026), *nied þe niȝt* (see note to Alis. l. 817), *liuand lud* (see note to Alis. l. 992), and the like; and also the curious, yet evidently unintentional, resemblance in such lines as,

"He wend to haue lauȝt þat ladi · loueli in armes"

(*Werw.* 671); and

"As that Ladie, with loue · too lachen in armes" (*Alis.* 199);

or again, in

"But lete him in his blisse · & his burde alse,
& touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres" (*Werw.* 5396); and,
"But lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wille,
Of þe rich emperour of rome · redeliche to telle" (*Werw.* 5466);

as compared with—

"Now let wee þis lued · lengen in bliss,
And sithe myng wee more · of þis mery tale" (*Alis.* 44).

Indeed, it seems useless to adduce many further proofs; for, if any reader has any lingering doubts upon the subject, he may convince himself by trying to rewrite a portion of the glossary; for, in construct-

ing this, the language of the poems is at once found to be identical, as far as the subject-matter permits it. It may be noted, too, that the dialect is the same; e. g. one curious characteristic of the "Werwolf" is the plural imperative in *-es*, which reappears in *kares*=care ye (Alis. 563), and in *kairus* = *kaires* = go ye (Alis. 623); also present participles both in *-and* and *-ing* are found in both poems.[1] Assuming then that these poems are by the same author—and, consequently, that our poet, known to us only by the name of *William*, has the credit of being the earliest writer (as far as we know at present) in the usual alliterative metre—the question still remains, which poem did he write first? On this point I have, myself, no doubt, feeling sure that the "Alisaunder" is the older poem. It is very curious to remark how often it presents fuller inflexions and older forms, and this, too, *in spite of* the fact that we have only a late sixteenth-century copy of it, whilst of the other poem we have a MS. two centuries older. Most noticeable among these are the infinitives in *-en*, such as *lachen*, *thinken*, &c., and in many other cases we find *-en* where in the other poem we more commonly find *-e*.[2] The numerous cases where in the "Alisaunder," the final *-e* is omitted, can be accounted for by the fact of the MS. being a late copy. And this is the right account to give; for the preservation of the *-en* ending shews that the final *-e's* should have been preserved also. Besides this, the spelling of the MS. presents one very curious mark of antiquity, viz., the use of the letter Ð or ð to represent *Th* or *th*; see note to l. 33 on page 236. I know of no instance of the use of this letter in a verse composition

[1] A comparison of the *metre* of the poems affords a test of much subtlety, and requiring much care and patience. The details are tedious: I can only say here that I have considered this, and believe their general structure of versification to be identical, and to have, at the same time, some peculiarities that are *not* common to all alliterative poems. They differ, e. g., from *Piers Plowman*, though that too was written by a *William*, and not long afterwards.

Hence also the reason for printing the two poems together, viz. because of their common authorship, is at once apparent; and both poems gain by it. The language of the "Werwolf" is often well illustrated by that of the "Alisaunder," whilst, on the other hand, an editor can never be so well fitted to edit the latter poem accurately as at a time when he happens to know hundreds of lines of the former by heart.

[2] The only instance of *i-* used as a prefix to a verb in the infinitive, occurs in Alis. l. 607.

(excepting here) later than about A.D. 1300, in MS. C.C.C. 444, containing the "Story of Genesis and Exodus," edited by Mr Morris for the E. E. T. S. in 1865. There is yet another point which may have some weight, viz., that our author must surely have produced *something* of importance before he was selected by the Earl of Hereford to translate a poem of such length as "Guillaume de Palerne;" and that something was really expected of him, from his known reputation, seems to be implied by his apology for himself and his versification at the end of the latter work (*Werwolf*, ll. 5521—5526). If this be thought likely, if his skill in translation was a known fact, it may have been that his reputation was due to his "Alisaunder," as to the *length* of which, in its original condition, we know nothing more than this, viz., that the 1249 lines still preserved represent but a *very small* fraction of the whole story.

§ 3. It is necessary to describe the MS. Greaves 60 somewhat further. It is a small and shabby-looking MS., about 8 in. by 6, apparently bought to be used as a note-book or exercise-book, as it contains notes upon Virgil's Æneid, Terence's Andria, &c.; and the English romance was afterwards copied out wherever there was a blank space for it, which accounts for there being only three lines of the text on fol. 7. The English occupies fol. 1 *b*—6 *a*, part of fol. 7, fol. 7 *b*—8 *b*, fol. 11 *a*, part of fol. 11 *b*, fol. 12 *a*—16 *a*, fol. 16 *b*—20 *a* (which portion is scored at the side, as being out of place), and fol. 21 *a*—24 *b*. The last two portions require to be transposed, and then 20 *a* comes last, fol. 20 *b* being blank. Even when this is done, a portion is lost between fol. 24 *b* and fol. 16 *b* (which I have supplied from a French prose text), and another portion (probably a large one) is lost at the end. On the fly-leaf is, besides other things, "Ye schoole of Rhetorik, or Ye skyll too speake well: deuised and made by H. G." This and a title about a "compendium of Virgil's Æneid," are scratched through, and the following written below in the same hand—"Radulph*us* de Sto Albano eiusdem fani Albani monach*us* et Abbas ex po*m*peio, Trogo, Origine, Josepho, Isidoro, Beda, et alijs hanc historiam de Reb*us* gestis Alexandri Maccedonis edidit; obijt anno do*m*ini MCLI, in eode*m* cœnobio sepult*us*, sub stephano Anglor*um* rege. Balæ*us*." Assuming, for convenience, that H. G. are the scribe's own

initials, we see that H. G. has merely copied the above title from Bale, and that there is not any necessary connection between it and the poem which he partly copied out. Nevertheless, the clue was worth following up, and I found that a MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No. 219, has for its title—"Incipit hystoria regis Macedonum, Philippi filiiq*ue* eius Alexandri Magni excepta (*sic*) de lib*ris* pompeii, trogi, orosii, iosephi, ieronimi, solini, augustini, bede, & ysodori." It is a Latin MS., beautifully written in a hand of the fourteenth century, containing the history of Alexander in four books, and followed by the letters of Alexander to Dindimus, and of Dindimus to Alexander. That our poet made use of this compilation is very probable; he says (*Alis.* l. 458) that he translates from Latin books, and the principal of these seem to have been, (1) the compilation of Radulphus; (2) the history of Orosius; and (3) the "Historia Alexandri *de prœliis*." The two former supplied him with the more historical part of his story, such as the particulars about Eurydice, Philip, Byzantium, &c.; the latter supplied him with the legendary portion. He seems to have considered them all equally veritable, and to have turned from one to the other at pleasure, as I have pointed out in the notes. Of the various Latin forms of the legend, the "Historia *de prœliis*," as it may conveniently be called for distinctness,[1] is evidently the one he has most closely followed. It is also evident that the writer of the poem preserved in MS. Ashmole 44 followed the very same original, and it is interesting to compare the two translations, and to observe how far the exigencies of the metre have caused them to vary. Returning to "H. G." after this digression, a few remarks must be made upon his method of copying the poem. He seems to have done it upon the whole very carefully, though he has sometimes misread his original (writing *kipen* for *kiþen*, *ferkerd* for *ferked*, and the like), and, in particular, has left out a large number of the final *-e's*, besides occasionally omitting whole lines. In several cases, he has modernized or modified the spelling, and in many instances has given us *both* the forms, as, e. g. in l. 767, where we have *liche* with *ke* over the *che*, thus rightly

[1] It may be known by the initial words—"Sapie*n*tissimi egiptii scientes me*n*suram terre," &c. I have used the printed copy of 1490.

explaining *liche* as meaning *like*. All the variations of importance are noticed in the foot-notes. The handwriting is peculiar, but not uncertain, though he at times used a straight horizontal stroke like a hyphen to denote an *m* or an *n*, joining it on to the letter following. Over many of the long vowels he has made a circumflex, writing "sôule" in l. 41, "fône" in l. 83, "gôse" in l. 409. As this seemed to be a mere freak of his own (for it is sometimes wrongly introduced), I have not noticed it. The only other point of interest is that he marked all the harder words by underscoring them, evidently with the view of finding out their meaning. The list of these has some importance, for we may conclude that such words were so far *obsolete* about the time of James I. as to be unintelligible to a man interested in our older literature. It is on this account that I subjoin the list, in alphabetical order, referring the reader to the Glossarial Index for further information. It is as follows, omitting a few which seem to have been marked for some other reason. *Alosed*, *Bed*, *Bern* (l. 219), *Beurde*, *Chees*, *Cofly*, *Deraine*, *Derie*, *Fele*, *Fode*, *Fonde*, *Frotus*, *Gamus* (read *Gainus*,) *Gist*, *Gome*, *Graithes*, *Grathly*, *Gremþe*, *Hende*, *Hendely*, *Hote*, *Kiþe*, *Kith*, *Lache*, *Laught* or *Lauht*, *Lelich*, *Mensk-full*, *Of-souhte*, *Pris*, *Purlich*, *Queme*, *Rigge*, *Rink* or *Renk*, *Rode*, *Segges*, *Spedly*, *Stightlich*, *Swiþe*, *Trie*, *To-rihtes*, *þristliche*, *þroliche*, *Ungome*, *Walte*, *Wowes*, *Wus*, *Yeeme*. Nearly all of these were certainly as unintelligible to most men two hundred and fifty years ago as they are now, though some may exist in provincial dialects. Several of them may have been unintelligible even a century earlier.

§ 4. THE STORY OF "ALISAUNDER."

The contents of the fragment may be briefly described thus. It commences with a mention of Amyntas, and his sons Alexander and Philip. Philip ascends the throne of Macedonia, conquers Larissa and Thessalonica, weds Olympias, sister of the King of Molossis, takes Methone, and helps the Thebans against the Phocians; all of which is from Radulphus, Orosius, and like sources. This portion includes ll. 1—451. Then begins the legend, from the "Historia de preliis," occupying the portion in ll. 452—899; and telling how Nectanabus, King of Egypt, fled in disguise from his own country

for fear of the Persians, and, coming to Macedonia, beguiled Queen Olympias by his magic arts, and, personating the god Ammon,[1] became the father of Alexander. He also appeared before Philip's army in the guise of a dragon, and, fighting for him, greatly discomfited the Lacedæmonians and Phocians. Next, after an historical account (ll. 900—954) of the occupation of the Pass of Thermopylæ by the Athenians, and of Philip's treachery and cruelty towards the Thebans, we return to the legend (ll. 955—1201) and learn how Philip greeted Olympias, how Nectanabus appeared once more as a dragon at a feast given by Philip, and how Philip was one day surprised to find that a bird had laid an egg in his lap, out of which issued a serpent which, after awhile, tried to re-enter the egg-shell, but died before it could do so; an omen that Alexander would die before he could return to his own land. Next Alexander is born, and carefully educated. One evening he goes out with Nectanabus to view the stars, and, hearing the magician say that he feared he would die by the hand of his own son, drowns him in a ditch to prove him a liar; but the drowning man cries out that he has told *the truth*. Next follows the story of the taming of Bucephalus, which bears some points of resemblance to the story of the taming of King Ebrouns' horse by William of Palerne (see p. 107). In the last paragraph the poet returns to historical details, and begins to narrate the siege of Byzantium by Philip, at which point the poem abruptly ends.

§ 5. This is not the place to discuss the long and difficult question of the "Alexander Romances." Roughly speaking, the form of the story here adopted—I speak of the legendary portion—is derived from the Greek text known as the *Pseudo-callisthenes*, of which the best MS. is the one now numbered 1711 in the Imperial Library at Paris, beginning—"Οἱ σοφώτατοι Αἰγύπτιοι θεῶν ἀπόγονοι, κ.τ.λ."; but I have referred in the notes to another MS. (Supplem. No. 113) in the same collection, as a portion of this latter one has been printed.[1]

[1] "A dragon's fiery form belied the god;
Sublime on radiant spires he rode,
When he to fair Olympia prest," &c.
Dryden; *Alexander's Feast*.

[1] See notice on p. 236.

The three principal Latin versions hence derived are (1) that by Julius Valerius; (2) the "Itinerarium Alexandri" (relating to Alexander's wars); and (3) that by the Archpresbyter Leo, which is also known as the "Historia de preliis." With the *second* of these we have *here* nothing to do. The *first* begins—"Ægypti sapientes, sati genere divino," &c.; the *third* begins—"Sapientissimi Egyptii, scientes mensuram terræ," &c. The portion supplied to complete the story at p. 209 is from a French version, as contained in MS. 7517 in the Imperial library. I have already said that our text follows the *third* rather than the *first* of these Latin versions.

For further information, see Zacher, *Pseudo-callisthenes*, Halle, 1867; the editions of Julius Valerius by Angelo Mai (Milan, 1817), and Karl Müller (Paris, 1846); the Old High German version edited by H. Weismann (Frankfort-on-the-Main, 1850), the second volume of which, in particular, contains much information; the introduction to Kyng Alisaunder in Weber's Metrical Romances, &c. The edition called "Li Romans d'Alixandre, par Lambert li Tors et Alixandre de Bernay," ed. H. Michelant, and published by the Literary Society of Stuttgart in 1846, has not much to do with our present poem, as it declares Nectanabus *not* to have been Alexander's father. I have already enumerated the alliterative romances extant in English. Besides these there are, in rimed metre, the "Kyng Alysaunder" printed by Weber, and other poems referring, not to the infancy of Alexander, but to his acts and death, such as, e. g., "The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great," printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1831, being a reprint from The Romaunce of Alexander, containing the Forray of Gadderis, first printed at the same place by A. Arbuthnot in 1580. There is also a fragment about the death of Alexander in "Ancient Metrical Romances from the Auchinleck MS."; Abbotsford Club, 1836; and there may be others, for I have not thought it necessary to make further search.

§ 6. ON THE DIALECT OF THE POEMS.

The spelling of the "Alisaunder" being uncertain owing to the lateness of the MS., it is not necessary to say more about its dialect

than has been said already. The following remarks refer, therefore, to the "Werwolf."[1]

The plurals of nouns generally end in *-es*, but there are several plurals in *-us*, such as *dedus;* in *-is*, as *bestis* (l. 181), and *talis;* in *-ys*, as *buschys* (21); in *-en*, as *stepchilderen*, *eiȝyen* (eyne, eyes); and even in *-esse*, as *bodiesse*, *lordesse* (4539), *heiȝresse* (4778), with which should be compared the curious spelling *antresse* for *antres* or *aunteres* = she ventures. The plural of *hors* is the same as the singular; the plural of *fo* is both *fon* (or *fone*) and *fos*. Also *ken*, *kin*, and *kyn* occur for *kine*. The genitive singular ends commonly in *-es*, but sometimes in *-is*, as in *godis* (266), *goddis* (254); cf. *goddes* (340). We also find the genitive forms *fader*, *moder*, *douȝter*, *William*, *Marie*, *sonne*.

As regards adjectives, we may note the comparatives *herre*, *nerre* (higher, nearer), and the superlatives *frelokest* and *manlokest*, the former of which is used adverbially. The endings *-ly* and *-liche* are used both for adverbs and adjectives, and without any distinction. *Eche a* is used for *each;* *selue* sometimes has the sense of *very* (1149); whilst *wiche a* answers to the German *was für*, what sort of a, as in l. 3354. *þe* and *þa* are used sometimes for *þat;* *þis* as well as *þise* is used to mean *these;* *þo* to mean *those;* *þilke* is used in the plural, and *swiche* is used to mean *such*. For *I*, the forms are *i*, *y*, *ich;* for *thou*, we have *þou*, *þow*, *þouȝ*; pl. *ȝe* in the nominative, *ȝow*, *ȝouȝ*, *ow* (l. 106) in the dat. and accusative. The third personal pronoun is *he*, gen. *his*, *is*, or *hise;* dat. and acc. *hym*, *him:* feminine, *sche*, *che*, *ȝhe* (and *hue* in the "Alisaunder"); gen. dat. and acc. *her*, *hir*, *here*, *hire;* neuter, *hit*, *it;* acc. *hit*, *it*. Plural nom. *þei*, *þai*, *þey;* gen. *here*, *her;* dat. *hem* (and once *þaim*); acc. *hem*. *Min* is a possessive pronoun, as *min* hert, *min* avowe. The pronoun of the second person is often joined on to the verb, as in *artow*, *knowestow*, *bestow*, *seidestow*, *schaltow* or *schalstow*, *findestow*, *witow* or *wittow;*

[1] I apologize for the slip-shod name here given to the poem, and which is here, and elsewhere throughout the volume, used for brevity's sake, and because it cannot be mistaken. It is an abbreviation of "William and the Werwolf," the title used by Sir F. Madden in the former edition. Strictly, however, the true title is—*William of Palerne*.

and often also to the word *þat*, as *þatou* or *þatow*. *Ho* is used for *who*, *ho-so* for *who-so*, *whos* for *whose*, *wham* for *whom*.

But the most noticeable and distinctive endings are found amongst the verbs, and I pass on to them as being of more interest. The infinitive ends in *-en* or *-e*, but occasionally also in *-y* or *-ye*, as *deseuy*, *wonye*; cf. *derie* in *Alis.* 1240. In the present tense, 2nd person, we find both *-est* and *-es*; the former occurring frequently, as in *kuþest* (603), *komest* (330); examples of the latter are *trestes* (970), *knowes* (1174). They seem to be used indifferently, for *tellest* and *trestes* occur in the same line, and *hast* in l. 604 is followed by *þow has* two lines lower. In the same way, we find *grettes* and *menskfulles* written for *grettest* and *menskfullest*, showing that the pronunciation of the *t* was very slight. Besides which, the vowel may have been pronounced thickly or indistinctly, thus accounting for such a form as *clepus* (249). In the 3rd person singular, we find *-es*, as in *lenges* (961); *-is*, as in *hentis* (907); and *-us*, as in *sittus* (446); as well as *-eþ*, as in *knoweþ* (559). In the 3rd person pl. we have *-un*, as in *clepun*; *-en*, as in *þurlen*; *-e*, as in *singe*; *-us*, as in *tellus* (198); *-es*, as in *calles* (239), *longes* (360). The following are examples of the past tense singular; strong verbs, *gaf*, *ȝald*, *founde*, *seiȝe*, *lad*, *dede*, *kom*, *rod*, *lep*, *aros*, &c.; weak verbs, *grette*, *lerde*, *pleide*, *clipte*, *praide*, *clepud*, &c. The plural generally ends in *-en* or *-e*, but the *-e* is occasionally dropped. Examples are *blesseden*, *gretten*, *sewede*, *come*, *told* (1366). But we should especially observe the endings of the imperative mood plural, which besides the ending *-eth*, as in *preieth* (164), *sendeþ* (2068), *witeþ* (2069), *troweþ* (2112), frequently takes the ending *-es*, as in *listenes*, *gretes*, *mornes*, *standes*, *awakes*, *fodes*, *leses*, *leues*, &c. It is worth notice, further, that the very same word takes both forms; for we find both *preieth* and *preiȝes* (which, however, is written *preiȝed*, 5529), *listenes* and *lustene*þ, and *gretes* in l. 355 is followed by *greteþ* in l. 359.[1] We should also especially note the forms of the present participle, which ends in *-and*, as *deland*, *wepand*, *glimerand*, *liand*, *ligand*, *lourande*, *liuand*; in *-end*, as *touchend*, *heriend*, *lastend*, *slepend*, *hotend*, *braundissende*; occasionally in *-inde*, as *lorkinde*, *sikinde*,

[1] So also *lengþes*, 4348; *lengþeþ*, 4353.

gapind; and sometimes in *-ing.* Here again, the same word takes all the forms; for we find *sikande, sikand, sikende, sikinde,* and *siking.* The more usual form seems to be in *-and,* but the pronunciation of the *a* seems to have been obscure, and we may consider the usual ending to be *'nd;* for if we throw the accent on the first syllable, it is not easy to enunciate the unaccented vowel very clearly. Examples of past participles are *slawe, sleie, slayn, schapen, bi-hold, portreide, gladed, maked, take, arise* (1297), *lore* (1360), *bore, seie, seiȝen, y-charged, y-clepud.* The ending *-e* in the infinitive is sometimes dropped. For the forms of the auxiliary and anomalous verbs, see the glossary; s.v. *Ben, Can, Dar, Mot, Mow, Out, Schal, Thort, Wite, Wol.* Here also numerous forms occur; e. g. the present plural of *to be* is *ben, bene, buþ, arn,* and *aren.*

The word *ne* often coalesces with the verb following; hence *nis* (ne is), *nas* (ne was), *nere* (ne were), *nath* (ne hath), *nadde* (ne hadde), *nel* (ne wil), *nold* (ne wold), *not* (ne wot), *nist* (ne wist).

A few peculiarities of spelling may be noted. The *sh* sound is denoted both by *sch* and *ch;* hence *chamly, chold, chortly,* are put for *schamly, schold, schortly.* Also *scheche* is written for *seche. C* sometimes takes the place of *s,* as in *plece, sece, wice. Wh* is written for *w,* as in *whar* (were), and *whieȝs. Th* is sometimes used where we should expect *t,* as in the *Romans of Partenay;* thus *wiȝtthli* is put for *wiȝtli, miȝth* is used to mean (*I*) *might. V* is sometimes found for a final *u,* as in *nov, hov, inov. H* occurs at the beginning of words where it should not, as in *hordere, hende* (end), *held* (eld, old age). *N* is prefixed to *eiȝ, ones, oþer,* &c., thus forming *neiȝ, nones, noþer,* in places where it really belongs to the word preceding. *Þe* is joined sometimes to the word following, as in *þemperour, þerþe, þende.* For the careful and exact manner (exact, probably, because the scribe did it without thinking and as a matter of course), in which *nay* is distinguished from *no,* and *ȝe* from *ȝis,* see the Glossarial Index. For the distinction between *þou* and *ȝe,* see p. xli.

In what part of England, then, was the poem written? The forms seem to be mainly West Midland, with admixture both of Northern and of Southern ones. The frequency of the imperatives in *-es,* and other indications, lead Mr Morris to call it a specimen of

Shropshire dialect,[1] whilst Sir F. Madden subscribes to the opinion of Bryant, that it may belong to Gloucestershire; and, indeed, Gloucester is the only place which is mentioned in it. There is also, perhaps, some significance in the fact that the MS. contains, besides "William of Palerne," some poems that have been attributed to Robert of *Gloucester*. In either case, we are sure of the locality within the compass of a county or two, and may, I think, call it West Midland without error, though the exact border between the West Midland and Southern cannot be expected to be very clearly defined. It may be remarked that both Gloucester and Wheatenhurst (where Sir Humphrey de Bohun's mansion was situated) lie close to the important river Severn, and it is possible that the dialect of that part of Gloucestershire may have been affected by that circumstance, just as we often trace the influence of the Danish element near our sea-coasts. The real difficulty consists in this, that it is hard to account for the use of the Northumbrian plural-ending *-es* at a place situated so far to the South. A comparison of the vocabulary with the glossary of Shropshire words in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua* shewed less resemblance than I had expected to find; yet it may be useful to mention that his list contains (and sometimes illustrates) the following words in particular, viz.:—*Bell* (vb.), *Chall* (= *Chaul*), *Clip*, *Clout*, *Cratch*, *Delue*, *Dever*, *Eam* (*Eme*), *Gain* (cf. *Gaynest*), *Haws*, *Heps* (*Hepus*), *Hye* (to hasten), *Lap* (vb.), *Learn* (to teach), *Litherly* (*Luperly*), *Mase*, *Pill* (vb.), *Rin*, *Shaws*, *Sike*, *Stive*, *Thirl*, *Twinne*, *War*.

§ 7. ON THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN "THOU" AND "YE."

The distinction between the use of *thou* and *ye* (with their accompanying *singular* and *plural* verbs) is so well kept up throughout

[1] Compare Audelay's poems (in the Shropshire dialect), ed. J. O. Halliwell, for the Percy Society. It may be said that, if the scribe of "William of Palerne" lived in Gloucestershire, he may yet have been a Shropshire man; but this argument loses in force if it has to be often appealed to in cases of difficulty. We must first try to reconcile the evidence we possess, before rejecting any portion of it. In the present instance, the MS. is a very good one. It may be confidently expected, however, that something tolerably definite may be known about English dialects at no very distant period, and the present question may be then more easily decided.

these poems that it would not be well to lose so good an opportunity of pointing it out. It was one of those niceties of speech which it was the poet's especial business to observe. The clearest way of pointing out the distinction is to tabulate the best examples of it.

P. 13. The child, addressing the emperor, uses *ye, you,* &c. P. 14. Emperor to child—*thou;* child to his (supposed) father—*ye;* emperor to cowherd—*thou.* P. 16. Cowherd to child—*thou.* P. 29. Alexandrine to Melior—*ye;* Melior to Alexandrine—*thou.* P. 30. Melior to William—*thou.* Pp. 37—39. Alexandrine to William, and William to Alexandrine—*thou.* P. 43. William to emperor, and lords to emperor—*ye.* P. 50. Messengers to Melior—*ye.* P. 57. Melior to William, *after betrothal*—*ye.* P. 73. One emperor to another—*thou.* P. 80. Melior to William, *in excitement*—*thou.* P. 81. Melior to William, *in submission*—*ye.* P. 92. Melior to William, *after escaping peril*—*thou.* P. 96. Priest to queen—*ye.* P. 104. Queen to her handmaid—*thou;* handmaid to queen—*ye.* P. 105. Queen to William, begins with *ye* in the *conventional* phrase "ȝe me saye," but otherwise uses *thou,* until she has virtually abdicated in William's favour, after which she uses *ye,* p. 113, and especially note ll. 3954, 3955. P. 126. William, now of high rank, to his prisoner, a king—*thou.* P. 129. The captive king to the queen —*ye.* P. 134. King to William (asking)—*ye;* William to the king (granting)—*thou.* P. 136. Messengers to the Queen of Spain—*ye;* but in relating *William's* message, containing rebukes and violent threats, they change to *thou.* P. 142. Queen to her step-son—*thou;* but in putting a polite question—*ȝe* (l. 4460). P. 144. Alphouns to William, uses the *conventional* phrase "crist mot *ȝou* saue"—but otherwise uses *thou.* He is answered by William with *ye,* expressing the *utmost deference,* and asking him who he is. This is sufficient to show that *thou* is the language of a lord to a servant, of an equal to an equal, and expresses also companionship, love, permission, defiance, scorn, threatening; whilst *ye* is the language of a servant to a lord, and of compliment, and further expresses honour, submission, entreaty. *Thou* is used with singular verbs, and the possessive pronoun *thine;* but *ye* requires plural verbs, and the possessive *your.* In the "Alisaunder" we find the same usages. The Prince of Persia

calls the King of Egypt—*ye;* the king scornfully replies with *thou.* The same Nectanabus, who "speaks lordly," and is too proud to call Queen Olympias *Madam,* and will only call her *Lady,* audaciously addresses her as *thou,* but there are in one or two places exceptions which shew a corruptness in the text. She replies with *thou,* as a lady should who would preserve her dignity. As for Alexander, he coolly uses *thou* to everybody, and especially to his father, l. 1198, and his mother, l. 1103. Besides the insight we thus get into our forefathers' ways of speech, this investigation may serve to remind us editors that we are not to mistake *you* for *þou,* as in some MSS. is easily done, and that the frequent interchange of the forms is the result, not of confusion, but of design and orderly use.

In the present edition, every variation of spelling has had its own references assigned to it in the Glossary, at the cost of no small amount of labour; I hope this may prove of use to the student of our old English orthoëpy.

CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

The only misprints of importance (of which I am aware) are these three:

William of Palerne, l. 2160. *For* ȝifter-neue *read* ȝister-neue.
" " " l. 4054. *For* Karþe *read* Karpe.
" " " l. 4827. *For* þempour *read* þemp*er*our.

A few misprints occur of a more trivial nature, of which the principal are these:

William of Palerne, l. 46. *For* a baye *read* a-baye. L. 143. Insert a hyphen in "man-kynne." 219. The metrical dot should *precede* "miȝt," instead of *following* it. 225. Insert a comma after "fair." 787. Fol. 16 begins with this line, not with the next. 1004. Insert a hyphen in "middel-erþe." 1418. The MS. has "soſoū," not "soſou." 1576. No comma at the end of this line.

1597. The metrical dot should *precede* "reken." 1624. There should be a full stop at the end of the line. 1860. Insert a comma at the end of the line. 2100. *For* on-liue *read* on liue. 2204. This is correctly printed, according to the MS. But I propose to read, "*but* the witti werwolf, &c." 2430, 2560. Insert a hyphen in "bere-felles." 2580. Insert a comma after "crist." 3116. The metrical dot should *precede* "riȝt." 3995. Insert a hyphen in "þer-tille." 4068. Insert quotation-marks at the end of the line. 4263 (*note*). *For* 3622 *read* 3623. Page 220, l. 6. *For* Altera *read* altera.

Lines 5346, 5347, 5348 of *William of Palerne* rime together. This was, no doubt, unintentional.

In l. 396 of *Alisaunder*, the reading *hem* is necessary to the alliteration.

In the Glossary, the word *Hastely* is said to occur in l. 233. This should be corrected to 323.

By an unfortunate mistake on my part, the following notes by Sir F. Madden reached me too late for insertion in the Glossary.

"*Nones*. See Glossarial Remarks on *Laȝamon*, v. 17304, vol. iii. p. 492; and the Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, in v. *Nonez*.

"*Peter*. See the Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, in v. *Peter*, where other instances are given."

William of Palerne;

or

William and the Werwolf.

[Three leaves being lost at the beginning of the MS., their place is here supplied from the French Text.]

[Nus ne se doit celer ne taire,	[No one should keep it to himself or be silent,
sil set chose qui doie plaire,	If he knows something that will please,
kil ne le desponde en apert;	But should declare it openly:
car bien repont son sens et pert,	For he hides and loses his knowledge
qui nel despont apertement	Who does not declare it openly,
en la presence de la gent.	In the presence of people
por ce ne voel mon sens repondre,	Wherefore I will not hide my knowledge
que tot li mauvais puissent fondre;	That all the wicked may come to naught:
et cil qui me vaurront entendre,	And that those who would fain hear me
i puissent sens et bien aprendre. 10	May be able to learn knowledge and what is good.
car sens celes qui nest ois,	For knowledge hidden and unheard
est autresi, ce mest avis,	Is just like, in my opinion,
com maint tresor enferme sont,	Many treasures that are shut up,
qui nului bien ne preu ne font;	Which do good or advantage to no one;
tant comme il soient si enclos,	Just as they are when thus enclosed,
autresi est de sens repos;	So is it with concealed knowledge;
por ce ne voel le mien celer.	Wherefore I will not conceal mine.
ancois me plaist a raconter	Thus it pleases me to recount
selonc mon sens et mon memoire,	According to my knowledge and memory
le fait dune anciene estoire, 20	The event of an ancient story,

qui en Puille jadis avint
a .i. roi qui la terre tint.
Li rois embrons fu apeles ;
mult par fu grans sa poestes ;
bien tint em pais sa region,
et mult par fu de grant renon.
moilher avoit gente roine,
gentix dame de franche orine ;
et fille a riche empereor,
qui de Gresse tenoit lounor.
Felise avoit a non la dame ;
mult fu amee en son roiame.
navoient cun tot seul enfant,
petit tousel, ne gaires grant.
de .iiii. ans ert li damoisiax,
qui a merveilles estoit biax.
Guilliaumes ot lenfes a non,
mais la roine tout par non
lot a .ii. dames commande,
quele amena de son regne.
Gloriande est lune noumee,
Acelone ert lautre apelee.
celes le commande a garder,
a enseignier et doctriner,
moustrer et enseignier la loi,
comme on doit faire fil a roi.
en eles sest asseuree,
mais traie est et enganee,
et deceue laidement ;
mult porres bien oir comment.
Li rois Embrons .i. frere avoit,
a cui li regnes escaoit ;
et cil douna tant et promist,
et tant porchaca et tant fist
as gardes qui lenfant gardoient,
que dit li ont quil locirroient,

That happened once in Apulia
To a king who ruled the land.
The king was named Embrons;
Very exceeding great was his power;
He governed well his country in peace,
And was of exceeding great renown.
He had to wife a beauteous queen,
A gracious dame of noble origin;
And who was daughter to a rich emperor,
Who ruled the dominion of Greece.
Felice was the lady's name;
She was much loved in her kingdom.
They had but one only child,
A little lad, not very tall.
The prince was four years old,
And was marvellously fair.
William was the child's name,
But the queen very specially (?)
Has entrusted him to two ladies
Whom she brought from her own country.
One is named Gloriande,
The other was called Acelone.
To these she entrusts him, to keep him,
To teach and instruct him,
To shew and instruct him the law,
As one ought to teach a king's son.
In them she confided,
But was betrayed and defrauded
And deceived shamefully;
You shall very soon hear how.
King Embrons had one brother,
To whom the kingdom would fall;
And he bribed and promised so much,
And so contrived and managed
With the guardians who kept the child,
That they have told him they would kill it,

et le roi meisme ensement. — And the king himself at the same time.
ja ont porquis lenherbement — They have already provided the poison
dont il andoi mort recevront, — From which they will both receive death.
se Diex nel fait, li rois del mont. 60 — If God, king of the world, permits it.
En Palerne orent sejorne, — In Palermo they have dwelt,
un mois entier en la cite, — A whole month in the city,
entre le roi et la roine. — With the king and the queen.
desous le maistre tor marbrine, — Beneath the chief marble tower
ot .i. vergier merveilles gent, — Was an orchard wondrously fair,
tot clos de mur et de cyment ; — All enclosed with walls and mortar ;
si ot mainte sauvage beste. — There was many a wild beast there.
.i. jor par une haute feste — One day, on a high festival,
i vint esbanoier li rois, — The king came there to divert himself,
si chevalier et si borjois ; 70 — His chevaliers and his burgesses ;
et maint baron i ot venu, — And many a baron had come there,
la roine meisme i fu. — The queen herself was there.
celes qui lenfant ont en garde, — Those who have the child in charge,
(cui male flambe et maus fus arde !) — (Whom evil flame and evil fire burn !)
lont mene avoec lautre gent ; — Have brought him along with the rest ;
mais por ce ne le font noient — But they would have done nothing of the kind,
que sel seussent la dolour, — Had they but known the sorrow
qui de lenfant avint le jor. — That happened that day because of the child.
Par le vergier li rois ombroie, — In the orchard the king shades himself,
et la roine, a mult grant joie. 80 — And the queen, with very great joy.
mais ne sevent com lor grans dex — But they know not how their great grief
lor est presens devant lor ex. — Is present to them, before their eyes.
lenfes florietes va cuellant, — The child goes gathering flowers,
de lune a lautre va jouant. — And playing from one to the other.
atant esgardent la ramee, — Just then they look at the bushes,
saut un grans leus, goule baee, — A huge wolf, with mouth open, leaps in,
a fendant vient comme tempeste ; — Comes in at the opening like a tempest ;
tuit se destornent por la beste ; — All turn aside to avoid the beast ;
devant le roi, demainement, — Before the king, noiselessly,
son fil travers sa goule prent, 90 — He takes his son across his mouth,
atant sen va ; mais la criee — And then makes off ; but the cry
fu apres lui mult tost levee. — Was very soon raised after him.

lieve li dels, lieve li cris	The plaint arises, the cry arises
del fil le roi qui est trais.	Of the son of the king that is borne away.
la roine souvent sescrie,	The queen oftentimes exclaims,
" aidies, aidies, Sainte Marie !	" Aid me, aid me, Holy Mary !
maisnie au roi, que faites vos ?	Ye household of the king, what do ye ?
ja me morrai sil nest rescous ! "	Now I shall die if he be not rescued ! "
Li rois demande ses chevax,	The king calls for his horses,
et fait monter tous ses vassax. 100	And makes all his vassals mount.
toute la vile si esmuet,	All the town is in commotion,
cascuns i keurt plus tost quil puet.	Every one runs as quickly as he can.
li rois le siut a esperon,	The king follows the wolf on the spur,
le gart acaingnent environ ;	Watches him, encircling (him) around.
mais li leus ert fors saillis,	But the wolf had leapt far away,
a la campaigne sestoit mis ;	And betaken himself to the plain ;
lenfes souvent sescrie et brait,	The child oft cries out and wails ;
li rois lentent qui apres vait.	The king, who goes after him, hears him.
garde sel voit monter .i. mont,	He looks and sees him mount a hill,
de tost aler sa gent semont, 110	Summons his men to come quickly.
donques se par efforcent tuit,	Then all hasten on very fast,
li leus a tout lenfant sen fuit.	The wolf flees away with the child.
fuit sen li leus, et cil apres,	The wolf flees away, and they after him,
qui del ataindre sont engres.	Who are very desirous of reaching him.
desi au far le vont chacant,	Unto the Far [Straits of Messina] they chase him,
il saut en leve a tout lenfant.	He leaps into the water with the child.
le far trespasse, perdus lont	He crosses the Far, they have lost him,
li rois et cil qui o lui sont ;	The king and they who are with him ;
ensi sen va en tel maniere	Thus in such a manner, flees away
a tout lenfant la beste fiere. 120	The wild beast with the child.
li rois arriere sen retorne,	The king returns back,
mult a le cuer et triste et morne,	Very sorrowful and sad at heart,
de son enfant qua si perdu ;	For his child whom he has lost ;
a la cite sont revenu.	To the city have all returned.
La roine maine tel duel,	The queen makes such a mourning,
morte voudroit estre, son vuel ;	She would fain be dead, had she her will ;
pleure sovent, et crie, et brait,	She weeps often, and cries and wails,
a la beste son fil retrait.	And demands back her child from the beast.

"fix, dous amis," fait la roine,		"Son, sweet love," saith the queen,
"tendre bouche, coulor rosine,	130	"Tender mouth, rosy colour,
chose devine, espiritex,		Thing divine and spiritual,
qui cuidast que beste ne leus		Who could believe that beast or wolf
vos devorast! dix, quel eur!		Could devour you? O God! what fortune!
lasse! por coi vif tant ne dur?		Alas! wherefore live I or last so long?
fix, ou sont ore ti bel oel,		Son, where are now thy beautiful eyes,
li bel, li simple, sans orguel?		So beautiful, so innocent, without pride?
tes frons li gens, et ti bel crin,		Thy fair forehead, and thy lovely hair,
qui tuit sambloient fait dor fin?		Which seemed all made of fine gold?
ta tendre face, et tes clers vis?		Thy tender face, and thy clear looks?
ha cuers! por coi ne me partis?	140	Oh heart! wherefore hast thou not left me?
quest devenue ta biautes,		What is become of thy beauty,
et tes gens cors, et ta clartes?		Thy sweet body, and thy fairness?
tes nes, ta bouche, et tes mentons,		Thy nose, thy mouth, and thy chin,
et ta figure, et ta facons,		And thy form and fashion,
et ti bel brac, et tes mains blanches,		And thy fair arm, and thy white hands,
tes rains beles, et tes hanches,		Thy fair reins and thy thighs,
tes beles jambes, et ti pie;		Thy fair legs, and thy feet;
lasse! quel duel et quel pechie!		Alas! what sorrow and what fault!
ja devoies tu estre fais		Thou oughtest only to have been made
por devises et por sourhais!	150	For pleasures and for desires!
or es a leu-garoul peuture,		Now art thou food for the werwolf,
li miens enfes, quele aventure!		My child! what a mischance!
mais je ne cuit, por nule chose,		But I cannot believe, on any account,
beste sauvage soit si ose,		A wild beast would be so daring
qui ton gent cors ost adamer,		As to hurt thy tender body,
plaier, sanc faire, ne navrer;		To wound it, make it bleed, or tear it:
ne cuit que ja dame dieu place,		I cannot believe that it would please our Lord God,
ne que tel cruaute en face!"		Or that He would do such cruelty to it."
Ensi la dame se demente,		Thus the lady is in despair,
ensi por son fil se gaimente,	160	Thus she laments for her son,
ensi le ploure, ensi le plaint.		Thus she weeps, thus she complains for him.
mais tant le castoie et constraint		But the king so corrects and restrains her,
li rois, que tout laissier li fait		That he makes her altogether leave off
la dolor quele maine et fait;		The grief which she was continuing and making;

ensi la dame se rapaie.
mais or est drois que vos retraie
del leu qui o lenfant senfuit ;
tant la porte et jor et nuit,
et tante terre trespassee,
que pres de Roume en la contree 170
en une grant forest sarreste,
ou ot mainte sauvage beste.
la se repose .viii. jors entiers ;
lenfant de quanques fu mestiers
li a porquis la beste franche,
conques de rien not mesestance.
en terre a une fosse faite,
et dedens herbe mise et traite,
et la feuchiere et la lihue,
que par dedens a espandue. 180
la nuit le couche joste soi ;
li leus-garous le fil le roi
lacole de ses .iiii. pies.
si est de lui aprivoisies,
li fix le roi, que tot li plaist
ce que la beste de lui fait ;]

Thus the lady becomes tranquillized.
But now it is right for me to tell you
About the wolf that fled with the child;
So far he carries it both day and night,
And traverses so much ground,
That in the country near Rome,
In a great forest, he stops;
Where was many a wild beast.
There he rests for eight whole days;
Whatever the child had need of,
The noble beast provided for it,
So that it had discomfort in nothing.
In the ground he has made a trench,
And in it placed and put grass,
And also fern and herbs (?)
Which within it he has spread.
At night, he lies down near him;
The werwolf embraces the king's son
With his four feet.
And so familiar with him
Is the king's son, that all pleases him,
Whatever the beast does for him;]

[Fol. 4.] The child is pleased and obedient.

þat it apertly was apayed · for profite þat he feld,
& [wrouȝt][1] buxumly by þe bestes wille · in wise as it couþe.

An old cowherd dwelt in the forest,

Hit bi-fel in þat forest · þere fa i by-side,
þer woned a wel old cherl · þat was a couherde, 4
þat fele winterres in þat forest · fayre had kepud
Mennes ken of þe cuntre · as a comen herde ;
& þus it bitide þat time · as tellen oure bokes,
þis cowherd comes on a time · to kepen is bestes 8
Fast by-side þe borwȝ · þere þe barn was inne.
þe herd had wiþ him an hound · his hert to liȝt,

who kept men's kine there.

He came by chance to the burrow where the child was.

[1] A verb is evidently wanting to complete the sense. Perhaps we should read, "And *wrouȝt* buxumly by the bestes wille, &c."—M.

forto bayte on his bestes · wanne þai to brode went.
þe herd sat þan wiþ hou*n*d · a*z*ene þe hote sunne, 12 He sat with his dog, and clouted his shoes.
Nou*z*t fully a furlong · fro þat fayre child,
clou*z*tand kyndely his schon · as to[1] here craft falles.
þat while was þe werwolf · went a-boute his praye,
what behoued to þe barn · to bring as he mi*z*t. 16
þe child þan darked in his den · dernly him one, The child lay hid in the den.
& was a big bold barn · & breme of his age,
For spakly speke it couþe tho · & spedeliche to-wawe.
Louely lay it a-long · in his lonely denne, 20
& buskede hi*m* out of þe buschys · þat were blowed grene,
& leued ful louely · þat lent grete schade,
& briddes ful bremely · on þe bowes singe. Lured by the birds and by the fair flowers,
what for melodye þat þei made · in þe mey sesoun, 24
þat litel child listely · lorked out of his caue,
Faire floures forto fecche · þat he bi-fore hi*m* seye,
& to gadere of þe grases · þat grene were & fayre.
& whan it was out went · so wel hit him liked, 28 he came out and gathered flowers, and played about.
þe sauor of þe swete sesou*n* · & song of þe briddes,
þat [he][2] ferde fast a-boute · floures to gadere,
& layked him long while · to lesten þat merþe.
þe couherdes hou*n*d þat time · as happe by-tidde, 32 The dog tracked him, and began to bark
feld foute of þe child · and fast þider fulwes ;
& sone as he it sei*z* · soþe forto telle,
he gan to berke on þat barn · and to baie it hold,
þat it wax nei*z* of his witt · wod for fere, 36
and comsed þan to crye · so kenly and schille, [Fol. 4 b.]
& wepte so wonder fast wite þou for sothe, The child was frightened, and cried out.
þat þe son of þe cry com · to þe cowherde euene,
þat he wist witerly it was · þe voys of a childe. 40
þan ros he vp radely · & ran þider swiþe,
& drow hi*m* toward þe den · bi his dogges noyce. The cowherd followed the child to the den,
bi þat time was þe barn · for bere of þat hou*n*de,

[1] MS. "aſto."
[2] Read, "that *it* ferde," or "*he* ferde."—M.

drawe him in to his den · & darked þer stille, 44
& wept eu*ere* as it wolde · a-wede for fere;
& eu*ere* þe dogge at þe hole · held it at a baye.
and looked in. & whan þe kouherd com þid[*er*]e[1] · he koured lowe
to bi-hold in at þe hole · whi his hou*n*d berkyd. 48
þanne of-saw he ful sone · þat semliche child,
þat so loueliche lay & wep · in þat loþli caue,
He saw the child lying there in clothes of gold. cloþed ful komly · for ani kud kinges sone,
In gode cloþes of gold · a-greþed ful riche, 52
wiþ perrey & pellure · pertelyche to þe riȝttes.
þe cherl wondred of þat chau*n*ce · & chastised his dogge,
He rebuked his dog, and enticed the child to come to him. bad him blinne of his berking · & to þe barn talked,
acoyed it to come to him · & clepud hit oft, 56
& foded it wiþ floures · & wiþ faire by-hest,
& hiȝt it hastely to haue · what it wold ȝerne,
appeles & alle þinges · þat childern after wilnen.
The child came out, and he took it in his arms, so, forto seiȝ al þe soþe · so faire þe cherl glosed, 60
þat þe child com of þe caue · & his criynge stint.
þe cherl ful cherli þat child · tok in his armes,
& kest hit & clipped · and oft crist þonkes,
þat hade him sent þo sonde · swiche prey to finde. 64
and took it home to his wife. wiȝtliche wiþ þe child · he went to his house,
and bi-tok it to his wif · tiȝtly to kepe.
a gladere wommo*n* vnder god · no miȝt go on erþe,
She asked the child its name, and it said, "William." þan was þe wif wiþ þe child · witow for soþe. 68
sche kolled it ful kindly · and askes is name,
& it answered ful sone · & seide, "william y hiȝt."
þan was þe godwif glad · and gan it faire kepe,
þat it wanted nouȝt · þat it wold haue, 72
[Fol. 5.] þat þei ne fond him as faire · as for here state longed,
They had no children of their own, & þe beter, be ye sure · for barn ne had þei none
brouȝt forþ of here bodies; · here bale was þe more.
so agreed to adopt it. but soþly þai seide þe child · schuld weld al here godis,
Londes & ludes as eyer · after here lif dawes. 77
but from þe cherl & þe child · nov chaunge we oure tale,

[1] Read "thidere."—M.

For i wol of þe werwolf · a wile nov speke.

Whanne þis werwolf was come · to his wolnk[1] denne,
& hade brouȝt bilfoder · for þe barnes mete, 81
þat he hade wonne with wo · wide wher a-boute,
þan fond he nest & no neiȝ · for nouȝt nas *þer* leued.
& whan þe best þe barn missed · so balfully he g[r]inneþ,[2]
þat alle men vpo*n* molde · no miȝt telle his sorwe. 85
For reuliche gan he rore · & rente al his hide,
& fret oft of þe erþe · & fel doun on swowe,
& made þe most dool · þat man miȝt diuise. 88
& as þe best in his bale · þer a-boute wente,
he fond þe feute al fresh · where forþ þe herde
hadde bore þan barn · beter it to ȝeme.
wiȝtly þe werwolf · þan went bi nose 92
euene to þe herdes house · & hastely was þare.
þere walked he a-boute þe walles · to winne in siȝt;
& at þe last lelly · a litel hole he findes.
þere pried he in priuely · and p*er*tiliche bi-holdes 96
hov hertily þe herdes wif · hules þat child,
& hov fayre it fedde · & fetisliche it baþede,
& wrouȝt wiþ it as wel · as ȝif it were hire owne.
þanne was þe best bliþe i-nov · for þe barnes sake, 100
For he wist it schold be warded · wel þanne at þe best.
& hertily for þat hap · to-heuene-ward he loked,
& þroliche þonked god · mani þousand siþes,
& seþþen went on is way · whider as him liked; 104
but whiderward wot i neuer · witow for soþe.
ak nowþe ȝe þat arn hende · haldes ow stille,
& how þat best þerwe bale · was brouȝt out of kinde,
I wol ȝou telle as swiþe · trewly þe soþe. 108

When the werwolf returned, he found the *nest*, but no *eggs* in it.

He roared, rent his hide, and swooned.

Soon he found the cowherd's track,

and went to his house.

Looking through a hole, he saw how well the child was being tended,

and thanked God, and went his way.

Listen and hear how he became a werwolf.

Werwolf was he no*n* · wox of kinde,
ac komen was he of kun · þat kud was ful nobul;
For þe kud king of spayne · was kindely his fader.

[Fol. 5 b.]
He was of noble birth, for his father was King of Spain.

[1] *Sic* in MS.; *read* wlonk? Cf. ll. 468, 1634. [2] See note.

he gat him, as god ȝaf grace · on his ferst wyue, 112

This king's first wife died,

& at þe burþ of þat barn · þe bold lady deyde.
siþþen þat kud king so · bi his conseyl wrout,

and he married the daughter of the prince of Portugal,

another wif þat he wedded · a worchipful ladi,
þe princes douȝter of portingale · to proue þe soþe. 116
but lelliche þat ladi in ȝouþe · hadde lerned miche schame,
For al þe werk of wicchecraft · wel y-nouȝ che couȝþe,
nede nadde ȝhe namore · of nigramauncy to lere.

a lady skilled in witchcraft, named Braunde.

of coninge of wicche-craft · wel y-nouȝ ȝhe couȝde, 120
& braunde was þat bold quene · of burnes y-clepud.
þe kinges furst child was fostered · fayre as it ouȝt,
& had lordes & ladies · it louely to kepe,
& fast gan þat frely barn · fayre forto wexe. 124

She, seeing her stepson's beauty,

þe quene his moder on a time · as a mix þouȝt,
how faire & how fetis it was · & freliche schapen.

feared that her own son would never be king.

& þis þanne þouȝt sche þroly · þat it no schuld neuer
kuuere to be king þer · as þe kinde eyre, 128
whille þe kinges ferst sone · were þer a-liue.

She therefore studied how to harm her stepson,

þan studied sche stifly · as stepmoderes wol alle,
to do dernly a despit · to here stepchilderen ;
Feþli a-mong foure schore · vnneþe findestow on gode.
but truly tiȝt hadde þat quene · take hire to rede 133
to bring þat barn in bale · botles for euer,
þat he ne schuld wiȝtli in þis world · neuer weld reaume.

and made a strong ointment, and anointed him with it.

a noynement anon sche made · of so grete strengþe, 136
bi enchaunmens of charmes · þat euel chaunche hire tide,
þat whan þat womman þer-wiȝt · hadde þat worli child
ones wel an-oynted þe child · wel al a-bowte,

He became a werwolf, but still had his wit.

he wex to a werwolf · wiȝtly þer-after, 140
al þe making of man · so mysse hadde ȝhe schaped.
ac his witt welt he after · as wel as to-fore,
but lelly oþer likenes · þat longeþ to man kynne,
but a wilde werwolf · ne walt he neuer after. 144

[fol. 6.]

& whanne þis witty werwolf · wiste him so schaped,
he knew it was bi þe craft · of his kursed stepmoder,

& þouȝt or he went a-way · he wold ȝif he miȝt — He sought to avenge himself,
wayte hire sum wicked torn · what bi-tidde after. 148
& as bliue, boute bod · he braydes to þe quene,
& hent hire so hetterly · to haue hire a-strangeled, — and tried to strangle her.
þat hire deth was neiȝ diȝt · to deme þe soþe.
but carfuli gan sche crie · so kenely and lowde, 152 — She cried out, and he fled,
þat maydenes & miȝthi men · manliche to hire come,
& wolden brusten þe best · nad he be þe liȝttere,
& fled a-way þe faster · in-to ferre londes,
so þat pertely in-to poyle · he passed þat time, 156 — and went to Apulia.
as þis fortune bi-fel · þat i told of bi-fore;
þus was þis witty best · werwolf ferst maked.
but now wol i stint a stounde · of þis sterne best, — We now return to the child.
& tale of þe tidy child · þat y of told ere. 160

þus passed is þe first pas · of þis pris tale, — Here ends the first Passus.
& ȝe þat louen & lyken · to listen a-ni more,
alle wiȝth on hol hert · to þe heiȝ king of heuene
preieth a pater noster · priuely þis time 164
for þe hend erl of herford · sir humfray de bowne, — Pray for Sir Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford, who caused this tale to be translated.
þe king edwardes newe · at glouseter þat ligges.
For he of frensche þis fayre tale · ferst dede transalate,
In ese of englysch men · in englysch speche; 168
& god graunt hem his blis · þat godly so prayen!

Leue lordes, now listenes · of þis litel barn, — The cowherd's wife took care of William,
þat þe kinde kowherde-wif · keped so fayre.
ȝhe wist it as wel or bet · as ȝif it were hire owne, 172
til hit big was & bold · to buschen on felde,
& couþe ful craftily · kepe alle here bestes, — who grew up as a herdsman.
& bring hem in þe best lese · whan hem bi-stode nede,
& wited hem so wisly · þat wanted him neuer one. 176
a bowe al-so þat bold barn · bi-gat him þat time,
& so to schote vnder þe schawes · scharplyche he lerned, — He learnt to shoot well,
þat briddes & smale bestes · wiþ his bow he quelles

so plenteousliche *in* his play · þat, pertly to telle, 180

[Fol. 6 b.]

and brought home conies and hares.

whanne he went hom eche niȝt · wiþ is droue of bestis,
he com him-self y-charged · wiþ conyng & hares,
wiþ fesau*n*s & feldfares · and oþer foules grete ;
þat þe herde & his hende wif · & al his hole meyne 184
þat bold barn wiþ his bowe · by þat time fedde.

He had many young comrades,

& ȝit hadde fele felawes · in þe forest eche day,
ȝong bold barnes · þat bestes al-so keped.
& bliþe was eche a barn · ho best miȝt him plese, 188
& folwe him for his fredom · & for his faire þewes.

with whom he always shared what he shot.

for what þing willam wan · a-day wiþ his bowe,
were it feþered foul · or foure-foted best,
ne wold þis william neu*er* on · wiþ-hold to him-selue,
til alle his felawes were ferst · feffed to here paie. 193
so kynde & so corteys · comsed he þere,
þat alle ledes him louede · þat loked on him ones ;
& blesseden þat him bare · & brouȝt in-to þis worlde,
so moche manhed & murþe · schewed þat child eu*er*e.

One day, the emperor of Rome rode out to hunt,

Hit tidde after on a time · as tellus oure bokes, 198
as þis bold barn his bestes · blyþeliche keped,
þe riche emp*er*our of rome · rod out for to hunte
In þat faire forest · feiþely for to telle,
wiþ alle his menskful meyne · þat moche was & nobul.

and found a great boar.

þan fel it hap þat þei fou*n*de · ful sone a grete bor,
& huntyng wiþ hou*n*d & horn · harde alle sewede. 204
þe emp*er*owr entred in a wey · euene to attele
to haue bruttenet þat bor · & þe abaie seþþen ;

The emperor lost his way in the forest.

but missely marked he is way · & so manly he rides,
þat alle his wies were went · ne wist he neu*er* whider.
so ferforþ *fra*m his men · feþly for to telle, 209
þat of horn ne of hou*n*d · ne miȝt he here sowne,
&, boute eny liuing lud · left was he one.

Riding along, he saw a werwolf chasing a hart.

þemp*er*our on his stif stede · a sty forþ þanne takes 212
to herken after his hou*n*des · oþer horn schille ;
so komes þ*er* a werwolf · riȝt bi þat way þenne,

grimly after a gret hert · as þat god wold,
& chased him þurth chaunce · þere þe child pleide, 216
þat kept þe kowherdes bestes · i carped of bi-fore. [Fol. 7.]
þemperour þanne hastely · þat huge best folwed
as stiffuly as is stede miȝt · strecche on to renne; — He followed them, but lost sight of both.
but by-þan he com by þat barn · & a-boute loked, 220
þe werwolf & þe wilde hert · were a-weye boþe,
þat he ne wist in þis world · were þei were bi-come,
ne whiderward he schuld seche · to se of hem more.
but þanne bi-held he a-boute · & þat barn of-seye, 224 — Then he beheld William, and wondered at his fairness,
hov fair how fetys it was · & freliche schapen;
so fair a siȝt of seg · ne sawe he neuer are,
of lere ne of lykame · lik him nas none,
ne of so sad a semblant · þat euer he say wiþ eiȝyen. 228
þemperour wend witerly · for wonder of þat child, — thinking him of fairy birth.
þat feiȝþely it were of feyrye · for fairenes þat it welt,
& for þe curteys cuntenaunce · þat it kudde þere.

Riȝtly þenne þemperour · wendes him euene tille, 232 — William greets the emperor,
þe child comes him agayn · & curtesliche him gretes.
In hast þemperour hendely · his gretyng him ȝeldes,
and a-non riȝttes after · askes his name, — who asks him his name and kindred.
& of what kin he were kome · komanded him telle. 236
þe child þanne soberliche seide · "sir, at ȝoure wille
I wol ȝow telle as tyt · trewely alle þe soþe.
william, sire, wel y wot · wiȝes me calles; — "William is my name.
I was bore here fast bi · by þis wodes side. 240
a kowherde, sire, of þis kontrey · is my kynde fader, — A cowherd is my father.
and my menskful moder · is his meke wiue.
þei han me fostered & fed · faire to þis time,
& here i kepe is kyn · as y kan on dayes; 244
but, sire, by crist, of my kin · know i no more." — I know no more of my kindred."
whan þemperour[1] hade herd · holly his wordes,
he wondered of his wis speche · as he wel miȝt,
& seide, "þow bold barn · biliue i þe praye, 248

[1] Read "themperour." The bar across the *p* is deficient.—M.

"Go, call the cowherd," said the emperor.

Go calle to me þe cowherde · þow clepus þi fadere,
For y wold talk [wiþ] him[1] · tiþinges to frayne."

"Nay, sir, it may turn to his hurt."

"nay, sire, bi god," quaþ þe barn, "be ȝe riȝt sure,
bi crist, þat is krowned · heye king of heuen, 252

[Fol. 7 b.]

For me non harm schal he haue · neuer in his liue!"

"Rather, it may turn to his profit."

"ac perauenture þurth goddis [grace][2] · to gode may it turne,
For-þi bring him hider · faire barn, y preye." 255

"I will trust your word for that."

"I schal, sire," seide þe child · "for saufliche y hope[3]
I may worche on ȝour word · to wite him fro harm."
"ȝa, safliche," seide þemperour · "so god ȝif me ioie!"

— þe child witly þanne wende · wiþ-oute ani more,

William tells the cowherd that a great lord would speak with him.

comes to þe couherdes hows · & clepud him sone; 260
For he feiȝliche wen[d][4] · þat he his fader where;
& seide þan, "swete sir · s[o] ȝou criste help!
Goþ yond to a gret lord · þat gayly is tyred,
& on þe feirest frek · for soþe þat i haue seie; 264
and he wilnes wiȝtli · wiþ ȝou to speke;
For godis loue goþ til him swiþe · lest he agreued wex."

"Did you tell him I was here?"

"what? sone," seide þe couherde · "seidestow i was here?" 267

"ȝa, sire, sertes," seide þe child · "but he swor formest

"He promised your safety."

þat ȝe schuld haue no harm · but hendely for gode
he praide ȝou com speke wiþ him · & passe a-ȝein sone."
þe cherl grocching forþ goþ · wiþ þe gode child,
& euene to þemperour · þei etteleden sone. 272

The emperor asks the cowherd if he has ever seen the emperor.

þemperour a-non riȝt · as he him of-seie,
clepud to him þe couherde · & curteysly seide;
"now telle me, felawe, be þi feiȝþ · for no þing ne wonde,
sei þou euer þemperour · so þe crist help?" 276

[1] The sense and cadence of the line seem to require "with" before "him."—M.

[2] Read "thurth goddis *grace*."—M.

[3] MS. for y saufliche y hope, *where there seems to be a* y *too much.*

[4] See note.

"nay, sire, bi crist," quaþ þe couherde · "þat king is of heuen, — "Nay, sir, at no time."
I nas neuer ȝet so hardi · to neȝh him so hende
þere i schuld haue him seie · so me wel tyme." 279
"sertes," þan seide þemperour · "þe soþe forto knowe, — "Know that I am he;
þat y am þat ilk weiȝh · i wol wel þou wite;
al þe regal of rome · to riȝtleche y weld.
þerfore, couherde, i þe coniure · & comande att alle, — and I command you to tell me the truth.
bi vertu of þing þat þou most · in þis world louest, 284
þatow telle me tiȝtly · truly þe soþe,
wheþer þis bold barn · be lelly þin owne, — Is this child yours?"
oþer comen of oþer kin · so þe crist help!"
þe couherd comsed to quake · for kare & for drede 288
whanne he wist witerly · þat he was his lorde, — [Fol. 8.] The cowherd began to quake,
& biliue in his hert be-þout · ȝif he him gun lye,
he wold prestely perceyue · pertiliche him þout.
þer-fore trewly as tyt · he told him þe soþe, 292 — and told him all the truth.
how he him fond in þat forest · þere fast bi-side,
clothed in comly cloþing · for any kinges sone,
vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge,
& how faire he hade him fed · & fostered vij winter.
"bi crist," seide þemperour · "y con þe gret þonke, 297 — "I thank you for telling me true;
þat þou hast [seide][1] me þe soþe · of þis semly childe,
& tine schalt þou nouȝt þi trawayle · y trow, at þe last!
ac wend schal it wiþ me · witow for soþe, 300 — the child shall go with me."
Min hert so harde wilnes · to haue þis barne,
þat i wol in no wise · þou wite it no lenger."
whan þemperour so sayde · soþe forto telle,
þe couherde was in care · i can him no-þing white. 304 — The cowherd grieved, but dared not refuse.
ac witerly dorst he nouȝt werne · þe wille of his lord,
but graunted him goddeli · on godis holy name,
Forto worchen his wille · as lord wiþ his owne.
whan william þis worþi child · wist þe soþe, 308
and knew þat þe cowherde · nas nouȝt his kinde fader,

[1] Read "thou hast *seide* me the sothe."—M.

William began to lament sorely, and said,

he was wiȝtliche a-wondered · & gan to wepe sore,
& seide saddely to him-self · sone þer-after,
"a ! gracious gode god ! · þouȝ grettest of alle ! 312
Moch is þi mercy & þi miȝt · þi menske, & þi grace !

"I know not my birth nor my destiny, and am much beholden to this man and his wife."

now wot i neu*er* in þis world · of wham y am come,
ne what destene me is diȝt · but god do his wille !
ac wel y wot wit*er*ly · wiþ-oute ani faile, 316
to þis ma*n* & his meke wif · most y am holde ;
For þei ful faire han me fostered · & fed a long time,
þat god for his grete miȝt · al here god hem ȝeld. 319
but not y neu*er* what to done · to wende þus hem fro,
þat han al kindenes me kyd · & y ne kan hem ȝelde !"

"Cease from thy sorrow," said the emperor,

"bi stille, barn," quaþ þemp*er*our · "blinne of þi sorwe,
For y hope þat hal þi kin · hastely here-after, 323
ȝif þou wolt ȝeue þe to gode · swiche grace may þe falle,
þat alle þi frendes fordedes · faire schalstow quite."

[Fol. 8 b.] "thou shalt requite thy friends."

"ȝa, sire," quaþ þe couherde, "ȝif c*ri*st wol · þat cas may tyde,
& god lene him grace · to god man to worþe."

The cowherd then counselled William

& þan as tit to þe child · he tauȝt þis lore, 328
& seide, "þou swete sone · seþþe þou schalt hennes wende,
whanne þou komest to kourt · amo*ng* þe kete lordes,
& knowest alle þe kuþþes · þat to kourt langes,
bere þe boxumly & bonure · þat ich burn þe loue. 332

to be no teller of tales,

be meke & mesurabul · nouȝt of many wordes,
be no tellere of talis · but trewe to þi lord,

to take the part of poor men,

& prestely for pore men · profer þe eu*er*,
For hem to rekene wiþ þe riche · in riȝt & in skille. 336

and to be faithful and of fair speech;

be feiȝtful & fre · & euer of faire speche,
& seruisabul to þe simple · so as to þe riche,
& felawe in faire manere · as falles for þi state ;
so schaltow gete goddes loue · & alle gode mennes. 340

a lesson which the cowherd had learnt from his father.

Leue sone, þis lessou*n* · me lerde my fader,
þat knew of kourt þe þewes · for kourteour was he lo*ng*,
& hald it in þi hert · now i þe haue it kenned ;

þe bet may þe bi-falle · þe worse bestow neuere." 344

þe child weped al-way · wonderliche fast,
but þemperour had god game · of þat gomes lore,
& comande[1] þe couherde · curteysli and fayre, 347
to heue vp þat hende child · bi-hinde him on his stede.
& he so dede deliuerly · þouȝh him del þouȝt,
& bi-kenned him to crist · þat on croice was peyned.
þanne þat barn as biliue · by-gan for to glade
þat he so realy schuld ride · & redeli as swiþe 352
Ful curteisle of þe couherde · he cacces his leue,
& seþþen seyde, "swete sire · i bes[e]che[2] ȝou nowþe,
For godes loue, gretes ofte · my godelyche moder,
þat so faire haþ me fed · & fostered till nowþe. 356
& lellyche, ȝif our lord wol · þat i liif haue,
sche ne schal nouȝt tyne hire trauayle · treuly for soþe.
& gode sire, for godes loue · also greteþ wel oft
alle my freyliche felawes · þat to þis forest longes, 360
han pertilyche in many places · pleide wiþ ofte,
hugonet, & huet · þat hende litel dwerþ,[3]
& abelot, & martynet · hugones gaie sone;
& þe cristen akarin · þat was mi kyn fere, 364
& þe trewe kinnesman · þe payenes sone,
& alle oþer frely felawes · þat þou faire knowes,
þat god mak hem gode men · for his mochel grace."
of þe names þat he nemned · þemperour nam hede, 368
& had gaynliche god game · for he so grette alle
of his compers þat he knew · so curteysliche & faire.
& þan be-kenned he þe kouherde · to crist & to hal alwes,
& busked forþ wiþ þat barn · bliue on his gate. 372
þe kouherde kayred to his house · karful in hert,
& neiȝ to-barst he for bale · for þe barnes sake.
& whan his wiif wist · wittow for soþe,

The emperor tells the cowherd to set William on his horse,

and the child was pleased to think he should ride royally.

William bids the cowherd farewell,

and sends a message to his foster-mother,

and to his old playmates,

[Fol. 9.]

Hugonet, and Huet, Abelot, Martynet, and Akarin,

and all the rest.

The emperor then rides away.

The cowherd goes home, very sorrowful,

[1] In l. 236 we have "komanded;" but see the note.
[2] MS. "beſche." Read "beseche."—M. [3] See note.

how þat child from here warde · was wente for euer-more,
and his wife weeps most bitterly. þer nis man on þis mold · þat miȝt half telle 377
þe wo & þe weping · þat womman made.
sche wold haue sleie hire-self þere · soþly, as bliue,
ne hade þe kind kouherde · conforted here þe betere,
& pult hire in hope to haue · gret help þer-of after. 381
No more of them now. but trewely of hem at þis time · þe tale y lete,
of þemperour & þe bold barn · to bigynne to speke.

Lordes, lusteneþ her-to · ȝif ȝou lef þinkes! 384
The emperor finds his men, þemperour bliþe of þe barn · on his blonk rides
Fast til þe forest, til he fond · al his fre ferd,
þat hadde take þat time · moche trye game,
and the spoil which they had taken. boþe bores & beres · fele hors charge, 388
hertes & hindes · & oþer bestes manye.
& whan þe loueli ludes · seie here lord come,
þei were geinliche glad · & gretten him faire,
All wondered at seeing the child, but alle a-wondered þei were · of þe barn him bi-hinde,
so faire & so fetyse it was · & freliche schapen; 393
& freyned faire of þemperour · whar he it founde hadde.
which, said the emperor, "God had sent him." he gaf hem answere a-gayn · þat god it him sent,
oþer-wise wist non · where he it founde. 396
[Fol. 9 b.] þan rod he forþ wiþ þat rowte · in-to rome euene,
He rides to Rome, and alights at his palace. & euer þat bold barn · by-hinde him sat stille.
so passed he to þe paleys · and presteliche a-liȝt, 399
& william þat choys child · in-to his chaumber ledde.
Now the emperor had a dear daughter a dere damisele to douȝter · þis emperour hadde þanne,
of alle fasoun þe fairest · þat euer freke seiȝe,
& witerly william & ȝhe · were of on held,
of the same age as William, as euene as ani wiȝt · schuld attely bi siȝt. 404
& þat menskful mayde · melior was hoten,
named Melior. a more curteyse creature · ne cunnyngere of hire age,
was nouȝt þanne in þis world · þat ani wiȝt knewe.
To her care the emperor commends William, þemperour to þat mayde · mekliche wendeþ, 408
& william þat worþi child · wiþ him he ladde,
and seide, "dere douȝter · y do þe to wite,

I haue a pris presant · to plese wiþ þi hert.
haue here þis bold barn · & be til him meke, 412
& do him kepe clenly · for kome he his of gode ;
I hent þis at hunting · swiche hap god me sent ;"
& told here þanne as tit · treweli al þe soþe,
how he hade missed is mayne · & malskrid a-boute, 416
& how þe werwolf wan him bi · wiþ a wilde hert,
& how sadly he him sewed · to haue slayn þat dere,
til þei hadde brouȝt him þere · þat barn bestes kept,
& how sone of his seiȝt · þe bestes seþþen ware ; 420
& how þe couherde com him to · & was a-knowe þe soþe,
how he him fond in þat forest · ferst, þat faire child,
& how komeliche y-cloþed · for ani kinges sone ;
& how þe kouherde for kare · cu*m*sed to sorwe, 424
whanne he wold wiþ þe child · wende him fro*m*me ;
& how boldely þat barn · bad þe couherde þanne
to grete wel his gode wiif · & gamely þer-after
alle his freliche felawes · bi-forn as i told. 428
" & þer-fore, my dere douȝter " · þemp*er*our seide,
" For mi lof loke him wel · for lelly me þinkes,
bi his menskful maneres · & his man-hede,
þat he is kome of god kin · to crist y hope ; 432

saying he has brought her a rich present;

relating to her the whole story about the werwolf,

his meeting with the child,

the cowherd's grief,

and William's messages to his step-mother and comrades.

" Love him well, for I suspect he is of noble kin;

[*The next folio* (*Fol.* 10) *being lost, its place is here supplied from the French text.*]

[car mult par est et biax, et gens,
de cors, de vis, et de faiture.
encor orrons, par aventure,
de quex gens est estrais et nes.
ma douce fille, or retenes
lenfant que je vos amain ci."
" ce soit la vostre grant merci,"
dist meliors, " biau sire chiers,
je le retieng mult volentiers."
puis prent lenfant et si lenmaine, 10
en la soie chambre demaine,

For he is very fair and handsome
In body, in face, and in fashion.
We shall yet hear, peradventure,
Of what kin he is descended and born.
My sweet daughter, now take care of
The child whom I here bring you."
" Great thanks are due to you for this,"
Said Melior, " fair father dear;
I take care of him very willingly."
Then she takes the child and leads him away,
Brings him into her chamber,

uns dras li a fait aporter,
sel fait vester et conreer.
Quant des dras fu apareillies,
et a sa guise fu chaucies,
or fu si gens et si tres biax
et si apers li damoisiax,
con ne recourast son pareil,
desos la clarte du soleil,
de sa biaute, de sa semblance.
et meliors, qui tant ert france,
li a fait par .i. sien sergant
aporter le mangier devant.
et cil manga qui fain avoit,
or revient auques a son droit.
por cou se il est fix de Roi,
nest desonors, si com ie croi,
sil sert a cort dempereor,
et pucele de tel valor
com meliors estoit la bele.
ensi remest o la pucele
Guill*iaumes*, com poes oir;
mult se paine de li servir
et des autres tous ensement.
mult si acointe belement,
si com li hom qui nestoit mie
norris en cort nentre maisnie,
mais auques le prueve nature,
et il sor tote creature
sentente et tot son cuer velt metre
a quanque se doit entremetre.
nus damoisiax de nul service
a cort si haute ni si riche.
Tant i a lenfes son cuer mis,
et tant entendu et apris,
quancois que fust passes li ans,
fu il si prex et si sachans,

Has a robe brought for him,
And has him clothed and well cared for.
When he was dressed in the robes,
And fittingly provided with shoes,
So gracious and so very fair
And so frank was the boy,
That his equal could not be met with
Beneath the light of the sun,
For his beauty, for his appearance.
And Melior, who was so bountiful,
Caused one of her servants
To carry a repast before him.
And he, being hungry, ate it,
And returned then to his duty.
Wherefore if he is a king's son
Tis no dishonour, as I believe,
If he serves at the emperor's court
And (serves) a damsel of such worth
As was Melior the beautiful.
Thus remained with the damsel
William, as you may hear;
Much pains he takes to serve her
And all the others likewise.
Very excellently he demeans himself,
Like, indeed, a man who had never been
Nourished in court or household,
But nature also proves him,
And he, above every creature,
Gives attention and puts his whole heart
To whatever he ought to undertake.
There was no youth, in any service,
So high and so rich at court.
The child so gave his attention there,
And understood and learnt so much,
That before the year was passed,
He was so prudent and so wise,

quil nest hom qui le puist reprendre,
tant i sache garder, nentendre
de riens nule que veoir sace,
que riens mesprenge ne mefface.
oi aves pieca retraire,
que li oisiax de gentil aire
safaite meisme aparlui,
tot sans chastiement dautrui;
comme vos ci oir poes,
sest si Guill*iaumes* doctrines.
Ensi Guill*iaumes* est a cort,
a tos desert que on lounort,
ne fait riens qui doie desplaire.
mult par est frans et debonnaire,
servicables, cortois, et prous,
et mult se fait amer a tous,
et larges de quanquavoir puet.
et sachies bien, pas ne lestuet
a chastoier de ses paroles,
queles soient laides ne foles,
mais asises et delitables.
si set plus desches et de tables,
doisiax, de bois, de chacerie,
que nus qui soit en Lombardie,
nen toute la terre de Rome;
nia vallet, fil a haut home,
na riche prince natural—
quant Guill*iaumes* siet a cheval,
lescu au col, el poing la lance—
tant par soit de fiere semblance,
si gens, ne si amanevis;
ne sai que plus vos en devis;
que tuit samblent a lui vilain,
et li lombart et li romain.
bien samble a tos estre lor sire
en tot le regne nen lempire.

That no one could reprove him
(So well can he take care), nor perceive
For anything that he could see,
That he mistook or misdid anything.
Ye have long ago heard say
That the bird of gentle breed
Learns even by himself,
Without correction by another;
Even as ye here may hear,
William thus taught himself.
Thus William lives at the court,
He deserves that all should honour him,
And does nothing to displease.
He is very frank and amiable,
Serviceable, courteous, and prudent,
And makes himself much loved by all,
And (he is) bounteous as far as he is able.
And know well, there is no need
To correct him for his words,
Which are neither rude nor silly,
But staid and pleasing.
He knew more of chess and tables,
Of hawking, of the woods, of the chase,
Than any one in Lombardy,
Or in all the territory of Rome;
There is no lad, son to a great man,
Nor rich prince by birth
(When William sits on his horse,
Shield on his neck, lance in his fist),
Can be of such fierce appearance,
So gracious, nor so dexterous;
I know not that I can tell you more about it.
So that all seem plebeian beside him,
Both Lombard and Roman.
He seems to be the lord of them all
In all the kingdom and empire.

ni a .i. seul, ne bas ne haut,
a cui il soit, de ce me vant(?),
des biens, de lui que la gens conte ;
chascuns en fabloie et raconte.
tous li pueples, communement,
et lempereres ensement
li porte honor, aime, et tient chier 90
comme le fil de sa moillier ;
et quant il va en esbanoi,
toudis maine Guill*iaume* o soi ;
en grant afaire ou en besoing
tos jors iva, soit pres ou loing.
et cil del regne denviron,
li grant signor et li baron,
por lamor a lempereor,
laiment et portent grant honor,
et plus encor por sa franchise, 100
dont chascuns tant le loe et prise.
et ke diroie des puchieles,
des dames et des damoisieles ?
certes, et se diex me doinst joie,
ne cuit que nule qui le voie
ne qui son los oie retraire,
tant par i soit de haut afaire,
bele, cortoise, ne prisie,
nestraite de haute lignie,
ne sage, orgeilleuse, ne cointe, 110
qui ne vausist estre sa-cointe !
Mult a boin los par la contree,
par tot en va sa renoumee.
si fut a cort .iii. ans tos plains
Guill*iaumes* entre les Romains,
com vos dire maves oi,
forment crut et bien enbarni ;
et devint gens li damoisiax,
et fors et aformes et biax ;

There is no one, low or high,
Who possesses—whereof I boast(?)—
The virtues, which people relate of him;
Every one speaks of them and tells them.
All the people, in common (honour him),
And the emperor, in like manner,
Honours, loves, and holds him dear
As the son of his own wife;
And when he goes out for amusement,
He always takes William with him;
In great affairs, or in case of need,
Always he goes there, whether near or far.
And those of the country round about,
The great lords and barons,
For love of the emperor,
Love and greatly honour him,
And still more for his bounty,
For which every one praises and esteems him.
And what can I say of the maidens,
Of the ladies and the damsels?
Certes, so God give me joy,
I believe there is none who sees him
Or hears his praise told,
Of however great consideration she may be,
However fair, courteous, and estimable,
However noble by birth,
However wise, proud, or clever,
But she wishes to be his love!
He has great good praise in the country,
Everywhere spreads his renown.
Thus at the court three full years
Was William, among the Romans,
As ye have heard me tell,
Well grown and of good stature;
And the youth became gracious,
And strong and of fine form and fair;

de la chambre est merveilles bien; 120 In the chamber he is very admirable;
les puceles sur tote rien, The maidens above everything,
por sa franchise et sa valor, For his frankness and his valour,
li portent mult tres grant honor. Accord him very great honour.
Quant meliors la debonaire When Melior the amiable
ot del vallet le los retraire, Hears the praise of the lad told,
et les grans biens qui en lui sont, And the great goodness that is in him,
et voit quil na si bel el mont, And sees there is none in the world so fair,
ne damoisel de sa valor, No youth of his worth,
fil de roi ne dempereor, (Whether) son of king or of emperor,
ne de si boine renoumee, 130 Nor any of such good renown,
trestot son cuer et sa pensee Soon her heart and her thought
tot maintenant vers lui atorne. Very quickly turns she towards him.
or est si tres pensive et morne Then she is so very sad and sorrowful,
quele nentent a autre chose. That she minds nothing else.
son cuer reprent et blasme et chose, She reproves and blames and rebukes her heart,
et dist sovent, "cuers! que as tu? And says often, "Heart, what hast thou?
quas tu esgarde ne veu, What hast thou beheld or seen—
que tout mi oel moustre ne fait, For mine eye shews or tells me nothing—
qui mas embatue en cest plait? That has cast me into this debate?
que je ne sai que puisse avoir, 140 So that I know not what is the matter,
ne quel error me fait doloir, Nor what fault makes me grieve,
ne plaindre plus que je ne suel. Or complain more than I am wont.
Diex! quex maus est dont tant me duel, Oh God! what evil is it I thus grieve for,
qui si me fait estendillier?] That makes me thus move restlessly?

[Fol. 11.]
& seþþe sike i & sing · samen to-gedere, I sigh and sing together.
& melt neiȝh for mournyng · & moche ioie make.
Min hert hol i haue now · for al þat hard y fele,
saue a fers feintise · folwes me oft, 436 A faintness often seizes me.
& takes me so tenefully · to telle al þe soþe,
þat i mase al marred · for mournyng neiȝh hondes,
but redeliche in þat res · þe recuuerere þat me falles,
as whan i haue ani hap · to here of þat barne, 440 I recover when I hear of that
For wham myn hert is so hampered · & aldes so nobul,

flower of mankind.

þat flour is of alle frekes · of fairnes and miȝt.
prince is no*n* his pere · ne in paradiȝs non au*n*gel,
as he semes in mi siȝt · so faire is þat burne. 444

I have portrayed him within my heart,

I haue him portreide an paynted · in mi hert wiþ-inne,
þat he sittus in mi siȝt · me þinkes euer-more.
& faire so [1] his figure · is festened in mi ȝout,[2]

and would not scrape out his portrait for all the world.

þat wiþ no coyntise ne craft · ne can y it out scrape. 448
& be marie, þouȝh i miȝt · to mengge al þe soþe,
I ne wold nouȝt for al þis world · so wel it me likes,
þeiȝh i winne wiþ mi werk · þe worse euer-more!
so gret liking & loue i haue · þat lud to bi-hold, 452
þat i haue leuer þat loue · þan lac al mi harmes.

Since it is so, I am wrong to blame my heart.

Nou certes, seþþe it is so · to seie þe trewþe,
þann haue y had gret wrong · myn [hert] so to blame,
For eni werk þat he wrouȝt · seþþe i wol it hold, 456
ne wold i it were non oþer · al þe world to haue.

I ought rather to blame my eyes.

whom schal i it wite · but mi wicked eyiȝen,
þat lad myn hert þrouȝ loking · þis langour to drye?
nad þei [ben, i miȝt] · boute [3] bale haue schaped; 460
redeli bi resoun *þer*fore · hem rette i mai mi sorwe."
but þanne þouȝt che þat þrowe · in þis selue wise,

Yet my eyes are my heart's subjects.

"Min eiȝen sorly aren sogettes · to serue min hert,
& buxum ben to his bidding · as boie to his master; 464
eke wite i al þe wrong · þe werk of mi eiȝen,
& þouȝh sertes, so may i nouȝt · by no soþe riȝt,;
For seþþe i knowe þat mi siȝt · is seru*an*t to mi hert,
& alle my no*þer* wolnk wittes · to wirchen his hest. 468

[Fol. 11 b.]

My sight can do no harm, unless my heart assent.

For þouȝh i sette my siȝt · sadly on a þing,
be hit briȝtter oþer broun · beter oþer worse,
Mi siȝt may in no maner · more harme wirche,
but ȝif myn hauteyn hert · þe harde a-sente. 472
eke soþly my siȝt · is soget to my hert,

My sight only does his duty.

& doþ nouȝt but his deuer · as destine wol falle.

[1] so faire (?) [2] þout (?)
[3] MS. "nad þei i am a boute." See note.

þan has my hasty hert · holly þe wrong,
him wol i blame & banne · but he my bales amende, 476 — So I must still blame my heart.
þat haþ him so strangly set · in swiche straunge burne,
þat wot neuer in þis world · whennes þat he come,
but as mi fader him fond · in þe forest an herde,
keping mennis kin · of þe kuntre a-boute. 480
what? fy! schold i a fundeling · for his fairenesse tak? — Why should I esteem a foundling for his fairness?
nay, my wille wol nouȝt a-sent · to my wicked hert.
wel kud kinges & kaysers · krauen me i-now,
I nel leie mi loue so low · now at þis time; 484 — I will not lay my love so low."
desparaged were i disgisili · ȝif i dede in þis wise,
I wol breke out fram þat baret · & blame my hert."

Sche turned here þan tiȝtly · to haue slept a wile, 487 — She tries to sleep in vain, and sighs, and says,
& seide sadly, of hire hert · sche wold seche amendis
For sche so wrongly had wrouȝt · but wiȝtly per-after,
sche seide sikinde to here-self · in þis selue wise.
"now witterly ich am vn-wis · & wonderliche nyce, — "I am foolish to blame my heart so.
þus vn-hendly & hard · mi herte to blame. 492
to whom miȝt i me mene · amendis of him to haue,
seþþe i am his souerayn · mi-self in alle þing? — Am I not its sovereign?
nis he holly at my hest · in hard & in nesche?
& now, bi crist, i knowe wel · for al my care newe, 496
he wrouȝt neuer bot my worchepe · ne wol nouȝt, i leue.
I se wel he haþ set him-self · in so nobul a place, — My heart hath set itself in a noble place.
þat perles of alle puple · is preised ouer alle,
of fairnesse of facioun · and frely þeuwes,[1] 500
For kurteysie, vnder krist · is king ne kud duk.
& þouȝh he as fundeling where founde · in þe forest wilde, — Though William were a foundling, surely he was of noble birth.
& kept wiþ þe kowherde kin · to karp þe soþe,
eche creature may know · he was kome of gode. 504
For first whan þe fre was in þe forest · founde in his denne, — [Fol. 12.]
In comely cloþes was he clad · for any kinges sone. — His clothes and his manners proved it.
whan he kom first to þis kourt · bi kynde þan he schewde,

[1] A line lost here?

his maners were so menskful · a-mende he*m* miȝt none.
& seþþe forsoþe til þis time · non vn-tetche he ne wrouȝt,
but haþ him bore so buxumly · þat ich burn him preyseþ,
All men honour him. & vch a burn of þis world · worchipeþ him one,
Kinges & kud dukes · kene kniȝtes and other, 512
þouȝh he were komen of no ken · but of kende cherls,
as i wot witt*er*ly · so was he neuere!
ȝut wiþ worchepe i wene · i miȝt him wel loue.
Since then he is so peerless, & seþþe he so perles is preised · ouer princes & oþer, 516
& eche lord of þis lond · is lef him to plece
For most souereyn seg · & semlyest of þewes,
I did wrong to blame my heart. þanne haue i wited alle wrong · þe werk of my*n* herte,
For he has don his deuere · dignely as he out. 520
he het me most worþi · of womme*n* holde in erþe,
Kindely þurth kinrade · of cristen lawe;
For, in truth, my heart has done well; and could not have done better. For-þi myn herte hendely · has wrouȝt in his dedes
to sette him-self so sadly · in þe souerayne st burne 524
þat leuis in ani lond · of alle ludes preised,
I ne wot neuere in þis world · what wise he miȝt betere
wirche for me in þis world · my worschipe to saue.
For ȝif eny man on mold · more worþi were, 528
Min hert is so hauteyn · þat herre he wold.
I am sorry I blamed my heart, & for i so wrongely[1] haue wrouȝt · to wite him, me greues;
I giue me holly in his grace · as gilty for þat ilk,
& to mende my misse · i make myn a-vowe. 532
I wol here-after witerly · wiþ-oute more striue,
and will work all its will henceforth. wirche holly mi hertes wille · to harde & to nesche,
& leye my loue on þat lud · lelly for euere.
to god here i gif a gift · it gete schal neuer oþer, 536
wile him lasteþ þe liif · my loue i him grante."

And whan sche so was a-sented · sche seide sone after,
Alas! I fear this sorrow will have no remedy; sadli sikand & sore · for sorwe atte here herte,
"Allas! i trowe þis bitter bale · botlesse wol hende! 540

[1] MS. "worngely."

For i not in þis world[1] · how þat worþi child [Fol. 12 b.]
schal euer wite of my wo · wiþ-oute me selue.
nay! sertes my-selue · schal him neuer telle; for I will never tell him my love.
For þat were swiche a woȝh · þa neuer wolde be mended.
For he miȝt ful wel · for a fol me hold, 545 He might think me foolish.
& do him loþe mi loue · ȝit haue y leuer deie!
nay! best beþ it nouȝt so · ȝif better miȝt bi-falle,
Ich mot worche oþer wise · ȝif i wol out-spede. 548
what, i suppose þe selue · ȝif it so bi-tidde Or suppose I did speak to him,
þat i wrouȝt so wodly · & wold to him speke,
þat were semlyest to seye · to saue my worchep?
ȝif i told him treuli · my tene and myn anger, 552 and told him my sorrow,
what liif for longyng of loue · i lede for his sake,
He wold wene i were wod · or witerly schorned, he would think me mad, or that I mocked him.
or þat i dede for despit · to do him a schonde;
& þat were a schamly schenchip · to schende me euer.
what ȝif i saide him sadly · þat i sek were, 557 Or suppose I said I am sick;
& told him al treuly · þe entecches of myn euele?
he knoweþ nouȝt of þat kraft · bi krist, as i trowe,
wherfore he ne schold in no wise · wite what i mente; he would not understand me.
but whanne i hade al me mened · no more nold he seie
but "serteinly, swete damisele · þat me sore rewes."
þanne wold mi wo · wex al newe,
& doubel is now mi duel · for i ne dar hit schewe. 564 My grief would only be doubled.
allas! whi ne wist þat wiȝh · what wo þat me eyles,
what sorwes & sikingges · i suffer for his sake!
I sayle now in þe see · as schip boute mast, I sail in the sea like a mastless ship, without anchor, oar, or sail."
boute anker or ore · or ani semlyche sayle; 568
but heiȝh heuene king · to gode hauene me sende,
oþer laske mi liif daywes · wiþ-inne a litel terme."
þus þat maiden meliors · in mornyng þa liuede, Thus Melior lamented.
& hit held hire so harde · i hete þe for soþe, 572
& schorttily wiþ-in seueniȝt · al hire slep sche leues,
here mete & al merthe · sche missed in a while,
& seccleled in a seknesse · þe soþe for to telle, She sickened and pined,

[1] MS. "world þis;" instead of "þis world."

[Fol. 13.]

and her colour faded.

Melior's favourite maiden

was Alexandrine, daughter of the duke of Lombardy;

who said to her, "Tell me the cause of your sickness;

I may be able to help you."

"Dear cousin," said Melior, "thou speakest comfort to me.

I will tell you all my grief.

þat þer nas leche in no lond · þat liif hire bihiȝt,[1] 576
ȝit couþe non by no craft · knowen hire sore;
but duelfulli sche dwined a-waie · boþe dayes & niȝtes,
& al hire clere colour · comsed for to fade.

Þanne hadde þis menskful melior · maydenes fele 580
a-segned hire to serue · & to seuwe hire a-boute;
but amo*n*g alle þe maidenes · most sche loued one
þat was a digne damisele · to deme al þe soþe,
& komen of hire oune kin · h[*er*]e[2] kosin ful nere, 584
of lumbardie a dukes douȝter · ful derworþ in wede,
& þat amiabul maide · alisaundrine a-hiȝt.
& from þe time þat melior · gan morne so strong,
þat burde was euer hire bi · busy hire to plese, 588
More þan ani oþer damisele · so moche sche hire louede.
& whan sche seiȝ here so sek · sche seide on a time,
" Now for marie, madame · þe milde quene of heuene,
& for þat loue þat ȝe loue · leliest here in erþe, 592
Seiȝth me al ȝour seknesse · & what so sore ȝow greuis.
ȝe knowen icham ȝour kosyn · & bi krist of heuene,
ȝut bi cas of cunsail · ful wel can ich hele,
& be tristy and trew · to ȝow for euer-more, 596
and help ȝow hasteli at al · ȝoure hele to gete,
ȝif ȝe saie me ȝoure sores · & ich se what may gayne."
whan melior þat meke mayde · herd alisau*n*drines wordes,
sche was gretly gladed · of hire gode bi-hest,[3] 600
& wiþ a sad sikyng · seide to hire þanne;—
" a ! curteyse cosyne · crist mot þe it ȝelde
of þi kynde cumfort · þat þow me kuþest nowþe,
þow hast warsched me wel · wiþ þi mede wordes. 604
I ȝiue me al in þi grace · to gete me su*m* hele,
as þow me here has be-hiȝt · of mi harde peynes;
now wol i telle þe my tene · wat so tide after.

[1] Here follows the catchword—"ȝit couþe." [2] MS. "he."
[3] This line and the next are transposed in the MS.

serteynly þis seknesse · þat so sore me greues 608
Is feller þan any frek · þat euer ȝit hadde.
& ofter þan [ten][1] times · hit takeþ me a-daye,
& [ix.][1] times on þe niȝt · nouȝt ones lesse ;
and al comes of a þroly þouȝt · þat þirles min hert ; 612
I wold meng al mi mater · ȝif i miȝt for schame.
ac wond wold ich nouȝt to þe · witow for soþe,
ay whan ich hent þe haches · þat so hard aren.
It komses of a kene þouȝt · þat ich haue in hert 616
of will*i*am þat bold barn · þat alle burnes praisen ;
nis no man vpo*n* mold · þat more worchip winnes.
him so propirli haue i peinted · & portreide in herte,
þat me semes in my siȝt · he sittes eu*er* meke. 620
what man so ich mete wiþ · or mele wiþ speche,
Me þinkes eu*e*rich þrowe · þat barn is þat oþer ;
& fele times haue ich fonded · to flitte it fro þouȝt,
but witerly al in wast · þan worche ich euer. 624
þer-for, curteise cosynes · for loue of crist in heuene,
Kiþe nouȝ þi kindenes · & konseyle me þe best ;
For but ich haue bote of mi bale · bi a schort time,
I am ded as dore-nail · now do al þi wille !" 628

[Fol. 13 b.]
It comes from a heart-piercing thought,

of a thought about that William, whom all praise.

Every man I speak to seems to be William.

Counsel me, cousin, or I am as dead as a door-nail."

Alexandrine was amazed, and said,

þanne alisau*n*drine a-non · after þat ilk,
wax gretly a-wondered · & wel hire bi-þouȝt,
what were hire kuddest comfort · hire care to lisse ;
& seide þanne til hire softily · sone þer-after ; 632
"a ! madame, for marie loue · mornes no lenger !
nis it no sekenes bote þat · so sore ȝouȝ eiles,
I schal þurth craft þat ich kan · keuer ȝou i hope,
Mow i geten a grece · þat i gaynli knowe ! 636
haue ȝe sleiliche[2] it seie · & a-saide ones,
& feled þe sauor & þe swetnesse · þat sittes in þe rote,
hit schal v*er*aly þurth v*er*tue · do vanisch ȝour soris !"
oþer-wise wold sche nouȝt · wissen here ladi 640
bi what maner che ment · last sche were a-greued.

"Mourn not, I will heal you.

I know of a herb whose virtue can cure you."

[1] See note. [2] MS. "ȝe it fleiliche it."

Melior thanked her, and prayed her to get it.

þan þat melior ful mekeli · þat mayden ȝanked,
& preide hire priueli · wiþ pitous wordes,
to gete hire þat gode gras · as sone as sche miȝt. 644
& alisaun*d*rine a-non · answeres and saide,

She said she would try. [Fol. 14.]

" Madame, I wol do mi miȝt · wiþ-oute more speche."
þanne þis maiden melior · gan menden here chere,
þus was ferst here sad sorwe · sesed þat time. 648

Alexandrine planned how to let William know of this,

alisandrine algate þan · after [þat] þrowe
bi-þouȝt hire ful busily · howe best were to werche,
to do will*iam* to wite · þe wille of hire lady,
prop*er*ly vnparceyued · for reproue after. 652

Ful conyng was sche & coynt · & couþe fele þinges,
of charmes & of chau[*n*]tem*e*ns · to schewe harde castis;

and, by her craft, as he lay asleep,

So þurȝh þe craft þat sche couþe · to carpp þe soþe,
as will*iam* þat worþi child · on a niȝt slept, 656
boute burn in his bour · but him-self one,

she made him dream a dream,

a ful selcouþe sweuene · set sche him to mete;
þat melior, þat menskful may · mekli al-one
com ful comliche clad · & kneled him bi-fore, 660
al bi-weped for wo · wisly him þouȝt;
& sikand ful sadli · seide þus him tille—

that Melior came to him, and said,

" a! loueliche lemman! · loke on me nowþe!
I am Meliors, neiȝh marred · man, for þi sake. 664
I meke me in þi merci · for þow me miȝt saue!

"Oh take me, love, in thine arms!"

Leue lord, mi lemman · lacche me in þi narmes,
& wirche wiþ me þi wille · or witt*er*li in hast
—Mi liif lelly is lorn · so loue now me hampris." 668
þus will*ia*m þouȝt witterly · & wiȝtly wiþ þat ilk,
as a gome ful glad · for þat grace fallen,

He tried to do so, but seized his pillow,

He wend to haue lauȝt þat ladi · loueli in armes;
& clipte to him a pulwere · & propirly it gretes, 672
and welcomes hir worþli · for wisseli him þouȝt
þat it was þe menskful mayde · melior his ladi!

and awoke, kissing it.

þat puluere clept he curteisly · & kust it ful ofte,
& made þer-wiþ þe most merþe · þat ani ma*n* schold;
but þan in his saddest solas · softili he a-waked. 677

ak so liked him his layk · wiþ þe ladi to pleie,
þat after he was a-waked · a ful long þrowe,
he wende ful witerly · sche were in is armes; 680 She was gone; it was only his pillow.
ac peter! it nas but is puluere · to proue þe soþe.
but whan he witterly was a-waked · he wayted a-boute, [Fol. 14 b.]
to haue bi-hold þat burde · his blis to encrese.
þanne perceyued he þe puluere · pertely in his armes,
oþer wiȝt was non · wiþ-inne þat chambur.[1] 685
þan brayde he vp of his bed · as burn neiȝh amased,
& loked after þat ladi · for lelli he wende He looked for her in every corner in vain, and sighed, and said,
þat sche here had hed in sum hurne · in þat ilk time,
to greue him in hire game · as þeiȝh he gyled were.
but whan he wist it was wast · al þat he souȝt,
he gan to sike & sorwe · & seide in þis wise:—
"a! ihesu crist, iustise · now iugge þouȝ þe riȝt, 692
how falsly has fortune · founde me nowþe.
nas mi menskful ladi · meliors h[er]e-inne,[2] "Was not my lady Melior here?
& lowed hire to be mi lemman · & lai in myn armes,
oþer elles soþli, sche seide · þat sche dei schuld? 696
ȝis, i-wisse, was it sche · y wot wel þe soþe;
Metyng[3] miȝt it be non · in no maner wise; It could not have been a dream.
so louely lay þat ladi & ich · layking to-gaderes.
& soþly, soþ it is · a selcouþe, me þinkes, 700
whider þat lady is went · and wold no lenger dwelle."
þanne lep he vp liȝteli · & loked al a-boute,
but feȝtly al was fanteme · & al was in wast.
þanne seide he to him-self · sikinde ful soft:— 704
"For soþe, ich am a mad man · now wel ich may knowe, Yet I must be mad to think it could be true,
Forto wene in þis wise · þis wrong metyng soþe.
Min hert is to hauteyn · so hyeȝ to climbe,
so to leue þat ladi · wold louwe hire so moche, 708
þat is an emperours eir · and euene his pere, for she is an emperor's heiress.
to come to swiche a caytif · nay, crist it for-bede
þat ich more of þat matere · so misseliche þenke!

[1] MS. "chanbur."
[2] MS. "he inne." Read "*here* inne."—M. [3] MS. "Metynt."

For þer nys lord in no lond · þat þe liif weldes, 712
emp*er*our ne kud king · knowen so riche,
þat soþli nere simple i-nouȝ · þat semly to haue.

I must be mad to think of such a thing.

ek witterli am i wod · to wene swiche a þing,
þurth a mys metyng · þat swiche a maide wold 716

[Fol. 15.]

Leye hire loue so lowe · lemman me to weld.

I dare not lay my love so high.

nay, ich haue wrouȝt al in wast · ac i nel na more
Leie mi loue so heiȝe · mi ladi for to wilne,
þouȝh it nere for nouȝ[t] elles · but for non in erþe 720
no wot i neu*er* wisseli · of whom i am come.

I know neither my kin nor my country,

Mi-self knowe ich nouȝt mi ken · ne mi kontre noiþer,
For-þi me [bi-]houes[1] · þe buxumlier me bere,
Oþer-wise þan a wiȝh · þat were wiþ his frendes. 724
For ȝif ich wrout oþer-wise · & it were parceyued,
& knowe were in þis kourt · mi kare were þe more.

and I have no friend to speak for me."

for feiþli, frend haue ich non · þat [for][2] me wold speke,
ȝif þemp*er*our were wiþ me wroþ · his wraþþe forto slake.
þer-for mi hauteyn hert · bi-houes me to chast, 729
& bere me debonureli · til better mow bi-tide."

Yet her image so dwelt in his heart,

Lo; in þis wise will*ia*m · wende to haue schaped,
but certes þat semly · sat so in his hert, 732
for merþe of þat metyng · of melior þat schene,
þat heng heui in his hert · & so hard cleued

that it would not away.

þat, to winne al þe world · a-wai wold it neuer.
but gan to studie stoundemele · so stifly þer-onne, 736
þat lelly be a litel while · his langure gan wex,

He left his meat, and lay awake by night,

so þat he morned neiȝh mad · & his mete left,
& forwandreþ in wo · & wakeþ i-wisse on niȝtes,
swiche listes of loue · hadde lapped his hert, 740
þat he nist what bote · his bale best miȝt help.

and arose in the morning, and wrapped himself in his mantle,

but in his mochel morning · on a morwe he rises,
For kare þat kom to his hert · & cloþed him sone,
& whan he geinliche was greiþed · he gript his mantel,

[1] MS. "houes;" but see l. 729, and the note.
[2] Read "that *for* me."—M.

as a weiȝh woful · he wrapped him þer-inne, 745
For no man þat he met · his mornyng schuld knowe.
þat vnglad gom þan goþ · in-to a gardin euene, — and went into a garden
þat was a perles place · for ani prince of erþe, 748
& wynli wiþ heie wal[1] · was closed al a-boute.
þat preui pleyng place · to proue þe soþe,
Ioyned wel iustly · to meliors chamber, — adjoining Melior's chamber.
þider went william euene · wittow for soþe, 752 [Fol. 15 b.]
& vnder a tri appeltre · tok him tid[2] a sete,
þat was braunched ful brode · & bar gret schadue, — He sat beneath her window under an apple-tree,
& was euen vnder a windowe · of þat worþeis chaumber,
For þat william for wo · was bounde so harde. 756
þat tre so fayre was floured · & so ful leued, — so thick-leaved that he could not be seen.
þat no wiȝth miȝt william se · but ȝif he were þe nere.
ac will[i]am to þe window · witterli miȝt sene
ȝif meliors wiþ hire maydenes · in meling þere sete. 760
whan william vnder þat trie tre · hade taken his place, — There watched he from morning till eve.
he set his siȝt sadli · to þat windowe euene,
boute flecchinge or feyntise · from morwe til eue.
but oft cumsed his care · and his colour chaunge[d], 764
so sore longed him to se · þa semly burde.
swiche a sorwe he suffred · a seue-niȝt fulle,
þat neuer mannes mete ne miȝt · in his bodi sinke, — He ate nothing; but was fed with looking his fill towards her chamber.
but held him finliche i-fed · his fille to loke 768
on þe mayde meliors chaumber · for wham he s[o] morned.
euer whan it neiȝed niȝt · noyȝed was he sore,
þan wold he wend to his chamber[3] · & gret wo make;
but no seg þat him serued · miȝt þe soþe wite 772 — None knew why he grieved, or whither he went.
whi him was þanne so wo · ne where he was on dayes;
non durst for drede · him dernly a-spie,
but lett him worche his wille · as wel as him liked.
ac deliuerly was he diȝt · uch day at morwe, 776 — He went every day to the garden,
& feiþli boute felachipe · fond wold he walke,
& go in-to þe gardyn · his greues for to slake,

[1] MS. *repeats* "wal." [2] See note. [3] MS. "chanber."

looking towards Melior's window,

weytende to þe windowe · & his wo newene,
& sike ful mani siþe · and sum time quake ; 780
swiche drede & dol · drouȝ to his hert,
lest he ne schold neu*er* in world · winne þat he ȝerned.

and suffered so that his colour faded.

þurth þe sorwes þat he sufred[1] · soþ forto telle,
al his cler colour · comsed forto fade. 784
Febul wax he & faynt · for-waked a-niȝtes,
ac no wiȝt of þis world · miȝt wite of his care.
but þan tid on a time · as þis tale minges,

[Fol. 16.] One day as he watched,

þat will*ia*m went til þis gardin · his wo fort[2] slake, 788
& vnder his tri appeltre · turned to sitte,
as weiȝh al for-waked · for wo vpon niȝtes.
and as he a-weited to þe windowe · wiȝtly þer-aft*er*,

he fell asleep.

he slod sliȝli a-doun · a-slepe ful harde, 792
as a wo wery[3] weiȝh · for-waked to-fore.
but menge we now of meliors · þat morned þanne

Melior's grief had been as great as his,

as sadli in hire siȝt · or sorer ȝif sche miȝt,
þe loue of loueli will*ia*m · lay hire so nere. 796

and she asked Alexandrine if she had found the herb.

þanne asked sche þis of alisau*n*drine · as þe hap tidde,
Riȝt as will*ia*m woful · so was wox a-slepe,
wher sche hade gete hire gras · þat schold hire greues hele?
"nay, madame, nouȝt ȝut" · seide þe maide þanne, 800

"Not yet," she said, "but let us go into the garden."

"þouȝh haue i fele times fonded · to finde it ȝif i miȝt,
but eu*er* wrouȝt i in wast · þe wors haþ me liked.
ac were it ȝour wille nowe · to worche bi mi rede,
Go we to þe gardyn · to gode may it turne ; 804
For feire floures schal we finde · of foulen song here,
& þurth cu*m*fort may cacche · swiche happ mai falle,
to haue þe better hele · at ȝoure hom-kome."
þarto þis menskful meliors · mekeliche hir graunted,
Forto worche al hire wille · as sche wold deuise. 809

So they went down the steps into the garden,

þanne a-ros sche raddely · & romden riȝt i*n*-fere,
& gan doun bi a grece · in-to þe gardin euene,

[1] MS. "sufreded." See l. 1014. [2] See note.
[3] Or, "werþ."

boute burde or barn · but hem-self tweyne. 812
for alisau*n*drine anon · atteled þat time,
& knewe wel bi hire craft · þat sche hade cast bi-fore,
þat þei witt*er*li þanne schold · wiþ will*iu*m mete.
& whan þe gaye gerles · were in-to þe gardin come, 816 where were fair flowers, and blithe birds,
Faire floures þei founde · of fele maner hewes,
þat swete[1] were of sauor · & to þe siȝt gode;
& eche busch ful of briddes · þat bliþeliche song,
boþe þe þrusch & þe þrustele · bi xxxti of boþe, 820
Meleden ful merye · in maner of here kinde.
& alle freliche foules · þat on þat friþ songe, [Fol. 16 b.]
for merþe of þat may time · þei made moche noyce, that sang merrily for joy of the Maytime.
to glade wiþ uch gome · þat here gle herde. 824
ac meliors for al þat merþe · mornede so stronge,
so harde hacches of loue · here hert hadde þirled,
þat þer nas gle vnder god · þat hire glade miȝt, But nothing could gladden Melior,
but feiþli fo[r] febulnesse · feynt wax sche sone, 828 who sat down to rest under a sycamore.
þat vnder a semli sikamour · sche sett hire to reste,
& þat burde hire by · þat al hir bale wiste.
þan gan Meliors mu*n*ge · þe meschef þat hir eyled;
þat oþer comsede to carp · of cumfort & ioie, 832
& eþer mu*n*ged of þe mater · þat þai most louede.
but alisau*n*drine þer-after · a-non bi a wile, But Alexandrine espied William, and said,
þederward as will*ia*m was · wayted wel ȝerne,
For sche wiste wel y-now · where þat he laye. 836
& þanne seide sche as swiþe · to þat semly mayde,
"Madame, melior, so dere · be Marie in heuene, "Madame, there is some one asleep here,
Me þinkeþ ich se a seg · a-slepe here bi-side.
wheþer he be kniȝt or bachiler · wot i neu*er* for soþe,
ac he semes bi semblant · in sekenes ful harde. 841 who looks very ill; let us go and see."
þer-for, lady, go we loke · wat seknes him eyles,
& what barn þat he be · þa in bale lenges."
þe menskful mayde meliors · þan mekliche saide, 844 Then said Melior to herself,
"a! madame, melior · now mendes ȝoure chere, "Rejoice, Melior, for it is William!"
For y-wisse, ȝond is will*ia*m · þat ȝe so wel loueþ,

[1] MS. "sweto."

sum hard hacche has he had · & hider com to pleiȝe
Forto lissen his langour · & lyes here a-slepe, 848
For þe swete sawour · of þise semly floures!"

Quickly she ran towards him,

Þanne was þat menskful meliors · muchel y-gladed,
& gon þan to þat gome · a god pas al boþe.
& as tit as þei come him to · þe soþe for to telle, 852
þei sett hem doun softly · þat semly be-fore.

and when she saw his face,

& wanne þe mayde meliors · miȝt se his face,
sche þout proly in herte · þat leuer hire were
haue welt him at wille · þan of þe world be quene;
[Fol. 17.] so fair of alle fetures · þe frek was, hire þouȝt. 857

would fain have kissed him, but was afraid of spies.

& fayn sche wold þan in feiþ · haue fold him in hire armes,
to haue him clipped & kest · kenely þat tide,
ac sche dred it to done · for oþer derne a-spyes. 860
alysaundrine þan a-non · attlede here þouȝtes,

Then Alexandrine caused William to dream,

& wiȝtly wiþ here whiles · dede william to mete
þat þat time him þouȝt · þat melior þe hende
and alysaundrine al-one · com him þo tille, 864
& þe mayde melior · ful mekly him brouȝt

that Melior brought him a rose, which at once cured him.

a ful real rose · and redly it him takes.
& whanne he in hond hit hade · hastely hit semede,
þat he was al sauf & sound · of alle his sor greues. 868
& for his langor was so lissed · swich likyng he hadde,
& so gretly was gladed · þat he gan a-wake.

He awoke, and in amazement knelt before her, and greeted her.

& whan he seiȝ þat semly · sitte him bi-fore,
He was al a-wondred · and wiȝtly he vp-rises, 872
& kurteyslyche kneling · þat komli he grett,
& afterward alysaundrine · as he wel out.
& þe mayde melior · ful mekly þan saide,

"Our Lord give thee joy, dear love," said Melior.

"Mi loueli swete lemman · oure lord ȝif þe ioye!" 876
& william þan vnderstod · þe word þat sche saide;
þat sche him called "leue lemman" · it liked so his hert,

He was astonished to hear her say

þat witerly he coupe no word · long þer-after spek,
but stared on here stifly · a-stoneyd for ioye, 880

þat he cast al his colour · and bi-com pale,
and eft red as rose · in a litel while.
so witerly was þat word · wounde to hert,
þat he ferd as a mased man · an marred neiȝ honde, 884
so louely loue þat time · lent him an arewe
hetterly þurth his hert · for þat hende mayde
cald him "leue lemman" · he les al his miȝt.

"dear love," and his colour went and came.

Love had shot an arrow through his heart.

Bot alysaundrine wiste wel · what þat him eyled, 888
& seide to him soberly · þise selue words :—
"swete william, seie me now · what seknes þe greues ?
þi faire hewe is al fade · for þi moche sore ;
& ȝif ich miȝt in ani maner · þe amende, y wold." 892
þan william wiȝtly · in þis wise answered,
sikende ful sadly · for sor at his hert,
"Mi dere gode damisele · my deþ is al ȝare,
so a botteles bale · me byndeþ so harde, 896
nas neuer feller feuer · þat euer frek hadde.
for merthe & alle metes · it makes me to leve,
slepe sertes may [i] nouȝt [1] · so sore it me greues.
& al þis mochel meschef · a meting i wite, 900
þat me com on a niȝt · a-cursed be þat time !
for so hard hacches · haue hold me seþþe,
þa i not in þe world · what is me to rede."
"now swete," seide alisaundrine · "seie me in what wise 904
þat þat hache þe haldes · & how it þe takes ?"
"I-wisse," seide william · "i wol it nouȝt layne,
sum-time it hentis me wiþ hete · as hot as ani fure,
but quicliche so kene a cold · comes per-after ; 908
sum time i siȝh & singe · samen to-geder,
& þan so þroli þouȝtes · þurlen myn herte,
þat i ne wot in þe world · where it bi-comse,
For feiþli in my-self · y fele it nouȝt þanne." 912
þanne alisaundrine a-non · þer-after seide,

Alexandrine asked him what sickness ailed him.

[Fol. 17 b.]

William answered that his was a sorrow without remedy.

It was all owing to a dream.

"Tell me," she answered, "how the pain seizes you."

"It sometimes comes on as hot as fire, and then like a keen chill."

[1] Read "may *i* nouȝt."—M.

"How was it all owing to a dream?"

"will*ia*m, i wold þe pray · þatow me woldest telle
bi what cas al þi care · comsed bi a sweuene?"
"nai sertes, sweting," he seide · "þat schal i neu*er*, 916

"That I will never tell you," he replied.

For no meschef on molde · þat me may falle!
I haue leuer it layne · & þis langour þole,
þeȝh i for dreȝing of þis duel · deie at þe last;
þer schal [no] wiȝth of þe world · wite whi it comsed!"

"Your sickness is perilous," said Alexandrine.

þanne seide alisandrine · "auntrose is þin euel, 921
ful wonderliche it þe weues · wel i wot þe soþe."
"ȝa i-wisse," seide will*ia*m · "wonderli me greues,
for my seknes wiþ my siȝtes · sumtime slakes, 924
& mani times doþ me mourne · mor þan to-fore."

Then said Melior to herself, [Fol. 18.]

Melior þat milde mayde · in þe mene tyme þouȝt,
& seide softily to hire-self · þise selue wordes,
"a! gracious god · grettest of us alle, 928

"God help us twain; my sickness seems like his.

tak hede to þin hond-werk · & help now vs tweyne!
For sertes, þis same sekenes · mi-self it holdes
In alle wise as it doþ will*ia*m · & wors, as ich wene.
& þouh ich se þat is sekenes · sore hit him haldes, 932
for pitously he is a-peyred · þat perles was to siȝt
of fairnesse and of fasoun · þat ani frek schold haue—

If he only knew what I suffer!"

but weilawey! þat he ne wist · what wo y drye,
& haue do lelly for is loue · a wel long while! 936
& but he wiȝtly wite · y-wisse, y am done;
For y dar nouȝt for schame · schewe him mi wille,
but ȝif he wold in ani wise · him-self schewe formest."

Alexandrine perceived all by their looks;

while Meliors in here man*er* · mened to hire-selue, 940
alysau*n*drine a-non · attlede alle here þouȝtes,
sche knewe wel bi kuntenaunce · of kastyng of lokes.
þan wiȝtly to will*ia*m · þise wordes sche sede,
"I see wel be þi semblant · what seknesse þe eyles, 944

and told William she felt sure he was in love.

hele þou it neu*er* [so] hard[1] · al holliche y knowe,
þat it ben lestes of loue · þat þe so hard helden;
þou waltres al in a weih · & wel y vnderstande
whider þe belaunce bremliest · bouwes al-gate. 948

[1] Read "neuer *so* hard."—M. See the next line.

and seþþe y se it is so · soþli y þe warne,
I wol a litel and litel · laskit in hast."
þan will*iam* wel vnderstod · sche wist what him eilede,
& knew al is koueyne · for ouȝt he kouþe hide, 952
he was a-drad to þe deþ · last sche him dere wold.
þan sette he him on knes · & soft seyde hire tille,
"Mercy, menskful mayde · for Marie loue of heuene!
I gif me al in þi grace · my greues to help, 956
For þou miȝt lengþe mi liif · ȝif þe likes sone."
þan alysau*n*drine a-non · answered & saide,
"how miȝt i þe help? · what haue i to þi bote?"
"I-wisse," þan seyde will*iam* · "i wol no lenger hele, 960
My liif, my langor, & my deþ · lenges in þi warde;
but i þe sunner haue socour · of þat swete mayde,
þe comliche creature · þat in þi keping dwelles,
alle the surgens of salerne · ne schul saue mi liue. 964
þer-for loueliche ladi · in þe lis al min hope,
þou miȝt me spakly [saue][1] oþer spille · ȝif þi-self likes."

Alysau*n*drine a-non · þanne answered & sayde,
"now i-wisse, will*iam* · witow for soþe, 968
Seþþe þou sadli hast me said · þe soþe of þi cu*n*saile,
& tellest me treuly · þou trestes to my help,
ȝif i miȝt in ani man*er* · mende þi sorwe,
but i were busi þer a-boute · to blame i were. 972
þ*er*-for certes, be þou sur · seþ it may be no oþer,
holliche al min help · þou schalt haue sone."
þan will*iam* was gretliche glad · & loueliche hire þonked.
þan alisau*n*drine a-no*n* · as sche wel couþe, 976
clepud þat mayde meliors · mekeliche hir tille,
& seide, "a mercy, madame · on þis man here,
þat neȝh is driue to þe deþ · al for youre sake!"
"how so for my sake?" · seide melior þanne; 980
"I wraþed him neu*er* þat i wot · in word ne i*n* dede."
"no sertes, madame, þat is soþ" · saide þat oþer,

Then was he sore afraid, and kneelt to her,

and prayed her to help him.

"How can I help you?" she inquired.

Fol. 18 b.]
"Unless I have some comfort from you, sweet maid, I shall surely die."

"Since you have told me the truth and trust me, I were to blame not to help you.

You shall have all my help."

Then Alexandrine called Melior to her, saying, "Pity this man, who is near death for thy sake;

[1] Read "spakly *saue* other spille."—M.

who has languished for thy love a long while.

"ac he has langured for ȝour loue · a ful long while;
& but ȝe graunt him ȝour grace · him greiþli to help,
& late him be ȝour lemman · lelly for eu*er*, 985
his liif nel nouȝt for langour · last til to-morwe.
þerfor, comeliche creature · for crist þat þe made,
les nouȝt is liif ȝut · for a litel wille. 988

Take him for thy love."

seþþe he so lelly þe loues · to lemma*n* him þou take."
þan meliors ful mekliche · to þat mayde carped,
and seide ful soburli · smyland a litel,
"nou bi god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule, 992

"I would rather save a man's life than kill him," said Melior.

I kepe ȝut for no creature · manquellere be clepud,
ac leuer me were lelly · a manes liif to saue.
seþþe he for me is so marred · & has misfare long,
ful prestely for þi praire · & for þe p*er*ile als, 996

[Fol. 19.]

þat i se him set inne · and to saue his liue,

"To save his life, I will grant him my love."

h[*er*]e i graunt him greþli · on godis holi name,
lelliche mi loue for euer · al mi lif time,
& gif a gift here to god · & to his gode moder, 1000
þat oþer lud, whil i liue · schal i loue neuer!"

Then William thanked God heartily,

whan will*ia*m herd þise wordes · i hete þe forsoþe,
he kneled quikli on knes · & oft god þonked, 1003
& seide, "god! þat madest man · & al middel erþe,
a miȝti miracle for me · hastow wrouȝt noþe."

and he and Melior were pledged to each other.

þan meked he him to meliors · on alle maner wise,
as þe gladdest gom · þat euer god wrouȝt.
& sche sertes bi hire side · þe same him graunted, 1008
to worche wiþ hire al his wille · as he wel liked.

Then they clasped and kissed each other, and told each other of their sufferings.

þan eiþer hent oþer · hastely in armes,
& wiþ kene kosses · kuþþed hem to-gidere, 1011
so þat no m*ur*þe upo*n* mold · no miȝt hem bet haue lyked.
& tit þanne told eche til oþ*er* · here tenes & here sorwe,
þat sadly for eiþers sake · hadden suffred long.

Alexandrine thought she would not be missed,

þanne alisau*n*drine anon · attlede þe soþe,
þat hire maistres & þat ma*n* · no schuld hire nouȝt misse, 1016
þeȝh sche walked a while · wide from here siȝt,

for sche trowed trewly · to talke þe soþe,
were sche out of þe weye · þat will*ia*m wold fonde
for to pleie in þat place · þe priue loue game, 1020
& to hete here þan[1] to layke · here likyng þat time.
sche goþ a-boute in-to þe gardyn · for to gader floures,
& to wayte þat no weiȝh · walked þer-inne,
for drede of descuueryng · of þat was do þere. 1024
will*ia*m wel wiþ meliors · his wille þan dede,
& layked þere at lyking · al þe long daye,
til þe su*n*ne was neiȝh set · soþli, to reste.
þanne alisau*n*drine at arst · þan antresse he*m* tille, 1028
& mekly to meliors · "madame," þan sche seide,
"haue ȝe geten þe gras · þat i ȝou geynliche hiȝt?
I trowe trewli be þis time · ȝour sorwe be passed;
eiþer of ȝou, as y leue · is god leche til oþer, 1032
alle þe surgyens of salerne · so sone ne couþen
haue ȝour lango*ur*es a-legget · i leue for soþe."
þan will*ia*m wax wiȝtly · wonderli a-schamed,
& he & meliors mercy · mekly hire criede 1036
to kuuere wel here cu*n*seile · for cas in þis erþe,
& þroli hire þonked · moni þousand siþes;
"For sche hade brouȝt hem of bale · boþe," þei seide,
"& i-lengþed here lif · mani long ȝere." 1040

and had better withdraw.

She went away to gather flowers, and to watch that no one came there.

Just before sunset, Alexandrine returned,

[Fol. 19 b.]

and asked them if they both felt they were cured.

They prayed her to keep their counsel, and thanked her often.

Alisaundrine anon · after þat ilke
bad meliors manly · here merþe þan stinte,
& seide, "it is so neiȝh niȝt · þat nedes mote ye parte;
I drede me of descuuering · for ȝe haue dwelled long."
"allas! þis mochel meschef" · saide melior þanne, 1045
"þis day is schorter to siȝt · þan it semed euere!"
& will*ia*m seide þe same · soþli þat time.
but alisaundrine anon · answerede & seide, 1048
"Make ȝe no mourning · for ȝe may mete eft
dernli hennes-forþ eche day · whan ȝou dere likes;
for-þi hasteli boþe · heiȝe ȝou a-sunder."

She warned Melior that it was near night,

who lamented the shortness of the day.

She reminded them that they might meet again.

[1] Read "& to-gedere þan" (?) But see note.

So they kissed, and took leave of each other, and returned happy,

for they were quite cured.

William was beloved both by rich and poor, and especially by the emperor.

[Fol. 20.]

Alexandrine kept their counsel well.

Now it befell that the Duke of Saxony made war on the emperor of Rome.

No stone walls withstood his assaults.

The emperor was greatly grieved,

and sent messengers to all his lords

to come to him fully arrayed.

þanne seiȝ þei no socour · but sunder þanne þei moste ;
wiþ clipping & kessing · þei kauȝt here leue, 1053
& eiþer tok tit is way · to his owne chau*m*ber,
blisful for þei were botned · of here bales strong,
seþþen hastely were þei hol · & haden alle here wille.
wiþ alle listes of loue · alle longe ȝeres 1057
priueli vnp*er*ceyued · þei pleyed to-gedere,
þat no seg vnder sunne · souched no gile.
so wel was will*ia*m bi-loued · wiþ riche & wiþ pore, 1060
so fre to feffe alle frekes · wiþ ful faire ȝiftes,
þat þemp*er*our soþli him-self · sou*er*aynli him loued,
& seþþe alle oþer seges · þat seiȝen him wiþ eiȝen;
& algate alisaundrine · at alle poyntes hem serued 1064
so sliȝliche, þat no seg · souched non euele,
but alle gaue*n* god word · to gomes þat hem plesede.

Hit tidde after bi time · as þe tale mi*n*ges,
þe douȝti duk of saxoyne · drow to þat londe 1068
wiþ ou*er*-gret[1] ost · godmen of armes,
wrongly forto werre · wiþ þemp*er*our þat time.
& wiþ bobaunce & wiþ bost · brent fele tounes,
no strengþe him wiþ-stod · of sad stonen walles, 1072
but bet a-doun burwes · & brutned moche peple,
so þat duel was to deme · þe duresse þat he wrouȝt.
whanne þese tyding were told · to þemp*er*our of rome,
he was gretly a-greued[2] · no gome þort him blame, 1076
þat eni weiȝh of þe world · schuld werre on his lond.
his sondes þanne he sente · swiþe al a-boute
to alle þe lordes of his land · to lasse & to more,
þat ouȝten him omage · or ani seute elles, 1080
& warned hem werfore · he wiȝtly hem of-sent,
& het hem alle hiȝe þider · as harde as þei miȝt,
wel warnished for þe werre · wiþ clene hors & armes.
whanne þemp*er*ours komau*n*dme*n*t · was kud al a-boute, 1084

[1] MS. "ou*er* gart gret;" see note. [2] MS. "a-greues."

Mani was þat bold barn · þat busked þider sone,
kinges & kud dukes · & kniȝtes ful gode,
& oþer bold burnes · a-boute sexti þousand,
alle boun to batayle · in ful briȝt armes. 1088
and riȝt in-to rome · alle þe rinkes drowe,
to wite þemperours wille · how he wirche þouȝt.

Kings, dukes, knights, and men came to him, 60,000 in all; and all ready for battle.

Whanne william þat worþi child · wist of þat fare,
was no glader gom · þat euer god made, 1092
he went euen to þemperour · & enys him sayde,
knelyng on his kne · curteysli & faire,
"Gode sir, for goddis loue · grant me a bone;
ȝif me þe ordur of kniȝt · to go to þis dedus, 1096
& i hope to heuene king · mi help schal nouȝt fayle,
þat i nel manly wiþ mi miȝt · meynte[ne] ȝour riȝt."
þemperour was gretly glad · & graunted his wille,
& made him kniȝt on the morwe · & mo for his sake.
of proude princes sones · douȝti men toward, 1101
Fulle foure schore · for williames loue,
& ȝaf hem hors & armes · as an hend lord schold,
& made william here wardeyn · as he wel miȝt, 1104
to gye & to gouerne · þe gay yong kniȝtes.
& whanne þempe[r]ours ost · was holli a-sembled,
he told to-fore þe grete · his tene & his harmes,
how þe duk of saxoyne · dede him gret wrong, 1108
brent his nobul burwes · & his burnes quelled,
& komande hem kendely · here cunseile to ȝeue,
In what wise were best · to wreke him þanne.
& alle seide at o sawe · "sire, we ȝou rede, 1112
strecches forþ wiþ ȝour ost · stinteþ no lenger,
& fondes to do þe duk · what duresse ȝe may.
hampres him so harde · to sum cost þat be drawe,
sewes him to sum cite · & a-sege him þere, 1116
til ȝe wiþ fin fors · þe freke haue wonne."

When William heard of it, he was very glad,

[Fol. 20 b.]
and prayed the emperor to grant him a boon, viz. to knight him.

The emperor gladly knighted both him and 80 others, making William their warden.

The emperor tells his men what harm the king of Saxony has done,

and asks their advice.

They advise him to pursue the duke to some city, and shut him up there.

Whanne þemperour wist wel · þ[e] wille of his cunsayle,

They set out, well furnished with provisions.

he diȝt him deliu*er*ly · & dede him on gate
holly wiþ al his herde · þat he hade a-sembled. 1120
& wel þei were warnestured · of vitayles i-now,
plentiuosly for al peple · to passe where þei wold.
& so harde þei hiȝed þan · i hote þe for soþe,

They soon came to where the duke was.

þat al þe clene cu*m*panye · com to þe place 1124
neiȝ þere as þe douȝti duk · duresse so wrouȝt.
to þe duk was it told tit · trewli þe soþe,
how þemp*er*our wiþ ost[1] · þider was come,
to a-wreke hi*m* of þe wrong · þat þan was wrouȝt þere,

The duke sends to defy [Fol. 21.]

& swiþe for bobau*n*ce & bost · burnes he sent 1129
enuiously to þemp*er*our · & egged him swiþe
bi a certayne day · bataile to a-bide,

and challenge the emperor.

or elles, he sent him to say · schortely he wold 1132
bruttene alle hise burnes · & brenne his londes.

The emperor tells William of this challenge.

þise tyding were told · to þemp*er*our sone,
& wiȝtly whan he þanne wist · will*ia*m he calle[d],[2]
þat ȝong bold bachiler · & bliue him told 1136
how despitously þe duk · of þat dede him warned,
to be boun be a certayne day · batayle to holde.
sir will*ia*m ful wisly · þise wordes þanne seide,

William says he hopes they will abate the duke's pride.

" sir, god for his grace · graun*t* ȝou wel to spede, 1140
to a-bate þe bost · of þat breme duke.
& so hope i wel, sire · we schal atte best."
ful menskfully to þe messangeres · þemp*er*our þan seide,
he wold be boun bleþeli · þe bold batayle to hold, 1144
& þei bliue dude hem forþ · & þe duk tolde.

Both hosts prepare for the battle.

þan boþe p*ar*tiȝes prestly · a-paraylde hem þat time
of alle tristy a-tir · þat to batayle longed,
& made hem alle merie · in þe mene while, 1148
til þe selue day þat was set · soþly was come,
& boþe p*ar*tyes here place · p*er*tiliche hade chosen
In a ful fayre feld · feiþly to telle.
— þanne busked þei here batayles · on þe best wise, 1152

[1] MS. has a blank space between "ost" and "þider;" see note.
[2] Read "called."—M.

& whanne þe renkes were arayed · redly as þei wold,
bugles & bemes · men gun blowe fast, — The bugles and trumpets are blown.
& alle maner menstracie · þere was mad þanne,
forto hardien þe hertes · of here heiȝh burnes. 1156
þanne bi-gan þe batayle · breme for þe nones; — The battle begins.
Mani strok in litel stou*n*de · sternely was þer ȝeuen,
& mani a bold burne · sone brouȝt of liue.
but schortly for to telle · þe schap of þis tale, 1160
þe duk hade þe douȝtiere me*n* · to deme þe soþe, — The duke's men were most numerous.
& mani mo þan þemp*er*our · & þei so manly fouȝten,
þat balfully þe ferst batayle · þei brutned to deþe,
& þai ful fast for fere · gu*n*ne fle þan þat miȝt; 1164
but þe almau*n*s seweden sadly · & slowe dou*n* riȝtes. — [Fol. 21 b.] The Almayns prevail against the Romans.
whan þemp*er*our say þat siȝt · his me*n* so i-quelled,
hi*m* was wonderli wo · witow for soþe.
ful pitousli þan preiede he · to þe prince of heuene 1168
forto giif him grace · his gomes to saue,
& seide, "heiȝh king of heuene · for þi holy name, — The emperor prays to God, pleading the justice of his cause,
ne fauore nouȝt so my [fo][1] · þat falsly me so marres.
for god what[2], i na gult him neu*er* · to gif hi*m* enche-
sou*n* 1172
forto wirch me no wrong · ne werre on my londe.
& lord! he is my lege man · lelly þou knowes,
for holly þe londes þat he has · he holdes of mi-selue,
þer-for þe wrong*er* he wirches · al þe world may know. — and that the duke is the wrongdoer.
for-þi a mynde on me, lord · for þi moder loue, 1177
help me haue þe herre hand · her-affter in my riȝt!"

Will*ia*m þe ȝong kniȝt · was so neiȝh be side,
þat he herd þe pytous pleint · þat þemp*er*our made, — William hears him, and calls to his men
& siked for sorwe þer-of · sore wiþ-alle. 1181
but quicly clepud he · þe ȝong kniȝtes alle,
& seide, "leue lordinges · lestenes to mi sawe;
nouȝ go we kiþe oure kniȝthod · for *cri*stes loue of — that it is time to prove their knighthood.
heuene, 1184

[1] Read "my *foe* that falsly."—M. [2] *Sic.* Read "wot."

Lo, oure folk ginneþ to falle · for defaute of help.
lettes nouȝt for ȝoure liues · ȝour lord forto socoure,
hasteli wiþ god hert nouȝ · hiȝes ȝou to þe dede, 1187
& ho-so faileþ for feyntyce · wild fur him for-brenne!"

William's fierce onset.

þan wiȝtly boute mo wordes · will*ia*m ginnes ride,
fresly toward here fos · as frek out of witte;
þere þe pres was p*er*elouste · he p*ri*ked in formest,
& blessed so wiþ his briȝt bront · a-boute i*n* eche side,
þat what rink so he rauȝt · he ros neu*er* after. 1193
& soþli forto seie · wiþ-inne a schort while,

He slays six of the greatest with his own hand,

will*ia*m wiþ his owne hond · so wiȝtliche pleide,
þat he slow six of þe grettes[t] · soþ forto telle, 1196
& þat douȝtiest were of dede · of þe dukes ost.

including the duke's nephew and his steward.

þat on was his neuew · a nobul kniȝt of armes,
þat oþer was his stiward · þat stiȝtled al his meyne.
[Fol. 22.]
þe oþ*er* were lordes of þat lond · lelly of þe best. 1200
& whanne þe duk was war · how will*ia*m him demeyned,
& how balfully he brutned · his burnes to deþe,
& nameliche for his newe · þat nam he most to herte,

The duke is mad with wrath, and points out William to his men.

he wax neiȝ ouȝt of his witte · for wraþ & for anger,
& clepud on his kniȝtes · þat kene were & nobul, 1205
& seide, "lordinges for my loue · no lenger ne stintes,
but chases þat kene kniȝt · þat þis kare vs werches.
Loo, how luþerly þat lud · leyes on oure burnes, 1208
non may is sterne strok · wiþstande þat he hittes."
þus despitusly þe duk · drayed him þanne,

They rush off to attack William,

þat his kniȝtes swiþe swore · what [so] it bi-tidde,
þei wold winne will*ia*m wiȝtly · oþer quik or dede. 1212
þan ride to-gedere a gret route · of rinkes ful nobul,
& went euen to sir will*ia*m · & wonderli him bi-sette;
ac he wiþ douȝti dentes · defended him long,

who is at last overpowered and captured.

but, soþliche for to telle · so was he ou*er*-macched, 1216
þat þei wiþ fyn force · for-barred his strokes,
& wou*n*dede him wikkedly · & wonne him of his stede,
& bounden him as bliue · him bale to wirche,
& drowen him toward þe duk · his dom forto here.

but will*ia*m whiȝes · þat wiȝtly of-seiȝyen, 1221 — But William's men come to his rescue,
& demened hem douȝtili · dintes te dele,
þe ȝong kene kniȝtes · so kudden here strengþe,
þat þei wonne he*m* wiȝtly · weyes ful large, 1224
til þei hadde perced þe pres · p*er*tily to here maister,
& rescuede him rediliche · for[1] rinkes þat him ladden. — and release and unbind him.
þan þei hi*m* vnbond bliue · & brouȝt him his stede,
& triliche was he a-tired · in ful tristy armes; 1228
his scheld on his schulder · a scharp swerd in honde.
& whan þis will*ia*m was ȝare · he waited him a-beute, — Fierce as a lion, William renews the attack,
leþerly as a lyoun · he lepes in-to þe p*r*ese,
prestly þer as þe pres · of peple was þikkest. 1232
þanne lente he swiche leuere · to ledes þat he of-rauȝt,
þat þe lif sone he les · þat lauȝt ani dint,
& eu*er* þan drow he to þe duk · deland swiche paye. — [Fol. 22 b.] cutting his way through to the duke.
& as sone as he him seiȝ · he sesed a spere, 1236
& dressed him to þe duk · presteli to iuste.
& whan þe duk was war · þat he wold come, — The duke encounters him fiercely.
boute feyntice of feuer[2] · he festned his spere,
& grimly wiþ gret cours · eiȝþer gerdeþ oþer. 1240
& will*ia*m wiþ god wille · so wel þe duk hitt,
þat þurth scheld & scholder · þe scharpe sp*er*e grint,
& hetterly boþe hors & man · he hurled to þe grou*n*de, — William hurls him to the ground.
þanne liȝtly lep he a-doun · & lauȝt out his brond, 1244
& deliuerliche to þe duk · deuoteliche he seide,
"sire, þou seidest me ȝer-while · þou schuldest me do quelle, — William tells the duke he is thankful for his own escape,
& madest þi men me binde · meschef to þole;
but gretly y þonk god · þat gart me a-chape, 1248
& dede þe wante þi wille · for þou wrong þoutest.
but, sire, in þe same seute · sett artow nouȝ,
& y am prest as þi prisou*n* · to paye þe my ransum!
ȝeld þe to me ȝeply · or ȝerne þou schalt deie, 1252 — and it is now for him to crave mercy.
For alle þe me*n* vpo*n* mold · ne mow it now lette."

[1] Read "fro." [2] Read "boute feyntice, on feuter" (?)

Þe duk þan was in drede · & wend to deie sone,
& lelly, þouȝh him loþ þouȝt · no lenger to striue,
swiþe he ȝald vp his sword · to saue þanne his liue, 1256
& seide, "man, for þi mensk · haue mercy on me nouþe,
lette me nouȝt lese þe liif ȝut · lord, y þe bi-cheche."
þanne william witly · as a wiȝh hende,
receyued of þat riche duk · realy his swerde, 1260
& euen to þemperour · wiþ him þan he hiȝed.
wanne þemperour seiȝh william come · & wiþ him þe duke,
he was on þe gladdest gome · þat miȝt go on erþe;
& william þanne to welkome · he wendes him aȝeynes,
& clipte him kindeli · & kest fele siþes. 1265
þan william wiȝtly · as he wel couþe,
profered him þat prisoner · prestely at his wille
to do þan wiþ þe duk · what him dere þouȝt. 1268
þemperour þat worþi william · wel oft þan þonked
[Fol. 23.] of þe grete grace þat god · godliche þere schewede,
& strokes was þer delt na mo · fram þe duk was take.
For al his folk þan gunne fle · as fast as þei miȝt, 1272
& he þat hadde best hors · þan held him best saued.
but þemperours men manly · made þe chace,
& slowen doun bi eche side · wham þei of-take miȝt,
but ȝif þei manly hem meked · mercy to crie. 1276
& euer william so wiȝtly · went hem a-mong
to þe boldest burnes · as he bi-fore hadde,
þat soþly dar y seie · þurth his socour þanne,
Riȝt fewe went a-wey · vn-woundet or take. 1280
ac hadde þe day last lenger · lelli to seye,
no wiȝt a-wei hadde schaped · i wot wel þe soþe.
but þe niȝt was so neiȝh · þat non miȝt sen oþer
þe furþe del of a furlong · from him þat time. 1284
& in þat derk þe dukes [men][1] · wiþ-drow hem manie,
& ho-so hardest miȝt hiȝe · held him nouȝt bi-giled.
þemperour[2] wiþ moche merþe · his men þan meled;

The duke yields up his sword, and asks for mercy.

William takes his sword, and takes him to the emperor,

who embraces and kisses William for joy.

Then William delivered the duke to the emperor.

The duke's men fled away as fast as they could.

The Romans pursued them, slaying and taking prisoners,

so that very few of them got away.

Night fell, and it grew very dark,

and some got away in the darkness.

[1] Read "the dukes *men*." —M. [2] MS. "þempour."

& whanne þei samen were a-sembled · soþ for to telle,
þei hadde take þat time · of trie grete lordes 1289
Fulle fiue hundered · of ful nobul prisouns,
wiþ-oute alle þe burnes · þat in batayle deide.
þan was þemperour greteli glad · & ofte god þonked,
& williams werk · þat he so wel hadde spedde. 1293
& holliche þanne wiþ his host · hiȝede to here tentes
wiþ merþe of alle menstracye · & made hem attese,
& turned to rest at time · til erliche a morwe. 1296
& wanne þei were a-rise · þei remewed to cherche,
& herden holly here masse · & afterward sone
þemperour al holliche · his cunseyle dede clepe,
& sone bi here a-sent · at þat selue time, 1300
Riȝt as william wold · þat wisly him radde,
alle þe douȝthi lordes · of þe dukis were take;
he dede fecche hem him bi-fore · & freyned hem swiþe,
ȝif þei wold of him holly · halde alle here londes. 1304
& þei graunted godli · ful glad of þat sawe,
& alle anon riȝtes · þere omage him dede,
& · þemperour wel loueliche · deliuered he[m] þenne,
& sente wiþ hem sondes · to saxoyne þat time, 1308
& nomen omage in his name · nouȝt forto layne,
Forto riȝtleche þat reaume real · of riche & of pore.
whanne þat dede was do · dernly at wille,
and alle lele lawes · in þat lond sette, 1312
& alle þe peple held hem payed · pes forto haue;
whanne þemperour it wist · he was wel a-payed,
& loueliche wiþ alle his lordes · to lumbardie fares,
wiþ alle þe merþe vpon molde · þat man miȝt diuise;
but feiþli his felachipe · forþ wiþ him he hadde. 1317
þe douȝty duk of saxoyne · þe duel þat he made,
for his peple was slayn · & to prison take,
& wist þan he hade wrongly · wrouȝt þurȝth his pride;
& swiche duel drow to hert · for his dedus ille, 1321
þat he deide on þe fifte day · to talke þe soþe.
whanne þemperour þat wist · wiȝtly he comanded,

Five hundred had been taken, and many slain.

The Romans retire to their tents.

Next morning, they go to church and hear mass.

The prisoners are brought, and asked if they will submit to the emperor.

[Fol. 23 b.]

They gladly do him homage, and are released.

All being thus settled as regarded Saxony,

the emperor marched to Lombardy.

The duke of Saxony felt such grief for the wrong he had done,

that he died on the fifth day.

He is buried honourably.

to burye him as out to be · swiche a burne nobul,
wiþ alle worchipe & wele; · so was he sone.[1] 1325

The emperor returns to Rome.

þan remued þemperour · toward rome euene,
& wiȝtly william wiþ him · þat was wounded sore;
but lelly nobul leches · loked to his woundes, 1328
þat seide he schuld be sauf · & sweteliche heled.

sending messengers before him to his daughter.

messangers ful manly · þemperour þanne sente,
by-fore to his dere douȝter · to do hire to wite
þat he come wiþ his companie · as[2] crist wold, al saf.
þe messangeres ful manly · to meliors þanne spedde,

The messengers greet Melior, and tell their message.

& gretten hire godli · whan þei þat gode seie, 1334
& mynged here message · to þat mayde hende,
how hir fader in helþe · hom̄ wold come
feiþli wiþ-inne þe fourtene-niȝt · wiþ his frekes bold.
Gret merþe to þe messangeres · meliors þan made, 1338
for þe tidy tidinges · þat tiȝtly were seide.

[Fol. 24.]

Melior asks if the enemy gave them much trouble,

"nouȝ, faire frendes, be ȝour feiþ · fond ȝe ani lette
of segges of þe oþer side · þat sette ȝou a-geynes?"
"o madame!" seide þe messageres · "what mele ȝe
noupe?
seþþe crist deide on þe croyce · mankinde to saue,

and they say, it was a very sharp encounter.

ȝe ne herde neuer, y hope · of so hard a cunter, 1344
ne of so fele burnes · at on batayle slayne!"
"telles how ȝou tidde" · seide meliors þanne.
"Madame," seide þe messageres · "be marie in heuen,

The duke's numerous host would have prevailed, but for the succour of a certain knight,

þe duk hadde so gret an host · of gode men of armes,
þat soþli al oure side · sone slayn hadde bene, 1349
nadde þe socour of o seg · þat in oure side dwelleþ,
þat haþ lengþed al oure [liues][3] · leue ȝe forsoþe,
þurth þe douȝti dedes · þat he haþ do þere." 1352

i. e. William, the one but newly knighted.

"swete sire, what is he?" · þat seide meliors sone.
"I-wisse," he seide, "it is william · þat is newe kniȝted,
he may lelly be hold a lord · & ledere of peples,
Forto weld al þe world · to wisse & to rede, 1356

[1] This line and the preceding one are transposed in the MS.
[2] MS. "al." [3] Read "al oure *liues*."—M. Cf. l. 1360.

for þer nis king vnder crist · þat he ou*er*-com nolde.
I-wisse, nade his werk be · we mow nouȝt for-sake,
þi fader and al his folk · so misfaren hadde,
þat alle here liues in a stounde · hadde be lore." 1360
þanne told þei hire tiȝtly · al þe trewe soþe,
at how miche meschef · here men were formest,
& seþþe how wiȝtly will*iam* · went to here foos,
& dede deliuerly nym þe duk · to talke þus formest;
& seþþe þe grettes[t] lordes · he garte here liif tine, 1365
& also þei told trewli · how he was take him-selue,
& reddely wiþ his owne rinkes · rescued after;[1]
& seþþe what dedes he dede · he tok þe selue duk, 1368
and brouȝt þurth is bolde dedes · þe batayle to hende;
& seþen how þe duk for duel · deyde in here ward,
& how al saxoyne was set · wiþ wel sadde lawes,
to wirche here faderes wille · þurȝth will*iam* dedes.
& whan þis tale was told · meliors tyt seide, 1373
"leue lordinges, for my loue · lelly me telles,
comes þat will*iam* wiþ my fader · & weldes his hele?"
"ȝe sertes, madame," seide þei · "he sewes ȝour fader;
but wel weldes he nouȝt his hele · for wonded was he sore, 1377
þat greue*n* him gretly · but god may do bote."
"For mary loue," seide meliors · "mai he be heled?"
"ȝa certes, madame · he is so sounde nowþe, 1380
þat he may redly ride & rome · whan þat him likes."
Meliors to þe messageris · þan made gret ioye,
for þe tyding þat þei told · touchend hire fader.
but i hote þe, in hert · sche hade swiche blisse, 1384
þat neue*r* womma*n* in þis world · miȝt weld more,
for hire louely lemma*n* · hade swiche los wonne,
to bere him best in þat batayle · wiþ so breme dedus.
þanne made þei hem [merie][2] · to make schort tale, 1388

But for him, the battle would have been lost.

But William attacked and took the duke.

He was once taken himself, but his men rescued him.

The duke had died of pure grief.

[Fol. 24 *b*.] She asks if William was coming home with her father.

They said he was coming, sound and well, though he had been wounded.

Melior was very glad to hear of William's doughty deeds.

[1] The MS. has "rescued him after"; but either *wiþ* or *him* must be struck out.

[2] The alliteration would lead us to supply *merie*.—M. See l. 1409.

After a week, the emperor arrives.

soþly al þat seueniȝt; · & so, atte last,
þemperour & alle peple · to his palays come;
Receyued was he of romaynes · realy as lord.

Mellor goes out to meet him,

þanne meliors ful mekly · wiþ maydenes fele, 1392
ferde out a-ȝens hire fader · & faire him gret,
& hire louely lemman · lelly next after,
& made hem as moche ioye · as miȝt any burde;

kissing her father, and William afterwards.

Kyndeliche clipping · and kessing hire fader, 1396
& wiþ a curteise cuntenaunce · william next after,
for no seg þat it seye · schuld schoche but gode.

She whispered to William to come to her chamber.

but priueli un-perceyued · sche praide william þanne,
to seche softily to hire chaumber · as sone as he miȝt.
& he bi quinte contenance · to come he granted, 1401
for he ne durst openly · for ouer-trowe of gile;
but wel sche knew þurth konnyng · at þat cas his wille.

The Romans make great joy, only lament for their friends slain.

to long mater most it be · to myng al þe ioye, 1404
& þe real romayns array · for here lordes sake,
& þe mochel mornyng · þei made for here frendes,
whanne þei wist witterly · whiche in batayle deyde.
but confort for þe conquest · þei cauȝt sone after, 1408
& made hem as mery · as ani men couþe.[1]

[Fol. 25.] William went to Mellor when he saw opportunity.

& william went to meliors · whan he seiȝ time,
& layked him at likyng · wiþ þat faire burde
pleyes of paramours · vn-parceyued longe time, 1412
so sliliche, þat no seg · scouched non ille.

Alexandrine kept their counsel well.

but algate alysaundrine · atte wille hem serued,
þat non knew here cunseile · but þei þre one.

But þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after, 1416
þemperour erded stille in rome · at þe ester tide,

One Easter-tide, the emperor summons all his lords and ladies.

& for þat solempne sesoun[2] · dede somoun alle þe grete,
of lordes & ladies · þat to þat lond partened.
and alle to his comandement · comen ful sone, 1420
& derly at þat day · wiþ deynteyes were þei serued.
as þei were meriest at mete · to menge al þe soþe,

[1] Catchword—"& william."

[2] MS. "sofou."

xxx busy burnes · barounes ful bolde,
– comen in manly message · fro þemperour of grece, 1424
& bi kinde of kostant-noble · keper was þanne.
þe messageres riȝt realy · were arayde, for soþe,
– al in glimerand gold · greþand[1] to riȝtes,
It were tor for to telle · al here atyr riche. 1428
but euer to þemperour · alle þei ȝede in-fere,
& kurtesliche vpon here knes · þei komsed him grete
Godli fro þemperour of grece · & fro his gode sone.
& þemperour ful semly · seide to hem þanne, 1432
" he þat made man mest · ȝour liues mot saue,
& alle ȝoure clene companie · crist ȝif hem ioye
for þe menskfulles[t] messageres · þat euer to me come!"

As they feasted, 30 men came from the emperor of Greece,

all richly attired in gold.

The emperor greets them, and asks their message.

On of þe barons bold · bi-gunne to schewe here nedes,
þat was a gret lord in grece · roachas he hiȝt, 1437
& seide soberly to þemperour · in þis selue wise,
" Leue lord & ludes · lesten to mi sawes!
þe gode emperour of grece · þe grettest of us alle, 1440
whas messageres we be mad · to munge ȝou his wille,
sendes you to seie · he has a sone dere,
on þe triest man to-ward · of alle douȝti dedes,
þat any man vpon molde · may of here, 1444
þat schal be emperour after him · of heritage bi kynde.
& he haþ oft herde sayd · of ȝoure semly douȝter,
how fair, how fetis sche is · how freli schapen; 1447
& for þe loos on hire is leide · & loue of ȝour-selue,
he prayeth, lord, vowche-sauf · þat his sone hire wedde.
Grucche nouȝt þer-a-gayn · but godli, i rede,
Graunte þis faire forward · fulfillen in haste.
& ȝif ye so doþ, i dar seie · & soþliche do proue, 1452
sche schal weld at wille · more gold þan ȝe siluer;
& haue mo solempne cites · and semliche casteles,
þan ȝe treuly han smale tounes · o[r] vntydi houses;
& herof, sire, wiȝtly · ȝour wille wold we knowe. 1456

A great lord, named Roachas, replies

that the emperor of Greece has a dear son

[Fol. 25 b.]

who is to be emperor after him,

who wishes to marry Melior.

She is to have more gold than ye have silver.

[1] We ought probably to read *greithed*.—M.

As the emperor's lords are all there, he can give his answer at once.

þe grete lordes of ȝour land · beþ lenged now here,
ȝe mow wiȝtly now wite · ȝour wille & ȝour rede,
& wiȝtly do vs to wite · what answere ȝou likes." 1459

He and his lords assent.

þemperour calde his cunseil · for to knowe here wille,
& godli boute grucching · alle graunted sone,
& setten a serteyne day · þat solempte to holde ;
& sad seurte was sikered · on boþe sides þanne,

The marriage is to be made at Midsummer.

þat menskful mariage to make · at midesomer after. 1464
sone were þe messagers made · mildli at ese,
while hem liked lende · & lelly, whan þei wente,
Grete ȝiftes were giue · & of gold & of seluer,

The messengers return to Greece, loaded with gifts.

& þei wiȝtly went hom · wiþ ioye & wiþ merþe. 1468
þe answere of here herend · þemperour þei tolde;
Gret murþe was mad · for þat message in rome,

The report of the marriage is spread through Rome.

& þe word went wide · how þe mayde was ȝeue
rifliche þurth-out rome · & eche a rynk was bliþe 1472
þat þe milde meliors · so mariede scholde bene
to þemperours eir of grece · & euerich man wiþ ioye
teld it forþ til oþer · tiȝtli al a-boute.

William heard of it as he was at play,

but þe worþi william · þer-of wist he nouȝt, 1476
For he was atte a bourdes · þer bachilers pleide.
whanne þe tiding[1] was þer told · witow forsoþe,
out of þat faire felachip · ferde he þan sone

[Fol. 26.]

as mekeli as he miȝt · lest eni mysse trowede ; 1480
but whan he was passed þe pres · he prikede as swiþe

and rode home, feeling well-nigh mad.

as he miȝt hiȝe his hors · for hurtyng of spors ;
neiȝh wod of witte · for woo of þat sawe,
for he schold lese his lemman · his liif þan he hated. 1484
wiþ care was he ouer-come · bi þat he com to his inne,

He went to bed and fell sick.

þat he for bale as bliue · to his bed went,
& siked þanne so sore · þe soþe forto telle, 1487
þat uch wiȝh þat it wist · wend he ne schuld keuer.

All who heard of it were much grieved.

& whan hit was wist in rome · þat william was sek,
mochel was he mened · of more & of lasse ;
for a beter bi-loued barn · was neuer born in erþe,

[1] MS. "diting"; cf. l. 1493.

þan he was wiþ ich wiȝt · wil he woned in rome. 1492
þe tiding þan were tiȝtly · to þemperour i-told,
& he þan swoned for sorwe · & swelt neiȝhonde ;
but kniȝtes him vp cauȝt · & comfort him beter.
& whan he þurth comfort · was comen of his care, 1496
he went wiȝtli to will*ia*m · to wite how he ferde,
& kniȝtes folwed him forþ · fiue oþer sixe.
anon as he com him to · he asked how he ferd.
"sire!" þan seide he softly · "certes, so ille. 1500
þat i leue my lif · last nouȝt til to morwe.
but god, sire, for his grete miȝt · graunt ȝou ioye,
for þe worchipe þat ȝe · han wruȝt to me ȝore."
whan þemperour hade herd · holly his wordes, 1504
& seie him so sekly · þat he ded semed,
swiche sorwe sank to his hert · þat miȝt he nouȝt suffre
þer to be, bot he miȝt · his bale haue slaked ;
of him wiȝtly he tok his leue · & went hom a-ȝeine,
weping as he wold wide · for wo & for sorwe, 1509
& deliu*er*li to his douȝter · his del þan he made,
how will*ia*m hire worþi nory · was neiȝe atte deþe.
& sche hire fader cu*m*fort · fast as sche miȝt, 1512
but worse was neu*er* woma*n* · for wo at hire herte.
as fast as hire fader · was faren of þe weie,
sche wept & weiled · as sche wold haue storue, ? [Fol. 26 b.]
& swoned ofte siþe · her sche sese miȝt. 1516
but alisandrine anon · þat al hire cu*n*seile wist,
comfort hire as sche couþe · wiþ alle kinde speches,
& bad hire wiȝtly wende · to wite how he ferde.
"& soþliche, madame · so may hit bi-tide, 1520
ȝour comfort mai him keuere · & his sorwe slake."
þan meliors mekly · hire maydenes dede calle,
& many of hire meyne · for drede of missespeche,
& went ful wiȝtly · to will[i]ams inne, 1524
as nouȝt were bot [to] wite · how þat he ferde.
& whan sche drow to his chau*m*ber · sche dede ful sone

The emperor hears William is ill, and swoons for sorrow.

He goes with five or six knights to ask him how he fares.

William thanks him for his kindness.

The emperor sees he is almost dead,

and returns home, and tells Melior.

When her father had left her, she wept and wailed.

Alexandrine comforts her, and advises to go and see William.

Melior, with many of her maidens, goes to William's abode.

here maydenes & oþer meyne · mekeli a-stente,
al but alisaundrine · alone þei tweyne. 1528

She and Alexandrine go into his chamber.

þei went in-to will*iam* · wiþ-oute any more,
& busked hem euen to his bed · & bi hi*m* gunne sitte,

She sits by his bed, and prays him to say what ails him.

& seide sone softly · "my swete lemma*n* dere,
allone but alisau*n*drine · am i come to þe 1532
forto wite of þi wo · & what þat þe eiles.
Mi perles p*a*ramo*urs*[1] · my pleye & my ioye,
spek to me spakli · or i spille sone."

Will*ia*m tiȝtly him turned · & of hire tok hede, 1536

He greets her lovingly,

& seide aswiþe · "sweting, wel-come!
Mi derworþe derling · an my dere hert,
Mi blis & mi bale · þat botelesse wol ende!
but comliche creature · for cristes loue of heuene, 1540

and asks why she has forsaken him.

for what maner misgelt · hastow me forsake,
þat lelly haue þe loued · & wile i liue þenke?
feiþli boute feintyse · þou me failest nouþe,
þat hast turned þin entent · forto take a-noþer. 1544
Gret wrong hastou wrouȝt · & wel gret sinne,
to do me swiche duresse · to deye for þi sake.

Yet he thanks her for coming to see him now.

but loueliche lemma*n* · oure lord mot þe ȝeld
þat þi worþi wille was · to come to me nouþe; 1548
for þow hast lengþed my lif · & my langour schortet

[Fol. 27.]

þurth þe solas & þe siȝt · of þe, my swete hert!"
& whan melior hadde herd · holly al his wille,

Melior sighs sadly and weeps,

sche siked sadly for sorwe · & wel sore wepte, 1552
& seide, "loueliche lemma*n* · leue þou for soþe,
alle men vpon molde · no schuld my liif saue,
ȝif þou wendest of þis world · þat i ne wende after!

and assures him he has not lost her, for she will not perform her father's will.

ne, lemma*n*, lore hastow me nouȝt · leue þow forsoþe,
for þouȝh mi fader folliche · haue forwardes maked, 1557
wenestow þat i wold · his wille now parfourme?
nay, bi god þat me gaf · þe gost and þe soule,
al þat trauaile he has tynt · what euer tyde after! 1560

[1] MS. "paramo*urrs*."

for þere nis man vpon molde · þat euer schal me haue
but ȝe, loueliche lemman · leue me for trewe,
In feiþ þei y schold þer-fore · be fordon as swiþe,
doluen dep quic on erþe · to-drawe or on-honged!" 1564
"ȝe, wist y þat," seide william · "witterly to speke,
of alle harmes were ich hol · hastely riȝt nouþe!"
"ȝis, be marie," seide meliors · "misdrede ȝow neuer;
I wil fulfille alle forwardes · feiþli in dede!" 1568
þan was william ful glad[1] · witow for soþe,
& eiper kindeli clipped oþer · and kest wel ofte,
& wrout elles here wille · whil hem god liked.
& treuly whan[2] time com · þat þei twynne scholde, 1572
Meliors wiþ hire meyne · mekeliche hom wente;
william a stounde stinte stille · at his owne inne,
of alle his harde haches · heled atte best.
alle þe surgens of salerne · so sone ne coþen, 1576
haue lesed his langour · and his liif saued,
as þe maide meliors · in a mile wei dede.
þe word wide went sone · þat william was heled,
& vche gome was glad · and oft god þonked, 1580
& william on þe morwe · wel him a-tyred
Gayli in cloþes of gold[3] · & oþer gode harneis,
& komes euen to kourt · as kniȝt hol & fere,
heriend heiliche god · þat his liif saued. 1584
& soþli as sone as þemperour · say him wiþ eiȝen,
he hiȝed him hastely · & hent him in his armes,
& clupte him & keste · kyndeliche ful ofte,
& þus þei left in likyng · a god while after. 1588

None shall ever have her but William,
though she were buried alive, drawn, or hanged.
She will never break her pledge.
Then they kissed and comforted each other.
Melior went home, and William was healed.
It is soon known that he is healed, and all men thank God.
[Fol. 27 b.] The emperor is very glad, and embraces him.

But now more to minge · of þe messagers of grece.
as tyt as þei had told · trewli to here lord,
how realy þei were resceyued · in rome þe riche,
& þe gracious graunt · þei gaten of here herande, 1592
þemperour of grece gretly · was gladed in herte.
swiþe sent he sondes · to somoun þat time

The messengers from Greece return, and report how well they were received.

[1] MS. "gald." [2] MS. "wahan." [3] MS. "glod."

The emperor of Greece summons his lords,

alle þe grete of grece · and oþer gaie pepul,
þat no mon vpon mold · miȝt ayme þe noumber; 1596
al þat real aray reken · schold men neuer,
ne purueaunce þat prest was · to pepul a-greiþed.
but soþ atte þe day set · wiþ solempne merþe,
þis gaye genge of grece · to rome gunne ride, 1600

and they set off to ride to Rome.

& riden in real aray · to-ward rome euene.
forto reken al þe arai · in rome þat time,
alle þe men vpon mold · ne miȝt hit deuice,
so wel in alle wise · was hit arayed, 1604
& plente of alle purueaunce · purueyed to riȝttes.

When they draw near Rome,

whan þemperour of grece · neiyed neiȝh rome,
wiþ alle his bolde burnes · a-boute þre mile,

the Roman emperor comes to meet them.

þemperour of rome redeli · romed him a-ȝens, 1608
wiþ þe clennest cumpanye · þat euer king ladde.
& whan þe clene cumpanyes · comen to-gadere,
þe siȝt was ful semly · and louely for to se,

The emperors embrace and greet each other.

whan eiþer of þemperoures · er þei wold stint, 1612
eiþer oþer keste · kindeliche þat time,
& seþþe þe same wiþ þe sone · also he wrouȝt;
þe murþe of þat metyng · no man may telle.

All ride to Rome, where they find flowers strewn, and rich hangings,

Into rome al þat route · riden forþ in-fere, 1616
& eche a strete was striked · & strawed wiþ floures,
& realy railled · wiþ wel riche cloþes,
& alle maner menstracie · maked him a-ȝens;

[Fol. 28.] and hear minstrels and songs.

and also daunces disgisi · redi diȝt were, 1620
& selcouþ songes · to solas here hertes;
so þat soþli to say · þeiȝh i sete euer,
I schuld nouȝt telle þe merþe · þat maked was þere;
forþi to minge of þat matere · no more i ne þenk 1624

The Greeks are harboured in tents outside the city,

but alle þe genge of grece · was gayli resseyued,
& herbarwed hastely · ich hete þe for soþe,
In a place, þer were piȝt · pauilounns & tentes,
bi o side of þe cite · for swiþe moche pepul; 1628
for þei þat seie it forsoþe · saiden þe truþe,
þe place of þe pauilons · & of þe price tentes

semede as moche to siȝt · as þe cite of rome.
þemperour & eueri man · were esed to riȝttes, 1632
& haden wiȝtly at wille · what þei wolde ȝerne.
but now a while wol i stinte · of þis wlonke murþe,[1]
& munge now of meliors · þat blisful burde,
& of þe worþi william · þat was here lemman dere,
& telle þe tale lelly · what hem bitidde after. 1637

the tents covering as much ground as did Rome itself.

But I must return to William and Melior.

Whan þese pepul was inned · wel at here hese,
william wel wiȝtli · wiþ-oute any fere,
Mornyng out mesure · to melior he wendes, 1640
& siked ful sadli · and seide to hire sone,
"a! worþiliche wiȝt · wel wo is me nouþe!
þurȝth destine my deþ is diȝt · dere, for þi sake!
I may banne þat i was born · to a-bide þis time, 1644
forto lese þe lef · þat al mi liif weldes.
foule þow me fodest · wiþ þi faire wordes,
elles had i deide for duel · many dai seþþe,
& so god for his grace · goue y hadde!" 1648
Meliors seide mekli · "whi so, mi dere hert?
forwardes þat i haue fest · ful wel schal i hold,
I hope to þe heiȝh king · þat al heuen weldes.
þer-for stint of þi striif · & stodie we a-noþer, 1652
what wise we mow best · buske of þis lond."
whan he [wist] þese wordes · william wel liked,
seide, "mi hony, mi hert · al hol þou me makest, [Fol. 28 b.]
wiþ þi kinde cumfort · of alle mi kares kold." 1656
þan studied þei a gret stounde · stifli to-gadere,
bi what wise þei miȝt best · buske of þat þede,
priueli vnperceyued · for peynes þat hem tidde;
al in wast þei wrouȝt · here witte wold nouȝt serue.
alisaundrine to cunseile · þei clepud sone þanne, 1661
& telden hire trewli · what tent þei were inne,
ȝif þei wist in what wise · to wende of þat londe,
& preyed hire par charite · and for profites loue, 1664

William goes to Melior, and sighing says,

"Now must I die for thy sake;

and I would I were dead indeed!"

Melior assures him she will keep her troth, and they must devise a plan of escape.

They strive in vain to think of some way of flight.

They therefore ask Alexandrine her advice.

[1] MS. "murþe."

to kenne hem su*m* coyntice · ȝif sche any couþe,
to wisse hem forto wend · a-wey vnp*er*ceyued.

She answers, weeping, that she can think of no way at all;

alisau*n*drine a-non · answered þan and seide,
wepand wonderli fast · for þei wende wold, 1668
"bi þat blisful barn · þat bouȝt us on þe rode,
I kan bi no coyntyse · knowe nouȝ þe best,
how ȝe mowe un-hent · or harmles a-schape.
for be hit witerly wist · þat [ȝe][1] a-went bene, 1672

for the cry would soon be raised, and every pass guarded.

eche a kuntre worþ kept · wiþ kud men i-nouȝe,
eche brug, eche payþe[2] · eche brode weye,
þat noþer clerk nor kniȝt · nor of cu*n*tre cherle
schal passe vnp*er*ceyued · & pertiliche of-souȝt. 1676

They would soon be found out if disguised; the only way is this.

& ȝef ȝe were disgised · & diȝt on any wise,
I wot wel witerli · ȝe wold be aspied.
seþþe no noþer nel be · but nedes to wende,
craftier skil kan i non · þan i wol kuþe. 1680

The men in the kitchen are always flaying beasts.

In þe kechene wel i knowe · arn crafti me*n* manye,
þat fast fonden alday · to flen wilde bestes,
hyndes & hertes · wiþ hydes wel fayre,
bukkes and beris · and oþer bestes wilde, 1684
of alle fair venorye · þat falles to metes.

Of all beasts, bears seem the most grisly.

ac þe bremest best · þe beres me semen,
þe gon most grisli · to eche gomes siȝt;
Miȝt we by coyntise · com bi tvo skynnes, 1688
of þe breme beres · & bi-sowe ȝou þer-inne,

[Fol. 29.] None would know them if they were wrapped up in white bears' skins.

þer is no liua*n*d lud · i-liue ȝou knowe schold,
but hold ȝou ouȝt of heie gates · for happes, i rede.
rediliche no better red · be resun i ne knowe, 1692
þan to swiche a bold beste · best to be disgised,
for þei be alle maners · arn man likkest."

They thank her for her counsel, and beg her to get the skins.

þan will*ia*m ful wiþtli · & his worþi burde
ful þroly hire þonked · many þousand siþe 1696
of hire crafty cu*n*sayl · & kindliche hire bi-souȝt,
wiȝtly wiþ su*m* wyl · winne hem tvo skinnes
of þo breme bestes · þat beres ben called,

[1] Read "that *se* a went bene."—M. [2] Or "paþþe."

pryuely vnp*er*ceyued · for peril þat may falle. 1700
& alisau*n*drine a-non · as an hende mayde,
seide sche wold deliuerly · do þer-to hire miȝt,
Forto saue hem fro sorwe · hir-self forto deye.

She says she will try.

Wiȝtly boute mo wordes · sche went fo[r]þ stille, 1704
& bliue *in* a bourde · borwed boiȝes cloþes,
& talliche hire a-tyred · tiȝtli þer-inne,
& bogeysliche as a boye · busked to þe kychene,
þer as burnes were busy · bestes to hulde; 1708
& manly sche melled hire · þo men forto help,
til sche say tidi time · hire prey for to take.
sche a-wayted wel · þe white bere skinnes,
þat loueli were & large · to lappen inne hire frendes,
& went wiȝtly a-wei · wel vnparceyued, 1713
& lepeþ þer-wiþ to hire lady · & hire lemma*n* dere,
seide softily, "now seþ · how sone i haue spedde!"
& þei ful glad of þe gere · gretly here þonked, 1716
& preiede here ful presteli · to put hem þer-inne,
so semli þat no seg · miȝt se here cloþes.
& sche melled hire meliors · ferst to greiþe,
& festened hire in þat fel · wiþ ful gode þonges 1720
aboue hire trie a-tir · to talke þe soþe,
þat no man vpo*n* mold · miȝt oþer p*er*ceyue
but sche a bere were · to baite at a stake;
so iustislich eche liþ ioyned · bi ih*esu* of heuen. 1724
whan sche in þat tyr · was tiffed as sche schold,
Meliors in here merþe · to hire maiden seide,
"Leue alisau*n*drine, for mi loue · how likes þe nowþe?
am i nouȝt a bold bestes-a bere wel to seme?" 1728
"ȝis, madame," seide þe mayde · "be marie of heuene,
ȝe arn so grisli a gost · a gom on to loke,
þat i nold for al þe god · þat euer god made,
abide ȝou in a brod weie · bi a large mile; 1732
so breme a wilde bere · ȝe bi-seme nowþe."
alisau*n*drine þanne anon · after þat ilk,

She dresses herself in boy's clothes,

and helps the men in the kitchen.

She makes off with the two skins, and goes to William and Melior.

They beg her to sew them up.

She fastens Meliors up in one with good thongs, clothes and all.

[Fol. 29 b.]
Melior asks her if she does not make a bold bear?

"Yes, madame, you are a grisly ghost enough, and look furious."

Then she laces up William in the other skin:

In þat oþer bere-skyn · be-wrapped will*ia*m þanne,
& laced wel eche leme · wiþ lastend þonges, 1736
craftili a-boue his cloþes · þat comly were & riche.
& whan he was sowed · as he schold bene,

who, when sewn up, asks Melior what she thinks of him?

will*ia*m ful merili · to meliors þan he seide,
"sei me, loueli lemma*n* · how likes þe me nowþe?" 1740
"bi marie, sire," seide meliors · "þe milde quen of heuene,
so breme a bere ȝe be-seme · a burn on to loke,

"I am quite frightened at so hideous a sight."

þat icham a-grise · bi god þat me made,
to se so hidous a siȝt · of youre semli face!" 1744

William proposes that they start at once.

þan seide will*ia*m wiȝtli · "my derworþe herte,
to heiȝ vs hastily henne · ich hope be þe best,
euenly þis euen while · or men to mochel walk."
& ȝhe to worche as he wold · wiȝtli þan graun*t*ed. 1748
alisau*n*drine sone · as sche saw hem founding,
wept as sche wold a-wede · for wo & for sorwe,

Alexandrine lets them out by a postern-gate.

but naþeles as bliue · sche brouȝt hem on weie
priuely be þe posterne · of þat perles erber, 1752
þat was to meliors chau*m*ber · choisli a-ioyned.
& alisau*n*drine as sone · as þei schuld de-parte,
swoned fele siþe · & seþþen whan sche miȝt,

She prays that they may be preserved from all peril.

preide ful pituosli · to þe prince of heuene 1756
to loke fro alle langour · þo louely makes,
þat put hem for paramo*ur*s · in p*er*riles so grete;
& soþli forto say · a-sunder þann þei went.

[Fol. 30.]

alisau*n*drine anon · attelede to hire boure, 1760
& morned neiȝh for mad · for meliors hire ladi.

I must now tell you about the two white bears.

More to telle of hire þis time · trewly i leue,
telle i wil of þe beres · what hem tidde after.

Will*ia*m & þe mayde · þat were white beres, 1764
gon forþ þurȝth þe gardin · a wel god spede,

As they went through the garden on all fours,

Fersly on here foure fet · as fel for swiche bestes.

a Greek, who had come there for amusement,

þan ȝede a grom of grece · in þe gardyn to pleie,
to bi-hold þe estres · & þe herberes so faire, 1768

&, or he wiste, he was war · of þe white beres,
þei went a-wai a wallop · as þei wod semed. — perceived them galloping along.
& neiȝ wod of his witt · he wax neiȝ for drede,
& fled as fast homward · as fet miȝt drie, 1772 — He fled home in extreme fear.
for he wend witterly · þei wold him haue sewed,
to haue mad of him mete · & m*ur*þered him to deþe.
whanne he his felawes fou*n*dẹ · of his fare þei wondred, — His fellows asked him what ailed him.
whi he was in þat wise · wexen so maat, 1776
& he hem told tiȝtly · whiche tvo white beres
hadde gon in þe gardyn · & him agast maked, — He said he had seen two white bears in the garden,
for he wende witerli · þei wold him haue slawe,
"but þei seie me nouȝt · soþli i hope, 1780
to me tended þei nouȝt · but tok forþ here wey — which, fortunately, did not perceive him.
wilfulli to sum wildernesse · where as þei bredde."
þanne were his felawes fain · for he was adradde,
& lauȝeden of þat gode layk; · of hem ich leve nouþe,
to telle forþ what tidde · of þe beres after. 1785
nouȝ fro þe gardin · þei gon a god spede — The two bears went to a fair forest,
toward a fair forest · fast þer bi-side.
whilu*m* þei went on alle four · as doþ wilde bestes,
& whan þei wery were · þei went vp-riȝttes. 1789
so went þei in þat wildernesse · al þat long niȝt, — going on all night till the sun rose.
til it dawed to day · & sunne to vp-rise,
þei drow hem to a dern den · for drede to be seiȝen,
& hedde hem vnder an holw hok · was an huge denne, — In the day time they hid themselves in a den.
as it fel a faire hap · þei fond þer-on to rest.
Fer it was fro weiȝes · & of wode so þikke, — [Fol. 30 b.]
þat no wiȝt of þe world · wold hem þere seche, 1796
& þei for-waked were weri · wittow for soþe. — They were very weary, and praised God for their good fortune.
& hiȝliche þei heriede god · of þat hap fallen,
þat had hem diȝt swiche a den · dernly on to rest.
þen seide willi*a*m soberli · to meliors so hende, 1800 — Then said William, "God preserve us, and teach us how to get some meat."
"a! my loueliche lemma*n* · our lord now vs help,
he þat was in bedleem born · & bouȝt vs on þe rode,
schilde us fr*a*m schenchip · & schame in þis erþe,
& wisse vs in what wise · to winne vs su*m* mete; 1804

For, dere lef, i drede · we schul deie for hunger."

Melior says they can easily live on love,

soburli seide meliors · "sire, leues youre wordes,
we schul liue bi oure loue · lelli atte best;
& þurȝth þe grace of god · gete vs sumwat elles, 1808

and bullaces and blackberries,

bolaces & blake-beries · þat on breres growen,
so þat for hunger i hope · harm schul we neuer;

and haws, hips, acorns, and hazel-nuts.

hawes, hepus, & hakernes · & þe hasel-notes,
& oþer frut to þe fulle · þat in forest growen; 1812
I seie ȝou, sire, bi mi liif · þis liif so me likes."
"nay, i-wisse," seid william · "mi worþliche herte,
better be-houis it to be · or baleful were þi happes;

William says she is not used to such hard fare.

For here-to-fore of hardnesse · hadestow neuer, 1816
but were brouȝt forþ in blisse · as swiche a burde ouȝt,
wiþ alle maner gode metes; · & to misse hem nowþe,
It were a botles bale · but beter haue i ment.
I wol wend to sum weie · onwhar here nere, 1820

He had better go and see if he can find any churl or child with meat or drink.

& waite ȝif any weiȝh · comes wending alone,
oþer cherl oþer child · fro chepinge or feyre,
þat beris out him a-boute · bred oþer drinke,
& redeli i wol it reue · & come a-ȝein swiþe, 1824
oþer coyntyse know i non · to kepe wiþ our liues."

"Nay," said she, "for the loser will raise the cry, and tell it in Rome.

"nay, sire," sche seide · "so schul ȝe nouȝt worche;
For þei þat misseden here mete · wold make gret noyse,
& record it redeli · in rome al a-boute, 1828
so þat we miȝt þurȝth hap · haue harm in þat wise.

[Fol. 31.] Better to live upon fruit."

þer-for is fairer we be stille · & bi frut to liue,
þat we finde in wodes · as we wende a-boute."
& boþe þan as bliue · a-sented bi a stounde, 1832
& kindeli eche oþer clipt · and kessed ful oft,

They rested in the den all that day.

& darkeden þere in þat den · al þat day longe,
slepten wel swetly · samli to-gadere,
& wrouȝt elles here wille;— · leef we now here, 1836

I must now tell about the werwolf.

& a while to þe werwolf · i wol a-ȝen turne,
þat þe tale toucheþ · as telleþ þis soþe.
þe self niȝt þat william · went wiþ his leef dere,
þe werwolf, as god wold · wist alle here happes, 1840

& þe fortune þat wold falle · for here dedes after. — He knew all their fortunes, and followed them all the way.
whan þei went in þat wise · wiȝtli he hem folwes,
Ful bliue hem bi-hinde · but þei nouȝt wist.
& whan þe werwolf wist · where þei wold rest, 1844
he herd how hard · for hunger þei hem pleyned, — Knowing their hunger, he goes to a highway,
& goþ him to a gret heiȝ-waye · a wel god spede,
ȝif he miȝt mete any man · mete of to winne. — where he saw a man with some bread in a bag and some boiled beef.
þan fel þe chaunce þat a cherl · fro cheping-ward com,
& bar bred in a bagge · and fair bouf wel sode. 1849
þe werwolf ful wiȝtli · went to him euene,
wiþ a rude roring · as he him rende wold, — He rushes on him, roaring, and frightens the man terribly,
& braid him doun be þe brest · bolstrauȝt to þe erþe.[1]
þe cherl wende ful wel · haue went to deþe, 1853
& harde wiþ herte · to god þanne he prayde,
to a-schape schaþles · fram þat schamful best.
he brak vp fro þat beste · & bi-gan to flene 1856 — who broke away and fled for his life, glad to get off.
as hard has he miȝt · his liif for to saue.
his bag wiþ his bilfodur · wiþ þe best he lafte,
glad was, he was gon · wiþ-oute gretter harmes.
þe werwolf was glad · he hade wonne mete 1860
& went wiȝtli þer-wiþ · þer as william rested, — The werwolf goes off with the meat, and lays it before William, and runs away.
be-fore him & his burde · þe bagge þer he leide,
& busked him bliue a-ȝein · boute more wordes,
For he wist ful wel · of what þei nede hadde. 1864

William þo wondred moche · of þat wilde best, [Fol. 31 b.]
what he brouȝt in þe bag · & wold nouȝt a-bide.
he braide to him þe bagge · & bliue it opened, — William opens the bag, and finds the bread and beef, saying,
& fond þe bred & þe bouf · bliþe was he þanne,— 1868
– & mekli to meliors · "mi swete hert," he saide,
"loo! whiche a gret grace · god haþ vs schewed! — "See what grace God has shewn us!
– he wot wel of our werk · & wel is apaiȝed,
– þat he sendeþ þus his sond · to socour vs atte nede,
so wonder a wilde best · þat weldes no mynde. 1873
swiche a wonder i-wisse · was i-seie neuer, — Such a wonder was never seen."

[1] MS. "þe þerþe."

to herien god heiȝli · alden ar we boþe."

I would not that our work were undone," said Melior.

" bi marie," seid meliors · "ȝe mingeþ þe soþe ; 1876
for al þe world i nold · our werk were vndone."
will*ia*m wel mekli · þe mete out takes,
seid, "lemma*n*, lef liif · of þat our lord vs sendes,
Make we vs merie · for mete haue we at wille." 1880

They ate it gladly without any salt or sauce.

þei ete at here ese · as þei miȝt þanne,
boute salt oþer sauce · or any semli drynk,
hunge*r* hadde hem hold · þei held hem a-paied.

But the werwolf knew what more they wanted.

but white wel, þe werwolf · wist what he*m* failed ; 1884
he went to an heiȝ weie · to whayte su*m* happes.
þan bi-tid þat time · to telle þe soþe,
þat a clerk of þe cuntre · com toward rome

He finds a man with two flagons of wine.

wiþ two flaketes ful · of ful fine wynes, 1888
bouȝt were for a burgeis · of a borwe bi-side.
þe werwolf him awayted · & went to him euene,
bellyng as a bole · þat burnes wold spille.

The man, seeing the werwolf coming, lets them fall and flees away.

whan þe clerk saw him come · for care & for drede,[1]
þe flagetes he let falle · & gan to fle ȝerne, 1893
þe liȝtliere to lepe · his liif for to saue.
þe werwolf of þe clerkes werk · was wonder bliþe,

The werwolf seizes them and [Fol. 32.] takes them to William, and goes off.

& flei to þe flagetes · & swiþe he*m* vp hentes, 1896
& wendes euen to will*ia*m · a wel god spede,
& to meliors his make · and mildeliche þanne
þe flagetes hem bi-for · faire dou*n* he settes,
& went wiȝtli a-wei · wiþ-out eni more. 1900

William and Melior are blithe because of the beast's help.

will*ia*m & his worþi wenche · þan were bliþe
of þe help þat þei hade · of þis wild best,
& preid þei ful p*ri*ueli · to þe p*ri*nce of heuene,
saue þe best fro sorwe · þat so wel hem helped. 1904

They ate and drank their fill,

þei made hem þan mirie · on alle man*er* wise,
eten at al here ese · & afterward dronken,
& solaced hem same*n* · til hem slepe lust.
þan eiþer lapped oþer · ful loueli in armes, 1908
& here drede & here doel · deliuerli for-ȝeten,

[1] MS. "dredre." See l. 1909.

& slepten so swetli · in here semly denne, — and then slept
til it wax so neiȝh niȝt · þat nerre it no miȝt. — till night-time.
þan a-waked þei wiȝtli · & went on here gate, 1912 — By night they
faire on þer tvo fet · þei ferde vp-on niȝtes, — went on two feet,
but whan it drow to þe dai · þei ferde as bestes, — but by day on all
ferd on here foure fet · in fourme of tvo beres ; — fours,
and eu*er* þe werwolf · ful wiȝtly hem folwed, 1916 — the werwolf
þat will*i*am ne wist · hendeli hem bi-hinde ; — following,
but whan þei were loged · where hem best liked,
Mete & al maner þing · þat hem mister neded, — who procured
þe werwolf hem wan · & wiȝtli hem brouȝt. 1920 — them all they wanted.
þan þei lade þis liif · a ful long while,
cairende ouer cu*n*treis · as here cas ferde.
Leue we now þis lesson · & here we a-noþ*er* ;
to hem aȝeyn can i turne · whan it time falles. 1924
I wol minge of a mat*er* · i mennede of bi-fore, — I must now tell
of þe reaute a-raied · in rome for here sake, — of the wedding
& of þe worþi wedding · was bi-fore graunted — that was to have
bi-twene þe meyde meliors · & þe prince of grece ; 1928 — been between Melior and the prince of Greece.
now listenes, lef lordes · þis lessou*n* þus i ginne. — [Fol. 32 b.]

Manly, on þe morwe · þat mariage schuld bene,
þe real emp*er*ours a-risen · & richeli he*m* greiþed, — The emperors
wiþ alle worþi wedes · þat wiȝhes were schold. 1932 — put on their richest clothes.
no man vpo*n* molde · schuld mow deuise
men richlier a-raid · to rekene alle þinges,
þan eche rink was in rome · to richesse þat þei hadde ; — All were arrayed
þe grete after here degre · in þe gaiest wise, 1936 — in the gayest wise.
& men*er*e men as þei miȝt · to minge þe soþe.
þe sesoun was semly · þe su*n*ne schined faire ;
þemp*er*our of grece · & alle his gomes riche — The Greek
hiȝed hem to here hors · hastili and sone ; 1940 — emperor and his men mounted their horses.
but for [to] telle þe a-tiryng · of þat child þat time,
þat al þat real route · were araied fore, — The attire of his
he þat wende haue be wedded · to meliors þat time, — son would take too long to describe.
It wold lengeþ þis lessou*n* · a ful long while. 1944

but soþli for to seie · so wel[1] was he greiþed,
þat amendid in no man*er* · ne miȝt it haue bene.
— & whan þe gomes of grece · were alle to horse,
The Roman knights numbered 20,000. araied wel redi, of romayns · to rekkene þe nu*m*bre,
treuli twenti þousand · a-tired atte best, 1949
alle on stalworþ stedes · stoutliche i-horsed.
— alle maner of menstracye · maked was sone,
The minstrelsy and revels begin. & alle merþe þat any man · euer miȝt deuise; 1952
and alle real reueles · rinkes rif bi-gunne,
Ridende þurth rome · to rekene þe soþe,
Riȝt to þe chef cherch · þat chosen is ȝutte,
All go to St Peter's church, where the pope, cardinals, and bishops were ready. — & clepud þurth *cri*stendom · þe cherche of seynt petyr.
þe p[ope][2] wiþ many p*r*elates · was purueyd to riȝtes,
wiþ cardenales & bischopus · & abbotes fele, 1958
— alle richeli reuested · þat reaute to holde,
[Fol. 33.] wiþ worchep of þat wedding · þat þei wende haue.
þe gryffou*n*s þan gayli · gonne stint atte cherche,
They wait for Melior. þe briȝt burde meliors · to abide þere. 1962
þemp*er*our of rome þanne · was rede ȝare,
& alle þe best baroun*es* · & boldest of his reaume.
The Roman emperor wondered where his daughter was. þemp*er*our wax a-wondred · wite ȝe for soþe, 1965
whi his douȝ*ter* þat day · dwelled so longe,
— seþþe þe gomes of grece · were goh to cherche.
He sends a baron to her chamber, þan bad he a baro*un* · buske to hire chau*m*ber, 1968
to hiȝen hire hastily · to him for to come,
& wiȝtli he wendes · wite ȝe for soþe.
who finds no one there. — he fond þere burde no barn · in þat bour þanne,
for no coyntise þat he couþe · to carp him aȝens; 1972
& he liȝtli aȝen lepes · & þe lord so telles.
The emperor, at hearing this, goes himself, þemp*er*our whan he it wist · wod wax he nere,
& went him-self in wraþe · to þat worþies chau*m*ber,
drives at the door like a devil, and shouts out. & driues in at þat dore · as a deuel of helle. 1976
he gan to clepe & crie · & gan to kurse fast;—
"where dwelle ȝe, a deuel wai · ȝe damiseles, so long?"

[1] MS. *repeats* "wel."
[2] This word is *purposely* erased; part of the *p* can be traced.

alisau*n*drine as sone · as sche him þere herde,
was delfulli a-drad · þe deþ for to suffre, 1980 **Alexandrine is terrified, and casts about for an excuse.**
ac bi a coynt co*m*pacemen*t* · caste sche sone,
how bold ȝhe miȝt hire bere · hire best to excuse,
þat þemp*er*our ne schuld souche · þa ȝhe at sent were,
þat his douȝte*r* wiþ will*ia*m · was went away þanne.
boldli wiþ milde mod · ȝhe buskes of hire chau*m*ber,
& kom ketly to þemp*er*our · & kurteisly him gret, 1986 **She hastens to him, greets him, and asks his will.**
& what þat his wille were · wiȝtly þan asked,
& he seide ful sone · "sertes, ich haue wonder
where my douȝter to-day · dwelles þus longe? **He wants to know where his daughter is.**
for al þe pepul is parayled · & passed to cherche. 1990
I haue sent hire to seche · seþþe a gret while,
ac no frek mai hire finde · þer-fore i am tened."
alisau*n*drine a-non · answered þanne & seide,
"to blame, sire, ar þo burnes · þat so bleþeli gabbe; **She says she is still asleep.** [Fol. 33 b.]
For my lady lis ȝit a-slape · lelly, as i trowe." 1995
"Go wiȝtly," seide þemp*er*our · "and a-wake hire ȝerne, **"Wake her, then, and tell her to dress."**
bid hire busk of hire bed · & bliue be a-tyrid."
"I dar nouȝt, for soþe" · seide alisau*n*drine þanne; **She says she dares not, and he asks why.**
"wiþ me sche is wroþ · god wot, for litel gilt." 1999
"whi so?" saide þemp*er*our · "saie me nouȝ bliue!"
"Ful gladli, sire," sche seide · "bi god þat me made,
ȝif ȝe no wold be wroþ · whan ȝe þe soþe wist."
"nay, certes," seide þemp*er*our · "þer-fore seie on sone."
alissau*n*drine þan anon · after þat ilke, 2004 **She says, "Melior made me watch all night with her,**
seide ful soberli · sore a-drad in herte,
"sire, for soþe, i am hold · to saie ȝou þe treuþe;
Mi ladi made me to-niȝt · long wiþ hire to wake
boute burde or barn · bot our selue tweie. 2008
þanne told sche me a tiding · teld was hire to-fore, **and told me she had heard it was a custom in Greece**
of on þat knew þe kostome · of þe cu*n*tre of grece,
þat eu*er*ich gome of grece · as of grete lordes,
whan þei wedded a wiif · were ȝhe neu*er* so nobul, 2012
of emp*er*ours or kinges come · & come into grece,
sche chold sone be bi-schet · here-selue al-one,

to shut up a bride in a tower by herself.

In a ful tristy tour · timbred for þe nones,
& liue þer in langour · al hire lif-time, 2016
– neuer to weld of worldes merþe · þe worþ of a mite.
þer-fore for soþe · gret sorwe sche made,

Wherefore she declared she would never be married to a Greek.

& swor for þat sake · to suffur alle peynes,
to be honget on heiȝ · or wiþ horse to-drawe, 2020
sche wold neu*er* be wedded · to no wiȝh of grece.
hire were leuer be weded · to a wel simplere,
þere sche miȝt lede hire lif · in liking & murþe.

She also told me another tale that sorely grieved me.

& also, sire, sertaynly · to seie þe treuþe, 2024
sche told me a-noþer tale · þat me tened sarre,
wher-fore i wan hire wraþ · er we departed."

[Fol. 34.]

"warfore?" seide þemp*er*our · "seye me now ȝerne."
"For soþe, sire," quaþ alisau*n*drine · "to saue ȝour mensk, 2028
I wol ȝow telle tiȝtly · what turn sche as wrouȝt.

She said she had given her love to another, who was very bold and fair,

sche clepud me to cu*n*seil · whan sche þis case wist
þat sche schold be wedded · & seide me þanne,
sche hadde leid hire loue · þer hire beter liked, 2032
on on þe boldest barn · þat euer bi-strod stede,
& þe fairest on face · and i freyned is name.
& sche me seide chortly · þe soþe to knowe,

that worthy William who fought so well for you.

It was þat worþi will*ia*m · þat wiȝes so louen, 2036
& þat brouȝt ȝou out of bale · wiþ his cler strengþe.
& whan i wist of þis werk · wite ȝe for soþe,
It mislikede me mochel · miȝt no man me blame,
& manly in my maner · missaide hire as i dorst, 2040

I told her I should tell you of it.

& warned hire wiȝtly · wiþ-oute disseyte,
I wold alle hire werk · do ȝou wite sone.
& whan sche þat wist · for wraþ al so ȝern,

She sent me out of her chamber, and I have not seen her since.

sche dede me deliuerly · deuoyde *per* hire chau*m*ber,
& het me neuer so hardi be · in hire siȝt to come. 2045
& i busked of hire bour · sche barred hit sone,
& seþþe saw i hire nouȝt · sire, bi my treuþe.

I dare not go to her again."

– I ne dar for drede · no more to hire drawe, 2048
þer-for, sire, ȝour-self · softili hire a-wakes,

& fodes hire wiþ faire wordes · for ȝour owne menske,
til þis mariage be mad · & wiþ murþe ended."

Whan þemperour had herd · holly þise wordes, 2052
he wax neiȝh out of wit · for wraþ þat time,
& for dol a-doteþ · & doþ him to hire chaumber,
& busked euene to hire bed · but[1] noþing he no fond,
wiþ-inne hire comly cortynes · but hire cloþes warme.
wiȝtly as a wod man · þe windowe he opened, 2057
& souȝt sadli al a-boute · his semliche douȝter,
but al wrouȝt in wast · for went was þat mayde.
& whanne he miȝt in no manere · meliors þer finde,
he deraied him as a deuel · & dede him out a-ȝeine,
& asked of alisaundrine · anon after þanne, 2062
"þou damisele, deliuerli · do telle me now ȝerne,
whider is mi douȝter went · ȝhe nis nouȝt in bedde."
alisaundrine for þat cas · was sorwful in herte, 2065
& seide, "sire, i seiȝ hire nouȝt · seþ hieȝ midniȝt,
I wene sche went to william · for wraþ of my sawe,
sendeþ swifteli þedir · to scheche hire at is inne. 2068
& ȝif william be nouȝt went · witeþ ȝe forsoþe,
Mi ladi for ani lore · lengeþ in þis cite ȝut.
& ȝif william be went · neuer leue ȝe oþer,
Mi ladi lengeþ him wiþ · for lif or for dede." 2072
þemperour for treie & tene · as a tyraunt ferde,
wax ney wod of his witte · & wroþliche seide,
"a! has þat vntrewe treytour · traysted me nouþe,
For þe welþe & welfare · i haue him wrouȝt fore, 2076
& fostered fro a fundeling · to þe worþiest of mi lond?
& for his dedes to-day · i am vndo for euer;
eche frek for þis fare · false wol me hold,
& þe grewes for gremþe · ginneþ on me werre, 2080
& eche weiȝh schal wite · þat þe wrong is myne.
þer-fore bi grete god · þat gart me be fourmed,
& bitterly wiþ his blod · bouȝt me on þe rode,

The emperor at this was mad with grief,

and went to Melior's bed, but found only the warm bed-clothes.

[Fol. 34 b.]

Finding her nowhere, he asks Alexandrine where she is gone to.

"Sire," she says, "I have not seen her since midnight; perhaps she is with William.

If he is not gone, she is there; but if he is gone, be sure Melior is with him."

"Ah!" said the emperor, "has that traitor deceived me?

The Greeks will make war upon me.

[1] MS. "bud."

alle men vpo*n* molde · ne schuld mak it oþer, 2084

If he is taken, he shall be hanged and drawn in pieces."

ȝif þat traytour mow be take · to-day, er i ete,
he schal be honged heie · & wiþ horse to-drawe!"
þemp*er*oûr ful kenely · dede kalle kniȝttes fele,

Sixty sergeants are sent to look for William.

and oþer semly seriau*n*s · sixti wel armed, 2088
het hem wiȝtli to wende · to will*ia*ms inne,
& ȝif þei found out þat freke · for out þat bi-tidde,

[Fol. 35.]

to bring him bliue · bounde fast him to-fore.
þai durste non oþer do · but dede hem on gate, 2092
& souȝte him wiþ sore hertes · so wel þei him louede.

They were glad when they could not find him.

feiȝþli when þei founde him nouȝt · fayn were þei alle,
& turned aȝein to þemp*er*our · & told he was a-weie.
þan brayde he brayn-wod · & alle his bakkes rente, 2096
his berde & his briȝt fax · for bale he to-twiȝt;

The emperor swoons for sorrow and shame.

& swowned sixe siþe · for sorwe & for schame,
þat fals he schold be fou*n*de · ful ofte he seide "allas,"
& banned bitterli þe time · þat he was on-liue. 2100
þanne kinges & kud dukes · co*n*forted him beter,

His lords advise him to tell the emperor of Greece the whole truth.

bede him sese of his sorwe · & swiftili wende,
& telle þemp*er*our of grece · treuli þe soþe,
& meke him [in][1] his merci · for his misse-gilt. 2104
& he ketly for al kas · after cu*n*seyl wrouȝte,
& goþ to þemp*er*our of grece · vnglad at his herte,
kneleþ to him karfully · & mercy him krieþ,

He does so, and asks him how he can best avenge himself.

and told him as titly · al þe treuþe sone, 2108
how his douȝt*er* was went · wiþ on þat he fostred,
& preide him par charite · þat he him wold wisse,
In what wise þat he miȝt · best him a-wrek.
& whan þis tiding was told · troweþ þe soþe, 2112
In þat cite was sone · many a sori burne,

All mirth ceases in the city.

for missing of þat mariage · al m*ur*þe[2] was seced,
riuedliche þurth rome · & reuþe bi-gunne.

The Greek emperor, seeing how he of Rome was grieved,

þe gode emp*er*our of grece · was a-greued sore, 2116
of þat fortune bi-falle · but for he sei þat oþer
so meken in his mercy · for þat misgilt,

[1] MS. omits *in*. See l. 2118. [2] MS. "m*urr*þe."

þe liȝtere he let þer-of · ac lourand he seide ;
"sire, be god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule, 2120
wist i now witerli · þis were wrouȝt for gile,
alle þe men vpon mold · no schuld make it oþer,
þat i nold brenne þi borwes · & þi burnes quelle,
& sece neuer til þi-self · were chamly destruyed. 2124
but i wene wiþ þi wille · was neuer wrouȝt þis gile,
þere-fore þe cunseil þat y kan · i schal þe kiþe sone,
do quikliche crie þurth eche cuntre · of þi king-riche,
þat barouns, burgeys, & bonde · & alle oþer burnes,
þat mowe wiȝtly in any wise · walken a-boute, 2129
þat þei wende wiȝtly · as wide as þi reaume,
þurth wodes & wastes · & alle maner weies,
forto seche þat seg · þat he haþ so bitraied ; 2132
& þat mayde him mide · Meliores þi douȝter.
& to make eche man · þe more beter wilned,
bi-hote hoo-so hem findes · to haue so gret mede,
Riche to be & reale · redly al his liue time. 2136
& ho-so hastely nouȝt him hieȝ · þis hest to worche,
do him in hast be honged · & wiþ horse to-drawe.
& loke þat hirde-men wel kepe · þe komune passage,
& eche brugge þer a-boute · þat burnes ouer wende,
& to seche eche cite · and alle smale þropes, 2141
& vnparceyued passe þei nouȝt · ȝif þi puple be treuwe."

says, that had it been done in guile, he would have burnt all his towns;

but as it is not so, he will give him his counsel.

[Fol. 35 b.]

"Proclaim through all your lands that every man shall seek everywhere,

till they find William and Melior.

Whoever finds them is to be richly rewarded, and whoever is remiss is to be hanged.

Passes and bridges should be guarded."

Þe real emperour of rome · þanne redli him thonked
of þat konyng cunseyl · & his kynde wille. 2144
& bliue þan bi eche side · þat bode let he sende ;
as hastyli as men miȝt hiȝe · his hest was wrouȝt,
& sone was sembled swiche an host · to take hem tweie,
þat neuer burn to no bataile · brouȝt swiche a puple.
þei souȝt alle so serliche · þurh cites & smale townes,
In wodes & alle weies · þat was þer a-boute, 2150
þat no seg for no sleiȝþe · no schuld haue schapit.
but ȝit as god ȝaf þe grace · no gom miȝt hem finde,
þere þei leye louely a-slepe · lapped in armes. 2153

The emperor sends the message everywhere, and all men set out to hunt them.

They sought in every wood and path, but fortunately did not find them.

but whan þis bode was brouȝt · to þemperour[s] boþe,
When it was told that they could not be found,
þat no wiȝt in no wise · ne miȝt william finde,
ne þe maide Meliors · in no maner wise, 2156
þer stod a gome of grece · þat god gif him sorwe !
he þat of þe white beres · so bremli was a-fraied,
the Greek who had seen the bears told his adventure, [Fol. 36.]
he seide sone to þemperours · "sires, wol ȝe here?
I sai a selkouþe siȝt · mi-self ȝifter-neue, 2160
wel wiþ-inne niȝt · as i went in the gardyn ;
tvo þe bremest white beres · þat euer burn on loked,
& semede þe most to siȝt · þat euer ȝut i sawe.
I wende deliuerli for drede · þe deþ to haue suffred,
and how the bears had not noticed him, but went away by the postern-gate.
but treuly þe beres · to me tok no hede, 2165
but passeden out priueli · at þe posterne gate,
ac whiderward þei went · wot i no more."
"be god," quaþ þemperour of grece · "þat gart me be fourmed, 2168
The Greek emperor says it will be best to send to the kitchen and see if any skins are missed.
I der leye mi lif · hit was þe liþer treytour
went a-wey in þat wise · for he ne wold be knowen.
Lete wite swiþe at þe kichen · weþer þei misse any skinnes. 2171
whan men kome to þe koke · he was be-knowe sone,
Two white bears' skins are missing.
þat sum burn a-wei had bore · tvo white beres skynnes.
þan was it kenly komanded · a kri to make newe,
þat eche burn schuld bisily · tvo white beres seke,
his trauayle schold nouȝt tyne · þat tittest hem founde.
All set out again, with hounds, to hunt the bears,
þan hastely hiȝed eche wiȝt · on hors & on fote, 2177
huntyng wiȝt houndes · alle heie wodes,
til þei neyȝþed so neiȝh · to nymphe þe soþe,
and some came close to their hiding-place.
þere william & his worþi lef · were liand i-fere, 2180
þat busily were thei a bowe schote · out of þe burnes siȝt.
The werwolf determined to save them,
but whan þe witthi werwolf · wist hem so nere,
& seiȝe blod-houndes bold · so busili seche,
he þouȝt, wil his lif last · leten he nolde, 2184
forto saue and serue · þo tvo semli beres ;
& prestly þan putte him out · in peril of deþe,
and to get the hounds away.
bi-fore þo herty houndes · hauteyn of cryes,

to winne hem alle a-weiwardes · fro þe white beres.
whan þe houndes hadde feute · of þe hende best, 2189
þei sesed al here sechyng · & sewed him fast,
ouer mou*n*taynes & mires · many myle þennes.
alle men þat mut herde · of þe muri houndes, 2192
seweden after ful swiþe · to se þat mury chase,
& left þe loueli white beres · ligge in here rest,
þat wisten no-þing of þis werk · þat was hem a-boute.
þe puple þanne porsewed forþ · & of here prey þei missed, 2196
as god gaf þe werwolf *grace* · to go a-wei so ȝerne,
þat horse ne hou*n*de for non hast · ne miȝt him of-take.
whan þemp*er*our was warned · i*n* wast þat þei ȝede,
alle gergeis for grame · gonne take here leue, 2200
& cayred to þaire cu*n*tre · carful and tened.
but ward was *þer* set · wide wher a-boute,
of bold burnes of armes · þe beres forto seche,
þat þe witti werwolf · so wel þanne hem helped, 2204
þat no wiȝt for wile · miȝt wite where þei lenged ;
& hastili whan þei hade nede · halp hem of mete,
& wissed he*m* wel þe weiȝes · to wende a-wei bi niȝt ;
& whan it drouȝ to þe dai · ful dernli he he*m* tauȝt,
bi co*n*tenau*n*ce wel thei kneu · where þei rest schold take. 2209
& busily him-self · wold buske in eche side,
to help he*m* fro harm · ȝif any hap bi-tidde.
þus þat witty werwolf · þe weyes hem kenned ; 2212
lorkinde þurth londes bi niȝt · so lu*m*bardie þei passed,
& come*n* into þe marches · of þe kingdam of poyle.

The hounds followed him many miles over mountains and mires,

and left the bears lying there.

[Fol. 36 b.]

The chase being all in vain, all the Greeks go home.

Watches are set everywhere.

But the werwolf found them food, and was their guide.

Thus they passed Lombardy, and came to Apulia.

Hit bi-tidde þat time · þei trauailed al a niȝt,
out of forest & friþes · & alle faire wodes ; 2216
no couert miȝt þei kacche · þe cu*n*tre was so playne.
& as it dawed liȝt day · to mene þe soþe,
þai hadde a semli siȝt · of a cite nobul,
enclosed comeliche a-boute · wiþ fyn castel-werk ; 2220

They could find no covert there.

They see a castellated city, named Benevento.

bonue*n*t þat riche borwe · burnes ȝut clepun.

William is afraid they will be seen.

whan will*ia*m þer-of war was · he wax a-drad sore,
lest eny segges of þat cite · hem of-se schuld,
& mekly seide to meliors · "myn owne swete herte,
our lord, ȝif his liking be · oure liues now saue! 2225

There is nowhere to hide.

for i no wot in þis world · where we mowe vs hide.
þe perles prince of heue*n* · for his pite & his grace,
saue vs for his pite · þat we ne slayn bene!" 2228
"amen, sire," seide meliors · "Marie þat vs graun*t*,[1]
for þat blessed barnes loue · þat in hire bodi rest!"[2]

[Fol. 37.]

At last they found a quarry under a hill,

þanne wiȝtly wiþ-inne a while · as þei waited a-boute,
þei saie a litel hem bi-side · a semliche quarrere, 2232
vnder an heiȝ hel · al holwe newe diked;

and crept into a cave there, and lay down there to sleep.

deliue*r*li þei hieȝed hem þider · for drede out of doute,
& crepten in-to a caue · whanne þei þeder come,
al wery for-walked · & wold take here reste. 2236
In armes louely eche lauȝt oþer · & leide hem to slepe,
al bonden in þe bere skynnes · bi-fore as þei ȝede.

The werwolf kept watch.

& þat witty werwolf · went ay bi-side,
& kouchid him vnder a kragge · to kepe þis tvo beris.
ac þei ne hadde redly rested · but a litel while, 2241

Some workmen came there to dig.

þat werkmen forto worche · ne wonne þid*e*re sone,
stifly wiþ strong tol · ston stifly to digge,[3]
& as þei come to þe caue · to comse to wirche, 2244

One of them saw the bears,

on of hem sone of-sei · þo semliche white beres,
loueli ligand to-gadir · lapped in armes.
but feiþli as fast · to his felawes he seide,

and bid his fellows remember the cry that had been raised about them,

"herkenes nowe, hende sires · ȝe han herd ofte, 2248
wich a cri has be cried · þurth cu*n*tres fele,
þurth hest of þemp*e*rour · þat haþ rome to kepe,
þat what man vpon molde · miȝt onwar finde,
tvo breme wite beres · þe bane is so maked, 2252
he schold winne his wareson · to weld for eu*e*re,

[1] MS. graut; but the *u* has a *crooked* line over it (the contraction for *ra* or *a*) instead of a *straight* one.

[2] Catchword—"þanne wiȝtly." [3] Read "ston for to digge"(?).

þurth þe grete god of gold · þat him bi ȝiue schold." — and how great was the reward offered for finding them.
"ȝa, forsoþe," seide his felawes · "ful wel þat we knowe;
but wharbi seistow so · so þe god help?" 2256
"þe soþe, felawes, ful sone · ȝe schol it wite,
ȝif ȝe tentifly take kepe · & trewe be to-gadere; — He will shew them how to get the reward.
I wol winne our warisun · for i wot where þei are."
"ȝis, certes," seide þei · "so trewe wol we bene, 2260
þat no fote schal we fle · for nouȝt bi-tides."
"ek, sires," seide þat oþer · "so ȝouȝ crist rede,
standes alle a stounde stille · in þis ilk place, — They must watch there while he goes to Benevento
I wil busk to boneuent · of þe beris telle, 2264
to þe prouost & oþer puple · & hem preie in hast — [Fol. 37 b.]
to come hider & hem cacche · for in caue þei lyen, — to tell the provost.
& slepen samen y-fere · y saw hem riȝt nowe."
þenne were his felawes ful fayn · & fast bad him renne, — They watch while he runs off.
& þei wold a-bide boldly · þe beres þere to kepe. 2269
þat oþer [went],[1] wiȝtly þenne · to warne þe prouost
lelliche hou he hade seye · in þe harde quarrer,
þe tvo white beris · & bad him-self ȝerne 2272
to come wiþ gret pouwer · & cacche hem in haste.
"wostou wel," seyede þe prouost · "þat þei are þere ȝete?" — He tells the provost the bears are found,
"ȝe, certes," seide he · "y saw hem riȝt now boþe;
& fiue of my felawes · ful faste þere hem wayten, 2276 — and five of his fellows are watching them.
þat þei no wende a-way · wil y hider sterte."

Þe prouost þan prestely · þe pepul dede warne, — The provost gathers all the people of the town,
as þei nold lese here lif · here londes & here godes,
þat alle hieȝden hastily · on hors & on fote, 2280
& bi-set sone saddeli · þe quarrer al a-boute,
tiȝtli for to take · þe tvo white beres, — to take the two white bears.
þat pemperour comanded crie · in cuntre al a-boute.
sone eche man þat miȝt · ful manliche him armed, 2284
& heȝeden hastely to hors · þo þat hade any, — All get ready, on horse and on foot,

[1] Perhaps we should read "That other *went* wiztly."—M.

and frekes on fote · hiȝede hem fast after,
so þat þe cu*n*tre þurth þat cri · was al bi-cast sone,
& quikliche a-boute þe quarrer · were kene me*n* of armes, 2288

2200 men in all.

twenty hundered & tvo · trewli in numbre,
to take as bliue þe beres · but god now hem help,
slayn worþ þei slepend · ac selcouþ now heres.
as þo bold beres · so neiȝh here bale slepten, 2292

Just then, Melior had a dream, which she tells to William.

Meliors þurth a metyng · was marred neiȝ for fere,
& þurth þat sorwful sweuene · swiþe sche a-waked,
& wiȝtly to will*i*am · þese wordes sche sede,
"a! louely lemman · lestene now my sawe, 2296
I am ney marred & mad · þis morwe for a sweuene.

"I thought that bears, apes, bulls, [Fol. 38.] and badgers beset our cave, led on by a lion.

for me þout þat þer com · to þis caue nouþe
wilde beris & apes · bores, boles, and baucynes,
a brem nu*m*bre of bestes · þat a lyoun ladde, 2300
þat his kene komandme*n*t · kidden wel to wirche,
to haue taken vs tvo · to-gader in þis denne.

The lion's cub was with them;

þan was þer a litel lyou*n* · of þe lederes bi-ȝete,
come wiþ þat companye · þis case to bi-holde. 2304
& riȝt as þe breme bestes · vs boþe schuld haue take,

and our werwolf came and caught up the cub, and ran off with it,

our wurþi werwolf · þat euer wel vs helpeþ,
com wiþ a gret kours · & for alle þe kene bestes,
& lauȝt vp þe ȝong lyoun · liȝtly in his mouþe, 2308
& went wiþ him a-wei · whedir as him liked.

and they left off seeking us, and went after him."

& alle þe breme bestes · þat a-boute vs were,
for-lete vs & folwed him forþ · for þe ȝong lyouns sake;
& certes, sire, of þat sweuen · riȝt so y a-waked, 2312
& am a-drad to þe deþ · for destine þat wol falle."

William says it is but a fancy.

"Nay, loueli lef," seide will*i*am · "leue al þat sorwe,
forsoþe it is but fanteme · þat ȝe fore-telle;
we mowe reste vs redili · riȝt sauf here at wille." 2316
ac soþli, as che had seide · riȝt wiþ þat ilke,

But then they hear the sound of many horsemen,

þei herd an huge route of horse · þat hel al a-boute,
& herd þat quarrere vmbe-cast · & al þe cu*n*tre wide.

william ful wiȝtly · wayted out at an hole, 2320
& seie breme burnes busi · in ful briȝt armes,
brandissende wiþ gret bost · & of þe beres speke,
In what wise þei wold wirche [1] · wiȝtly hem to take.
þe prouost wiþ al þe puple · presed forþ formast, 2324
& many miȝti man manliche · medled þat time,
& soþliche for to seie · swiche grace god lente,
þat þe prouost sone · a semli ȝong barne,
was brout þider wiþ burnes · þe beres to bi-holde, 2328
for þe selcouþe siȝt to se · how þei schuld be take.
whan william was war · þei were so neiȝh nome,
to meliors wiþ mornyng · mekliche he sayde,
"allas ! my loueliche lemman · þat euer y lif hadde,
to be for al our bale · brouȝt to swiche an hende ! 2333
allas ! lemman, þat our loue · þus luþerly schal departe,
þat we now dulfulli schul deye · ac do now, god, þi grace,
& late me haue al þe harm · heiȝeliche i beseche ; 2336
for i haue wrouȝt al þis wo · & worþi am þer-tille.
for meliors, my dere hert · be marie in heuene,
holly al þis harde · þow hast al for my gelt ;
þer-fore, ȝif godes wille were · i wold haue al þe payne,
to mede ȝe were fro þis quarrere · quitly a-schaped. 2341
& dere hert, deliuerli · do as ich þe rede,
dof bliue þis bere-skyn · & be stille in þi cloþes,
& as sone as þou art seie · þou schalt sone be knowe,
þan worþ þi liif lengeyd [2] · for loue of þi fader ; 2345
so miȝtow be saued · for soþe, neuer elles ;
& þouhȝ þei murþer me þanne · i no make no strengþe.
but god for his grete grace · gof i hadde now here 2348
horse & alle harneys · þat be-houes to werre,
I wold wend hem tille · wiþ-oute ani stint,
& do what i do miȝt · or ich þe deth soffred ; 2351
summe þat bere hem now brag · schuld blede or euen.

and William sees men-in-arms, and hears them speak of the bears.

The provost's son was in the company.

William laments their hard fate. [Fol. 38 b.]

He says *he* ought to have all the harm.

He advises Melior to doff her bearskin, and reveal herself.

No matter if they murder *him*; yet he wishes he had a horse and armour,

and he would do what he could.

[1] MS. "wirthe."

[2] Or "lengeþd," *miswritten for* lengþed (?). Cf. ll. 1040, 1944.

ac botles is now þis bale · but be hit a goddes wille,

She must take off her bearskin and save herself.

& buske þe of þis bere fel · bi-liue, i þe rede,
& wende listly hennes · & late me worþ after; 2355
swiþe saue þi-self · for so is þe best."
Meliors wepande wonder sore · to will*iam* þan seide,
"what? leuestow, leue lemma*n* · þat i þe leue wold
for deþ or for duresse · þat men do me miȝt? 2359

Melior vows she will not do so,

nay, bi him þat wiþ his blod · bouȝt vs on þe rode,
þe beres fel schal neu*er* fro my bac · siker be þer-fore.

having no wish to live if he is slain.

al þis world to winne · i no wold be aliue,
soþli after i seie ȝou · suffere þe deþe;
wiþ god wille take we þe grace · þat god wol us sende." 2364

The provost advances to take the bears,

[Fol. 39.]

Whan þat sawe was seid · soþ for to telle,
þe p*rou*ost bad bold burnes · þe beres go take,
& þei hastily at his hest · hiȝed inward atte roche.
but godli, as god wold · swiche grace bi-tidde, 2368

but the werwolf attacks them,

þe werwolf was war · & wist of here tene,
& be-þout how best wore · þe beres to saue;
& wiȝtly as a wod best · went hem a-ȝens,
Gapand ful grimli · & goþ þanne ful euene 2372

snatches up the provost's son,

to þe semli p*rou*ost sone · & swiþe him vp-cauȝt
be þe middel in his mouþe · þat muche was & large,

and runs off, roaring loudly.

& ran [1] forþ for al þat route · wiþ so rude a noyse,
as he wold þat barn · bliue haue for-frete. 2376
whan þe p*rou*ost þat p*er*ceyued · to þe puple he cried,

The provost cries out for help.

"helpes hastily, hende men · i hote, vp ȝour liues!
ho wol winne his wareson · now wiȝtly him spede
forto saue my sone · or for sorwe i deye!" 2380
ful sone after þat sawe · se þere me*n* miȝt

All begin to chase the werwolf,

Many a bold burn · after þat best prike,
& oþer frekes on fote · as fast as þei miȝt,
so holliche to þat hunting · i hote þe forsoþe, 2384
þat noiþer burde ne barn · bi-laft at þe quarrer,

[1] MS. "þan." Both sense and alliteration require "ran."

but went after þe werwolf · & wayned from þe beres,
hotend out wiþ hornes · & wiþ huge cries, — with horns and loud cries.
& sewed him sadly · wiþ so selkouþ noyse, 2388
þat alle men vpon molde · miȝt be a-wondred.
euer when þe werwolf · was out to-fore — Every time the werwolf was half a mile away,
þe mountaunce of half a myle · or more ȝif it were,
lest þe segges wold haue sesed · here seute to folwe, 2392
he wold abide wiþ þe barn · þe bliþer hem to make, — he waited for them to come up,
In hope þei schuld of him · hent þe litel knaue.
but whan þei were ouȝt him neiȝ · nouȝt he nold abide,
but dede him deliuerli awey · as he dede bi-fore, 2396
& þus lelly he hem ladde · alle þe longe daie, — and so led them on all day long.
þat neuer man vpon molde · miȝt him of-take;
& schete durst þei nouȝt, for drede · þe child to hurte,
but folwed him so forþ · as fast as þei miȝt. 2400
whanne þe wite beres wist · þat were in þe quarrer, — [Fol. 30 b.] The white bears, finding that all their pursuers had gone away,
þat al þe puple was passed · to pursue þe best,
of þat witti werwolf · to winne þe child,
& sei wel for here sake · he suffred þo peines 2404
to socour hem & saue · fram alle sory deþes,
& boþe bliue for þat best · bi-gunne to preie — prayed for the werwolf's safety,
þat god for his grete miȝt · schuld gete him fro harm;
witterli þei wist wel · þat þei nere bot dede, 2408
nere goddes grete miȝt · & þe gode bestes help.
& whan þei boþe had so bede · þei be-þout after, — and began to think they had better make off.
It were best as bliue · to buske hem of þat caue.
& william þese wordes wiȝtly · to meliors seide, 2412
"Mi swete wiȝt, soþ to seie · me semeth[1] it þe best,
to buske[2] vs of þe bere felles · to be þe lasse knowe. — William says they had better take off the skins,
for eche wiȝh wol more a-weite · after þe white beres,
þan þei wol after any wiȝt · þat walkeþ i-cloþed, 2416
þerfor wiȝtly in oure owne wedes · wende we hennes." — and go away in their own clothes.
Mekli seide meliors, "sire · be marie in heuen,
to do holli as ȝe han seide · i hope be þe best." 2419
as bliue þe bere schinnes · from here bodi þei hent, — They rend off the skins, and are

[1] MS. "semeht." [2] MS. "buskes."

glad to see one another once more.

& wiȝtly wrapped hem to-gadere · wittow for soþe,
& bliþe were þei boþe þanne · to bi-hold on oþer;
for feiþli a fourteniȝt · no*n* hadde seie oþeres face.
þanne clipt þei & kest · for al here cares colde, 2424

William looks out, but can see no one near.

& will*i*am ful wiȝtly · waited out of þe caue,
& bi-huld ful busili · a-boute on eche a side,
ȝif eny wiȝt were walkende · but he no*n* seie. 2427
he lauȝt loueli Meliors · & ladde hire bi þe honde;

They take the skins with them, being loath to part with them

cloþed in here cloþes · out of þe caue þei went,
wiþ hem boþe bere felles · þei bere in here armes,
so loþ hem was þo to lese · or leue hem bi-hinde;
& deden hem deliu*er*ly · ouer dales and helles, 2432
ferrest fro alle weies · þer any folk walkes.

They were in much dread, but happily met with no one.

dolfulli þei were adrad · dar no mo*n* hem wite,
last þei schuld mete any man · þat miȝt he*m* be-wrie;
but þan as god wold · or eny man hem seye, 2436

After going three miles, they find a forest.

þei hade walked in þat wise · wel a þre myle,
& founden þan a fayr forest · floriched ful þik,
& þider wiȝtly þei went · wel vnparceyued.
what of here hard heiȝing · & of þe hote weder, 2440

Melior is so tired, she can go no farther.

Meliors was al mat · sche ne miȝt no furþer,
& prestly in a þicke place · of þat pris wode,
wel out fro*m* alle weyes · for-wery þei hem rested,
& þonked god gretliche · þat so godliche hem saued;

So they rest in the forest, and fall asleep.

& seþþen softli to slepe · samen þei hem leide, 2445
as þei þat were wery · for-waked to-fore.
Nouȝ leue we of hem a while · & speke we a-no*þer*;
For of þe witti werwolf · a while wol i telle. 2448

The provost and his men chased the werwolf till sunset.

So long þat ferli folk · folwed him after,
to haue be-nom hi*m* þe barn · þat he nam þat time,
huntyng holliche þat day · on hors & on fote,
till þe semli sunne · was setled to reste. 2452
& whan it was so neiȝ niȝt · to neuen þe soþe,

The werwolf thought there was no need to go farther;

þe werwolf wist wel · it was no more nede
to bere þat [barn] no forþer[1] · for þe beres sake.

[1] Read "to bere that *barn*."—M. See l. 2459.

þei hadde folwed him so fer · þat forsoþe he wist, 2456
þat no seg þat hade sewed · no schuld hom winne,
hiȝed þei neu*er* so hard · of al þa long niȝt.
& þanne as bliue þat barn · þe best a-doun sette, — so he put the provost's son down, quite unharmed,
wiþ-oute eny maner wem · þe worse it to greue, 2460
for non schold in þat barnes bodi · o brusure finde
as of þat bold best · but bold it was & faire.
& as sone as he hade · sette it a-downe, — and went off as nimbly as if he had but gone half a mile.
he went wiȝtly a-weie · wiþ-oute eny more, 2464
deliu*er*li as he nadde þat day · gon half a myle.
when þe p*ro*uost & þe puple · parceyued þat ilk,
þat þe best hade left þe barn · bliþe were þei þanne.
þe p*ro*uost bi-fore þe puple · priked þider formest, 2468 — The provost rides up, recovers his son,
& hent it vp in hast · ful hendli in his armes, [Fol. 40 b.]
and clipt it & kest · oft & many siþes; — and looks to see if he is harmed,
bi-huld a-boute on his bodi · ȝif it blenched were;
whan he saw it al sound · so glad was he þanne, 2472 — and is glad to find him whole.
þat na gref vnder god · gayned to his ioye.
al þe puple prestly · þat him̃ porsewed hadde,
gretliche þonked god · of þat grace bi-falle,
& tiȝtli al here tene · was turned in-to ioye, 2476 — The people's sorrow is turned into joy.
& as bliue wiþ blisse · þei busked hem homward,
wiþ al þe murþe vpo*n* molde · þat men miȝt diuise.
but eche man al niȝt · inned him where he miȝt, — They rested all night where they could,
& whan hit dawed, deliu*er*li · dede hem homward. 2480
& wiȝtli whan þei hom come · wittow for soþe,
þe p*ro*uost ful prestli · al þat puple warned,
to buske bliue to þe quarrer · þe beres to take. — and repaired next day to the quarry.
þei went wiþ god wille · but wan þei þider come, 2484
þei founde al awei fare · bi-fore þat þer wore.
þo ne wist þei in þe world · whider hem to seche, — Finding nothing there, they return home.
but hiȝed hem homward · fast as þei miȝt,
& token redli here rest · at here owne wille. 2488
þe p*ro*uost dede pertli · p*ro*fer al a-boute, — The provost proclaims a reward for taking the bears;
what man vpo*n* mold · miȝt þe beres take,
he schuld gete of gold · garissou*n* for euere.

and many men looked for them, but none found them.

Many man by his miȝt · medled him þer-after, 2492
a-boute bi eche side · þo bestes for to seche.
but as god ȝaf þe grace · no gom miȝt hem finde,
so happiliche þei hem hidde · þei hadde swiche grace.

The werwolf returned to William and his mate,

& forto telle what tidde · of þat tide werwolf, 2496
þat niȝt þat hadde · þe p*rou*ost sone for-left,
he wan a-ȝen to will*ia*m · & to his worþ make,

well charged with wine and meats.

wel i-charged wiþ wyn · & wiþ gode metes,
þat he wan bi þe weie · as he þider went. 2500

He then goes away again, to their great wonder.

& bliue þat he bar · be-fore will*ia*m hit leide,
& went him wiȝtly · a-wei fro hem sone.
[Fol. 41.] þerof was will*ia*m a-wondred · & meliors alse,
why þe best nold abide · þat so wel hem helped, 2504

They feel sure the beast is of man's nature.

& seide eiþer til oþer · "now sertes, for soþe,
þis best has ma*n*nes kynde · it may be non oþer.
se what sorwe he suffres · to saue vs tweine!

He never fails them at need.

& namli, when we han nede · neu*er* he ne fayleþ, 2508
þat he ne bringeþ wher we ben · þat to vs bi-houes.
he þat suffred for our sake · sore wondes fiue,
he our buxu*m* best saue · & hald vs his liue."
"amen, sire," seide meliors · "marie þat graunt! 2512
nade his help hende ben · we hade be ded ȝore."

They eat and drink, and rest a day and a night.

þei made hem þan merye · wiþ mete þat þei hadde,
& eten at here ese · for þei were for-hungred,
& rested þere redeli · al þat longe day, 2516
& al þe niȝt next after · to neuen þe soþe,
for meliors was so wery · þat sche ne walk miȝt.

Early next morning, some colliers come near their hiding-place.

& erliche on þe morwe · er þe sunne gan schine,
choliers þat cayreden col · come þere bi-side, 2520
& oþer wiȝes þat were wont · wode forto fecche,
fast þer will*ia*m was · & his worþ burde.

The colliers begin to talk, and one says if the white bears were there,

þe kolieres bi-komsed to karpe · kenely i-fere;
on of hem seide sadli · þise selue wordes: 2524
"wold god þe white beres · were here nowþe,

nothing should save them;

alle þe me*n* on mold · ne schuld here liues saue,
for wiȝtly wold ich wende · and warne þe p*rou*ost,

& titliche schuld þei be take · & moche tene suffre ;
for breme beres [be] [1] þei none · as þei be-semen, 2529 — that they are not really bears, but the emperor's daughter and a knight.
It is þemp*er*ours douȝter · þat so digised wendeþ,
wiþ a [comliche] kniȝt [2] · þat kauȝt haþ hire loue.
þer-fore þese cries ben · so kenliche maked, 2532
what man on molde · mow hem first fynde,
he mai gete so moche gold · þat pore worþ he neu*er*.
wonderli a werwolf · ȝesterday hem saued, — A werwolf had saved them yesterday.
þa pertly þe p*rou*ost barn · bar a-way fro*m* alle ; 2536
while me*n* hunted after hem · þai han a-wai schaped. [Fol. 41 b.]
bi him þat me bouȝt · were þei boþe here,
þei schuld wicche wel · ȝif þei a-wei went, — but fourscore werwolves should not save them to-day.
þouȝh þer were werwolfs · wiþ hem foure schore !"
þen was meliors neiȝ mad · al-most for fere, 2541 — Melior was very frightened, and lay quite still.
lest þat foule felþe · schold haue he*m* fou*n*de þere,
& darked stille in hire den · for drede, boute noyse.
wiȝtly a-noþ*er* werkman · þat was þer be-side 2544 — Another collier rebuked the first one,
gan flite wiþ þat felþe · þat formest hadde spoke,
seide, "do þi deuer · þat þow hast to done.
what were þe þe beter nouȝ · þeiȝh þe beris were here, — saying that the white bears were nothing to *him*.
to do hem any duresse ? · þei misdede þe neu*er*. 2548
Mani hard hape · han þei a-schapet,
& so i hope þei schal ȝit · for al þi sori wille.
god for his grete miȝt · fram greues hem saue, — "May God preserve them! and, as for us, let us go about our business."
& bring he*m* boþe wiþ blis · þ*er*e þei be wold. 2552
do we þat we haue to done · & diȝt we vs henne,
su*m* selu*er* for our semes [3] · in þe cite to gete."
þei hadde bliue here burþenes · & bi-gunne to wende, — So they returned to the city.
will*ia*m ne is swete wiȝt · seie hem na more ; 2556
but holliche had herd · al here huge speche.
þan seide will*ia*m wiȝtly · þese selue wordes, — William says the bearskins will be of no more use to them.
"Meliors, my swete hert · now mow we no more
In þise breme bere felles · a-boute here walke, 2560

[1] Read "beres *be* thei none."—M.
[2] Read "With a *komli* knizt," or something similar.—M. See l. 2637.
[3] See note.

ȝif we wist in what wise · how to worche beter."

Melior says that any one who meets them in their own clothes will know them.

" certes, sire, þat is soþ " · seide meliors þan,
" ȝif we walken in þes wedes · i wot wel for soþe,
& al þe cu*n*tre knoweþ · what cas we ben inne, 2564
what man so vs metes · may vs sone knowe.

What is to be done?

I ne wot in wat wise · to worche be best."
" nor ich, i-wisse," sede will*ia*m · " but worþe god wiþ alle."

While þe two derlinges · talked to-gadere, 2568
þe werwolf an huge hert · hade hunted riȝt þider,

Just then, the werwolf killed a huge hart and a hind, and left them.

& riȝt be-fore hem boþe · brouȝt hit to deþe;
& hastilyche þan hiȝed · & an hinde brouȝt,
[Fol. 42.] serued it in þe same wise · as þe hert bi-fore, 2572
& went wiȝtly a-wei · wit-oute any more.

William perceived that the werwolf meant them to use the skins, and to leave the bearskins.

þan wist will*ia*m wel · bi þe bestes wille,
þat he þe hert & þe hinde · hade þere slayne,
him & his loueliche lemma*n* · to lappe in þe skinnes,
& bileue þere þe beres felles · þat so busili were a-spied.
& mekli þan to meliors · he mu*n*ged what he þouȝt,
& seide, " se wich a selcouþ · þis semliche best worcheþ,

They pray that the werwolf may never come to harm.

for-þi c*r*ist crouned king · kepe him fro sorwe, 2580
& late man neuer haue miȝt · him to misdone."
" þat graunt god," seide meliors · " for his swete miȝt;
for nere þe help of heuen king · & þe hende best,
oure liues hadde be lore · many a day seþþe." 2584

Said William, "Let us flay these beasts, and array ourselves in the skins."

" ȝa, i-wisse," seide will*ia*m · " my derworþ herte;
for-þi at oure bestes wille · worche we nouþe.
hastili hulde we · þe hides of þise bestes,
Greiþe we vs in þat gere · to go ferþer hennes." 2588

William flays the hart, and Melior the hind.

will*ia*m hent hastili þe hert · & meliors þe hinde,
& a[s] smartli as þei couþe · þe skinnes of-turned.
eiþer gamliche gan greþe o*þer* · gailiche *þer*-inne,

They sew each other up in the skins.

þat þe skinnes sat saddeli · sowed to hem boþe, 2592
as hit hade ben · on þe beste þat hit growed.
& better þei semed þan to siȝt · semliche hertes,

þan þei semed be-fore · beres whan þei were, 2595
so iustili on e*þer* of he*m* · were ioyned þe skinnes.

And whan þei were greiþed · gayli in þat gere,
þei seten i*n* here solas · til su*nn*e ȝede to rest.
whan it neiȝet niȝt, þei nold · no lenger a-bide, 2599
but went forþ on here weie · for wel list he*m* gone,
& here semli werwolf · sewed fast after,
þat wittily tauȝt he*m* þe weies · whider þei wende scholde,
sechande towarde cisile · þe sotilest weyes.
& namliche on þe morwe · many men hem souȝt 2604
In wodes & wildernesse · wide where a-boute,
& as þei walked in wodes · wiþ ful gode hou*n*des,
þei founde þe beres skinnes · & þe bestes flayne.
þat it was an hert & an hinde · hastili þei knewen,
& wist wel þat þei went · wrapped in þe skinnes, 2609
þei þat bi-fore had be · as tvo white beres,
& wist þat þai in wast · wrouȝt þer to-fore
for al þe hard huntyng · þat þei hadde maked. 2612
& folwe he*m* durst þei no ferre · for a gret werre,
þat was wonderli hard · in þe next londe,
& þo þe seute sesed · after þe swete bestes.
Mu*n*ge mai [i] [1] no more · of noma*n* þat hem folwed,
ac of þe hert & þe hinde · herkenes now ferþer. 2617

At night-time they set out again,

the werwolf following,

[Fol. 42 b.]

who guided them towards Sicily.

Next day some men found the bearskins, and the flayed beasts,

and knew that they were now dressed as a hart and a hind.

But they dared not pursue them, because of a great war that was in the next land.

Þei went fast on here way · þe werwolf he*m* ladde
ouer mures & mu*n*taynes · & many faire pleynes;
but alwei as þei went · wasted þei it founde. 2620
for burwes & bold tounes · al for-brent were,
but ȝit were þei wiþ walles · warchet a-boute.
& al was willi*a*m landes · wittow wel for soþe,
he þat þere was an hert; · heres þenchesoun, 2624
whi þe wer & þat wo · þo was in þat londe.
ȝe han herd here bi-fore · as ich vnderstonde,

The werwolf led them over country that was all laid waste, the towns being burnt.

It was William's own country.

[1] Read "mai *i* no more."—M.

For Ebrouns, William's father, was king of Apulia, Sicily, Palermo, and Calabria, and was dead.

of ebrou*ns* þe kud king · þat þat kingdom out
of poyle & of cisile · of pallerne & calabre, 2628
& was will*ia*ms fader · þat went þere as an hert,
& ded was & doluen · mani a day bi-fore.

William's mother was still alive. [Fol. 43.]

& his comeliche quene · as god wold, ȝit liuede,
þat was will*ia*ms moder · & was a menskful lady. 2632
sche had a derworþe douȝter · to deme þe soþe,
on þe fairest on face · and frelokest i-schapen,
þat eu*ere* man vpon molde · miȝt [on] diuise ;[1]

William's sister, younger than himself by three years,

sche was ȝonger þan will*ia*m · bi fulle þre ȝeres. 2636
& þe kud king of spayne · hade a comliche sone,
þat was a kud kniȝt · and kene man of armes ;
for him, was þe werwolf · so wickedli for-schaped
þurth malice of his stepmoder · as ȝe mow here after ;
ac breþer were þei boþe · as bi on fader. 2641

had been sought in marriage by the king of Spain's son, the werwolf's half-brother.

þe kud king of spayne · coueyted for his sone
þat worþi mayden · þat was will*ia*ms suster ;
ac þe quen for no cas no wold · þat wedding graunt ;
for-þi þe king & his sone · swiche werre a-rered. 2645

On her refusal, the king of Spain had invaded the land,

for þei hadde luþerli here lond · brend and destrued,
brent bold borwes, & burnes · bruttened to deþe,
& of-sette hire so harde · þe soþe for to telle, 2648
þat prestli to hire puple · to palerne sche ferde ;

and besieged the queen in Palermo.

& þe king bi-seget þe cite · selcouþli harde,
& mani a sad sauȝt · his sone þer-to made,
ac douȝti men deliuerli · defended it wiþ-inne ; 2652
but sertenli on boþe sides · was slayn muche puple,
& þat lasted so longe · leue me for soþe,

Its defenders advised the queen to surrender,

þei of þat cite · of þo segges al sad were,
& come ofte to þe quen · & cu*n*seiled hire ȝerne 2656
to acorde wiþ þe king · & grau*n*te his wille,
for þei no leng*er* in no maner · miȝt meyntene þat sege,
for moche folk of here fon · fel algate newe,
& here men flebled[2] fast · & faileden of here mete, 2660
þat þei miȝt in no maner · meyntene þe sege.

[1] See l. 4436. [2] Read "febled" (?)

þanne þat comliche quen · curteyseliche seide,
"lordinges, ȝe ben my lege men · þat gode ben & trewe,
bold burnes of bodies · batailes big to gye ; 2664
but þat ȝe grettli aren a-greued · gaynli i knowe,
for þise tenful trauayles · but titli, i hope,
al it worþ wel amended · for þis ȝe witen alle,
þat i haue sent after socour · to my semly fader, 2668
þat grece haþ godli to gye · as emperour & sire.
& i wot witterli · wiþ-oute eni faile,
þat socur he wol me sende · or elles com him-selue.
It is so fer to þat cuntre · ȝe knowe wel þe soþe, 2672
þat he may nouȝt saile · swiftli as he wold.
for-þi alle my bolde burnes · i beseche & preie,
fo[r] loue þat ȝe owe to þe lord · þat let ȝou be fourmed,
Meyntenes ȝit ȝoure manchip · manli a while, 2676
til god of his grete miȝt · god tyding vs sende."
& bad þo tvo bold barouns · bliue forþ wende
to þe king of spayne · & curtesly him seie,
þat sche preied par charite · in pes to late hire lengþe
fulle a fourteniȝt · for-oute alle greues 2681
of sauȝtes to þe cite · or any sorwe elles.
& but hire fader com · bi þe fourteniȝtes hende,
or sende hire sum socour · bi þe same time, 2684
sche wold wiþ god wille · wiþ-oute more lette
Meke hire in his merci · on þise maner wise,
to giue him boute grucching · al þat gode,
so þat sche miȝt saufli · wiþ hire semli douȝter 2688
wende wiȝtli a-wei · whider hire god liked.
þe messegeres manli · in here weye went,
spacli to þe king of spayne · þis speche þei tolde.
but he swor his oþ · þat he a-sent nold, 2692
for no man vpon molde · but he most haue hire douȝter ;
& þei titly turned aȝen · & told so þe quene.

but she exhorts them to be brave, and hold out,

[Fol. 43 b.]

for she has sent for succour to her father, the emperor of Greece,

who would require some time for the journey.

So she prays them to hold out a little longer.

She asks the king of Spain to grant a truce of 14 days,

and if her father did not come then, she would submit,

on condition that she and her daughter might have free passage anywhere.

The king of Spain refuses.

& whan sche wist witerli · þe wille of þe king,
as a woful womman · sche went to hir chaumber, 2696
& preyed ful pitousli · to þe prince of heuene,
for marie his moder loue · to mayntene hire & help,
þat hire foos for no cas · wiþ fors hire conquerede,
to winne aȝens hire wille · hire worliche douȝter. 2700
[Fol. 44.] "no madame,"[1] seide hire douȝter · "marie þat graunt,
for þe blissful barnes loue · þat hire brestes souked!"
þus þei dwelled in duel · niȝtes and daies,
boþe þat corteys quen · & hire comliche douȝter. 2704
had þei wist witterli · whiche help god hem sente,
al hire gref in-to game · gaynli schold haue turned.
now sece we of þe segges · þat þe sege holden,
& of þe selcouþ a-sautes · þat þei samen ȝolde, 2708
& of þe douȝthi defens · of wieȝs þer wiþ-inne.
& listenes now a litel · of þe tvo leue bestes,
þat as an hert & an hinde · holden here weye,
as þe witty werwolf · wold hem euer lede. 2712

The queen retires to her chamber, praying to Christ and Mary for help.

She and her daughter are in great grief.

No more of the defenders of the city, and the assaults on it,

but hear about the hart and the hind, and the werwolf.

Of þis hert & þis hinde · hende now listenes.
so long þei caired ouer cuntres · as þat crist wold,
ouer dales & downes · & disgesye weyes,
as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat was here hole frend,
þan þei samen souȝt · to þe riche cite of rise, 2717
þat set is ful semli · vpon þe see bonke.
a gret number of naueye · to þat hauen longet,
& here þe buxum bestes · bi-houed ouer passe. 2720
& so brod was þe see · þat sayle hem bihoued
holliche al a niȝt · & vp happe, wel more.
al day þe bestes darked · in here den stille
In a ragged roche · riȝt be þe hauen side, 2724
til it was wiþ-inne niȝt · & alle wiȝes slepten.
þan hiȝed þei hem to þe hauen · hastily & sone,

The werwolf guided them till they came to the city of Reggio,

where they would have to cross the straits.

They lay hid near the harbour till night,

[1] MS. "made." Read "madame." The word in the text is called by Bryant a provincialism, but without reason.—M. The same error occurs in l. 3184, but it is corrected in l. 3191.

as þe werwolf he*m* wissed · þat was al here gye,
& stalkeden ful stilly · þer stoden fele schippes. 2728 — when they went down to the ships.
þe werwolf waited wiȝtly · which schip was ȝarest,
to fare forþ at þat flod · & fond on sone, — The werwolf found a ship ready to sail.
þat was gayly greyt · to go to þe seile,
& feiþliche frauȝt · ful of fine wines. 2732
þe werwolf went *þer*-to · to wite ho were þere ;
þe segges were a-slepe þan · þat it schuld ȝeme, — The men were all asleep.
al but þe mest maister · to munge þe soþe. [Fol. 44 b.]
þei were turned to towne · to pleie þer whiles, 2736
In m*ur*þe til þe mone arise · arst miȝt þei nouȝt passe.
& whan þe werwolf wist · þat alle slept fast,
to þe hert & þe hinde · he turned him a-ȝeine, — The werwolf led the hart and hind to the ship,
& bi certeyn signes · sone he hem tauȝt, 2740
& þei folwed him fayre · fayn for þat grace,
& he ful listli hem ledes · to þat loueli schippe,
& tauȝt bi-hinde tunnes · hem to hude þere. — and they all hid themselves behind tuns of wine.
þe maistres, whan þe mone a-ros · manli in come, 2744
& faire at þe fulle flod · þei ferden to sayle,
& hadde wind at wille · to wende whan hem liked. — The men came on board, and set sail.
þe werewolf wist wel · þei were neiȝ ouer,
& bi-þout how were best · þe bestes to help, 2748
þat þei miȝt scaþeles · schape of þat schip. — When they were nearly over, the werwolf leapt overboard.
whan þe ludes where neiȝ lond · he leped ou*er* borde,
sadli in al here siȝt · for þei him sew schold—
whil þe hert & þe hinde scaped— · to hunte him a-boute. 2752
sone as þe schipme*n* · seie him out lepen, — The shipmen, seeing him, seized sprits and oars,
hastili hent eche man · a spret or an ore,
& lau*n*ced luþerly after him · his lif to haue reued.
on so hetterli him hitte · as he lep in þe water, 2756 — and one of them hit him so hard that he dived to the bottom,
þat he for dul of þe dent · diued to þe grounde,
& hade neiȝ lost is lif · but, as our lord wold,
for al þat sterne strok · stifli he vp-keuerede,
& swam swiftili awei · þat þei seȝen alle, 2760 — yet he swam away to land.
& lauȝt liȝtli þe lond · a litel hem bi-side.

& þei, as folk þat were fayn · to forfare þat best,
The men jumped ashore and followed him. saileden swiþe to londe · & sewed him after.
þe werwolf was wily · & went so soft, 2764
þe schipmen wend wel · at wille him take,
All went after him but a bare-legged boy. & him alle seweden · þat to þe schip longede,
but a barlegged bold boie · þat to þe barge ȝemed.
whan þe schipmen wiþ þe wolf · were wel passed, 2768
[Fol. 45.] The hart and hind come on deck. þe hert & þe hinde · þan hoped wel to schape,
& busked hem boþe sone · a-boue þe hacches.
The boy sees them, and, in great terror, but whan þe boie of þe barge · þe bestes of-seie,
he was neiȝ wod of his witt · witow, for fere, 2772
& be-þouȝt him þere · þe bestes for to quelle.
hit the hind so that she tumbled top over tail over the hatches. & happili to þe hinde · he hit þanne formest,
& set hire a sal strok · so sore in þe necke,
þat sche top ouer tail · tombled ou*er* þe hacches. 2776
But the hart caught her up, and carried her ashore over a plank, but þe hert ful hastili · hent hire vp in armes,
& bare hire forþ ou*er*-bord · on a brod planke,
& nas bold wiþ þe boye · no debate make,
but fayn was a-way to fle · for fere of mo gestes, 2780
fer away fro þe see · or he stynt wold.
and, when out of sight, looked to see if the hind was hurt; & whan he wist þat he was · wel out of siȝt,
he be-hilde ȝif þe hinde · euel hurt were,
& fond sche nas but a-friȝt · for fere of þat dint. 2784
þan saide þe hert to þe hinde · hendly & faire,
saying that, if he had but weapons, the barge-boy should suffer death for it. "a! worþili wiȝt · wonder ar þine happes,
þatow hentest al þe harm · þat i haue deserued!
wold god for his grace · & his grete miȝt, 2788
þat i hade here · þat to werre falles,
þe boye þat þe barge ȝemes · a-beye schold sore;
for þe dint he þe dalt · his deþ were marked."
"Nay," said Mellor, "let us rather thank God for our escape. "nay, my worþi make" · seide meliors þanne, 2792
"Greue þe nouȝt, for goddes loue · þat gart þe be fourmed,
þat we so scaþli ar a-schaped · god mowe [we][1] þonk,
& oure worþi werwolf · þat wel him by-tyde!
dere god, for deth · he dreiȝh for vs alle, 2796

[1] Read "mowe *we* thonk."—M. Cf. l. 2559.

late no seg miȝt haue · to sle our gode best !
nere his wit & his werk · we were schent boþe."
"sertes, sweting, þat is soþ" · seide william þanne,
"Go we on oure gate · for goddes loue, bliue, 2800
to recuuer sum resset · þere we vs rest miȝt."
ful mekli seide meliors · wiþ-oute any fare,
"Go we now on goddes halue ;" · þan went þei god spede,
cleppende comely eiþer oþer · to karpe þe soþe. 2804

May no one harm or slay our werwolf!"

William proposes that they should seek a hiding-place to rest in, [Fol. 45 b.] and Melior assents.

Whan þe hert & þe hind · were of so harde a-chaped,
þe boye þat þe barge ȝemed · of þe bestes hade wonder,
þat on bar of þe barge · so boldeli þat oþer,
wiþ so comely contenaunce · clippend in armes, 2808
& ferden ferst on foure fet · & seþþe vp tweyne.
& wiȝtly after þe werwolf · was wel a-schaped,
fram alle þe sory chipmen · þat sewed him to quelle,
but treuli non him take · to tene namore ; 2812
& to þe hert & þe hinde · heȝed him faste.
& whan þe hert & þe hinde · had siȝt of here best,
þei were gretli glad · & oft god þonked ;
þat he sauf was & sou[n]d [1] · fro þe men a-schaped. 2816
þan ferde þei alle forþ i-fere · fayn of here liues.
þe chipmen þat þe worwolf · so sadly hade chased,
buskeden aȝen to here barge · & þe boye hem tolde
wiche an hert & an hinde · hadde þer-out schaped, 2820
wiȝtli wen þei went · þe wolf for to sewe ;
& how he hitte þe hinde · also he told,
& how þe hert hire hent · & hiȝed ouer-borde,
& wiþ how coynte cuntenaunce · he cuuerede hire after,
& went wiȝtly a-wey · but whider wist he neuer. 2825
þer-of were þei a-wondred · but wist þei no bote,
whederward forto fare · to finde þe bestes ;
but lefte þei in lisse · now listenes of þes bestes, 2828
þurth wildernesse hou þei went · & wat hem tidde after.

The barge-boy was astonished to see them go first on four feet, and then on two.

The werwolf, having escaped safely, went after the hart and hind.

The shipmen returned to the barge, and the boy told them his story,

how the hart caught up the hind, and hied overboard.

[1] Read "sound."—M.

The hart and hind found all the country laid waste.

Whiderward as þei wo*n*t · al wast þei it fou*n*de,
bolde burwes for-brent · a-boute on eche side,
& eu*er* as þe witty werwolf · wold hem lede, 2832
faire þei him folwed · as here frend holde.
& so longe he hem ladde · as he him-self þouȝt,

The werwolf led them to a rich and fair town, named Palermo, [Fol. 46.]

he brouȝt hem to a borwȝ · þat bold was & riche,
& fairest of alle fason · for eny riche holde, 2836
þat euer man vpon mold · miȝt on loke.
p*er*les was þe paleis · and palerne it hiȝt.

the very place whence the werwolf took away William at first.

þe werwolf wan will*ia*m · ferst fro þat place,
whan he was in childhod · as þe chau*n*ce be-fore told.
& treuli, riȝt þat time · to telle al þe soþe, 2841

William's mother is in a hard strait, being besieged by the king of Spain.

will*ia*ms moder in meschef · wiþ moche folk þere lenged;
for þe king of spayne · bi-seged hire harde,
In maner as þe mat*er* · was minged bi-fore. 2844

Near her palace was a park,

a pris place was vnder þe paleys · a park as it were,
þat whilom wiþ wilde bestes · was wel restored;
but þe segges þat held þe sege · had it al destruyt.

where the hart and hind hid themselves.

þe hert & þe hinde þere · þanne hem hed sone, 2848
as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat ay was here gye,
vnder a coynte crag · fast bi þe quenes chau*m*ber,
& al þat day in þat den · þei darked, & þe niȝt;

The werwolf got meat and drink for them.

þe werwolf went wiȝtly · & whan he*m* mete & drink,
so þat þei mad he*m* as murie · as þei miȝt þat time. 2853
now of þe buxu*m* bestes · be we a while stille,
& carpe we of þe curteys quen · þat in þe castel lenged.

So hard was sche be-seged · soþ for to telle, 2856
& so harde sautes · to þe cite were ȝeuen,

The battlements of the city were broken by the war-engines, and many men were slain.

þat þe komli kerneles · were to-clatered wiþ engines,
& mani of here miȝthi men · murdred to deþe.
þerfor þe quen was carful · & oft to crist pr*e*yed, 2860
to sende hire su*m* socour · þat sche saued were,
for marie his moder loue · þat is of mercy welle.

It was all because of the queen's daughter.

I[n] swiche lif hade sche liued · a long time to-fore,
& al duel þat sche drey · was for hire douȝt*er* sake. 2864

but seþþe on þe selue niȝt · þe soþe forto telle,
þat þe hert & þe hinde · & here þridde fere
vnder þe castel in a crag · cauȝt here rest,
þe quen was wery for-wept · & went to bedde. 2868
a selcoþe sweuen sone · in hire bed sche mette;
hire þouȝt þat sche & hire [douȝter] · on a dai al-one
weren passed p*ri*ueli þe paleys · bi a posterne ȝate
to pleie hem p*ri*ueli in þe park · þat to þe paleis longed.
hire þouȝt an hundered M. · were hire a-boute 2873
of lebardes & beres · & alle bestes boute nu*m*ber,
G*ri*mli gapande to greue · hire & hire douȝter;
& riȝt as þo breme bestes · he*m* boþe schold haue take,
here þouȝt, a wiȝt werwolf · & to white beres 2877
hieȝeden harde hem to help · in þat ilk nede;
& whanne þo two white beres · were com he*m* nere,
þei semde to hire siȝt · two semli hertes; 2880
& eiþ*er* of hem a faire figure · in here for-hed hadde.
þe hug*er* hert in his hed · had, as hire semede,
þe fasou*n* & þe forme · of a fair kniȝt in feld, 2883
& semde hire owne sone · þat sche long hade missed.
þat oþ*er* hert, as hire þouȝt · þe schap hade of a mayde,
fairest of alle fetures · þat sche to-for hadde seie,
& eiþ*er* hert on his hed · hadde, as hire þout,
a gret kroune of gold · ful of gode stones, 2888
þat semli was to siȝt · & schined ful wide.
þan þouȝt hire þe werwolf · & þe maide bi-laft;
& þe huge hert him-self · hastili þat time,
aȝens alle þe bestes · bliue went al-one, 2892
& bar dou*n* bi eche side · ay þe boldest formast;
was non so stef him wiþ-stod · so sternli he wrouȝt.
þe grettest of þe grim bestes · he gat to p*ri*son sone;
a lyon & a lybard · þat lederes were of alle, 2896
hire þouȝt, þat huge hert · hastili hade take,
& putte hem in hire prisoun · to peyne he*m* at hire wille.
þe stoutest & þe sternest · he stiȝtled sone after,

Whilst the hart and hind slept, the queen went to bed,

and dreamt that she and her [Fol. 46 b.] daughter were in the park,

when 100,000 leopards and bears attacked them,

but a werwolf and two white bears came to her assistance.

The bears changed into harts as they came nearer.

The larger hart had on his forehead the figure of a knight like her own son.

The other had the shape of a maid.

Crowns were on their heads.

The hart bore down all the beasts,

taking the largest ones prisoners.

þat he ga[r]te[1] þe grettest · to hire prison louȝte; 2900

The rest of the beasts fled away for fear.

& redli al þo remnant · of þe rude bestes
for fere be-gunne to fle · as fast as þei miȝt,
ouer dales & dounes · for drede of the hert.
sone as þe hende hert · hire hade deliuered,[2] 2904

[Fol. 47.]

& put here fram alle peril · fro þe perilous bestes,

Next she dreamt that she went up to her castle,

here þouȝt, sche went wiȝtli · a-ȝen to þe castel,
& turned vp to þe heiȝest tour · to bi-hold a-boute.

and that her right arm stretched over Rome, and her left lay over Spain.

þan þout hire, þat hire riȝt arm · last ouer rome, 2908
& lelli hire left arm · lai al ouer spayne,
& boþe þo komly kingdomes · komen to hire wille,
forto herken al hire hest · & hire wille worche.

Awaking, she wondered; and went weeping to the chapel.

here-of was sche al a-wondred · & a-waked sone, 2912
& for drede of hire drem · deulfulli quaked,
& wepud wonder sore · & wiȝtli hire cloþed,
& romed þan redli · al redles to hure chapel,
& godly be-souȝt god · to gode turne hire sweuen. 2916

She had a priest named Moses, to whom she told her dream.

Þat comli quen hade a prest · a konyng man of lore,
þat moche couþe of many · & moyses he hiȝt,
to consaile sche him clepud · & þe cas him told,
soþliche al þe sweuen · þat hire a-niȝt mette. 2920
& as tit as sche had told · þe prest tok his bokes,
& sey sone of þat sweuen · hou it schuld turne.
he loked on þat comeli quen · & curtesli seide,

He said, "Mourn not, it betokens succour.

"Madame, mourne ȝe namore · ȝe mow wel seie 2924
þat þe prince of heuen · ȝou haþ prestli in mynde,
& socor sendeþ ȝou sone · bi þis sweuen i knowe.

The beasts that beset you are the men who besiege you.

þe bestes þat bi-sett ȝou so · & ȝour semli douȝter,
& duelfulli to deþe · wold haue ȝou don boþe, 2928
þo ar soþli þo segges · þat hard ȝou bi-sege,
& don hard here miȝt · to destruye ȝou here.

As for the white bears or harts with crowns,

wite ȝe of þe white beres · þat waxen seþþe hertes,
& haue þe fourme in here hed · of tvo faire chi[l]deren,[3]

[1] MS. "gate." See l. 1365. [2] Catchword—"& put hire."
[3] Read "childeren."—M.

& gode crounes of gold · on here hedes graiþed, 2933
þe hert þat ȝou helped · so hastili wiþ strengþe,
þe lyon & þe lebard · to ȝour prisou*n* ladde,
& alle þe bremest bestes · brouȝt [to][1] ȝour wille, 2936
what þat it tokeneþ · telle wol ich sone. — I will tell you all.
It is a ful kud kniȝt · schal come ȝou to help,
& þu[r]th[2] his douȝthi dedes · destruye þis werre,
& cacche þe king of spayne · þurth his cler strengþe,
& soþþe after is sone · þat al þe sorwe is fore, 2941
& put hem in ȝour p*ri*son · þe proddest of hem alle
schul be buxu*m* at ȝour wille · & blinne al þis fare,
& meke hem to ȝour merci · þat now be misseproude.
& þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat schal þe kome to help, 2945
I not where he schal · ȝou to wiue welde,
but i wot wisli he worþ · king of þis reaume.
also þat werwolf · þat wiþ þe hertes comes, 2948
he is a kud kniȝt · & schal be kud wide,
& þurth him, soþli, i se · þe king schal be deliuered,
& put out of prisou*n* · & god pes be maked.
his sone & alle oþer · schul be ȝour hole frendes, 2952
& schul restore riuedli · þe reddour þat was maked.
þurth þilke werwolf · ȝe schul wite of ȝoure sone
þat ȝe long haue for-lore · leue me for soþe,
& him winne a-ȝen at wille · wiþ-inne a schort time.
& redli, of ȝour riȝt arm · þat ouer rome streyt, 2957
I se wel þe signifiau*n*ce · þis schal þer-of falle;
þi sone schal wedde swiche a wif · to weld wiþ al rome,
as kind keper & king · i knowe wel þe soþe. 2960
& lelli, of þi lift arm · þat ouer spaine lay,
þat bi-tokeneþ treuli · as telleþ my bokes,
þat þi douȝti sone · schal þi dere douȝter ȝiuen 2963
þe kinges sone of spayne · when þe a-cord is maked;
þat sche be ladi of þat lond · þi left arm bi-tokeneþ.

A knight shall come to help you, and take prisoner [Fol. 47 b.] the king of Spain and his son.

And whether he is to wed you or not, he will be king of this realm.

The werwolf is a knight too, and shall deliver the king of Spain.

Through him you shall hear of your son.

Your son shall govern also all Rome,

and your daughter shall be queen of Spain."

[1] Read "brouȝt *to* ȝour wille."—M.
[2] Read "thurth."—M. See next line.

now haue i said of ȝour sweuen · soþli as wol falle,
& treuly al þis schal be-falle · wiþ-inne a schort terme."

The queen, on hearing this, weeps for joy,

Whan þat loueli ladi · hade listened his wordes, 2968
& herd seie þat sche schold · hire sone a-ȝen winne,
wonderli for ioye · sche wept for þo wordes,
& sorwfuliche sche siȝt · last out schold it lett;
Lest any fals fortune · for-dede him þurth sinne. 2972

[Fol. 48.] and prays the priest to say a mass to make her dream come true.

but buxu*m*li þat briȝt lady · þan busked to hire chapel,
& praied hire prest p*ar* charite · a masse to singe,
of þe trinite in trone, to t*ur*ne · hire sweuen to ioye.
deliuerli he it dede · deuouteliche & faire, 2976

She looks from her chamber towards the park,

& seþþen þat comli ladi · cayres to hire chau*m*ber,
& weued vp a window · þat was toward þe place
þere as þe hert & þe hinde · hadde take here reste.
þere þat semli ladi hire set · out forto loke, 2980

and as she watched, she sees the hart and hind embracing each other joyfully.

& strek in-to a styf studie · of hire sterne sweuen,
waytend out at window · while sche so þouȝt.
& vnder a louely lorel tre · in a grene place,
sche saw þe hert & þe hinde · lye collinge in-fere, 2984
Makende þe most ioye · þat man miȝt deuise,
wiþ alle comli *con*tenau*n*ce · þat þei kiþe miȝt;
haden here priue pleyes · of p*ar*amoures wordes,

She could not hear what they said, but she watched them a long while,

but soþli, of nouȝt þat þei seide · miȝt þe quen here.
but of here selcoþe solas · samen þat þei made, 2989
so gret wonder walt þe quen · of þe worþ bestes
but lenede þer þe long day · to lok out at þe windowe,
to se þe selcouþ signes · of þe semli bestes, 2992

till night came on.

til þe day him wiþ-drow · in-to þe derk niȝt,
þat þe lady no lenger · miȝt loke on þe bestes.
þan tiffed sche hire treuli · & turned in-to halle,
Made a-mo*ng* hire meyne · as mirie as sche couþe. 2996

After supper, her knights bewailed their evil case,

whan þei samen hade souped · & seþþe whasche after,
here[1] kniȝtes & hire cu*n*seile · kome hire vntille,

[1] "Here" would be more uniform if it were written "hire," but this change may be observed in a few other passages—M.

Munged newe her meschef · how neiȝ þei misferde;
how here walles were broke · wiþ engynes strong, 3000 — how the walls and battlements were broken.
here bretages al a-boute · for-brent & destroyed,
þat þei miȝt no more · meintene þe sege.

Þan þat comli quene · ful curtesly saide, — She addresses them, and exhorts them to be firm.
"lordinges, ȝe ar my lege men · þe lasse & þe more,
& sworn eche bi his side · to saue mi riȝt, 3005
& manliche men ben · beter mow non liue.
þer-fore, lordinges, for his loue · þat let vs be fourmed, — [Fol. 48 b.]
& for ȝour owne worchipe · witeþ me fro schaþe 3008
ȝut from þise wicked men · þat wold me spille.
& but god of his grace · sum god help vs sende, — Unless God sends help soon, she will surrender.
I wol worche al ȝour wille · wiþ-out ani faile,
wheþer i merci schul craue · or meyntene þis werre.
treuli, ȝif me bitide · þis tene to a-schape, 3013
wiþ richesse i wol ȝou reward · forto riche for euer, — She promises them rich rewards.
so þat treuli ȝour trauail · nouȝt schul ȝe tine."
& alle here gomes were glad · of hire gode speche, 3016
& seden at o sent · "wat so tide wold after,
þei wold manli bi here miȝt · meyntene hire wille, — Her knights swear never to yield.
so long as here lif lasted · to ȝelden hem neuer."
þan þat comly quen · ful curtesli hem þonked, 3020 — She thanks them, and retires.
& busked hem þat time · bliþe to bedde,
& redly token here rest · til riȝt on þe morwe.
þan þat comli quen · ketli vp rises,
biddande bisili hire bedes · buskes to hire chapel, 3024 — Next day, she asks Moses to sing another mass,
& made hire prest moyses · sone a masse to sing,
& prestli þat while preiȝed · to þe king of heuen,
& to his milde moder · þat alle men helpeþ,
þat þei hire socour sende · sone bi time. 3028
whan þe masse was don · sche went to hire chaumber, — and afterwards watches from her chamber-window.
weited at þe windowe · wer sche þe bestes seie,
& seie hem in þe same place · þer as [þei][1] were ere,
& hendli eiþer oþer · þan colled in armes. 3032

[1] Read "þer as *þei* were ere."—M.

The hot sun had cracked the hides of the hart and hind, and the queen sees their clothes.

þe hote sunne hade so hard · þe hides stiued,
þat here comli cloþing · þat keuered hem þer-vnder
þe quen saw as sche sat · out bi þe sides sene,
& wex a-wondred þer-of · wittow for soþe. 3036

She points out the beasts to the priest.

to cu*n*seil sche clepud hir p*r*est · þe comli quen sone,
& schewed him þe siȝt · of þe semli bestes;
& sone so he hem sey · he seide to þe quene,
"for mary loue, madame · desmaye ȝou no lenger, 3040

[Fol. 49.] He says her dream is coming true.

for þe mater of þe [metyng] [1] · miȝtow here finde,
as i descriuèd þis ender day · whan þow þi drem toldest.
& ȝe han herd here-bi-fore · how it bi-tidde in rome,

"You know about the emperor of Rome's daughter,

þemp*er*ours douȝt*er* was ȝeue · þemp*er*ou*r*s [2] sone of grece, 3044

but no man miȝt here make · þat mariage to holde;

who fell in love with a bold knight,

for sche hade arst leide hure loue · on a better place,
on on þe kuddest kniȝt · knowen in þis worlde,
best of his bodi, boldest · & braggest in armes; 3048

and how they fled from Rome in two bears' skins.

& boþe þei busked of rome · in tvo beres skinnes,
siþþe þei hent hertes skinnes · but hou, wot i neu*er*.
but saufly þis may [i] [3] seye · & þe soþe p*r*oue,

These are they yonder!

þe ȝond is þat semly · and his selue make. 3052
he schal wiȝtli þis werre · winne to an hende,
& bring þe from alle bales · to þi bote in hast,
& deliu*er* þi londes a-ȝen · in lengþe & in brede.

You must contrive to get them here."

þer-for no more of þis mater · is to mu*n*ge nouþe, 3056
but bi-þenke how þe best · þo bestes to winne,
þat þe kniȝt & þat komli · were kome to ȝour chau*m*ber."

The queen thought she too would be sewed in a hind's skin.

Þan þa komeli quen · kast in hire hert, 3059
sche wold wirche i*n* þis wise · wel to be sewed
In an huge hindes hide · as þe oþer were,
& busk out to þe bestes · & vnder a busk ligge,
til sche wist what þei were · ȝif þei wold speke. 3063

The priest gets a hide for her.

prestli þe prest þan · p*r*oueyed hire swiche an hide,

[1] Read "mater of the *metyng*."—M. [2] MS. þemp*er*ou*w*rs.
[3] Read "may *i* seye."—M.

& driuen forþ þat day to niȝt · þan drouȝ þei to reste.
but þe quen er þe day · was diȝt wel to riȝtes
hendli in þat hinde-skyn · as swiche bestes were,
& bi a priue posterne · passad ouȝt er daie, 3068
& a-bod vnder a busk · þere þe bestes leye,
so priueli, but þe prest · non parceyue miȝt,
but on of hire burwȝ-maydenes · þat sche loued most.
þei stoden stille hire to a-bide · wiþ-inne a posterne ȝate, 3072
& whan þe sunne gan here schewe[1] · & to schine briȝt,
þe hende hert & hinde · bi-gunne to a-wake,
& maden in-fere þe mest murþe · þat man miȝt diuise,
wiþ clipping & kessing · and contenaunce fele, 3076
& talkeden bi-twene · mani tidy wordes.
& william þan witerli · þise wordes seide,
"a! loueli lemman · a long time me þinkiþ,
seþþen þat i saw · þi semli face bare; 3080
sore me longes it to se · ȝif it miȝt so worþe."
"bi marie," seid meliors · "so dos me as sore,
ȝour briȝt ble to by-hold · but beter is ȝut a-bide.
we wol nouȝt krepe of þese skinnes · lest vs schaþe tidde, 3084
til our buxum best · ȝif vs boþe leue.
for he be tokene whan time is · wol titli vs wisse,
what wise þat we schal · our owne wedes take."
"treuli, sweting, þat is soþ" · seid william þanne, 3088
"a gret þrowe me þinkes · er þat time come;
but wold god þe quen · wist what we were,
& wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,
I wold socour hire sone · fram al þis sory werre, 3092
& pult hire out of þis peril · in pure litel while;
but of vs wot sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.
nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne rouȝt;
for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake." 3096
"Meschef, sire," saide meliors · "nay, munge þat no more;

Arrayed in this, she goes to the park, and the priest and a bower-maiden wait for her.

At sunrise, the hart and hind [Fol. 49 b.] awake and embrace.

William says he longs to see Melior's face.

Melior says they must not creep out of the skins till the werwolf gives the hint.

William wishes the queen knew who he was, and would provide him with a horse and armour.

Melior says she is well contented.

[1] MS. "schewed." Read "schewe."—M.

for leuer me is þis lif to haue · to liue wiþ þe here,
þan to winne al þe world · & want þe of siȝt."
þan clipt þei & keste · & of þat karping left, 3100

The queen hears all their talk.

& bi a busch lay þe quen · bi here-self one,
& herde holli þe wordes · þat þei hade seide.
& meliors in þe mene time · to will*ia*m mekli saide,

Melior tells a dream—how an eagle had taken her up to the high tower of the palace.

"swetyng, sore i was a-drad · of a sweuen ȝer-while;
Me þouȝt þanne an[1] ern · er euer i was ware, 3105
hade vs vp take · in-to þat heiȝe toure;
wheþer it geyne to gode · or grame, wot i neu*er*."

[Fol. 50.]

"nay, i-wisse," sede will*ia*m · "i wot wel þe soþe, 3108
þat it gayneþ but god · for god may vs help."
& as þei laykeden in here laike · þei lokede a-boute,

William and Melior perceive the hind.

& bleynte bi-hinde þe busch · & seiȝen as bliue,
how an huge hinde · held hire þere at rest. 3112
"bi marie," seide meliors · "me þinkiþ þat best slepeþ,
& semeþ nouȝt a-drad of vs · to deme þe soþe."
"no, i-wisse," seide will*ia*m · "i ne wot whi it schuld;

William says it surely takes them to be what they seem, or it would flee,

It weneþ þat we ben riȝt · swiche as it-silue; 3116
for we be so sotiliche · be-sewed in þise hides.
but wist it wisli · whiche bestes we were,
It wold fle our felaschip · for fere ful sone."

"Nay," said the queen, "I know who ye are."

"nay, bi crist," sede þe quen · "þat al mankinde schaped, 3120
I nel fle ful fer · for fere of ȝouȝ tweyne.
I wot wel what ȝe ar · & whennes ȝe come,
al þe kas wel i knowe · þat ȝe arn komen inne."

William wonders, and Melior is frightened.

will*ia*m wex a-wondred · whan he þise wordes herd,
& meliors þe meke · wex neiȝh mad for fere. 3125
but will*ia*m ful hastly · þus to þe hinde sede,

William conjures the hind to say whether it is a good spirit or a foul fiend.

"I co*n*iure þe, þurth crist · þat on croice was peyned,
þatou titli me telle · & tarie nouȝ no lenger, 3128
wheþer þow be a god gost · in goddis name þat spekist,
oiþer any foule fend · fourmed in þise wise,
& ȝif we schul of þe hent · harme oþer gode."

[1] MS. "Me þouȝt erþen ar ern, &c."

Þan þat comli quen · ful curtesli saide, 3132
"I am swiche a best as ȝe ben · bi him þat vs wrouȝt.
harm for me, i hope · schul ȝe haue neuer; — The queen says she will never harm them,
for as gost on goddis name · ich gaynli to ȝou speke,
of swiche kinde ar we kome · bi crist, as ȝe arn. 3136
but oþer breme bestes · by maistrye & strengþe,
han me dulfulli driuen · fro my kinde lese.
þer-for i souȝt hider · socour of þe to haue, — that, in fact, she implores him to aid her, and he shall be king,
& praie þe p*ar* charite · & prop*er*liche for reuþe, 3140
deliuer me of duresse · & do me haue my lese,
& lelli þow schalt be lord þer-of · al þi lif time. — [Fol. 50 b.]
& þat menskful maide · þat þere myd þe lies,
schal be mi lef lady · þis lordchip to weld. 3144
for þe real emp*er*our of rome · is redeli hir[1] fader,
forþi wel i wot sche is worþi · to weld wel more, — and she will make Mellor his queen.
I knowe al þe couyne · of cuntre how ȝe went,
& ȝe ben welcom to me · bi crist þat me made. 3148
& of sorwe i haue suffred · sone wol i telle.
þe proude king of spayne · wiþ pride me bi-segeþ, — For the king of Spain had wasted her lands,
& haþ luþerli al mi lond · wiþ his ludes wasted,
& al þis duresse he me doþ · for my douȝt*er* sake; 3152
asent wold sche nouȝt his sone · to wif hire weld,
þer-for he worcheþ me wo · & wasteþ al my londes,
saue onliche in þis cite · where soiourne wot i neu*er*.
but help hope i in hast · to haue of þe one; 3156 — but she hopes to have William's help against him,
to amende my meschef · i meke me in þi grace,
& pleyn power i þe graun*t* · prestli alse swiþe,
to lede al my lordchip · as þe lef likes;
boute eny maner mene · mayster i þe make; 3160
wiþ-þatow winne al my worchip · as i ere walt."
þan was will*ia*m gretli glad · & oft god þonked, — William rejoiced when he knew the queen,
whan he wist it was þe quen · & wiȝtli he sayde,
"Madame, by þat menskful lord · þat vs alle made,
ȝif i þis time miȝt trust · treuli to ȝour sawe, 3165
so þat ȝe wold lelli my lemman · saue & loke,

[1] MS. "his," altered to "hir" by a later hand.

whil i busily buske a-boute · ȝour bales to bete,
and promises to serve her faithfully. al my help holliche · ȝe schul haue at nede; 3168
feiþli boute feyntise · ȝou faile schal ich neu*er*,
as long as any lif · me lastes, for soþe."
Gretli was þe quen glad · & godli him þonked,
All three go together to the postern-gate. & loueli him & his lemma*n* · lauȝt bi þe handes, 3172
& ferden forþ on here fet · feiþli to-gadere
priueli to þe posterne · & in passed sone.
The bower-woman, who was [Fol. 51.] waiting, was nearly mad with fear, & ȝit stod þe maide stille · þe quen to a-bide,
& whan sche saw þo þre bestes · so þroli come, 3176
so hidous in þo hides · as þei hertes were,
sche wex wod of hire wit · wittou, for fere;
& rapli gan a-way renne · to reken þe soþe.
but the queen reassures her, but þat comli quen · called hire a-ȝene, 3180
& carful [sche] [1] com · whan sche hire clepe herde.
and asks if she does not know her again. "whi carestow," sede þe quene · "knew þow nouȝt þe soþe,
þat i was tiffed i*n* a-tir · when i wend fro þe?"
"ȝis, madame,"[2] sede þe maide · "but, bi marie of heuen,
She says she is frightened of the others. but i a-wede neioȝ of wit · for þe werder bestes, 3185
þat folwe ȝour felachip · so ferli þei are."
"þei wol do no duresse · bi dere god of heuen;
for hem i went i*n* þis wise · to win i*n*-to þis place. 3188
The queen tells her to keep it all a secret. but loke now, bi þi lif · þat no lud here-of wite,
how þei hider come · her-after neuer more."
"nay, bi marie, madame" · þe maide þan seide,
"þis dede schal i neu*er* deschuu*er* · þe deth forto suffer."

The queen takes them to a chamber in the tower. Þe comli quen þan takeþ · meliors by þe hande, 3193
& bi-fore went will*ia*m · & after-ward þe quene;
brouȝt hem to a choys chau*m*ber · vnder þe chef toure,
þ[*er*]e [3] were beddes busked · for eny burn riche. 3196
Two baths are soon made ready & tvo baþes were boun · by a litel while,

[1] Perhaps better thus, "carful *sche* com."—M.
[2] MS. "made;" see ll. 2701, 3191.
[3] MS. "þe." Read "there."—M.

& a-tired tryli · to trusty trewe lordes.
sone þe quen kauȝt a knif · & komli hire-selue
will*ia*m & his worþi fere · swiftli vn-laced 3200 **The queen with a knife unlaces the hides.**
out of þe hidous hidus · & in a hirne hem cast.
& whan þei were cloþed · worþli in here wedes,
alle men vpo*n* mold · miȝt sen a fair coupel **William and Melior seem a fair couple.**
þan was bi-twene will*ia*m · & þis worþi mayde. 3204
þe quen hire clipt & kest · & gret co*m*fort made,
& seþþen bliue dede hem baþe · boþe tvo wel faire, **[Fol. 51 b.] They bathe, and are richly dressed and go to meat.**
& greiþed hem gaili · in garnemens riche, 3207
& manli made hem atte hese · wiþ alle metes nobul,
& wiþ·þe de[r]worþest [1] deintes · of drinkes þat were;
to mu*n*ge more nis no ned · nouȝt missed þei þanne.
whan þei merili at mete · hade made hem at ese,
þat comli quen to will*ia*m · curtesli saide, 3212 **The queen asks William what cognisance he will have on his shield.**
"swete sire, ȝe me saye · what signe is þe leuest
to haue schape in þi scheld · to schene armes?"
"bi crist, madame," sede þe kniȝt · "i coueyte nouȝt elles
but þat i haue a god schel[d] · of gold graiþed clene, **He replies—"A werwolf on a shield of gold."**
& wel & faire wiþ-inne · a werwolf depeynted, 3217
þat be hidous & huge · to haue alle his riȝtes,
of þe couenablest colour · to knowe in þe feld;
oþer armes al my lif · atteli neuer haue." 3220
þe quen þan dede comau*n*de · to carfti [2] men i-nowe, **The queen has it made for him.**
þat deuis him were diȝt · er þat day eue,
to wende in-to werre · in world where him liked;
þat was p*er*les a-parrayl · to p*r*oue of alle gode. 3224

Also þat comli quen · as þat crist wold,
hade on þe sturnest stede · in hire stabul teiȝed, **She had in her stable a very spirited horse, that had been her husband's.**
þat euer man vpo*n* molde · miȝt of heren,
& doutiest to alle dedes · þat any horse do schuld. 3228
þe king ebrou*n*s it ouȝt · þat was hire lord bi-fore,
& fro þe day þat he deiede · durst no man him neiȝhe,

[1] Read "derworthest."—M. [2] Read "crafti."—M.

Since Ebrouns' death, no one had dared to mount him.

ne be so bold of his bodi · on his bak to come, 3231
but euer stod teied *in* þe stabul · wiþ stef irn cheynes ;
& queyntliche to his cracche · was corue swiche a weie,
þat me*n* miȝt legge him mete · & wateren atte wille.
þe horse sone hade sauor · of þat hende kniȝt,
[Fol. 52.] & wist, as god wold · it was is kinde lord. 3236

The horse, knowing William, brake all his bands for joy, and neighed woudrously.

as bliue, al his bondes · he to-brak for ioye,
& so gan fare wiþ his fet · & ferliche neiȝede,
þat men wend he hade be wod · & warned þe quene,

And this is told to the queen.

how sternli in þe stabul · þe stede þan ferde, 3240
& had broke alle his bondes · no burn durst him neiȝhe.

William hears about it, and asks what sort of a horse it is.

whan will*ia*m herde þise wordes · he saide to þe quene,
" Madame,[1] what stede is þat · þat so sterne is hold?
Is he ouȝt douȝti to dedes · þat meu don of armes?"
" ȝa, certes," saide þe quen · " soþ for to telle, 3245
a worþier to þat werk · wot i non in erþe,
ȝif any man vpo*n* mold · miȝt wiþ him dele.

" It was Ebrouns' horse," she says.

he was mi lordes, wil he liuede · þat i so moche louede,
& for his loue sertenli · i do þis stede ȝeme." 3249
" Mademe," sede will*ia*m · " ȝif it were ȝour wille,
I wold preie p*ar* charite · & profit þat may falle,

William asks for it.

þat i most haue þat horse · whan i schal haue to done.
I wol to medis my-self · manliche him diȝt, 3253
sette vpo*n* his sadel · & semli him greiþe."

She says he may have whatever he pleases; he thanks her.

" certes," sede þe quen · " i seie þe at onis,
holli of al þat i haue · here i make þe maister, 3256
to do þer-wiþ bi day & niȝt · as þe god þinkes."
þer-of was will*ia*m glad · & wiȝtli here þonkes,
þan asked þei þe win · & went to bedde after,
for it was forþ [to] niȝt[2] · faren bi þat time. 3260

Next day, the steward of Spain

Deliu*er*li on þe morwe · er þe day gan dawe,
þe stiward of spayne · þat stern was & bold,
hadde bi-seged þat cite · selcouþeli hard

[1] MS. " Madama." [2] See note.

wiþ þre M̄. of men · þat þro were to fiȝt. 3264 attacks the city with 3,000 men.
& þo þe segges of þe cite · sone were ȝare,
as douȝti men of dedes · defence for to make, [Fol. 52 b.]
ȝerne schetten here ȝates · & ȝemed þe walles.
for of þo wiþ-inne · non wold hem out aunter, 3268 The defenders dare not make a sally.
so fele were of here fon · & so fewe wiþ-inne.
þe cry rudli a-ros · þat reuþe it was to hure,
for þei wiþ-inne þe toun · swiche meschef were *i*nne.
þat þei witt*er*li wende · haue be wonne þat daye. 3272
titli was þe tiding · told in þe paleys,
how felli here fomen · gun fiȝt atte walles.
whan will*ia*m þat wiste · wiȝtli vp he stirte, William is glad at the news, and dons his armour,
as glad as any gome · þat euer god wrouȝt, 3276
þat he miȝt his fille fiȝt · for þat fre quene.
ano*n* he was armed · at alle maner poyntes,
& streiȝt him in-to the stabul · þere þe stede stod, and goes to the stable.
& moche folk him folwed · þat ferli to bi-hold, 3280
how sternli he & þe [stede][1] · schold stiȝtli to-gadere.
& as sone as þe kniȝt kud · kome to þe stabul,
þat þe stede him of-saw · sone he vp-leped,
& faire wiþ his fore fet · kneled doun to grounde, 3284 The horse kneels to him on its fore legs, and is quite docile.
& made him þe most ioye · þat [man] miȝt deuise,[2]
& alle frekes þat him folwed · gret ferli hade.
þe stede stod ful stille · þouȝh he sterne were,
while þe kniȝt him sadeled · & clanli him greiþed; The knight saddles him and mounts.
& wan vp wiȝtli him-self · whan he was ȝare, 3289
& schuft his scheld on is schulder · a scharp sp*er*e on honde,
& gerd him wiþ a god sword · for any man in erþe.
þe stede liked wel þe lode · his lord whan he felte, 3292 The steed likes his load.
he wist him wiȝht of dede · & wel coude ride,
& braundised so bremli · þat alle burnes wondred
of þe comli cu*n*tenau*n*ce · of þe kniȝt þat he bare.

Read "the *stede* schold stiztli."—M.

Read "that *man* miȝt deuise." A common phrase.—M. See ll. 2985, 3075.

[Fol. 53.] All are blithe to behold the knight.

so schene he was to se · in his semli armes, 3296
þat alle burnes were bliþe · to bi-hold him one ;
for so semli a seg · had þei nouȝt ȝore seie.
þat quen & hire douȝter · & meliors þe schene
wayteden out at a windowe · wilfulli in-fere, 3300
how that komeli kniȝt · kunteyned on his stede.

The queen and her daughter praise him, and say it will be a lucky woman who marries him.

þe quen & here douȝter · deuised him so moche,
& preisede him perles · for eny prince in erþe,
& seiden, "wel is þat womman · þat he wold haue !
vnder crist, is no kniȝt · þat so kud semeþ !" 3305
Meliors al þis mater · what it ment herde,

Melior is alarmed at this,

& was a-drad to þe deth · þei deseuy here wold,
to winne william here fro · þat þei so wel praysede,
& seide softili to hire-self · þese selue wordes, 3309
"Lord, ȝif þe hade liked · leuer me hade bene

thinking she would rather have William than all the world's wealth without him.

haue woned in wildernesse[1] · wiþ mi lemman swete,
þan wonye here in al þe welþ · of þe world riche, 3312
to lese mi lemman · þat al mi loue weldes."
swiche mistrowe had meliors · for þei so moche him preised.

William rides through the city,

Now william on his sterne stede · now stifli forþ rides,
so serreli þurth þe cite · al him-self one, 3316
þat eche weiȝh was a-wondred · þat seiȝ wiþ eiȝen,
so coraious a contenaunce · þat kud kniȝt hadde.
william prestili priked · þer þe puple was sembled,

and comes to where the defenders held their council.

& alle þe solempne segges · þat þe cite ȝemed, 3320
bold barounes & kniȝtes · & oþer segges[2] nobul.
& whan þei were war of william · wilfulli alle,

They rejoice at his bold bearing.

þe komynge of þe kuntenaunce · of þe kniȝt nobul
þei bi-helden hertly · & hadden gret ioye, 3324
þa so manli a man · wold mele in here side.

[Fol. 53 b.]

þe nobul blonk þat him bar · a[s][3] bliue þei knewe,

[1] MS. "wirderneffe." Read "wildernesse."—M.
[2] MS. "segeges." Read "segges."—M.
[3] Read "as bliue."—M.

but witterli what he was · wist non of alle.
william streiȝt went hem to · & wiȝtli saide, 3328
"leue lordes, for goddes loue · lestenes my sawe!
it semeth þat ȝe ar segges · selkouþely nobul,
& bold burnes to abide · in batayles harde,
& wel armed ȝe arn · at alle maner poyntes. 3332
whi lete ȝe foulli ȝour fon · for-barre ȝou her-inne,
& do ȝou alle þe duresse · þat þei deuise konne,
& ȝe do no defence · þat despyt to wreke,
but couwardli as caitifs · couren here in meuwe? 3336
Men, for ȝoure manchipe · na more þat suffreþ,
but wendeþ ouȝt wiȝtli · & wiþ ȝour fon meteþ,
haueþ reward to ȝour riȝt · & redli chul ȝe spede;
& ȝe wite þei do wrong · þe worse schul þei happe. 3340
ȝif ȝe manli wiþ hem mete · þe maistry worþ oure,
þeiȝh þei be fiue so fele · as we in-fere alle.
& ȝe þat wilne to wynne · worchipe in armes,
folweþ me, for in feiþ · þe ferst wil i bene, 3344
þat smertli schal smite · þe alderfirst dint":—
& ȝerne opened þe ȝates · & ȝepli out rides.
whan þe bold kniȝtes hade herde · þat burnes wordes,
& sey him so fersli forþ fare · so bi-fore hem alle, 3348
þei wist he was a wiȝt man · & wold nouȝt faile[1]
but þat he schuld hem help · þei hoped for soþe.
& foure hundred fers men · folwed him after,
of koraious kniȝtes · & oþer kud kempes, 3352
þat for to liuen or deyen · litel hem rouȝt.
& whan william was war · wiche a route sewede,
he was gainli glad · no gom þurt him blame,
& a-bod til þe burnes · a-boute him were come. 3356 [Fol. 54.]
þe spaynolnes hem hade a-spiede · & spakli gun ride,
wiþ gret bobaunce & bost · blowand here trompes;
for þei seiȝ so fewe · out of þe cite come
aȝens hem þre .M̄. · þei ne tok non hede 3360
to reule hem of non array · but riȝt, for gret pride,

They know the horse, but not the man.

William harangues them,

asking them why they let their foes bar them in.

He exhorts them to make a sally,

and their courage will supply their lack of numbers.

He will go first, and strike the first blow.

He opens the gates, and rides out.

Four hundred bold men follow him.

The Spaniards attack them,

being 3,000 in number.

[1] MS. "falle." Read "faile."—M.

eche burn bi-fore oþer · on his blonk prikede,
to asayle þe segges · þat fro þe cite come.

William exhorts his men to stand well together, and to yield no inch of ground.

will*ia*m seide to his whieȝs · wittili for soþe, 3364
"Lordinges & leue frendes · listenes to my sawes!
þeȝh ȝe be ferd of ȝour fon · fleþ neuer þe sunner;
þe bolder ouȝt we be · þei ben out of araie.
stonde we stifli to-gader · stifly in defens, 3368
& ne leses no lond · lordinges, god for-bede!

Let each man think of his lady-love!

eche lud þenk on his lemma*n* · & for hire loue so fiȝt,
to winne worchip þer-wiþ · *in* worlde for eu*er*-more.
& in feiþ, þeiȝh eft as fele · of our fomen were, 3372
deliu*er*li þurth ȝour dedes · schul þei deie sone."

They array themselves in good order.

kniȝtes wiþ sire will*ia*m · kauȝt [þanne] [1] god hert,
& realiche were a-raiȝed · in a litel while,
In a ful styf strengþe · to stonde to fiȝt. 3376

The Spanish king's steward leads the attack.

þer kom a kniȝt to-fore · þe companye of spayne,
a stif man & a stern · þat was þe kinges stiward,
& cheueteyn was chose · þat eschel to lede.
& for boldnesse of his bodi · be-fore alle he went, 3380
armed at alle poyntes · on a nobul stede.

William perceives him coming,

will*ia*m was wiȝtly · whar of his come,
& gamli to his gomes · gan for to seie,
"bi crist, ȝond kniȝt · þat komeþ here armed, 3384
dredeþ litel oure dedes · what-eu*er* he do þink.

[Fol. 54 b.] and says he will be the first to meet him.

but bi god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule,
I wol fonde be þe first · in feld him to mete;
but our on titly tumbel · trowe me neu*er* after." 3388

William encounters the steward,

spacli boute speche · his spere þanne he hente,
& euen to þat stiward · dede his stede renne,
& manli as miȝti men · eiþer mette oþer,
& spacli þe oþeres sp*er*e · in speldes þan wente. 3392

and bears him down to the earth, as dead as a doornail.

ac will*ia*ms was strong inow · wittow forsoþe,
& he so sternli þe stiward · þat ilk time hitte,
þurth þe bold bodi · he bar him to þe erþe,
as ded as dornayl · te deme þe soþe. 3396

[1] See note.

"I-wis," þenne seide will*ia*m · "i wot wel to wisse,
þow dost vs neu*er* after · no duresse in armes!"
ac spacly þe spaynoles · speiȝed he was slayne, — The Spaniards, seeing him slain,
þei were [wode][1] of here witt · wittow for soþe, 3400 — bear his body to their tents.
hastili hent vp his bodi · & to here tentes bere,
þat it were nouȝt i*n* þat fiȝt · wit here horse troden.
& as bliue boldli · þe burnes of spayne, — They resolve to avenge him.
þouȝt manli make wreche · here lorlde[2] to queme, 3404
for swiche a lorld[2] of lederes · ne liued nouȝt, þei held,
non so douȝti of dedus · þer-for his deth a-wreke[3]
þei þouȝt þroli þat time · what bi-falle after.

A ful breme bataile · bi-gan þat ilk time, 3408 — Then began a fierce battle.
whan eiþer sides a-sembled · of þo segges sturne.
Mani a sp*er*e spacli · on peces were to-broke, — Spears are broken, shields shivered, and helms hewn through.
& many a schene scheld · scheuered al to peces,
Many helmes to-hewe · þurth here huge strokes. 3412
& redili for to rekene · al þe riȝt soþe,
will*ia*m & his wiȝes · so wonderli fouȝten, — William's men fight well.
þat þei felden here fon · ful fast to grounde.
non miȝt here strok wiþ-stond · in þat stounde þan, 3416 — [Fol. 55.]
so wel for will*ia*ms werkes · were þei þan herted.
þe stiward had a newe · but of ȝong age, — The steward's nephew
on þe manlokest man · þat men schold of heren,
& douȝtiest of dedes · þat men schuld do in armes. 3420
as swiftli as he wist · þat his em was slawe,
he þouȝt duelfulli þa deth · þat day to a-wreke.
armed at alle poyntes · anon he þider went, — resolves to avenge his uncle's death,
& p*r*esed in a-mang þe pepul · þer it was þikkest, 3424
& sone to hem of þe cite · a-sembled he þanne,
& fauȝt þan so ferscheli · for his emes sake,
he dude to dethe deliu*er*li · fiue gode kniȝtes, — and slays five good knights.

[1] Read "were *wode* of here witt."—M.
[2] *Sic* in MS. See l. 3955.
[3] MS. "a wrekes." Read "a-wreke," or "a-wreken," in the infinitive.—M. Cf. l. 3422.

þat bold were in bataile · to a-bide at nede. 3428

William forces his way to him.

whan will*ia*m wist of þat werk · wittow forsoþe,
þer nas man vpo*n* molde · þat him miȝt lette,
þat he ne p*er*ced þe pres · prestili þat time,
til he met wiþ þat man · þat miȝti was hold. 3432

The steward's nephew knows William by the werwolf on his shield.

whan þe stiwardes newe · saw will*ia*m come,
bi þe werwolf in his scheld · wel he him knewe,
þat þe same seg hade slawe · his em þer-to-fore.
& wiȝtli as a wod man · to will*ia*m he priked, 3436
wiþ sp*er*e festened in feuter · him for to spille.

Their spears break, and they fight with swords.

at þe a-coupyng þe kniȝtes [speres] [1] · eiþer brak on oþer,
swiftli wiþ here swerdes · swinge þei to-geder,
& delten duelful dentes · deliuerli þat stounde. 3440
& will*ia*m was þe wiȝtere · & wel sarre smot,
& set so hard a strok · sone after on þat oþer,

William's sword grinds through helm and head down to the breast,

þurth helm & hed hastili · to þe brest it grint.
þe swerd swiftili swenged · þurth þe bode euen, 3444
þat tit ouer his hors-tail · he tumbled ded to grounde.
þat ilk stoute kniȝtes stede · & þe stiwardes also

and he sends his foe's horse and the steward's horse to Melior as a present.

will*ia*m sent sone · to his semli lemman,
wher-of sche was geinli glad · & oft god þonked, 3448
þa he so wel hade wrouȝt · in werre þat day.

[Fol. 55 b.]

Will*ia*m [2] & his burnes · þan in bataile were,
so felly wiþ here fon · fouȝt þat ilke time,
bi a stou*n*de was no*n* so stef · þat hem wiþ-stonde miȝt,

The Spaniards turn to flight.

but were fayn for to fle · eche bi-fore oþer, 453
wel was him i*n* þe world · þat swifliest miȝt hiȝe,
o*per* ~~on~~ hors oþer on fote · for fere [3] of þe deþe.

William and his men pursue them 5 miles, taking many prisoners.

& will*ia*m & his whiȝes · went after sone, 3456
& maden manli þe chas · mo þan fiue mile,

[1] Read "the kniztes *speres*."—M.

[2] The capital W is absent, but its place is marked by a very small w.

[3] MS. "fore." Read "fere."—M.

& grete prisons & gode · goten þei þat time;
þat meked hem nouȝt to mercy · manli þei slowe,
& whan þei time seie · turned hem hom a-ȝene, 3460
heriȝeden[1] heili god · þat þei wel had spedde.
but holli williams werkes · þei wittened it alle,
nade his douȝthi dedes be · þei hade be dede alle;
& louted to [him] as to lord · þe lasse & þe more, 3464
& eche a gom was gladdest · hoo gaynest him miȝt ride.

All are aware that it was all William's doing.

al þe sorwe þei hadde suffred · [so] lang to-fore,
þei sett it soþli at nouȝt · so glad were þei þan, 3467
for þe douȝthi kniȝtes dedus · þat þat day hem helped.
wiþ al þe murthe vpon molde · þo miȝthi men in-fere
passeden to þe paleys · proude of here dedes.

They forgot all their former sufferings.

þe comly quen & here douȝter · com him a-ȝens,
& þe me[n]skful meliors · wiþ maydenes fele, 3472
& welcomed William · as þei wel ouȝte,
wiþ clipping & kessing · & alle kinde dedus.

The queen, her daughter, and Melior meet and welcome them.

þe quen him loueli ladde · riȝt to h[er]e chaumber,
vn-armed him anon · & afterward cloþed 3476
clenliche for eny [kniȝt] · þat vnder crist liuede.
þan sete þei þre · to solas hem at þe windowe,
euen ouer þe ioly place · þat to þat paleis longed,
þere as þe quen fond William · & his faire make. 3480
& as þei waited a-boute · wil þei of murthe speke,

The queen unarms and clothes him.

She sits with him and Melior at the window looking out on the park.

williams werwolf · was comen þider þanne,
loked vpon þe ladies · & his loueli maister,
& held vp his foure-fet · in fourme to craue mercy, 3484
& louted to hem loueli · and lelly þer-after,
he went wiȝtly a-wei · whider him god liked.

The werwolf appears, and [Fol. 56.] holds up his fore feet as in supplication, and goes his way.

þe quen þer-of was a-wondred · & to William seide,
"sire, saw ȝe þis selcouþe · of þis semli best? 3488
wonder signes he wrouȝt · what mai hit tokene?"
"ȝis, certes, madame" · seide William þanne,
"i sei þe signes mi-self · & soþli ich hope,

The queen asks what he means.

[1] Perhaps miswritten for "heriȝende."

William says it is a good sign.

It bi-tokneþ gret god · þat greiþli schal vs falle." 3492
"ȝe, ȝif *crist* wol," q*uod* þe quen · "[þat] [1] on croyce deied;

The queen tells her story—how she had a son named William,

but, sire, whan i se þat best · þat þo signes made,
a sorwe sinkeþ to mi hert · i schal ȝou telle whi.
su*m* time, sire, here-to-fore · a semli sone i hadde, 3496
þat was hote will*ia*m · i-wisse, as ȝe arn.

who, when 4 years old, was playing in the park,

feiþli whan þat faire child · was of foure ȝer eld,
as my lord and i · and oþer ludes many,
pleiȝed vs her in þe park · in place þer i ȝou fond, 3500

when a werwolf caught him up and ran off with him.

for al þe world swiche a wolf · as we here seiȝen,
It semeth riȝt þat selue · bi semblant & bi hewe,
com gapind a gret pace · & cauȝt vp mi sone,
riȝt bi-fore his fader · and oþer frakes manye, 3504
& went awey with him · so wonderli fast.

The king and his men pursued him over mires and mountains, but in vain.

My lord & many a-noþer · manliche him sewed
ouer mires & mu*n*taynes · & oþer wicked weiȝes;
at þe last þei him left · for miȝth þat þei couþe. 3508

The werwolf leapt into the sea, and was seen no more.

forþ with my sone in-to þe see · þat sori best leped,
so þat i herde hider-to · neuer of him more.
& certes, sire, for þat sone · i hade gret sorwe,
whan i þenk on þat sorwe · it þirles my hert." 3512

William remembers how he was found by the cowherd,

Will*ia*m was in a wer · þat it were him-selue.
how þe couherd þe king told · it ca*m* hi*m* *in* minde,
þat he him fond in þe forest · i*n* faire riche cloþes. 3515

but reflects that the queen said her son was drowned.

but sche seide þat hire sone · was i*n* þe see dronked,
& þe wolf also · þat him a-wei bare,

[Fol. 56 b.]

He tells her he will stand in her son's stead.

þe proli pouȝt þat him meued · þ*er*-of þat ilk time
sone he let ou*er*-slide · & seide to þe quene, 3519
þat sche schuld make hire merie · hire meyne to glade,
& he wold i*n* hire sones stede · stand euer at nede.

She thanks him, and gives him full powers.

sche ful godli gan him þonke · & gaf him hol miȝth,
to meyntene al hire god · as maister in his owne.

[1] Read "the quen, *that* on croyce deied."—M.

þan talked þei of oþer tales · til time were to soupe,
& were serued bi ese · as hem-self wold, 3525 They sup and make merry till nightfall.
& so driuen forth þe day . til þe derke niȝt,
with al þe mirthe vpon mold · þat man miȝth deuise.
þis lessoun let we of hem · & lesten we a-noþer ; 3528
of þe spaynolus wol i speke · how spacli þei fled ; The Spaniards who fled told the king of Spain and his son of William's prowess;
þilke þat went with þe lif · a-wei fro þat sthoure,
spakli to þe king of spayne · þei sped hem þat time,
& seide to him & his sone · þe cas þat was falle, 3532
which a kniȝt com hem a-ȝenis · conquered alle oþer,
so sterne he was & stoute · & swiche st[r]okes lent ;
was non so stif stelen wede · þat with-stod his wepen ;
& how he in þe stour · þe stoute stiward slow, 3536 and how he had slain the steward and his nephew, whom the king ought to avenge.
and his nobul neuew · a-non riȝt þer-after ;
& bede wiȝtli hem awreke · of þe wicked harme,
or alle men vpon mold · miȝth hem schame speke ;
so fele of here frendes · in þe feld were slayne, 3540
þat it was a sorful siȝt · to se how it ferde.
whan þe king & his conseil · herde of þis cas,
a selcouþ sorwe he made · & his sone als, The king's son begs his father that he may lead a host to avenge themselves.
þat was a ful kud þniȝt · & kene man in armes. 3544
he was wod of his wit · for wraþþe of þat dede,
& praiȝed prestili þis poynt · anon of his fader,
þat he most on þe morwe · with a miȝthi ost
wende to a-wrek hem · of þat wicked dede. 3548
& ȝif he mette with þat kniȝt · þat is so miȝthi hold, He swears to have William's head, or to take him alive.
he swor sadli is oþ · as tit to his fader,
þat he fro þe bodi · [wold] [1] haue his hed sone,
oþer tit take him a-liue · no ȝain-torn schuld lette. 3552 [Fol. 57.]
þer-of þe king was geynli glad · & graunted his wille,
bad him worche whan he wold · & wend whan him liked.
þe kinges sone aswiþe · let sembul miche puple, He gets a host together,
& triȝed him to a tidi ost · of þe tideȝist burnes, 3556
þat he miȝth in þe mene time · in any maner gadere.

[1] Read "fro the bodi *wold* haue."—M.

Manli on þe morwe · he dede his men greiþe
Gaili as gomes miȝt be · in alle gode armes;
faire þan with his folk · to þe feld he went 3560
bi-fore boldli him-self · his batailes to araie.
alle his burnes bliue · in x batailes he sett,
as redili araiȝed · as any rink þort wilne.
& iij. M̄. þro men · in his eschel were, 3564
& alle bold burnes · in batailes strong & bigge.
þe kinges sone þan seide · to his segges bold,
"Leue lordinges, for mi loue · lelli me telles, 3567
ȝif i encountre with þis kniȝt · þat þis kare worcheþ,
how schal i him knowe · what konichauns here he bere?"
"sertes, sere," seide a kniȝt · "so me wel time,
þat kud kniȝt is eth to knowe · by his kene dedes,
& bereth in his blasoun · of a brit hewe 3572
a wel huge werwolf · wonderli depeinted;
þat man driues a-doun · to dethe, þat [he] hittes."
"sone it schal be sene" · seide þe kinges sone,
"wheþer of vs be wiȝttere · to winne or to lese." 3576

and takes the field on the morrow.

He has 3,000 men.

He asks his lords how he is to know William.

A knight says he may know him either by his deeds, or by the werwolf on his shield.

The king's son says it will soon be seen who is strongest.

Now wol i a while · of william here telle,
in what maner on þe morwe · is men were araid,
deliuerli at þe dai · diȝt þei were alle,
treuli in al atir · þat to werre longed. 3580
& william ful wiȝtthli · as he wel couþe,
set alle his segges · as þei schuld bene,
In sexe semli batailes · as þei schuld bene;[1]
al be-fore in þe frond · he ferde þan him-selue. 3584
ebrouns saundbruel · so hiȝt his blonk nobul.
& as sone as þe kinges sone · saw him so come,
fast he freyned at his folk · what freke þat it were,
& þei seide ful sone · "for soþe, it is þat kniȝt, 3588
þat haþ wrouȝt al þis wo · wel ouȝt we him hate;

William's men, on the morrow, are well arrayed.

He divides them into 6 companies.

His horse's name was Ebrouns' Saundbruel.

[Fol. 57 b.]

The prince's men point out William to him.

[1] The last half of this line is clearly copied from the line before.

alle he driues to þe deth · þat his dint feles."
þe kinges sone forsoþe · ne seide þo na more, — The prince rides at William,
but gart his [stede] [1] goo · and streiȝet to him rides
with his spere on feuter · festened þat time. 3593
whan will*ia*m was war · & wist of his come, — who is told it is the prince who is coming.
his men seiden sone · it was þe kinges sone,
& douȝthi man & deliu*er* · in dedes of armes. 3596
"lat me worþ," quaþ will*ia*m · "þat schal i wite sone — William says he will fight him,—
In feiþ þouȝh he hade fors · of foure swiche oþer,
I wol fond with him fiȝt · þouȝh me tide þe worse."
he dede þen his stef stede · stert a god spede, 3600 — and rides to meet him.
to þe kene kinges [sone] [2] · þat was a kniȝt nobul.
so kenli þei a-cu*n*tred · at þe coupyng to-gadere,
þat þe kniȝt spere in speldes · alto-schiuered. — The prince's spear breaks,
ac will*ia*ms spere was stef · wittow for soþe, 3604 — but William's strikes the prince fairly, hurling horse and man to the ground.
& mette þat oþer man · in þe midde scheld,
þat boþe him & his hors · he hurles to grou*n*de;
& neiȝ hade broke his bak · so his blonk him hirt.
will*ia*m þan wiȝtli · be þe auentayle him hent, 3608 — William is going to "swap" off his head,
to haue with his swerd · swapped of his hed; [3]
but þe segges of spayne · souȝt to him [4] ȝerne,
to haue holpen here lord · hastili ȝif þei miȝt; — but the Spaniards come to the rescue.
& will*ia*ms wiȝes wiȝttli · went hem a-ȝens. 3612
þo bi-gan þat batayle · on boþe sides harde, — A general battle ensues, very severe and deadly.
feller saw neu*er* frek · fro*m* adam to þis time;
sone was mani bold barn · brouȝt þer to grou*n*d,
Mani scheldes schiuered · & mani helmes hewen, 3616
& many a stif stede · straiȝed in þere blode.
bold burnes of bodies · þere were on boþe sides,
þat fayn were forto fiȝt · & to fle hated.
but will*ia*m so wonder wel · fauȝt þat ilke time, 3620 — [Fol. 58.]

[1] Read "gart his *stede* goo."—M.

[2] Read "the kene kinges *sone* that was."—M.

[3] The MS. apparently has "heued," altered to "heade." See l. 3864.

[4] MS. "him to ȝerne;" and "to" is altered to "so" by a later hand.

William fights boldly, and prevents the rescue of the prince,

þat no man þat he hit · miȝth him with-stonde,
& eu*er* kept þe kinges[1] sone · fra*m* al his kene meyne,
þat non miȝt him winne a-wei · for worse ne for beter.
& were hem lef oþer loþ · will*ia*m at last 3624

whom he drags out of the *mêlée*,

keuered with þe kinges sone · out of þe kene prese,
& brouȝt him out on his blonk · of þat batayle sterne,

and assigns to some citizens to keep.

& a-signed of citesens · segges i-nowe, 3627
to kepe wel þe kinges sone · til þei come to towne;
& þei were bliþe of þat bode · & bisiliche fondede
fast to ferke him forþward · as þei faire miȝt.

The Spaniards again attempt a rescue, a fresh host coming out of ambush.

whan þe spaynols þat a-spied · spakli þei him folwed,
and deden al þe duresse · þat þei do miȝt. 3632
a fersche ost hem to help · hastili þer come,
þat was a-buschid þer bi-side · in a brent greue.

William keeps up his men's courage,

but whan will*ia*m was war · & wist of here come,
Manly he demeyned him · to make his men egre, 3636
bad hem alle be bold · & busiliche fiȝt,
for here fon gun feynte · & felde were manye.
þe kinde *con*fort of þe kniȝt · to is folk þat he made,[2]
were als fresch forto fiȝt · as þei were on morwe. 3640

but perceives that the enemies are too numerous;

but will*ia*m say þer oþer side · so fers & so breme,
þat his men miȝt nouȝt · meyntene here owne,
prestli to hold p*ar*ty · to puple þat hem folwed.

wherefore he orders a retreat to the town.

for-þi he dede hem deliu*er*li · drawe toward towne, 3644
& kepten wel þe kinges [sone][3] · for cas þat miȝt falle,

His men are successful in bringing the prince with them.

for ouȝt þat here[4] enimys · eu*er* worche miȝt.
þei keuered with clene strengþe · with him to towne,
& þe segges of þe cite · but þo þat slayn were. 3648

Yeomen shut the gates and man the walls.

& ȝepli ȝom*en* þan dede · þe ȝates schette,
& wiȝttili þan went · þe walles forto fende,
so þat feiþli of here fon · no fors þei ne leten.

[1] MS. "kenges." But see ll. 3591, 3601, 3625.
[2] A line lost (?)
[3] Read "the kinges *sone* for cas."—M. See ll. 3601, 3625.
[4] The MS. *repeats the words* þat here.

Will*ia*m with his wie3es · is wiþ-in þe cite nobul,
haþ *con*quered wiþ clene strengþe · þe kinges sone of spayne, — William takes the king of Spain's son to the queen's palace, [Fol. 58 b.]
& passeþ with him & his puple · to þe paleys euen,
with al mirth vpo*n* molde · þat man mi3t deuise.
þe quen him mett mekli · wiþ maidenes fele, 3656
& meliors & here dere dou3*ter* · to deme þe soþe,
wiþ alle worschip & wele · will*ia*m þei receyued,
wiþ clipping & kesseng · & alle couþe dedes.
& will*ia*m þan wi3tly · wiþ-oute eny more, 3660 — and delivers him over to the queen.
þe kinges sone of spayne · spakli to hire 3alde,
to putte in hire prisou*n* · & peyne him as hire liked.
& curtesli to þat kni3t · gan sche knele þanne, — The queen thanks William heartily.
forto þonk him þroli · of þat faire 3eft; 3664
for he was ma*n* vpo*n* molde · þat sche most hated,
& hade hir do most duresse · for hire dou3ter sake.
hastili i*n*-to þe halle · wiþ hem þan sche went,
& ladde will*ia*m as lord · loueli in londe; 3668
& as bliue þe burdes · brou3t him to hire chau*m*ber, — The ladies unarm and clothe him.
& vn-armed him anon · & after-ward him cloþed
as komly as any kni3t · vnder c*ri*st þort bene.
seþen 3ede to sitte same · to solas & to pleie 3672
at a wid windowe · þat was in þe chau*m*ber, — As they sit together in a window,
& gonne mekli to mene · of many gode wordes.
& as þei saddest in here solas · seten þat time,
þe quen hertli gan bi-hold · þe kene 3onge kni3t, 3676
& here þou3t þat time · þat i*n* þe world was neu*er* — the queen sees how very like
a liuande lud · so lelli liche oþer,
as þat komli kni3t · to þe king ebrou*n*s, — William is to king Ebrouns,
þat was lord whil he liued · & þat lor[d]chipe welte. 3680
& swiche a sorwe to hire sone · sank to herte, — and she begins to weep.
þat wi3tli gan sche wepe · wonderly sore.
whan will*ia*m saw hire wepe · wroþli he seide, 3683
" for seynt mary loue, madame · whi make 3e þis sorwe? — William says she ought rather to rejoice,
3e schuld now make 3ow merie · 3our mene to glade,
þat feynt ar for-fouten · i*n* feld & for-wou*n*ded.

since her enemies are beaten.
[Fol. 59.]

to su*m*me schuld ȝe ȝif now · ȝiftes ful gode,[1]
& to su*m*me by-hote · þe bliþer hem to make. 3688
Mater now haue ȝe · moche mirie to bene;
ȝe han now on in hold · þurth him haue ȝe schulle
wel ȝour worchep a-ȝein · as ȝe walt euer."

The queen excuses herself,

"Forsoþe, sire," sede þe quen · "ȝe seyn al þe treuþe;
ȝe make me mater i-now · mirye to bene. 3693
I wot for i so wept · i wrouȝt nouȝt þe best,
but i miȝt nouȝt þer-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe,
so þroli a sori þouȝt · þirled min hert,"— 3696

telling him the reason of her sorrow,

& soþli whi it was · þe encheson him seide,
how hire þouȝt he was liche · hire lord þe king þanne,
& hou þe sorwe of hire sone · dede hire so to wepe.
þan sede will*ia*m wiȝtli · þese wordes to hire-selue, 3700

William tells her to think no more of it, since both her husband and son are dead,

"Madame, of þat mater · no more now þinkes;
what be ȝe now þe beter · so bitterli to wepe,
seþþe boþe þi sire & þi sone · arn boþe dede?
þeiȝh ȝe driȝen swiche duel · al ȝour lif dawes, 3704

and will never come to life again.

ȝe gete hem neu*er* a-gayn · late god haue þe saules,
& make ȝour-self mirie · ȝour mene forto glade."
þan wax þe quen ful wo · wittow for soþe,
þat will*ia*m sede þat hire sone · schuld be dede, 3708

Still the queen's heart tells her he is her son. —

for hire hert bar hire eu*er* · þat he hire sone schuld bene,
bi knowing of alle kontenau*n*ce · þat þe king welt.
but of þat mat*er* no more · minged þei þat time,
ac turned in-to oþer tales · þat touched to mirth. 3712
& waitende[2] out at þe window · as þei in tales were,

Looking out, they see the werwolf, who kneels and bows, and goes his way.

þan þei seie þe werwolf · was com hem bi-fore,
Kortesliche kneling · as he in wise couþe,
& louted to þe ladies · & to þe lord alse, 3716
buxu*m*li as any best · bi any resoun schuld,
& seþþen went his wei · whider him god liked.
þe quen wiȝtli to will*ia*m · þese wordes sede,

[1] Catchword, "& to su*m*me by."
[2] MS. "waidende." Read "waitende."—M.

"sire, a selcouþ siȝt it is · of þis semli best; 3720 The queen hopes it is a good omen.
Loo, how loueli it a-louted · lowe to vs twiȝes,
It bi-tokenes su*m*-what treuli · god turne it to gode!" [Fol. 59 b.]
"ȝa, i-wisse," seide will*iam* · "wene ȝe non oþer, William says it is sure to bode good.
for þat blessed best · neuer boded but gode. 3724
he þat heried helle · fr*a*m harm him saue!"
"ame*n*," seiden alle · þat þere with him seten.
þus driue þei forþ þe day · with diuerse mirthe,
& treuli whan it was time · turned to mete, 3728 They go to meat.
& serued were of serues · as he*m*-self liked;
but speke we of þe spaynols · what he*m* tidde after.

Sone as þe kinges sone · was to þe cite take, Great is the sorrow of the Spaniards because their king's son is taken.
þat his miȝti men · miȝt no more him help, 3732
þer was a selcouþ sorwe · a-mang þe segges maked,
& karfulli to þe king · þei kayred a-ȝayne,
& told him holli here tene · how his sone was take,
& how here segges were slayn · a selcouþ nou*m*ber. 3736
whan þe king wist · as man wod he ferde, The king is very angry, and asks how they dared permit it,
& wroþli to his wiȝes · þat þere were he seide,
"whi suffred ȝe my sone · so sone to be take?
ȝe schul hastli be honged · & with hors to-drawe!" 3740 threatening to hang them.
& deraiȝed him for þat dede · as alle deie schulde.
but kniȝtes of his cu*n*seil · com til him sone, But his lords said it was owing to a certain knight's prowess.
& saide him soburli · so miȝt he nouȝt worche,
for a kniȝt him *con*querede · al with clene strengþe,
& hade him out of þe ost · mawgrey he*m* alle. 3745
"o kniȝt," quaþ þe king · "what kemp is þat ilke, "What? *one* knight's?" said the king.
þat wan so on my sone · is he so douȝti?"
"ȝe forsoþe," seid on · "sire, with ȝour leue, 3748
þer mai no man vpo*n* mold · aȝens þat man stond. "Yes," they reply, "the one with the werwolf on his shield."
he driueþ to dethe · who-so his dent cacche þ,
his douȝti dedes vs doþ · more duresse þan alle o*per*;
he it is þat þe werwolf · weldes in his scheld." 3752
"I mak a vow," q*uod* þe king · "to c*r*ist þat al weldes, The king vows he will prove his mettle ere he eats meat.
er i ete more mete · his miȝt wol i a-saie;

& ȝif any egge tol wol entre · in-to his bodi,
[Fol. 60.] I wol do him to þe deth · and more despit ouere ; 3756

"He shall be hanged before the city-gate, and the city shall be burnt."

he schal heiȝe be honged · riȝt bi-fore hire ȝate,
þat alle þe segges of þe cite · schulle him bi-hold,
& seþþen wol i þat cite · setten al on fure,
& do bruten alle þe burnes · þat be now þer-inne ; 3760
schal no gom vnder god · oþer gate it make."

His men are to be ready on the morrow.

þan komaun*d*ed þe king · to do krie as swiþe,
þat alle his rinkes schuld be redi · riȝt erli on morwe,
armed at alle poyntes · as þei no wold be spilt, 3764
& hasteli was his hest · þan hendli fulfilled.

Ful manlich on þe morwe · were his men greiþed,
of bold me*n*nis bodiesse · a ful breme ost.

The Spaniards are armed, and come down to the plain.

Gailier greiþed · were neu*er* gomes seie, 3768
of alle maner armure · þat to werre longed.
þan passed þe spaynols · in-to a faire plaine,
þer as þe breme bataile · was on þe day bi-fore.

They find there 500 bodies of their comrades.

þere þan fou*n*de þei fele · of here frendes slayne, 3772
Mo þan fiue hundred · of nobul frekes holde.
þe king þan for þat kas · was karful in hert,
& moche sorwe was sone · for þat siȝt maked.

The bodies are borne away to the tents, to be buried later.

but þan bad þe king bliue · þe bodies take 3776
of alle þe gomes of gode · & greiþli hem bere
til þe tentis, til þei miȝt haue · tom he*m* to berie ;
& deliu*er*li in dede · was don al his hest.

The king sets his men in three battalions,

þe king þan treuli · in þre batayles sturne 3780
faire dede sette his folk · fast as he miȝt,
In as real aray · as rink schold deuise.

of 2000 men each.

þ*er* were in eche bataile · of burnes tvo þousand,
armed at alle pointes · and auenantli horsed, 3784
In eche eschel stifli set · þ*er* þei stonde schold.
now of will*i*am & his wiȝes · a-non wol i telle.

William and his men issue out of the city,

Will*i*am & his wiȝes · were armed wel sone,
as semli to siȝt · as any segges þurte, 3788

& softli Iced out of þe cite · whan þei seie time.
will*ia*m went al bi-fore · as wis man & nobul, [Fol. 60 b.]
& ordeyned anon his ost · in þre grete p*ar*ties, ordering his men in three companies, of 700 each.
& sett of[1] bolde burnes · i*n* eche bataile seuene hundred,
of clene kniȝtes armed · & oþer kete burnes, 3793
& spak spakli þese wordes · þe spaynols whan he seie :—
"Lo, lordinges," sede will*ia*m · "wich a loueli siȝt
here bi-fore vs of our fon · of ferche men & bold! 3796
þer is holli al here ost · now beth of hertes gode,
& we schul wel þis day · þis werre bring to ende
onliche ȝourh[2] godes grace · & ȝour gode dede.
þouȝh *þer* be mani mo þan ȝe · dismaie ȝe nouȝt *þer*fore,
God wol vs ay rescue · & with þe riȝt stonde ; 3801
Go we to hem on godes name · with a god wille.
& i mow come bi þe king · bi c*ri*st, as ich hope,
he schal sone *þer*-after · to his sone wende, 3804
to soiorne in þe cite · þat he haþ seged ȝore.
þer-for, frendes & felawes · for him þat ȝou bouȝt,
doþ ȝour dede to-day · as douȝti men schulle,
& gret worchipe schul ȝe winne · whil þis world lasteþ."
In þis wise will*ia*m · his wiȝes þan cu*m*forted, 3809
þat þei hent swiche herte · as hardi men schuld.
þan aswiþe þei sembled · [ei*þer* ost][3] to-gader,
& alle maner menstracie · maked was sone 3812
of tabours & trumpes · no*n* miȝt þe nu*m*ber telle.
& ei*þer* ost as swiþe · fast ascried oþer,
& a-sembleden swiþe sternli · ei*þer* ost to-gader,
Gretand o*þer* g*ri*mli · with scharpe grou*n*de speres. 3816
Mani a bold burn · was sone brouȝt of dawe,
& many a stef stede · stiked þere to dethe,
no man vpo*n* mold · miȝt ayme þe nu*m*ber
of wiȝes þat in a while · were slayn on boþe side. 3820
but will*ia*m as a wod ma*n* · was eu*er* here & þere,
& leide on swiche liuere · leue me forsoþe,

He addresses them, saying, "See what a lovely sight of our foes is here!

We shall end the war to-day.

God will defend the right.

I will imprison the king with his son.

Do doughty deeds to-day."

Tabours and trumpe are sounded.

The hosts encounter.

Numberless men and horses are slain.

William is here and there.

[1] MS. "ob."
[2] *Sic.* Read "þurh;" see note.
[3] See l. 3815.

þat his daies were don · þat of him hent a dent.

[Fol. 61.] At first, William's men give way.

þe king of spaine & his kniȝtes · so kenli hem bere,
& so fresli gon fiȝte · þat at þe first a-saute, 3825
þat fele of will*ia*ms frekes · gon to fle ȝerne.

He rallies them, and they fight better than ever.

whan will*ia*m was war · wiȝtli he hem a-schriȝed,
& cu*m*fort hem craftli · with his kinde speche, 3828
þat þei tit aȝen turned · to telle þe soþe,
& bere he*m* wel beter · þen þei bi-fore hade.

The king asks, "Where is he that bears the wolf on his shield?

þe king of spayne gan crie · keneli & schille,
"war be he þat þe wolf · weldes in his scheld, 3832
þat haþ murþered mi men · & swiche harm wrouȝt?
Miȝt i now haue hap · him ones to sene,

I will hunt him as a hound hunts a werwolf.

I wold him hunte as hard · as eu*er* houñde i*n* erthe
honted eny werwolf · but wel he his ware 3836
þat i so many hondes · haue on him vn-coupled,
þat he for alle his douȝti dedes · dar him nouȝt schewe.

Whoever brings him to me shall be my chief steward."

but what man vpo*n* molde · so may him me bring,
I schal riuedli him rewarde · to be riche for eu*er*, 3840
& mak him my chef stiward · to stiȝtli alle my godes."

The son of the constable of Spain,

þan was þ*er* a kud kniȝt · þe cu*n*stables sone of spayne,
come wel þre daies bi-fore · þe king for to help.
an .c. kene kniȝttes · in cu*m*panie he brouȝt, 3844
& him-self a bold burn · þe best of hem alle,

named Meliadus,

& meliadus of miȝti men · þe kniȝt was called.
whan he þe kinges cry · clenli hadde herde,

bursts into the thick of the fight,

as bliue with his burnes · he braide in-to p*re*se, 3848
& demened him douȝtili · with dentes ful[1] rude.

slaying six lords, and wounding a seventh.

he slow of þe citeȝens · in a schort while,
six grete lordes · and þe seuenþe nere.

William encounters him.

whan will*ia*m was war · of his douȝti dedes, 3852
deliu*er*ly as a douȝti man · he drow to him euen,
Grimli eiþ*er* oþer gret · whan þei gonne mete,

Their spears fly into splinters, and they swing their swords.

so spakli here speres · al on speldes went.
& swiftli seþþe with swerdes · swonge þei to-gider, 3856

[1] Over *ful* (?) erased, *full* is written in a later hand.

þat many were a-meruailed · of here douȝti dedes.
& þis miȝti meliadus · in þat meling while [Fol. 61 b.]
a sturne strok set will*ia*m · on his stelen helm, Meliadus wounds William in the head.
& wounded him wickedli · wittow forsoþe. 3860
whan þis bold will*ia*m · saw his blod so breme, William, seeing his own blood,
liȝt as a lyou*n* · he leide on al a-boute, fights like a lion,
& marked þat meliadus · with mayn swiche a dint,
þat þurth þe helm & þe hed · hastili to þe gurdel 3864 and cleaves Meliadus through helm and head to the girdle.
his brond his bodi to-cleued · for alle his briȝt armes;
& he tit ou*er* his hors tayl · tombled ded to þerþe.
þer-of will*ia*ms wiȝes · were wonderli gladde,
& as sori in þe oþer side · þe segges were of spaine, The Spaniards are disheartened,
for i*n* þat meliadus miȝt · was here most hope, 3869
to haue *con*quered will*ia*m · wiþ clene strengþe of armes.
but whan þei seie him ded · sone gun þei turne, and turn to flight,
and to flen as fast · as þei faire miȝt. 3872
but will*ia*m & his wiȝes · so wrouȝten þat time, very hotly pursued.
no rink þei miȝt of-reche · recuuered neu*er* after,
ne no man vpo*n* mold · miȝt ayme þe nu*m*ber
of þe freliche folk · þat in þe feld lay slayn. 3876

Whan þis tale was told · to þe king of spayne, The king, hearing that Meliadus is slain,
how þe miȝti meliadus · for alle me*n* was slawe,
& bi-held how his burnes · bi-gonne to flene,
& how will*ia*m & his wiȝes · wiȝtli he*m* folwed, 3880
& duelfulli driue*n* dou*n* · to dethe þat þei of-toke,
also swiþe for sorwe · he swonede for fere. swoons for fear,
& whan he wiȝtli a-wok · wodli he ferde,[1]
al to-tare his a-tir · þat he to-tere miȝt, 3884 and, recovering, tears his attire,
& seide after ano*n* · "alas! what to rede!
I se al mi folk fle · for [þat] frekes dedes;
was neu*er* ma*n* vpo*n* mold · þat swiche miȝt walt;
It is su*m* deuel degised · þat doþ al þis harm." 3888 thinking William must be a devil.
bi þat saw he will*ia*m · winne him ful nere,
& slouȝ dou*n* in his siȝt · his segges al a-boute, Seeing William come, he flees.

[1] MS. "forde." Read "ferde."—M.

& saw it geyned no griþ · to go him no nere;
[Fol. 62.] as bliue with his baner · he gan awei flene. 3892
whan will*ia*m was war · howe he a-wei went,
William pursues him, and bids him yield. prestili de-parted he þat pres · & p*ri*ked him after,
& ful titli him of-tok · & stoutli him aschried,
bad him ȝepli him ȝeld · or ȝerne he schul deie. 3896
whan þe [king][1] saw him com · he sede to his kniȝtes,
The king rallies his men, and makes a stand. "defende we vs douȝtili · or we deiȝen sone;
þer goþ no*n* oþer griþ · it geineþ nouȝt to flene.
& more mensk it is · manliche to deie, 3900
þan for to fle couwar[d]li[2] · for ouȝt þat mai falle."
"certes, sire, þat [is][3] soþ" · seide his men alle,
"þ*er*-fore now in-dede · do we what we mowe."
þan turned þei titli aȝen · & trustili gon fiȝt, 3904
a[s][4] fersli as þei nade · fouȝt nouȝt bi-fore.
William and his men soon slay 100 of them, and take 10 score of the "tidiest." but will*ia*m & his wiȝes · were so breme,
& so sturnli in þat stour · stered hem þat time,
þat þei hade in a while · a hundred i-slayne, 3908
& taken of þe tidiest · mo þan ten schore.
The king, seeing all is hopeless, again flees. þe king saw his segges · were slawe him bi-fore,
& no*n* miȝt þe werwolf · *con*quere in no wise,
& whas duelfulli a-drad · lest he deie schuld, 3912
& gan to fle f*ra*m þe ost · as hard as he miȝt;
& hise men þat miȝt · manli gon to flene.
William catches him up, and again bids him yield. but will*ia*m p*er*ceyued · what pas þe king went,
& hastili hiȝed after · & him of-toke, 3916
& keneli to him kried · "sire king, ȝeld þe swiþe,
oþer þi deth is i-diȝt · deliuerli riȝt here.
He must make amends. Meke to make a-mendis · for al þi mis-gilt
þatow hast reised in þis reaume · & riȝt long meyntened,
& al wrongli wrouȝt · as wot al þis reaume." 3921

[1] Read "whan the *king* saw him com."—M.
[2] The spelling *couwardli* occurs in l. 3336.
[3] Read "that *is* soth."—M.
[4] MS. "a." Read "*as* fersli."—M.

Þo he seie no better · bote nede he most him ȝeld,
or al swiþe be slayn · þan sone he a-liȝt,
& wiȝtli to will*ia*m · his wepun vp to-ȝelde, 3924 — The king yields his weapon,
& forto wirche his wille · & wilned his mercy.
& will*ia*m, as kinde kniȝt · as kortesie it wold, [Fol. 62 b.]
Godli graunted him griþ · & grucched no more,
but seide he schuld him meke · in merci to þe quene, — and William says he must submit to the queen.
& p*ro*fer him to prison · prestli at hire wille. 3929
& gaf him to alle hire grace · & with-sede no worde.
as tit as þe king was take · to telle þe soþe, — The king being taken, the Spaniards retire in haste.
eche a seg of his side · sone gan with-drawe, 3932
& faynest was eche a freke · þat fastest miȝt hiȝe;
& þus was þat ferli fiȝt · finched þat time.
will*ia*m went to þe cite · with his wiȝes bolde, — William brings the king to the queen's palace.
& þe king of spayne · in *com*panye he ladde, 3936
with alle þe m*ur*þe vpo*n* mold · þat me*n* miȝt of here;
& passeden to þe paleise · prestili alle same[*n*].
þe quen with hire *com*panie · com him a-ȝens, — The queen receives him.
& resseyued as reali · as swiche rinkes ouȝt, 3940
& þe king ȝepli dede · ȝelde him to hire p*ri*son,
to wirche with him as sche wold · at hire oune wille; — The king and 207 of his knights submit themselves.
& treuli astit after him · tvo hundered & seuen,
þe realest rinkes of þe reaume · dede riȝt þat ilke. 3944
þe quene to will*ia*m · wiȝtli wold haue kneled, — The queen would have kneeled to thank William,
bliþe sche was þat bataile · was brouȝt to a nende,
& þonked will*ia*m þer-for · mani a þousan siþe,
but will*ia*m hent [hire][1] vp · & harde hire blamed, — but he catches her up, saying an emperor's daughter must not kneel to a simple soldier.
& sede, "madame, ȝe misdon · bi marie in heuen, 3949
þat arn an emp*er*ours [douȝter][2] · & a quen ȝour-selue,
to swiche a simpul sowdiour · as icham, forto knele;
ȝe don a gret deshonour · wiþ þat to ȝou-selue." 3952
"nai, sire," sede þe quen · "so me c*ri*st help !
I sette ȝou for no soudiour · but for sou*er*ayn lord, — She says he is not a soldier, but sovereign lord,
to lede al þis lorldschip · as ȝou likes euer;

[1] Read "hent *hire* vp."—M.
[2] Read "emperours *douzter* and a quen."—M.

& blessed be þat burde · þat bar þe in þis erþe. 3956

since, but for him, she would have been bare of all bliss.

for nade þe grace of god be · & þi gode dedes,
of blisse i hade be al bare · bi þis ilk time.
þer i balfulli here-bi-fore · was brout al bi-neþe,

[Fol. 63.]

þou hast me brouȝt of bale · & bet al myn harmes ;
þer-for in al wise ȝour worschipe· is wel þe more." 3961

All go to hall.

Now to touche of þis tale · what tidde after.
alle þe lordes a-non · vn-armed hem sone,
& with þe worþi quen · went in-to halle, 3964

Mellor and the princess lead the king of Spain between them.

& þe menskful meliors · & þe quenes douȝ*ter*.
curtesli þe king of spayne · bi-twene hem þei ladde,
& here meke maydenes · merili þat time
ladden þe oþer lordes · loueli hem bi-twene, 3968
& alle samen semeli · þei seten in þe halle.

The queen sets the king on one side of her, and William on the other.

þe quen set þe king · curtesli bi here side,
& will*ia*m on þat oþer half · & with him his suster,
& þe menskful meliors · þat made moche ioie 3972
for þe loueli loos · þat here lemman wanne ;

The lords and burgesses, and the peers of Spain, all sit down together.

& alle þe lordes of þat lond · in þe halle that were,
& þe best burgeys · & oþer burnes fele,
& þe pers of spayne · þat were to prison take. 3976

The king asks to see his son.

þe king bi-souȝt þe quene · ȝif it were hire wille,
þat he most se his sone · to solace him þe more,
& sche ful godli *gra*nted · & gart him do fecche.
& soþli, as sone as he com · þe king seide him tille, 3980

He tells his son they are in the wrong,

" lo ! sone ! wich sorwe · we haue vs selue wrouȝt,
þurh oure hautene hertes · a gret harm we gete,
to willne swiche willenyng · þat wol nouȝt a-sente.
It is a botles bale · bi god þat me fourmed, 3984

and it is of no use to pursue a wayward woman.

t[o] willne after a wif · þat is a wayward*e* euere."
þan seide his sone · " forsoþe, sire, ȝe knowe,

The prince says it is true enough, and they must now take the consequences.

þat we haue wrongli wrouȝt · nowe is it wel sene ;
we mot holde[1] to oure harmes · it helpes nouȝt elles,
but giue vs geynli in þe grace · of þis gode lady, 3989

[1] MS. "holdes." Read "holde."—M.

& late hire worche with vs · as hire god likes."
þe king for his sones sawe · sore gan sike, — The king is grieved, and
to þat comli quen · ful curtesli þus seide, 3992 — sighs,
" Madame, for mari loue · þe milde quen of heuene,
Graun*t* me of ȝour grace · ȝif ȝou god þink, — [Fol. 63 b.]
ȝif ȝoure konyng cu*n*sayl · a-corde wol þ*er* tille. — and begs the queen to allow
let me make a-mendis · for al my mis-gelt, 3996 — him to make amends,
þat i so wrongli haue werred · & wasted ȝour londes.
as moche as any man · mow ordeyne bi riȝt, — promising to
I am redi to restore · & redeli, more-ouer, — restore what is right,
al þe worchep þat i weld · i wol of ȝou hold, 4000 — and to hold his lands of her,
al þe londes & ledes · þat long to my reaume ;
so dede i neu*er* til þis dai · but of god one.
& but ȝour cu*n*seil, madame · a-corde wol þer-tille,
wisses me at ȝour owne wille · how ȝe wol me binde, — or offering to be bound in any way
& lelli i wol as ȝou likes · ȝoure lore fulfille ; 4005 — she liked.
ferþer forþ mai [i][1] nouȝt p*r*ofer · for nouȝt þat bi-tides."

þe quen & here *con*sail · þer-of were a-paiȝed,
þat he so him p*r*ofered · to parfourme hire wille, — The queen and her counsel take
& gonne to mele of þat mater · how it best miȝt bene. — it all into consideration.
& as þei were talking · to trete of þat dede,
so hiȝed in-to þe halle · riȝt to þe heiȝe dese,
þat ilk witti werwolf · þat will*ia*m hade holpe, 4012 — The werwolf enters the hall,
& boldli, for alle þe burns · as him nouȝt nere, — goes up to the
spacli to þe king of spaine · he spedde him on gate, — king of Spain, and kisses his
& fel doun to his fet · & faire hem he keste, — feet ;
& worchiped him in his wise · wonderli with-alle. 4016
& seþþe sone after · he saluede þe quene, — next he salutes
& after here, will*ia*m · and his worþi make, — the queen, and
þe quenes douȝt*er* afterward · & dede him on gate — the rest, and goes his way.
out hastili at þe halle dore · as fast as he miȝt, 4020
& went forþ on his wei · whider him god liked.
but sone sauage men · þat seten i*n* þe halle — Savage men who
henten hastili in honde · what þei haue miȝt, — were there caught up weapons,

[1] Read "mai *i*."—M.

sum*m*e axes, sum*m*e swerdes · some speres long, 4024
to wende him after · wiȝtli to quelle.

but William swears that if any one dares hurt the werwolf, [Fol. 64.]

but wan will*ia*m þat wist · wodli he ferde,
& swor swiftli his [oþe][1] · bi al þat god wrouȝt,
ȝif any burn were so bold · þat best forto greue, 4028
were he kniȝt oþer clerk · knaue oþer kempe,

he will kill him with his own hands.

he wold deliu*er*li him-self · do him to þe dethe,
þat no man vpo*n* mold · schuld oþer amendes ȝelde.
þe*r* nas hastili in þat halle · non so hardi burn, 4032
þat durst folwe þat best · o fote for drede,
so þei were of will*ia*m · wonderli a-dredde.

Yet all wondered what it meant, especially the king.

but whi þe werwolf so wrouȝt · wondred þei alle,
& whi more with[2] þe king · þan with any oþer. 4036
& þe king more wondred · þan any whiȝt elles,
& strek in-to a studie · stifliche þer-fore,
what it bi-tokeneþ þat þe best · bowed so him tille,
& wrouȝt to him more worchipe · þan to any wiȝt elles.

The king remembers about the son he once had,

In þat mene while þan · in his minde it com, 4041
& þouȝt on a semli sone · þat su*m* time he hadde,
& how him treuli hadde be told · to-fore a long time,

who had been drowned, according to his second wife's account.

þat his wif with wichecraft · to a wolf him schaped.
but sche of þat sclaunder · excused hire al-gate, 4045
& seide þe child was in þe see · sunkun ful ȝore.
þe king i*n* þat carful þouȝt · was cu*m*bred ful long.

William proclaims that no one is to hurt the werwolf.

but will*ia*m wiȝtli · as þe wolf was schaped, 4048
he dede kniȝtes to comau*n*de · to do crie in þe cite,
þat no burn nere so bold · as he nold be honged,
to waite þe werwolf · no maner schaþe,
but late him late & erli · where him liked wende; 4052
þat hest was wel hold · non so hardi was elles.

The king is in great thought and study.

Karþe we [now][3] how þe king · was kast in gret þouȝt;
he dared as doted man · for þe bestes dedes,
& was so styf in a studie · þat no*n* him stint miȝt. 4056

[1] Read "his *othe* bi al."—M. [2] MS. "wiht."
[3] Perhaps it should be, "Karpe we *now* how the king."—M.

whan will*ia*m was war · he went to him sone, — William conjures him to tell him
seide, "king, i þe *con*iure · in c*ri*stes holi name,
& bi alle þe kud customes · to kinghod þat longes,
þattow telle me tit · treuli þat soþe, 4060
ȝif þou knowest bi what cas · in any-skines[1] wise,
whi þis buxu*m* best · bowed to þe more — [Fol. 64 b.] why the beast bowed to him in particular?
þan to alle þe wiȝes · þat were in þe halle?
It mai be in no maner · me þinkes, bi þouȝtes, 4064
þattow wost in su*m* wise · what it bi-tokeneþ.
þerfor tel me tit · treuli whatow þoutes, — "Tell me, or thou shalt never come out of prison."
oþer i make a vow · to þe miȝti king of heuen,
þou passest nouȝt of p*ri*son · puniched at þe hardest.
þan siked þe king sore · & seide þese wordes, 4069 — The king sighs, and tells his story.
"sire, for drede of duresse · nor of deth in erþe,
nel i wonde in no wise · what i þouȝt to seie.
sire, su*m* time here-bi-for · in my ȝong age, 4072 — "I once wedded a fair and good lady,
I wedded with al wele · a worschipful lady,
þat burde was of beuaute · briȝtest in erþe,
& greter of alle godnesse · þan any gome mai telle.
þe kinges douȝter of nauerne · was þat gode burde, 4076 — daughter of the king of Navarre.
& in þat seson gete we · samen to-gedere,
on þe fairest freke · þat ouer seg on loked. — We had a very fair son; but my wife died.
but mi wif, as god wold · & as we schul alle,
deied at þe deliuerau*n*ce · of mi dere sone. 4080
& i fostered þat child · faire to þre winter, — I fostered it till it was three years old.
with alle clene keping · as it ouȝt to bene.
bi þat time was þat barn · ful breme of his age,
& semliest on to se · þat men schuld finde; 4084
alphou*n*s his gode godfaderes · dede him þan calle — His name was Alphonse.
at kyrke for his kinde name · to kiþe þe soþe.
þan bitid þat time · i toke a-noþer wif,
a ful loueli lady · lettered at þe best, 4088 — I married again to a lady who was lovely, and who could read well.
corteys & couenabul · & lettered at þe best,[2]
& come*n* was of gret kin · & koynt hire-selue.
þurth grace gat i on hire · as god almiȝti wold,

[1] See note. [2] This half line is repeated from above.

Our son was the prince who is here now.

a sone as ȝe mow se · be-for ȝou selue here, 4092
wich ȝe han put in p*r*ison · & puniched at ȝour wille.
þis child was ceput[1] clenli · as it wel ouȝt,
& it wax fetis & fair · & ful mochel loued.

[Fol. 65.] My wife feared that the elder son would succeed me as heir,

but þan my wif wickedli · on þise wise þouȝt, 4096
þat myn elder son · min eritage schul haue,
& kepe þe kingdom after me · as kinde skil it wold;
& striued stifli with hire-self · as stepmoderes wol alle,

and considered how to get rid of him.

bi what wise sche miȝt best · þat bold barn spille, 4100
to do so þat here sone · after mi dessece,
Miȝte reioische þat reaume · as riȝt eir bi kinde.
& as me haþ be told · of trewe me*n* of my reaume,

She changed him by enchantments into a werwolf,

with charmes & enchantme*ns* · sche chau*n*ded[2] my sone
In-to a wilde werwolf; · & wel now ich it leue, 4105
þat þis buxu*m* best · be þat ilk selue
þat my wif with hire wiles · eu*er* dede me leue,
(whan i hire touched swiche tales · as me told were),
þat it was fanteme & fals · & for hate saide; 4109

but she swore to me that he had been drowned.

& swor grimli gret oþes · bi al þat god wrouȝt,
þat mi semli sone · was in þe see sonken,
as he passed out to pleie · priueli him one. 4112

I believed her, but I now think this werwolf is my son.

I leued hire þan lelly · & lett it ouer-pase,
but now witerli i wot · þis werwolf is my sone,
þa secheþ after socour · it semeþ bi hise dedus.

This is truly what I mused about."

sire, soþli to seie · þis was my grete þout, 4116
for þe werwolf werkes · so me wel time,
& ȝif i wrong seie any word · wo worþ me eu*er*."

William says it seems to be the truth,

Will*ia*m[3] þan ful wittili · þese wordes saide, 4119
"sire, it may riȝt wel be þus · be marie in heuene!
þat þe best secheþ socour · it semeþ att best.

for the werwolf has a man's mind.

for wel i wot witerli · & wel i haue it founde,
þat he has mannes mu*n*de · more þan we boþe. 4123

[1] *Sic*; another spelling of "kepud."
[2] Read "chaunged" (?) Cf. l. 4500.
[3] The MS. has a large M instead of W.

for many [a day][1] hade i be ded · & to dust roted,
nadde it be goddes grace · & help of þat best;
he haþ me socoured & serued · in ful gret nede. "He has often helped me.
for-þi in feiþ, for al þe world · him nold i faile,
þat i schal loue him lelli · as my lege broþer; 4128
&, sire, bliþe ouȝt ȝe [be][2] · bi him þat vs wrouȝt! You ought to be blithe to find him again.
þat he þus happili is here · þat haþ so lang be missed. [Fol. 65 b.]
& ȝif he miȝt in maner · be maked man aȝeine,
of al þe welþe of þe world · wilned i no more. 4132
& sertenli, as it semeþ · to seie þe truþe,
ȝif þi wif of wicchecraft · be witti as þou seidest, If your wife is so witty in witchcraft,
þat sche him wrouȝt a werwolf · riȝt wel i hope,
sche can with hire connyng · & hire queynt charmes,
Make him to man a-ȝen · it may be non oþer. 4137 she can make him a man again.
& *þer*fore, sire, bi *cri*st · þat on croyce vs bouȝt,
þou ne passest neu*er* of p*ri*son · ne non of [þi][3] puple, Wherefore, you shall never be
with-oute deliuerau*n*ce · of þat derworþe best; 4140 released till he is made a man.
for made a-ȝen to man · mot he nede bene.
sende wittili to þi wif · & warne hire fore, Send and tell her to come here.
þat sche tit come þe to · for þat may falle after,
þat sche ne lette for no lud · þat liueþ in erþe. 4144
& ȝif sche nickes wiþ nay · & nel nouȝt com sone, If she will not,
sende hire saddli to sai · þat sone with min ost, say I will fetch
I wol þat reaume ou*er*-ride · & rediliche destrue, her forcibly."
& fecche hire with fin forse · for ouȝt þat bi-tides. 4148
for til sche with hire craft · þe werwolf haue holpe,
alle þe men vpo*n* molde · ne [mai] make ȝou deliuered."[4]

"Bi *cri*st," sede þe king · "þat on croyce was peyned, "She shall be sent for.
þat þe quen be of-sent · sauf wol i fouche. 4152
ȝif sche miȝt in any man*er* · make a-ȝen mi sone
to be a man as he was arst · wel were me þanne.
but serteynli i not · wham i sende miȝt, But I have no one to send but some
to make þe massager · myn erande wel to spede, 4156 of my lords,

[1] Read "many *a day* hade i be ded."—M.
[2] Read "ouȝt ze *be* bi him."—M.
[3] Read "of *thi* puple."—M. [4] *mai* seems required.

but ȝe wold suffer · su*m*me of þise lordes,
þat ben lederes of my lond · & lele men holde.

If you will give them leave."

ȝif ȝou likes, ȝiue hem leue · & hete he*m* þider wende,
I hope þei schul hastlier · þan any oþer spede." 4160

"I grant it; bid them bring the queen."

" þat i wol," seide will*ia*m · " ches wich þe likes,
& hote he*m* hiȝe hastili · harde as þei mowe,
& bring þe quen · for cas þat mai falle."

[Fol. 66.]

ful spacli þe king of spayne · to spede þo nedes, 4164

The king chooses 50 lords,

as fast ches him fifty · of ful grete lordes,
þat tidi men were told · & trewest of his reaume,

giving them a letter and a message, saying,

& tid bi-tok he*m* þe letteres · þat told al here erand,
& het he*m* munge bi mouþe · more, & þei couþe, 4168
whan þei come to þe quen · of þe cas bi-falle—
" & seiþ hire þus sadli · sires, i ȝou praye,
for what cas sche mot com · or bi *crist* of heuene,
sche get neuer gladnesse · of me, ne of mi sone. 4172

"Tell her my son is found,

& seie hire soþli · þis selue encheson,
for hire mi sone is founde · þat sche for ȝore saide
was sonk i*n* þe see · so dede sche me to leue;

in the shape of a werwolf.

but as a wilde werwolf · he walkeþ here a-boute; 4176
& how he souȝt after socour · ȝe saw wel alle.
þe*r*-fore treuli as it tid · telle here to þe hende,

Bid her bring charms to disenchant him."

& bidde hire bliue with hire bring · þat mai be is bote,
to make him man aȝen · miȝti as he was ere, 4180
oþer al þat lond worþ lore · & our liues alse,
þer goþ non aȝen-turn · ȝe mow hire treuli seie."
þe menskful messangeres · mekeli þan seide, 4183
" we wol worche ȝour wille · as wel as we kunne."

Next day the messengers set out

Manli on þe morwe · þe messageres were ȝare,
greiþed of alle gere · gaily atte þe best,
of horse & harneys · & what þei hade nede,
& went forþ on here way · wiȝtli & fast; 4188
Eu*er* þe geynest gatis · to goo to þe soþe,

and went to Spain.

Eu*er* spacli þei hem spedde · til spayne þat þei come,
& come to a cite · þere soiourned þe quene.

tid was hire told · tiding of here come, 4192
& sche gamsu*m* & glad · goþ hem a-ȝens,
with loueliche ladies · þat longed to hire chau*m*bur,
& oþer menskful maidenes · mo þan foure schore.
& mekli whan þei were met · þe messageres þei greten
with cliping & kessing · kindeli to-gadere. 4197
but sone þat comli quen · wel curtesli asked,
" how fares mi lord þe king · for c*ri*stes loue in heuen,
& mi semli sone · seþþe þei out went? 4200
han þei wonne at here wille · þat þei went fore?
what dos mi lord wiþ þat lady · & here loueli douȝ*ter*?
wol sche ȝit my sone hire wedde · & to wif haue?"
" Madame," saide þe messang*er* · most worþi of alle,
" oþ*er*-wise þan ȝe wene · is al þe werk turned, 4205
It helpes nouȝt for to hele · nouȝ herkenes mi sawe.
siþþe þe king of heuen · on croys for vs deide,
worse fel it neu*er* to wiȝes · þan it haþ a while. 4208
for alle þe real rinkes · of þis reaume be slayne,
& doluen depe vnder mold · mani day seþþe.
þe stoute stiward of þis lond · & his strong neuew,
& þe cu*n*stabul sone · þat kud kniȝt was p*r*oued, 4212
& out of nu*m*ber nobul men · to nempne þe soþe.
Mi lord þe king was þer cauȝt · in a kene stoure,
& ȝour sone also · and are prisons boþe,
& we alle, madame · & many mo of oþ*er* 4216
of þe lordes of þis lond · þat ȝut a-liue bene,
& neu*er*-more for no man · mowe be deliuered,
ne pult out [of] [1] prison · but purli þourh ȝour help.
& þeiȝh we hade þe quen · þurth queintyse & strengþe
brouȝt ferst at swiche bale · with so breme a-sawtes, 4221
wasted hire londes · & wonne hire townes,
& pult al pertly to our wille · but palerne alone;
sertes, þei were a-seged · so þat atte laste 4224
Many times in þis maner · mercy sche craued,
þat sche most wende a-wai · with hire douȝ*ter* one,

She comes out to meet them,

[Fol. 66 b.]
and asks after her lord and her son.

Is he to wed the princess?

"Madame, affairs are quite changed.

Our best men are slain and buried —the steward and his nephew,

the constable's son, and numberless noblemen.

The king, the prince, and all we lords, are prisoners.

We conquered all the queen's lands except Palermo.

The queen asked to have leave to depart where she pleased.

[1] Read "out *of* prison."—M.

boute daunger or duresse · or any despit elles,
& late mi lord haue þat lond · at liking for eu*er*; 4228

The king refused.

ac my lord in no wise · wold þer-to graun*te*,
& þat haþ vs hard harmed · for hastili þer-after
þer kom a kniȝt hire to help · þe kuddest of þe worlde,
[Fol. 67.] & most miȝthi in armes · þat eu*er* man of herde. 4232

Then came a mighty knight to help her, who conquered the king and the prince.

he slow of oure segges · soþli alle þe best,
& *con*quered with clene miȝt · þe king & his sone,
& lelly many oþer lordes · þat ȝit a-liue are.
& whan þei were in p*ri*son · pult at hire wille, 4236

Next, a werwolf came and saluted the king, and seemed to crave help.

þer wan in a werwolf · a wonderli huge;
with a komli kuntenau*n*ce · to þe king he went,
& fel dou*n* to his fete · & faire he hem kessede,
& wrouȝt him gret worchip · & wiȝes þat it seiȝen 4240
saiden, it semed wel · as it socour souȝt;
but þanne as bliue þat best · busked on his weie.

The knight asked the king what it meant,

& þan þat kud kniȝt · þat vs *con*quered alle
*con*iured mi lord þe king · bi al þat c*ri*st wrouȝt, 4244
þat he tyt schold him telle · treuli al þe soþe,
ȝif he wist in any wise · wat þat best were;

who said, it must be Alphonse his son.

& he soþli þus sayde · schortly to telle,
þat it was alphiou*n*s his sone · ano*n* riȝt he wist, 4248
þat þou with þi wicchecraft · a werwolf him hadest maked.

We are sent to say that we shall never be released

wherfore, menskful madame · bi marie in heuen,
we be made massegeres · to mu*n*ge ȝou þis nedes,
þat neiþ*er* þi lord nor þi sone · nor no*n* of vs alle 4252
worþ neu*er* deliu*er*red of daung*er* · þat we dwellen inne,

till you have disenchanted the werwolf.

til þou com to þat kiþ · & with ȝour queynt werkes
haue heled þe werwolf · wel at alle riȝtes,
& maked to man aȝe · in man*er* as he ouȝt. 4256

If you refuse,

& ȝif þou grutche a-ny grot · þus greiþli to worche,
alle þe men vpo*n* molde · ne mowe it nouȝt lette,
þat þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat kepuþ vs alle,

that mighty knight will come

nel com to þis kuntre · with a clene strengþe, 4260

& balfulli do þe brenne · in bitter fire, — and burn you,
& ou*er*-ride þis reaume · & redili it destrye;
&, whe*þer* þou wolt or non · winne[1] þe with strengþe, — and will put us all to death."
& seþen duelfulli to dethe · do vs alle after; 4264
& *þer*for do vs wite wiȝtli · houȝ þou wirche þenkest."
as bliue as þis bold quen · þat braun*n*den was hote, — [Fol. 67 b.]
hade herd al holli · how þat hit ferde, — At this news queen Braunden swoons.
sche swelt for sorwe · & swoned rit þere, 4268
& afterward wept · wonder was it none.
& to þe menskful messageres · mekli þenne sede,
"now, sires, seþþe it is so · what so bi-tyde, — She consents to go with them.
I wol wende ȝou with · & wel ȝou deliuere, 4272
þurth help of þe heuene king · hastili & sone."
þanne gart sche to greiþe · gaili alle þinges, — She gets everything ready.
þat hem bi-houed on hond · to haue bi þe weye,
& a real rouȝte · to ride bi hire side, 4276
of lordes & ladies · of al hire lond þe best.
& soþli for soþe[2] · no seg vnder heuene
ne seiȝe neuer no route · araiȝed more beter, — No one ever saw better arrayed company.
ne gaylier greiþed · to go to þe soþe, 4280
of hors & of harneys · & alle oþer gere.
þe quen hade hire with · al þat bi-houed,
to warysche with þe werwolf · wel atte best.

Gaili were þei greiþed · wel at te best, 4284
with here menskful meyne · sche meued on gate,
& hiȝed on here iurnes · fast as þei miȝt,
til þei come to palerne · to proue þe soþe. — They come to Palermo, where William meets them,
will*i*am & hise wiȝes · were warned[3] of here come; 4288
with a real route · he rod hire a-ȝens,
& worþili hire he wolcomed · wen he hire mette,
& hire clene co*m*panye · curtesli & faire;
& p*res*teli to þe paleys · with gret pres hem ladde. 4292
þe curtes quen of þat lond · com hem a-ȝens,

[1] MS. "wenne." Read "winne."—M. See l. 3622.
[2] MS. "seþe." [3] MS. "warnes." Read "warned."—M.

as also do the queen, the king, and the prince.

þe king of spayne with his sone · & oþer kniȝtes gode,
þat were put in prison · presteli þurth here dedes.
boþe murþe & mournyng · at þat metyng was ; 4296

The queen of Spain is grieved to see them prisoners.

whan þe quen of spayne · saw hire lord in hold,
& hire semli sone · & seþe alle þe oþer
of grete lordes of hire lond · it liked hire ille.

[Fol. 68.]

þe comly quen of þat lond · williams owne moder, 4300
with welþe & gret worchip · welkomed hem alle,

William helps Braunden to alight.

& william curtesli cauȝt · þe quen of hire palfray,
& his menskful moder · ful mekli hire kessed,
& hire lord & hire sone · swetly þer-after. 4304

All are glad to see her.

hire lord þe king of hire kome · was comforted michel,
& hire sone als · & seþen alle oþer
of þe lordes of þat lond · þat þere leie in hold,
for þei hopeden in hast · to haue help þer-after. 4308

She is led to hall, and seated at the daïs.

william & his menskful moder · mekli & faire
ful loueli þe quen of spayne · led hem bi-twene,
& hendeli in-to halle · þanne hire þei brouȝt,
& derli on þe heiȝe des · þei a-doun seten. 4312

She and the king and prince sit together,

þe king of spayne & his wif · seten to-gader,
& here sone hem bi-side · samen to talke,
to make hem in þe mene while · as murye as þei couþe.

and the queen of Palermo, the princess, and Melior.

þe quen of palerne & hire douȝter · þat damysele hende,
& þe menskful meliors · were macched to-gadere, 4317
to haue same here solas · & seie what hem liked.

The hall is filled with barons and knights, and the Spanish lords.

seþen al þat huge halle · was hastili fulfulled
al a-boute bi eche side · with barounes & kniȝtes, 4320
þe real rinkes of þe reaume · riȝt on þat o side.
soþli þe segges of spayne · were set on þat oþer,
so þat perles paleis · with peple was fulfulled.

There were spices and wines.

þann were spacli spices · spended al a-boute, 4324
fulsumli at þe ful · to eche freke þer-inne,
& þe wines þer-with · wich hem best liked.

The werwolf had been kept in William's chamber.

And as þei mad hem so mirie · to minge þe soþe,
þe werwolf þat ȝe witen of · was in williams chaumber, 4328

& hade be þere in blis · bi niȝtes and daies,
seþen þe messangeres meuede · after þe quene,
þat was his sterne stepmoder · til þat stounde þanne.
but wel wist þe wolf · whanne sche was come, 4332
& hastili in-to halle · he hiȝed him þat time,
to do [hire] to þe deþe · deliuerli ȝif he miȝt,
so wroþ [1] he was hire with · wite ȝe him neu*er*.
as bliue as þe best · was broken in-to halle, 4336
a pase bi-fore al þe puple · he passeþ him euene,
& drow him toward þe des · but doutusli after
he stared on his stepmoder · stifli a while,
whan he saw [hire] with his sire · sitte in m*ur*þe. 4340
ful wroþ þan þat werwolf · wax of þat siȝt,
& bremly his bristeles · he gan þo a-reise,
& grisiliche gapande · with a grym noyse,
he queite toward þe quene · to quelle hire as bliue.
& assone as þe quene · saw him so come, 4345
sche wax neiȝ of hire witt · witow forsoþe,
& earfulli to þe king · criande, sche saide,
"a! leue lordes, mi lif · lengþes ȝut a while! 4348
socoures me nouþe · or ful sone i deiȝe,
for þis ilk breme best · bale wol me wirche,
ac i wite him no wrong · witeþ wel alle.
I haue serued þe deþ · ȝif ȝou dere þinkes, 4352
lengþeþ now my lif · for loue of heuene king,
& meke me i*n* ȝour mercy · i may do nouȝt elles."
þe king of spayne stifli · stert vp sone,
& his sone al-so · to saue þe quene. 4356
will*iam* ful wiȝtli · þe werwolf þan hent
anon in his armes · aboute þe necke,
& sayde to him soberli · "mi swete dere best,
trust to me as treuli · as to þin owne broþer, 4360
or as feiþli as falles · þe fader to þe sone,
& meke þe of þi malencoli · for marring of þi-selue.
I sent after hire for þi sake · soþli, þou trowe,

Knowing the queen was come, [Fol. 68 b.] he hoped to kill her,

and advances to the daïs, staring at her.

Raising his bristles and roaring, he rushes at her.

In great fear, she cries out for help,

confessing she has deserved death, but begging for her life.

William catches the werwolf by the neck, and says,

"Trust me, dear beast,

I sent for her for thy sake.

[1] MS. "worþ." Read "wroth."—M. See ll. 3221, 4341

to help þe of þi hele · hastili, ȝif sche miȝt. 4364
& sche has brouȝt now þi bote · bi crist, as i hope,

Unless she disenchants you, she shall be burnt,

& but sche haue, be riȝt siker · be god þat vs wrouȝt,
to cold coles sche schal be brent · ȝit or come eue ;

[Fol. 69.]

& þe aschis of hire body · with þe wind weue, 4368

and the Spaniards shall be kept in prison for ever;

& þi sire & his sone · & alle is segges noble
schul be put in prison · & peyned for euere,
dulfulli here lif daies · til deth haue hem take.
for-þi lete me allone · mi lef swete frende, 4372

wherefore do her no harm."

anoie þe na more · ne nede schalt þou haue,
ne to hire do no duresse · as þou me derli louest."

The werwolf is glad, and kisses William's feet.

Þe werwolf was ful glad · of will*ia*ms speche,
þat bi-het him in hast · to haue help after, 4376
& faire doun to his fete · fel hem to kisse,
& as he coude, be contenau*n*ce · ful kindeli graun*n*ted,
In alle wise to worche [1] · as will*ia*m wold seie,
& made no more debat · in no maner wice. 4380

Queen Braunden is glad,

as sone as þe quen · saw how it ferde,
þat þe werwolf wold · worche hire no schaþe,
sche was gretli glad · & oft god þonkes,
& p*er*tili bi-fore alle þe puple · passed him tille, 4384

and kneels before the werwolf, saying,

& bliue bi-fore þe best · on boþe knes hire sette,
& mekli in þis maner · mercy sche craued.

"Sweet Alphonse, the people shall soon see thy seemly face.

" swete alphou*n*s," sche seide · " mi semli lorde,
I haue brouȝt here þi bote · to bring þe of sorwe ; 4388
sone schal þe puple se · þi semli face,
In manhede & in minde · as it out to bene.

I have sinned against you,

I haue þe gretli a-gelt · to god ich am a-knowe,
for redili þe to reue · þi riȝt eritage ; 4392
þat þis ma*n* mi*n* owne sone · miȝt it haue hadde
feiþli after þi fader · ich forschop þe þanne
In þise wise to a werwolf · and wend þe to spille ;

but God wills not that you should be lost.

but god wold nouȝt · þat þou were lorne. 4396
for-þi of mi mis-gelt · mercy ich craue,

[1] MS. "worthe."

lene me lif, ȝif þe likes · alphou*ns*, i þe praye,
& at þi bidding wol i be · buxu*m* eu*er*-more,
& lelli as my lord · al my lif þe serue, 4400
& neu*er* agult þe wil i liue · in game ne on ernest;
& giue me now in þi grace · and godli þe bi-seche,
for his loue þat mad man · for-giue me þis gelt."
& þan wiȝtli to will*ia*m · weping sche seide, 4404
"a! kurtes kniȝt · for c*ri*stes loue of heuene,
bidde þis buxu*m* best · be merciabul nouþe,
for he wol worche at þi wille · i wot wel forsoþe,
More þan for alle me*n* · þat on mold liuen; 4408
& ȝou, alle hende lordes · helpeþ me to praye
to þis kurtes kniȝt · to graunt my bone.
to þis bestes mercy · i bowe me at alle,
to worche with me is wille · as him-self likes." 4412

Spare my life, and I will never harm you more."

[Fol. 69 b.]

She further begs William to intercede for her,

and begs the other lords to do the same.

Of þe quenes p*ro*fer · þe puple hadde reuþe,
for sche fel to-fore þe best · flat to þe grou*n*de;
þer was weping & wo · wonderli riue.
but so kenli þe king · & þe kniȝtes alle 4416
bi-souȝt will*ia*m for þe quen · soþli so ȝerne,
þat he godli al his gref · for-gaf at þe last,
so þat sche hastili hiȝed · to help þat best;
& bleþeli boute grutching · þat grau*n*ted sche sone. 4420
þan stint sche no lenger · but bout stryf went
Into a choys chau*m*ber · þe clerli was peinted,
þat non went hire with · but þe werwolf al-one.
þan rauȝt sche forþ a ring · a riche & a nobul, 4424
þe ston þat þe*r*on was stiȝt · was of so stif v*er*tu,
þat neu*er* man vpo*n* mold · miȝt it him on haue,
ne schuld he with wicchecraft · be wicched neu*er*-more,
ne p*er*[i]sche[1] with no poysoun · ne purliche enuenemed; 4428
ne wrongli schuld he wiue · þat it in wold hadde.
þat riche ring ful redily · with a red silk þrede

There was much weeping and woe.

William forgives her if she will heal the beast.

She at once goes with the werwolf into a private chamber,

draws forth a magic ring, with a stone in it that was proof against all witchcraft.

She binds it with a red silk thread

[1] MS. "p*e*rsche." Read "perische."—M.

round the wolf's neck.

þe quen bond als bliue · a-boute þe wolwes necke.

She takes a book out of a casket, and reads in it a long time, till he becomes a man again.

seþe feiþli of a forcer · a fair bok sche rauȝt, 4432
& radde þer-on redli · riȝt a long while,
so þat sche made him to man · in þat mene while,
as fair as fetys · and als freli schapen,
[Fol. 70.] as any man vpo*n* mold · miȝt on deuise. 4436

William only was fairer.

was no*n* fairre in world · but will*ia*m allone,
for he of fairnesse was flour · of frekes þat liue.

The werwolf is very glad,

whan þe werwolf wist · þat he was man bi-come,
fair of alle fasou*n* · as him fel to bene, 4440
he was gretli glad · no gum þurt him blame,
ful wel him liked þe lessun · þat þe lady radde.

but is ashamed of being naked.

soþli þat he was so naked · sore he was a-schamed,
whan þe quen þat of-sey · sone sche seide him tille,

She tells him he need not be so, for they are alone.

"a ! alphou*n*s, leue lord · lat be alle þo þouȝtes, 4445
i se wel þou art a-schamed · & so were it no nede ;
ne buþ here in þis bour · but our selue tweyne.
& on þe, sire, se i no siȝt · but as it schuld bene, 4448
ne þe faileþ no þing · þat falleþ a man to haue.

He must now go to the bath.

fare now forþ to þi baþ · þat faire is keuered,
for it is geinli greiþed · in a god asise."

Alphonse goes to the bath, finding it "tidily warm."

& alphou*n*s anon þanne · after hire sawe, 4452
buskes in to þe baþ · boute more noyse,
& fond it treuli a-tired · & tidili warme.

The queen serves him.

þe quen him *com*forted · & curtesli him serued
as mekkeli as sche miȝt · in alle man*er* wise ; 4456
for no burn nas hem bi · but he*m*-self tweyne.

She asks him who shall give him his clothes?

Þan þe curtes quen · ful cunyngli saide,
" swete sire, saie me now · so ȝou c*ri*st help,
what gom wol ȝe þat ȝou giue · ȝour garnemen*s* nouþe ?
ȝe ne tok neu*er* as i trowe · of kniȝthod þe hordere. 4461
for-þi þow telle me of whom · ȝe take it þenk,
for wel ȝe wite [what] whiȝ · worþiest is here."

He says he will take his attire and the order of

" Madame," þan seide alphou*n*s · " be marie in heuen,
I wol take myn a-tir · & þat trie ordere 4465

of þe worþiest weiȝ · þat weldes now liue."
"hoo is þat," seide þe quen · "is it ȝour fader?"
"Nay, bi god," quath alphu*ns* · "þat gart me be fourmed, 4468
It is þat ilk kud kniȝt · þat ȝe alle knowe,
þat deliuered þe of þe deth · þis day of mi-selue.
a worþier wieȝh in þis world · woneþ no*n* nouþe,
king ne kniȝt as of kin · ne of kud dedes. 4472
Mi tir of him wol ich take · and þat trie order,
& loue him as mi lege lord · al mi lif time."
þe quen after will*ia*m · went in-to halle,
& tok him sliȝli bi þe sleue · & saide in his ere, 4476
"sire, ȝif þi wille were · þe werwolf þe bi-secheþ,
þat tow tit com him to · to tire him in his wedes;
he ne wol þat non oþer · þat worchipe him ȝeue."
"is þat soþ," saide will*ia*m · "mi swete lady hende?
cleymeþ he after cloþes · for cristes loue in heuen? 4481
deceyue me nouȝt with þi dedes · but seie me þe soþe."
"ȝis, bi c*ri*st," quaþ þe quen · "cloþes he askes;
he is as hol, heriȝed be god · as he was eu*er* ȝite, 4484
& manliche in alle maneres · as to man falles;
hiȝes him hastili him to · & help he were greiþed;
for i wot þat þis folk · fayn wold him sene. 4487
but he wol þat no wiȝt · to chau*m*ber with þe come,
but meliors þi menskful make · & þe quenes douȝ*ter*,
Dame florence þe faire · for whom was þis werre.
hem boþe he biddeþ bring · & no wiȝt elles."
þan will*ia*m ful wiȝtli · as man ful of ioye, 4492
clipte þe quen & kest · & oft crist þonkes,
þat his felawe was hol · þat hade him holp oft.
as bliue was him brouȝt · al þat bi-houed
of alle comli cloþing · þat a kniȝt schuld haue; 4496
no man vpo*n* mold · miȝt richer deuise.
þan will*ia*m wiȝtli · with meliors & his suster,
& þe comli quene · spacli forþ þei went
in-to þe chois chau*m*ber · þer chau*n*ged was þe best

knighthood from the worthiest man alive,

viz. William, who shall be his liege lord.
[Fol. 70 b.]

The queen tells William the werwolf wishes him to clothe him.

"Is it true," he says, "that he asks for clothes?"

"Yes," says she, "he is as whole as ever.

He will have no one but you and Melior and the princess Florence."

William kisses the queen for making his fellow whole.

William, Melior, &c., go to the chamber,

and see a bath and a bed, with a man in it whom they knew not.

[Fol. 71.]

out of þe werwolfs wise · to a worþi kniȝt. 4501
þan bi-held þei þe baþ · & a bed bi-side,
& in þat bed als bliue · þat burn þei seien,
þat non so semli to here siȝt · saw þei neuer ere ; 4504

Yet they greet him, and Alphonse answers,

but of þat *com*panie, be *cr*ist · þer ne knew him none.
naþeles will*ia*m wiȝtli · worþili him grette,
& þo menskful maidenes · mekli þer-after,
& þan alphou*ns* a-non · answered & saide, 4508

"Sir knight, you give me a poor we'come."

"*cr*ist krouned king · sire kniȝt, mot ȝou saue,
& þi faire felachipe · þat folweþ þe after.
sire kniȝt, i am in þi kiþ · & come*n* to þi owne,
& þow makes me now · but þis mene semblan*t*. 4512
to put þe of p*er*il · i haue ney p*er*isched oft,
& many a scharp schour · for þi sake þoled,
to litel þow me knowest · or kinhed me kiþes."

"True," said William, "but I conjure you to say who you are."

"sertes, sire, þat is soþ" · seide will*ia*m þanne, 4516
"I ne wot in þis world · what þat ȝe are ;
but i *con*iure ȝou, be *cr*ist · þat on croyce was peyned,
þat ȝe seie me swiþe soþ · ho-so ȝe bene."

"I am the werwolf, who have saved you from many perils."

"I am he, þe werwolf" · sede alphou*ns* · þanne, 4520
"þat haue suffred for þi sake · many sori peynes,
& pult þe out of p*er*iles · þ*er* þou p*er*isched[1] schuldest,
nade goddes grete miȝt be · & mi gode help."

William embraces him with great joy.

"certes, sire, þat is soþ" · sede will*ia*m þanne, 4524
& lepes liȝtli him to · & lacchis him in armes ;
with clipping & kesseng · þei kidden gret ioye.
alle þe men vpon mold · ne miȝt half telle
þe mirþ þat was maked · in þe mene while. 4528

Florence greets him, and he instantly falls in love with her.

& ȝif will*ia*m was glad · wittow forsoþe,
Meliors was moche more · ȝif it so miȝt bene ;
& florence of þat fare · þanne gret ferli hadde.
& sone as sche him saw · loueli sche him grett, 4532
& he godli a-gayn · gret þat gode mayde,
& for þe beaute þat sche bar · as bliue his hert
turned to hire treuli · to loue for eu*er*-more.

[1] Read "perische" (?)

whan þei in þat gladnesse · a gret while hade sete,
alphou*n*s asked a-non · a-tir for to haue, 4537 Then Alphonse asks for his clothes, to go and see his father. [Fol. 71 b.]
to fare out as fast · with his fader to speke,
& with lordesse of þat lond · þat him long hade missed.
& will*i*am wiȝtli · with-oute any more, 4540
Greiþed him as gaili · as any gom þurt bene, William attires him as a knight.
of alle trie a-tir · þat to kniȝt longed,
so þat non miȝt a-mend[1] · a mite worþ, i wene.
& whan þei were at wille · as þei wold be greiþed, 4544
eche on hent oþer bi þe hand · hendli & faire,
& hastili in-to þe heiȝe halle · hiȝeden in-fere. They go together to the hall.
whan þe p*er*les puple · p*er*ceyueden hem[2] come,
Many a lord ful loueli · lep hem aȝens, 4548
as þo þat were geinli glad · on þat gom to loke.
Gret m*ur*þe at þat metyng · was mad, be ȝou sure.
þe king of spayne forsoþe · knew his sone sone, The king of Spain soon knew his son.
& gret him ferst as a glad man · & oft god þonkes, 4552
þat he so faire hade founde · his formest sone.
seþen þe lordes of londe · loueli him gretten,
& his bold broþer · be-fore alle oþer;
saue þe king him-self · semliest he him gret, 4556 The werwolf is greeted by his brother.
& most ioye for þat metyng · made þat time.
no tong miȝt telle · treuli þe soþe,
þe ioye þat was wrouȝt · with lasse & with more.
þe comli quen of palerne · oft crist þonked, 4560 The queen of Palermo thanks Christ.
þat hade hire sent of his sond · so moche ioye to haue,
& hade setteled hire sorwe · so sone, þat was huge.
sone þe semli segges · were sette in halle; All in the hall take their proper places.
þe real rinkes bi reson · at þe heiȝe dese, 4564
& alle oþer afterward · on þe side be*n*ches,
& sete so in solas · sadli ful þe halle,
eche dingneli at his degre · to deme þe soþe.
whan þe noyse was slaked · of þe semli burnes, 4568
þe king of spayne spak · to alphou*n*s his sone, The king of Spain addresses his son.

[1] MS. "a-mand." Read "amend."—M.
[2] MS. "whan." Read "hem."—M.

& sede, "semli sone · sore has me longed
to se þi freli face · þat i for-lore hadde.
[Fol. 72.] for þis comli quen · þurth ȝone kniȝtes dedes, 4572
haþ vs alle in hold · to harm at hire wille.

saying it had been foretold that their deliverance would be wrought by him only.

but swete sone · saide it haþ ben oft,
þat our deliueraunce · was don on þe one; 4575
þurth þé schuld we help haue · or neuer-more elles.
þer-fore, heuen king · heried mot ȝe bene,
þat haþ þe lend lif · vs alle to deliuere."

Alphonse inquires what caused the war.

"sweto sire," seide alphouns · "so ȝou crist help,
wharfore was al þis fare · formest bi-gunne?" 4580
"bi crist, sone," quaþ þe king · "to carpe þe soþe,

The king says, "I desired to have this damsel for thy brother's wife.

alle þe werre & þis wo · is our wronge dedes.
i desired þis damisele · þat digne is & nobul,
to haue hire to þi broþer · þat here bi þe sitteþ; 4584

Her mother would not grant it, and I wasted their lands.

ac hire moder in no maner · hire nold me graunte.
for-þi wiȝtli with werre · i wasted alle hire londes,
& brouȝt hire at swiche bale · þat sche mercy craued,
in þis maner þat sche · most mekli & faire, 4588
do hire a-wei with hire douȝter · boute more harme;
sche wilned nouȝt elles · but þat nold i graunt.

But this bold knight made us prisoners."

but þan com þis kene kniȝt · & þurth his clene strengþe,
boldli in batayle · he bar doun vs alle, 4592
& pult vs in prison · to payne at his grace;
þus sped we vs out of spayne · to spire after winnyng."

Alphonse answers,

Alphouns þan a-non · answered & saide,
"faire fader, bi mi feiþ · folili ȝe wrouȝten, 4596

"You did wrong, and can only blame yourself.

to wilne after wedlok · þat wold nouȝt a-sente.
þat mowe ȝe wite bi ȝour werkes · how wroþli[1] ȝe spedde;
to wicke was ȝour conseil · & ȝour wille after;

But, I hope all can be made to end well."

ȝif ȝe[2] haue wonne þe worse · wite it ȝour-selue. 4600
but i hope to heuen king · ȝif ȝe wol here mi wordes,

[1] Read "wrongli."—M.
[2] MS. "he." Read "ze."—M.

al þis bale schal be brouȝt · to bote at þe last."
to þe quen of palerne · alphou*ns* þus saide,
"a ! menskful madame · mekes alle ȝour peple, 4604 — Alphonse craves silence while he speaks further.
þat non spend no speche · til i speke haue."
þan was silens mad · to seie al þe soþe. [Fol. 72 b.]
"ladis & oþer lordes · lestenep now my sawe !
þis ȝe witep wel alle · with-oute any fabul, 4608 — "Ladies and lords, this land had been lost if the war had lasted.
þat þis lond hade be lore · at þe last ende,
ȝif þise werres hade lasted · any while here.
but god ȝou sent swiche grace · of his grete miȝt, — But this knight hath remedied all your grief,
þat þis kud kniȝt · with his clene strengþe 4612
haþ i-bet al ȝoure bale · & brouȝt to ȝour wille
alle ȝour fon þat with fors · defoyled ȝou long.
ȝit wot no*n* wiseli · wennes he come, — and yet no one knows who he is.
ne what weiȝ he is · but wite schal ȝe sone. 4616
ȝif þat burn wel him bar · i blame him but litel ; — He did quite right to help HIS MOTHER."
for mater i-now haþ eche man · to mene þe soþe,
his moder þat is in meschef · to meyntene & help ;
& schal come him bi kinde · ȝif he crist loue." 4620
"what bi-tokeneþ þis tale · telleþ, i be-seche, — "What means this ?" said the queen.
whi seie ȝe so ?" · seide þe quene þanne.
"sertes, madame," seid alphou*ns* · "soþli me leue.
þis comli kniȝt is þi sone · bi crist þat me wrouȝt ; 4624 — "This knight, madame, is THY SON, and king Ebrouns was his father.
þou bar him of þi bodi · king ebrou*ns* was his fader.
al þis lordchip of þis lond · is lelli his owne.
& i am þe werwolf · wite ȝe for soþe, — I am the werwolf who took him away from you all.
þat bi-fore his fader · ful ȝore i ȝou bi-reft, 4628
& passed with him mi weie · p*re*stli fro ȝou alle.
þe king & hise kniȝtes · with kries ful huge, — Then the king and his knights pursued me as far as to the sea [Straits of Messina],
þei sewed riȝt to þe see · to sle me ȝif þei miȝt.
but bliue boute bot · þe brode water i passed, 4632
boute hurt o*þer* harm · heriȝed be goddes grace, — which I crossed over in safety.
þat so sauf sent me ou*er* · wiþ þi sone sounde.
& gode ladi, ȝif þe like · loue me neu*er* þe worse,
þat i þe barn away bar · to blame had i be elle[s], 4636
for i wist ful wel · wat wo him was toward

Had I not taken him away, he would soon have been dead. [Fol. 72.]

ne had i so do, he hade be ded · many a day passed.
þe king ebroun*s* bro*þer* · be-þouȝt þis oft,
if[1] þis ilk bold kniȝt · had be brouȝt out of liue, 4640
he schold have entred as eyr · þis eritage to hold,
after þe kinges day · bi dessent of blode.
& sone as a schrewe schuld · þe schrewedest he þouȝt;

For Ebrouns' brother bribed the ladies who had William in their care,

he coynted him queyntli · with þo two ladies, 4644
þat hade þat time þi sone · to kepe in warde,
& meded hem so moche · wiþ alle maner þinges,
& bi-het he*m* wel more · þan i ȝou telle kan,
Gret lordchip of londes · & liking at wille, 4648
so þat þei him bi-hiȝt · bi a schort terme,

to poison the king and prince both.

þat þei p*ri*ueli wold enpoysoun · þe king & his sone,
to haue do krouned him king · to kepe þat reaume.

When I knew it, I was grieved, and for pity stole him away.

but whan i knew al here cast · of here wic wille, 4652
I ne miȝt it suffer · for sorwe & for reuþe,
þat here wicked wille · in þise wise ended.
& *þer*for i him tok · now haue i told þe soþe,

I have ever helped him at need, and have brought him hither,

& haue him holp herto · wanne he hade nede, 4656
as moche as i miȝt · in eny maner wise:
& hider i brouȝt him, be ȝou siker · ȝour bales for to ame*n*de.

and now yield him to thee again."

haue him now bi þe hand · i ȝeld hi*m* here to þe."

When the queen heard this, her joy was unbounded.

Whan[2] þe comli quen · þat carping hade herde, 4660
& saw þat was hire sone · soþli i-proued,
þer nys man vpo*n* mold · miȝt telle þe ioye
þat was mad hem bi-twene · i*n* þe mene wh[i]le,
betwene þe dame & þe douȝt*er* · & hire dere sone, 4664
with clipping & kesseng · & o*þer* kinde dede.

Mellor perhaps was the gladdest of all, that her lover was king of all that land.

& ȝif any miȝt be most · meliors was gladdest,
þat hire loueliche lemman · was lord of þat reaume,
bi kinde as kinges sone · & god kniȝt him-selue. 4668

[1] MS. "of." Perhaps we should substitute *if*.—M.
[2] MS. "Mhan." The rubricator has here and elsewhere made a mistake, and inserted a capital M for a W.—M.

swiche m*urr*the as was mad · at þat metyng þanne,
& þat of al þat puple · þat in þe paleys were,
tonge miȝt non telle · þe tenþe [1] del, for soþe.
& anon, after þat · alphou*ns* þanne hem tolde, 4672 [Fol. 73 b.] Alphonse recounts all the details—
alle þe happes þat he hadde · al holly to þe hende,
from þat time þat he tok · þe child fro his frendes.
how þe fader him folwed · fayn him to quelle; how he bore William over the water;
& how he bar forþ þe barn · ou*er* þe brode water; 4676
& seþen how he souȝt forþ · bi selcouþ weiȝes, how he carried him by strange ways to the forest near Rome;
bering eu*er* þat barn · be niȝtes and daie,
til he com bi a forest · seuen mile fro rome;
& how þe cou-herde com him to · & kept þe child after, 4680 how the cowherd found him, and then the emperor;
& seþen how þemp*er*our · souȝt out to hunte,
& fond him in þe forest · & faire hade him home,
& tok him to kepe · to his douȝter dere;
& how þe meke mayde & he · melled of loue, 4684 how he and the emperor's daughter loved each other;
& hadde here liking in loue · a long time ofte;
& how þe kinges sone of grece · kom hire to wedde,
& on þe morwe þat þe mariage · schold haue be maked, how the lovers fled, clad in two white bears' skins;
how þei went a-wai · in wite beres skinnes; 4688
"þer-aft*er*, sire, i þe saued · forsoþe as þow knowest,
whanne alle þe puple p*re*stili · pursewed after,
to haue do þe to deþe · & þi dere make."
& at boneuen*t* i þe brouȝt · fr*a*m þe breme quarrer, how they escaped at Benevento;
whan al þe cu*n*tre was u*m*be-cast · with clene me*n* of armes, 4693
to haue þe take þ*er* tit · & to dethe hampred;
I tok here sou*er*ayne sone · so saued i þe þere."
seþen he told hou he dede · here hides þan chau*n*ge, how they exchanged their hides for harts' skins;
& dede hem haue hertes skinnes · to hiden in he*m* boþe. 4697
"seþen at a wide water · i wan ȝou ou*er* boþe,
a tokene ȝit of þat time · telle i mai þi burde.

[1] MS. "tonþe." See l. 4715.

and how the barge-boy hit Melior with an oar.

a boye hire ȝaf a buffet · with a breme ore, 4700
so þat hire lif lelli · neiȝ hade sche lore."
alle here happes holli · alphou*n*s telleþ þere,
& what he hade suffred · to sauen here liues.

William was very glad at finding he was king Ebrouns' son.

[Fol. 74.]

Whan will*ia*m hade herd · holli his wordes, 4704
he was gretli glad · no gom þurt hi*m* wite,
þat al þe puple in þe place · a-p*er*tli knewen
þat he was kindeli · king ebrou*n*s sone.

He embraces and kisses Alphonse, saying,

þan lauȝt he alphou*n*s anon · loueli i*n* armes, 4708
& clipped him & kessed · & kindeli sayde,
"a ! faire frend alphou*n*s · ioye þe bi-tide,

"May God requite thee!

& god for his grete miȝt · þi godnesse þe ȝelde,
& þi tenful trauayles · þow hast for me suffred, 4712
& for my loueli lemman · lord it þe quite !

For I know not how to requite thee the tenth part.

for i ne wot in þis world · what wise i miȝt
quite þe [þe] tenþedel · in al mi lif time.
but þer nis god vnder god · þat i may gete eu*er*, 4716

All I can do shall be done soon, to make all thine.

þat it [ne] schal redeli be þin · at þin owne wille ;[1]
ne no dede þat i may do · þat ne schal be do sone,
& loue lelli what þou louest · al mi lif dawes,

Thy loves and hates shall be mine.

& hate heiȝeli in hert · þat þou hate þenkest, 4720
so þat my hert holli · schal hold him at þi wille.
& þerto heiȝeliche am i hold · for holli i knowe

All that thou hast said is wholly true."

þat alle þe sawes be soþ · þat þou saidest ere ;
sadde sorwes for mi sake · suffred astow manye." 4724
"sertes, sire, þat is soþ" · seide alphou*n*s þanne,

"You can easily requite me," said Alphonse.

"Me þinkeþ ȝe miȝt be hold · to quite me mi mede ;
& so i desire þat þou [do][2] · ȝif ȝou dere þinkes.
"ȝa ! wold god," seide will*ia*m · "þat i wist nouþe 4728

"In what way?" answered William.

In what man*er* þat i miȝt · mest with þe plece,
or þat i walt worldes god · þat þou woldest ȝerne."
"ȝis, sire," seide alphou*n*s · "so me crist help,

[1] Here follow two lines (out of place) which occur again below. See ll. 4722, 4723, and the note.

[2] Or insert "wole," as Sir F. Madden suggests.

þer nis god vnder god · þat i gretli willne, 4732 "There is no benefit I so long for as *one* thing."
as o þing þat þou woldest · wilfulli me grau*n*t."
"ȝis, i-wisse," seide will*ia*m · "wilne what þe likes,
þeiȝ þou in hast woldest haue · holli al mi reaume;
I wold nowt wilne a mite worþ · but meliors allone." "I will grant you half my kingdom —anything but Melior."
alphou*n*s a-non · answered þanne & seide, 4737
"I kepe nouȝt of þi kingdom · be crist þat me bouȝt, [Fol. 74 b.]
ne of þi loueli lemman · lelly but in gode.
I ne wilne no-þing but þi suster · to be samen wedded, "All I ask for is thy sister to wife."
to weld here as my wif · al my lif tyme." 4741
"ȝa, worþi god," seide will*ia*m · "wel were me þanne, "That were well indeed, if thou canst marry so low."
ȝif i wist þat þow woldest · here to wiue haue.
it were a wonderful werk · ȝif þou woldest euere 4744
Meke þe in eny man*er* · to be maried so lowe."
"ȝis beter, sire," seide alphou*n*s · "i preie þe of nouȝt elles, "Yes indeed; I ask for no reward but that."
for al þe sorwe þat i haue suffred · for þi sake eu*er*.
but grau*n*te me boute grucching · to haue þat gaie maide." 4748
"bi god, sire," seide will*ia*m · "þat gart me be fourmed, "Thou shalt have her, with half of, or *all* my kingdom."
þou schalt [haue] [1] hire at þin hest · & with hire al my reaume,
oþer half witt*er*li · with-out any lette."
"nay, crist forbede," seide alphou*n*s [2] · "for his holi blode, 4752
þat i were so wicked · to wilne ouȝt of þi gode; "Nay, I ask but that lady only."
I ne bidde nouȝt a bene worþ · but þat burde one."
þan will*ia*m as a glad man · godli him þonked,
& seide, "sertes, nowe [we] [3] schul be · samen hole frendes, 4756 "Now," said William, "we shall be brothers-in-law."
lelli breþeren in lawe · our lord be it þonked;
for al þe welþe of þe world · at wille nouȝ vs falleþ."
þan al þe puple in þe paleys · pr*e*stli, fo[r] ioye, Then all the people rejoiced greatly,
Maden al þe m*ur*þe · þat men miȝt deuise. 4760

[1] Read "schalt *haue* hire."—M. [2] MS. "alphuo*n*s."
[3] Read "nowe *we* schul."

& þe comli quen · ful oft crist þonked,
þat hade so wiȝtli of hire wo · so wel hire *com*forted.
tid were þe tidinges told · wide where a-boute
of þat ferli þat was fallen þere · fast þan *þer*-after, 4764
Gret puple drow to palern · to p*r*oue þe soþe,
to loke on þe lordes · in liking at wille.

and the tidings of it were soon spread everywhere.

Now forto mu*n*ge forþer · as þe mater falles.
whan þise [tidinges][1] were told · to lasse & to more, 4768
þat þo tvo trattes þat will*ia*m · wold haue traysted,
þo ladyes þat had him to loke · & leren in ȝouþe,
þei wisten witt*er*ly þa*n*ne · with-oute any lette,
[Fol. 75.] þat þei schuld be do to deþe · deulfulli in hast, 4772
brent in briȝt fur · to-drawe, or an-honged,
as þilk þat [were][2] worþi · for þere wicked dedes—
Gloriau*n*s & achillones · þo tvo ladies hiȝten—
bliue þei hem bi-þout · what bote miȝt hem help, 4776
seþe here treson was kud · & knowe al a-boute.
hastili þei hent hem on · heiȝresse ful rowe
next here bare bodi · & bare fot þei went,
& faire bi-fore will*ia*m · þei felle on knes boþe, 4780
& goue hem in his grace · for þat grete gilt,
& knoulecheden al þe cas · how þei cast hadde,
to haue sotiliche sleyn · him-self & his fader,
bi hest of þe kinges broþer · þat bale to haue wrouȝt.
"lete vs, sire, haue þe lif · wil our lord wold. 4785
we meke vs in ȝoure merci · at alle man*er* poyntes,
to sle vs or to saue · wheþ*er* ȝou god likes.
þat we ar worþi to þe deth · wel we be a-knowe, 4788
but wold ȝe graun*t* vs ȝour grace · for goddes loue of heue*n*,
to put vs to su*m* place · penau*n*ce to wirche,
& late vs haue þe lif · whil our lord wold,

As soon as it was known that the two ladies would have betrayed William,

they were afraid they would be burnt, drawn, or hanged.

So Gloriande and Acelone put on sackcloth,

and put themselves in William's grace.

"We beg for our lives,

and hope to be allowed to do penance,

[1] This word is surely wanted; cf. l. 4763.
[2] Read "that *was* worthi," or "*were* worthi."—M.

þat we miȝt a-mende · su*m* of our mis-gilt, 4792
& for ȝour fad[*er*]e [1] & for ȝou · feiȝþli to preie. — and to pray for you and your father."
ȝif ȝe worche so · worchipe miȝt ȝe gete,
&, dere lord, of þe deth · may no god dede falle,
bot a litel wicked wille · þ*er*-with wold be slaked."
al þe barnage as bliue · baden for hem ȝerne, 4797
þat þei most i*n* alle man*er* · þat trespas amende.
& will*ia*m þan wiȝtli · here wille haþ graun*t*ed, — William grants them their lives,
so þat þei wrouȝt i*n* þat wise · & wold be gode after.
sone were þe ladies · to an hermitage brouȝt, 4801
& liueden þere in god lif · wil our lord wold, — and they live in a hermitage
In penau*n*ce & in prayeres · priueli & loude,
til þei went of þis world · whan god wold he*m* fecche. — till the time of their death.
now lete i here of þe ladies · & lesteneþ a-noþer, 4805
what bi-tidde of þis tale · as þis store telleþ. — [Fol. 75 *b*.]

Will*ia*m þan with-oute more · wiȝtli þer-after,
made him menskful messageres · to mene þe soþe, 4808 — William sends messengers to the emperor of Rome,
þe grettest lordes of þat land · þat lellest were hold,
& konyngest of kurtesie · & kowden fairest speke.
to þemp*er*our of rome · redeli he hem sent,
& with loueli letteres · lelli him bi-souȝt. 4812 — beseeching him to come to Palermo to his daughter's marriage,
ȝif þat is wille were · with-oute any lette,
to be þere with his best burnes · bi a certayne time,
to mensk þe mariage · of meliors his douȝt*er*.
and ȝif alisau*n*drine · were þanne aliue, 4816 — and asking that Alexandrine might come too.
þat sche most with him come · curtesli he prayde.
þan were þe messangeres · in alle maner wise
so trieliche a-tired · to telle þe soþe,
of hors & of harneys · & [what] [2] hem most neded,
þat no wieȝh of þis world · þurt wilne beter; 4821
& went forþ on here way · wiȝtly and fast, — The messengers go to Rome;
til þei redli hade rauȝt · to grete rome euene.
whan þe bold barounes · be-fore þemp*er*our come, 4824

[1] Read "fadere."—M. [2] See line 4187.

and greet the emperor from Alphonse king of Spain

ful godli þei him gret · gladli, as þei ouȝt,
ferst in alphouns half · þat king was of spayne,
for þempour & he · hadde be felawes ȝore,

and William king of Apulia,

seþen in worþi williams · þat king was of poyle, 4828
& souerayn of cisile · as schold a king bene.

and in Melior's name,

& seþen in meliors name · þat was hise mery douȝter.
& in þe kinges half of poyle · praiede him fayre,

to come to Palermo to his daughter's marriage.

to be at palerne with his puple · presteli & sone, 4832
bi a certeyn day · þat set was sone after,
to menske þe mariage · of meliors his douȝter,
for to wiue he wold here take · þat welt þat reaume.
whanne þe messagers hade munged · of meliors þe schene, 4836

The emperor asks where his daughter is.

Gretteliche was he gladed · & gan for to seie,
"lordinges, for ȝour leute · lelli me telles,
ȝif ȝe wite in any wise · were be þat burde?"

[Fol. 76.]

"In Palermo, sire. Here is her letter."

"Marie, sire," sede þe messageres · "ȝe mowe vs wel trowe, 4840
þe milde mayde meliors · in palerne now dwelles;
Loo here hire owne letteres · to leue it þe beter."

The king bids a clerk read the letter,

þe king komaunded a clerk · keneli & swiþe
to loke on þo letteres · and lelli hem rede, 4844
þat he miȝt wiȝtli wite · what þat þei mened.

and the clerk undid it and read as the messengers had said.

þe clerk þanne deliuerli · vndede þo letteres,
& fond as þe messageres · hade munged be-fore,
how þe king of poyle · prestli hade ordeyned, 4848
at swich a certayn day · his semliche douȝter wedde.

Then the emperor knew it was all true,

Þanne wist þempeour wel · þat þei were treuwe,
& made þe messagers · þe murþe þat he couþe,
realiere nere neuer rinkes · resseiued in place. 4852

and summons his lords to go with him to the wedding.

Manli made þempeour · his messageres out-wende,
alle þe lordes of þat lond · lelli to somounne
to be redili a-raied · in here richest wise,
to wend with him wiȝtli · to þe wedding nobul. 4856
& wan þei herden his hest · þei hieȝeden fast,

& certes on þe selue day · þat hem was a-signed,
so riche a route in rome · was rialiche a-sembled,
þat neu*er* seg vnder su*n*ne · ne saw swiche a-noþ*er*,
so triȝliche a-tired · of al þat to hem longed ; 4861
& went wiȝtli here [way] [1] · wen þei were ȝare,
& alisaundrine with hem · as i arst mu*n*ged.
& wending as þei were · in here way þat time, 4864
of þe menskful messageres · þemp*er*our þa*n*ne asked,
bi what cas his douȝter · was fare to þat londe,
& how kendeli sche was knowe · þat king wold hire wedde.
& þei titli him told · al þe trewe soþe, 4868
of alle fortune þat was falle · fr*a*m comsing to þende,
In alle maner as i mu*n*ged · in mater here bi-fore.
& wha*n*ne þemp*er*our hade herd · how [þat] hit ferde,
he was gretteli gladed · and oft crist þonked 4872
of þe fortune bi-falle · of so faire an hende,
& mu*n*ged þa*n*ne al þe mater · to his meyne sone,
as þo menskful messagers · hade mu*n*ged be-fore. 4875
þe m*ur*þe þat þanne was maked · miȝt no tonge telle,
þat tit was mad for þo tiding · whan þei told were.
& so þan held þei here way · harde & faste,
til þei to palerne p*re*stili · with al þat p*re*s come.

So they all assembled on the appointed day ;

and went their way, and Alexandrine with them.

On the way, the emperor hears the whole story ;

and he was very glad, and told it again to the company.

[Fol. 76 *b*.]

With much joy, they travel on to Palermo.

W*ill*i*a*m [2] þa*n*ne ful wiȝtli · with a faire puple 4880
of crouned kinges · & kniȝtes many hundred,
went a-ȝen þemp*er*our · with wel glade chere.
a gay greting was þ*er* gret · wan þei to-gedir met.
will*ia*m & þemp*er*our · went alder-formest, 4884
& alphou*n*s next after · & auenau*n*tli him grette,
with alle þe m*ur*þe vpo*n* mold · þat men miȝt deuise.
þe king of spayne spacli · spedde him next after,
for þemp*er*our & he bi-fore · felawes hadde bene, 4888

Then William with a great company goes to meet the emperor,

and greets him.

The king of Spain also welcomes the emperor gladly.

[1] Read "here *way* wen they were zare."—M. See ll. 4864, 4878.

[2] The capital W is mis-written M. See l. 4923.

& kindli kessed eiþ*er* oþ*er* · whan þei kome to-gadere.
þe m*ur*þe þat was mad · at þat metyng þanne,
ne may no tong telle · treuli þe soþe.

On nearing the palace,

seþen went þei alle samen · swetli to-gadere 4892
to þe perles paleys · and prestili þat time,

the queen and Melior and Florence

with a clene cu*m*panye þe quen · com hem a-ȝens,
þat lady was of þat lond · & ledde in here hondes
þe menskful mayde meliors · & here oune douȝ*ter*;
& hem sewe þ a selcouþe route · of semli ladies; 4897

and the queen of Spain come to welcome him.

þe quen of spayne spacli · þan spedde fast after.
a mery meting was þer mett · whan þei neiȝed same,
with clipping & kessing · and *con*tenau*n*ce hende. 4900

Great was the emperor's joy at seeing his daughter.

but soþli whan þemp*er*our sey · his semli douȝ*ter*,
a glader gome vnder god · miȝt non gon on erþe.
þe melodie þat þei made · no man miȝt telle,
ne neu*er* nere gestes vnder god · gladliere receyued.
noþing wanted þei at wille · þat þei wold haue, 4905
þat þei nere semli serued · & sette at here riȝttes.

No need to tell of their merry fare.

Mu*n*ge now nel i namore · of here merie fare,
[Fol. 77.]
for beter to be þan it was · miȝt no burn þenke. 4908

The joyous meeting of Alexandrine and Melior.

as sone as alisau*n*drine · hade siȝt of hire ladi,
no tunge miȝt telle · treuli half þe ioye
þat þei made at þat metyng · whan þei mette same.

Melior tells her friend all her story.

& meliors ful mekli · brouȝt hire to hire chau*m*ber,
& told here whan sche sei time · treuli al þe soþe, 4913
al þe sorwe þat sche hade suffred · seþe sche hire seie;
now of þis mater · no more nel ich munge;
& alle m*ur*þe was hem mad · among atte fulle. 4916

William and Melior tell the emperor all their adventures.

will*ia*m & his worþi make · whan þei sei time,
told þemp*er*our treuli · þat hem tidde hadde,[1]
of meschef & of murthe · & ho he*m* most helped,
& how þei brouȝt were of bale · to here bote þere. 4920
& alle þe*n*ne of þat auent*ur*re · hadde gret ioye,
& þonked god of his grace · þat so godli hem spedde.

[1] After "hadde" occurs a line made up from this line and the next, and not finished, viz. "of mechef & of m*ur*þe þat hem tidde h."

Whanne[1] time was, to þe mete · þei turned sone,
& serued [were][2] selcouþli · riȝt as hem wolde, 4924
of alle dere deintes · of metes and of drynkes;
and as þei muriest at þe mete · þat time seten,
þer come menskful messageres · þat men were nobul,
fro þemperour of grece · gret wel þe quene, 4928
þat ladi was of þat lond · & he hire dere fader,
& from hire broþer partendo · þat was hire pert broþer.
& whan þise messageres · hade here greting made,
þan þe soueraynest seg · saide of hem alle, 4932
"Madame, makes ȝou merie · for marie loue in heuen,
for ȝour feiȝful fader · naþ ȝou nouȝt for-ȝete.
ac he haþ sent ȝou to socoure · so grissiliche an host,
þat þer nis man vpon mold · þat may ȝou with-stond,
þat þei nelle bring in bale · at ȝour bidding sone. 4937
þei kome sailing in þe see · here souerayn is ȝour broþer;
partenedon þe perles · al þat puple ledes,
& se him schal ȝour-self · hastli, boute faile, 4940
er þis þridde day be don · doute ȝou non oþer.
& whan þat comli quen · þo tidinges herde,
a gladdere womman in world[3] · was þer non a-liue,
to þe menskful messagere · made[4] gret ioye, 4944
& worþili hem welcomed · ȝe mow wite þe soþe.
þe comli quen & þe king · cunseiled þan to-gedere,
þat þe bridhale schuld a-bide · til hire broþer come,
to mensk more þat mariage · ȝif þei miȝt þanne. 4948
þan on þe þridde day ariued · hire broþer here,
with a clene cumpanye · to carp þe soþe,
þe grettest lordes of þat lond · þat liued þat time;
but his ost þat tide he left · in þe see stille. 4952
whan þe quen wist of his come · curtesli & sone,

All go to meat, and are served with all dear dainties.

Some messengers enter, from the emperor of Greece and the queen's brother Partenedon.

The chief of them says, "Madame, your father hath sent an army to help you.

Partenedon your brother is their leader."

[Fol. 77 b.]

Then the queen was very glad, and welcomed the messengers.

It was agreed to put off the bridal till her brother came.

On the third day he arrived, with a great company.

[1] The large capital letter is mis-written M, as at l. 4880.
[2] See l. 5064. [3] MS. "wolrd."
[4] The sense would be clearer if the pronoun "sche" were supplied, but it is often omitted in similar cases throughout this poem —M.

The queen goes forth with the rest to greet him.

Gladli with grete lordes · sche goþ him aȝens,
þe kud emperour of rome · & þe king of spayne,
& his comli quen · & alle þe kniȝtes gode. 4956
þe worþi william was þe first · þat welcomed him faire,
& alphouns after him · & after þe kinges.

She receives him right royally.

þe quen of palern presteli · þan presed to hire broþer,
& receyued him as reali · as any rink þurt bene; 4960
þe king of spayne & þe quen · curtesli him gret,
& þemperour of rome · with riȝt gret ioye.

It was a solemn sight to see them "clip" and kiss.

þer was a solempne siȝt · whan þei samen mette,
with clipping & kissing · to keþþe hem to-gadere. 4964
þe lady ful loueli · þan lad forþ hire broþer
presteli to palerne · to þe paleys riche.

None can tell the mirth that was made.

More murþe vpon mold · miȝt no man deuise,
þan was mad to þo men · to munge þe soþe; 4968
Ne wanted hem no-þing · þat þei wold haue,
plenteuosli in eche place · þe puple was serued.

The queen tells her brother how William was her son,

& as þei sete in solas · sone þe quen told
buxumli to hire broþer · what bi-tidde þere; 4972
how william was hire son · & with his douȝti dedes
hade conquered þe king of spayne · & ended þat werre;

[Fol. 78.] and how the werwolf was restored to man's shape;

& in what wise þe werwolf · was brouȝt to his state;
& holli alle þe happes · as ȝe han herd be-fore; 4976
how þei went away boþe · in white beres skinnes.

and of the weddings to be on the morrow.

þan told sche how alphouns · schuld his nece wedde,
& william worþi meliors · with welþe on þe morwe.[1]

He was very vexed at this, for he had wooed Melior in Rome.

þan þemperoures sone of grece · was a-greued sore, 4980
whanne he wist on þe morwe · þe mariage schuld bene,
for he wend hire haue wedded · whilom in rome.

He would have liked to win Melior by force.

& þeiȝh he wist william · his nobul newe þanne,
hade he had his ost · he wold [haue] a-saide þere 4984
to haue with stoteye & strengþe · stoutli hire wonne.

But as he saw it could not be, he

but sei he soþli · so miȝt it nouȝt bene,
ac suffer he most · þouh it him sore rewed,

[1] These two lines, 4978 and 4979, follow line 4987 in the MS.; but are evidently out of place there, and must be inserted here.

& semblant made he sobur · so as it him paide, 4988 — appeared to be pleased, though grieved at heart.
but i hote þe in hert · it liked him wel ille.
þann william and his moder · & meliors als, — William and the rest wished to find a husband for Alexandrine,
& alphouns anon riȝt · of alisaundrine toched,
to marie here menskfulli · a-mong hem riȝt þanne. 4992
& so þei touched hem be-twene · to tele þe soþe, — and thought that Braundnis, prince of Spain, would suit her.
þat braundnis alphouns broþer · schuld be hire make,
þe kinges sone of spayne · þat comsed alle þe werre.
& he at his fader hest · hit þanne graunted, 4996 — Braundnis agrees to this.
& at þe bidding of his broþer · & williams hest.
þan driue þei forþ þé day · in dedut & in murþe, — They pass the day merrily till bedtime.
& haden holli at wille · what hem haue nedede,
& seþþe to bedde uche burn · busked him þat time.
but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe, 5001 — Next day, all were seen in their finest attire.
Men miȝt haue seie of segges · many on greiȝed,[1]
In þe worþiest wise · þat seien were euere,
seþþe he þat vs bouȝt · in bemleem was bore, 5004
alle þe clerkes vnder god · couþe nouȝt descriue — Not all the clerks could describe the royalty of that day,
a-redili to þe riȝtes · þe realte of þat day,
þat was in þat cite · for þat solempne fest,
& of alle men þat manerli · miȝt ouȝt gete 5008
of any god gaili · to greiþe hem midde. — [Fol. 78 b.]
to munge of menstracie · it miȝt nouȝt be aymed, — nor tell of the minstrelsy at the marriage.
so many maner minstracie · at þat mariage were,
þat whan þei made here menstracie · eche man wende,
þat heuen hastili & erþe · schuld hurtel to-gader, 5013 — The minstrelsy dinned so that the earth quaked.
so desgeli it denede · þat al þerþe quakede.
þe stretis were alle strewed · & stoutli be-honged, — The streets were strewn with cloth of gold.
with gode cloþes of gold · of alle gay hewes ; 5016
& burgeys with here burdes · in here best wise,
weyteden out at windowes · eche weie a-boute,
to prie on þe puple · þat priked in þe stretes,
& to loke on here lord · þat lelli þan schold 5020
be krowned king on þat day · to kepe al þat reaume.

[1] "greiþed" (?)

But when the time came for the brides to go to church, their attire was past description.

But trewþe now for to telle · whan time come of daye,
þat þe blisful brides · schold buske to cherche,
of here a-tir for to telle · to badde is my witte, 5024
for alle þe men vpo*n* mold · ne miȝt it descriue
a-redili to þe riȝtes · so riche it were alle.

There were kings and queens and lords, with horses and "harness."

boþe kinges & quenes · & oþer kud lordes,
p*er*teli in alle a-paraile · pursewend þurth-oute, 5028
of hors & harneys · & þat hem haue neded,
so þat non miȝt be amended · a mite worþ, for soþe;
as eche gom in his degre · godliche ouȝt.
for-þi no more of þat mater · nel ich mi*n*ge noþe, 5032
but touche forþ of þe tale · as telleþ þe gest.

The emperor of Rome led Florence, William's sister.

whan þe burnes were boun · to buske to chirche,
þemp*er*our of rome · will*ia*ms suster ladde,
þilke þat alphou*n*s · schold to wiue weld. 5036

The king of Spain led Melior.

& þe kud king of spayne · curtesli & faire,
ladde meliors menskfulli · a-mong alle þe puple.

Partenedon led Alexandrine.

þe quenes broþ*er* of palerne · partenedon þe bold
alisau*n*drine at þat time · auenau*n*tli ladde. 5040
al with blisse on here blonkes · þei busked to chirche,
with alle þe m*ur*þe vpo*n* mold · þat man miȝt of þenk.[1]

[Fol. 79.] The clergy met them in procession, and gave William the cross to kiss.

þe clergie com hem[2] a-ȝens · riȝt gailiche a-tyred,
ful pertliche on p*ro*cession · prestli as þei ouȝt, 5044
& komen to here king · & dede him þe croyce kesse.
þan with worchip & wele · went to þe cherche,

The patriarchs and prelates were soon apparelled,

þe patriarkes & oþer p*re*lates · prestli were reuested,
to make þe mariage · menskfulli as it ouȝt. 5048
& after þe lawe of þe lond · lelliche to telle,

and the couples were wedded.

þei were þer wedded · worchipfulli and fayre.
& lelli, for alisau*n*drines lord · ne hade non londes,

Towns, countries, and castles are given to Alexandrine's husband.

þer were tit ȝif hem to · treuli fele townes, 5052
comli castelles and couþ · and cuntres wide,
to liue wiþ worchip & wele · i*n* world al here liue.

No clerk could describe the mirth.

no clerk vnder crist · ne kowþe nouȝt descriue
þe murthe for þat mariage · þat was maked þanne, 5056

[1] Catchword—"þe clergie." [2] MS. "him." Read "hem."—M.

þe richesse ne þe riaulte · to rekene þe soþe,
ne þe solempne seruise · þat seyn was þat time.
but whan þe seruise was seid · as it schold bene, — The service ended,
þat fel to a mariage · be-maked at cherche, 5060
þat puple prestli aȝen · to þe paleys wente
wiþ al þe m*ur*þe of menstracye · þat man miȝt on þenk.
& treuli whan time was · þei t*ur*ned to mete, — they returned to the palace, and
& serued were as selcouþli · as hem-self wolde 5064 — went to meat.
desiren of eny deyntes · of metes & drinkes.
It were toor forto telle · treuli al þe soþe, — It were hard to tell all about the
& to reherce þe aray ariȝt · of þat riche feste, — rich feast.
for-þi i leue þis liȝtli · ac leueþ þis for treuþe, 5068
þer miȝt no mon it amende · a mite worþ, i leue.
whan bordes were born a-doun · & burnes hade waschen, — When they had washed after meat, the
Men miȝt haue seie to me*n*strales · moche god ȝif, — minstrels received gifts—steeds,
sterne stedes & stef · & ful stoute robes, 5072 — robes, gold, and jewels.
Gret garisun of gold · & greiþli gode iuweles.
þe fest of þat mariage · a moneþ fulle lasted, — The feast lasted a month.
& eche day was gret god · giue al a-boute,
to more & to lasse · þat at þe mariage were. 5076
þan lauȝt þe lordes here leue · at þe monþes ende; — [Fol. 79 b.]
partenedon p*ar*ted first · of palerne þe quenes broþ*er*; — Partenedon was the first to go home;
for he hade ferrest to fare · formest he went.
& will*ia*m wiþ his wiȝes · we*n*t him wiþ on gate, 5080
& semli wiþ alle solas · to þe see him brouȝt,
& his menskful moder · meliors, & his suster.
p*re*stili þe quen of palerne · þan p*rei*ed hire broþ*er*, — and the queen told him to thank
to grete hire feiþful fader · fele times & ofte, 5084 — her father.
"& þonk him kindli of þe help · þat he to me sent,
& telle him treuli · as it bi-tidde here."
þan lauȝt þei eche leue at oþer · lelli to telle;
p*ar*tenedon passed to schepe · & his puple after, 5088 — Then Partenedon sailed away to Greece.
& went wiȝtli to saile · þe wind was at þe best,
& saileden wiþ game & gle · to grece til þei come.
þan told he tyt to his fader · treuli þe soþe,

He told his father all the events, how his sister was helped by her son, and Melior married to his nephew.

of fortune þat was falle · fram comsing to þende. 5092
how his semli suster · was holpen þurth hire sone,
& how þat maide meliors · was wedded þat time,
to his owne neweu · þouȝh it him nouȝt liked. 5095

The emperor wondered, but was glad his nephew was so peerless,

& whan þemperour hade herde · [holly] [1] þo wordes,
he was a-wondred gretli · as he wel miȝt,
but glad he was þat his neweu · so nobul was wox,
& preised so perles · al oþer þat he passeþ, 5099

and that his daughter had been so well aided.

of alle kniȝtes vnder [heuene] [2] · þat knowe were þanne.
& þat his douȝter of here duresse · was so deliuered,
Gretli he þonked god · of his grete miȝt;
& liued þan in lisse · al his lif after. 5103

but go we now from þe gregoyse · & ginne of anoþer,
& of þe puple in palerne · how þei passed, telle.

Next, the emperor of Rome went homewards,

Þe real emperour of rome · remewed next after
redili towardes rome · with al his route nobul.
william & his moder · meliors [3] & his suster, 5108

and William and the rest escorted him for five miles.

[Fol. 80.]

þe king of spayne & his sones · & here semli puple,
went wiþ him on gate · wel an fiue myle,
to conueye him curtesli · as kindnesse it wold,
wiþ al þe murþ vpon mold · þat men miȝt on þenk.
& as þei went bi þe weie · wittow for soþe, 5113

The emperor advises his daughter, saying,

ful mekli to meliors · þemperour þus saide,
" now, dere douȝter, i þe preie · do bi mi rede.
lok þou bere þe buxumli · & be god & hende, 5116

"Be courteous to all, meek to thy servants, and leal to thy lord.

konnyng & kurtes · to komwne & to grete;
be meke & mercyabul · to men þat þe serue,
and be lel to þi lord · and to þis ladi after, 5119
þat is his menskful moder · & moche þow hire loue.
& alle þe lordes of þis lond · loue wel after,
& loke, douȝter, bi þi lif · as þow me louest dere,
þat neuer þe pore porayle · be piled for þi sake,

[1] See l. 246.
[2] Read "vnder *god*," or "vnder *heuene*."—M.
[3] MS. repeats "meliors."

ne taxed to taliage · but tentyfli þow help, 5124
þat al þis lond be lad · in lawe as it ouȝt;
þan wol al þe pore puple · p*r*eie for þe ȝerne,
to liue long in god liif · & þi lord alse.
stifli loke þow st[r]iue · fo[r] state of holi cherche, 5128
to meyntene it manli · on alle man*er* wise.
Gif gretli of þi god · for goddes loue of heuen;
be m*er*ciabul to alle men · þat in mechef arn;
so schaltow gete god los · & gretli be menskked, 5132
as han al þin aunceteres · or þow were bi-geten.
do þus, mi dere douȝt*er* · & drede þow þe neu*er*,
þat þow ne schalt haue heuen blisse · after þis liue."
ful mekli seide meliors · wiþ meling of teres, 5136
"i hope, sire, to heuen king · ȝour hest so wirche,
þat no barn þat is born · schal blame mi dedes."
ful tyt after þo tales · þei token here leue,
clipping & kesseng · kurtesli eche oþer. 5140
but þe mournyng þat meliors · made þat time,
for hire fader schold fare · from hire so sone,
treuli it were ful tor · to telle þe soþe.
ac þemp*er*our ful hendeli · held hire in is armes, 5144
& co*m*forted here kindeli · and þe quen preiede
to be meke & merciabule · to meliors his douȝt*er*,
"& cheresche here & chaste · ȝif þat chau*n*ce falles,
þat sche wold miswerche · wrongli any time." 5148
"ȝis, bi crist, sire," quaþ þe quen · "kare nouȝt þerfore.
i loue hire as miin owne lif · leue þou for soþe,
wel i wot sche wol worche · al-way þe gode. 5151
for-þi here wille schal be wrouȝt · what sche wol ȝerne
þat sche ne schal want in no wise · what þe hert likes."
þemp*er*our hire þroli þonked · many þousand siþe,
& after þat, anon riȝt · to alisau*n*drine he seide, 5155
"God has þe nouȝt for-gete · my gode hende mayde;
for worchipfulli artou wedded · to welde a kinges sone.
ful busili i þe bidde · þat burn euer honoure,

Never let the poor be robbed on thine account,

and the poor will pray for thee.

Strive to maintain the church.

Be pitiful to all in trouble.

Do thus, and thou shalt win the bliss of heaven."

Melior, weeping, says she hopes none will ever blame her.

It were hard to tell how Melior mourned at her father's departure.

But he comforted [Fol. 80 b.] her, asking the queen to be kind to her, and to chasten her when she does wrong.

The queen promises, saying she will doubtless always do right.

The emperor tells Alexandrine that God has not forgotten her.

& wirche him al þe worchip · in world þatou maye;
þanne schal eche lud þe loue · & for þi lif preie." 5160

"Your command shall be kept," she replied.

"ȝour hest, sire, schal be holde" · sede alisaundrine þanne,
"so þat ȝe ne schul here · of me nouȝt but gode,
I hope, þurth goddes grace · but gomes on me lyẽ."

Then the emperor took his leave, and went to Rome.

þemperour þan tiȝtli · tok leue of hem alle, 5164
& wendes forþ on his way · wiȝtli to rome,
& liuede þere in liking · a long time after.
now reste we of romaynes · & reken we ferre,

We now speak of the Spaniards.

& speke we of þe spaynols · wil we haue space, 5168
hou þei sped hem to spayne · spacli þer-after.

William and his mother and Mellor return to the palace at Palermo.

Whan þe king of palerne · & his perles moder,
& þe meke meliors · his menskful quene,
were come a-ȝe to here court · to carpe þe soþe, 5172
þei passed in-to palerne · to þe paleis riche,
with al þe murþe vpon mold · þat man miȝt of þink.
but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe,

The king of Spain and Braundine and his sons propose to take leave.

[Fol. 81.]

þe king of spayne spacli · spac to take leue, 5176
for him & alle his felawchipe · to fare þat time,
boþe him-self & braundine · þat was his bold quene,
& his semli sones boþe · alphouns & his broþer,
& here worþi wiues · þat were alle at onis. 5180

The king of Spain thanks king William.

king william þe king · of spayne þonkes
of al þe faire fordede · þat he hade for hem wrouȝt,[1]
þurh þe grete grace · þat god hade him sent; 5183
for cairẽ wold þei to here cuntre · & crist him bi-teche.

William is very sorry to lose Alphonse, and says,

whan þe king was war · þei wold nedes wen[d],[2]
Gret sorwe for alphouns sake · sank to his herte,
for he schuld his felawchipe · for-go at þat time. 5187
but whan þat he nedes[3] most · he nam him bi hond,
& séide, siking sore · "now alphouns, swete broþer,

[1] MS. "woruȝt."
[2] MS. "wen nedes." Read "nedes wend."—M.
[3] MS. "nedest."

seþþe þou cairest in-to þi cuntre · to kepe þi reaume,
I bidde þe as buxu*m*li · as broþer schal a-noþer,
ȝif it bi-tide eni time · þat þow tene haue, 5192
with werre or oþer wrong · with eny wiȝt in erþe,
or with þe sori sarazins · schuldest haue to done,
sende to me þi sond · swiþe vpo*n* hast,
& i schal hastili me hiȝe · bi him þat me bouȝt, 5196
to venge þe verali · for ouȝt þat bi-tideþ."
"þe selue, sire, seie i be þe" · seide alphou*n*s þanne,
"sone to come to þi sond · schal þer no*n* me lette."
eiþer þonked oþer · many þousand[1] siþes, 5200
& lauȝt seþe here leue · þouȝh hem loþ were.

"If, Alphonse, thou art ever in trouble, or art assailed by the Saracens,

send a message to me, and I will come and help thee."

"I say the same by thee," said Alphonse;

"nothing shall prevent me from coming to thee."

Þanne mekli will*i*ams moder · & meliors he kissed,
bi-kenned hem to c*r*ist · on croyce þat was peyned,
& mekli þe quen þan · to hire douȝter meled, 5204
& kenned hire curtesli · to kepe wel hire mensk,
bad hire be buxu*m* · & wel hire burn loue,
& haue pite on þe pore · & p*r*estli hem help,
& gretliche herie god · & do alle gode dedes. 5208
& sche, sore siking · seide þat sche wold,
sche hoped, þurth goddes grace · & hastli þ*er*-after,
clipping & kessing · to crist þei hem bi-tauȝt.
& spacli þe spaynols · sped hem to schipe; 5212
whan þei were arayde · eche ring,[2] as þei wold,
swiþe þei setten vp sayles · & souȝten on gate
with al maner m*ur*þe · þat man miȝt of þink,
for wind & gode wederes · hade þei at wille; 5216
& spedden hem spacli · til spayne þat þei come.
þan alle þe lordes of þat lond · & oþer lasse & more,
þat were ouȝt worþi · of alle þat wide reaume,
hiȝeden hem to þe hauene · hendeli hem aȝens, 5220
& welcomed him worþili · as þei wel ouȝt;
& of alphou*n*s come · alle were glade.

Then Alphonse kissed William's mother and Melior, and the queen gave Florence good advice.

She, sighing sorely, promised to follow it.

The Spaniards embark, and [Fol. 81 b.] sailed away with a fair wind.

The Spanish lords come out to meet them at the haven.

[1] MS. "þousans."
[2] "rink" (?) See l. 5353.

All went on to the palace.

& so al þat puple to þe palays · passede sone,
with al maner m*ur*þe · þat men make couþe. 5224

The king of Spain crowned Alphonse as king, as he himself was very old.

þe king of spayne spacli · to speke þe soþe,
krouned alphou*ns* to king · to kepe þat reaume,
for him-self was febul · & fallen i*n* elde,
to liue þ*er*-after in lisse · wil our lord wold. 5228
þus was alphou*ns* þere king · after þat time,
& held a-redili to riȝt · þe riche & þe pore,
so þat eche burn him blessed · bi niȝtes & daie[s].

I now return to William.

of him a-while wol i stint · & of will*ia*m speke, 5232
þe kud king of poyle · þat i of karped ere.

William and his people return to the palace at Palermo.

Spacli as þe spaynols · sped hem to sayle,
will*ia*m with his folk · went wiȝtli aȝayne
to paleys of palerne ; · his puple him sewed, 5236
with alle m*ur*þe of menstracie · þat me*n* miȝt on þenk.
þan will*ia*m wiȝtli · as a wis king schold,
pes amo*ng* þe puple · he put to þe reaume,

He abolished old bad laws, and kept the good ones, making new ones also.

a-leide alle luþ*er* lawes · þat long hadde ben vsed, 5240
& gart holde þe gode · and gaf mo newe,
þat p*r*ofitabul to þe puple · were p*r*oued & hold ;
so þat neu*er* cristen king · kauȝt more loue
þan will*ia*m dede in a wile · wite ȝe for soþe. 5244

If he was beloved, Mellor was more so.

& ȝif he geynli was god · to alle gode werkes,
& wel bi-loued in his lond · with lasse & wiþ more,
[Fol. 82.] ȝit was meliors as moche · his menskful quene,
or more ȝif sche miȝt · in any maner wise ; 5248
so p*r*estli sche wold plese · þe pore & þe riche.
þan bi-tid it in þat time · to telle þe soþe,

The emperor of Rome died and was buried.

þe riche emp*er*our of rome · ended his daies,
deide, & was be-dolue · as dere god wold. 5252
& alle þe lordes of þat lond · lelli at o sent,

The Roman lords send to William and Mellor to come and live in Rome

sent will*ia*m to seie · so as was bi-falle ;
& to meliors his quene · bi messageres nobul,
as to here lege lord · lelli bi riȝt, 5256
þurth meling of þe mariage · of meliors þe schene.

hendli al in hast · þei p*rei*ȝed him þider hiȝe. — as emperor and empress.
to vnder-fonge in fee · al þat faire reaume,
& erden in þat empire · as emp*er*our & maister. 5260
whan þe worþi will*ia*m · wist al þat fare, — He and Melior make the messengers good cheer,
& treuli hade vnderston[1] · þe tidinges to þende,
to þe menskful messageres · he made glad chere,
& welcomed worþili · witow for soþe. 5264
naþeles meliors & he · made moche sorwe — but are sorry to hear of the emperor's death.
for þemp*er*our was forþ-fare · faire to cr*is*t.
sone þei cauȝt cu*m*fort · for þis þei knewe boþe,
þat deþ wold come to alle · þat c*ri*st hade fourmed,
to emp*er*ours & erles · to eche þat lif hadde. 5269
& god þan of his grace · godliche þei þonked,
& seide þei wold his sondes · suffer, & his wille.
but will*ia*m ful wiȝtli · with-oute any more, 5272 — William sends messengers to Spain to Alphonse,
sent as swiþe hise sondes · soþli in-to spayne,
bi messageres milde · þa moche god couþe,
& bid alphou*n*s his broþer · schuld bliue come, 5275
& bring wiþ him his [wif · þat][2] was his worþi suster. — asking him to come with Florence and Alexandrine and her lord and the old king.
alisau*n*drine & hire lord · alphou*n*s he bad he*m* p*rei*e,
þat he dede he*m* com wiþ him · for cas þat miȝt falle,
& his feiþful fader · ȝif he a-liue were.
(ac he was ded & doluen · as dere god wold, 5280 — (But the old king was dead and buried.)
& alphou*n*s held in his hond · holli al þat reaume, — [Fol. 82 b.]
as kinde king krowned · þurth cu*n*seil of his peres).
& whan þe menskful messangers · here message wisten, — The messenger soon arrived in Spain.
& hade letteres of here lord · to lelen here sawes,
þei went wiȝtli in here way · with-oute any more, 5285
& sped hem i*n*-to spayne · spacli in a while,
& to þe kud king alphou*n*s · kiþed here arnd.

Whan[3] alphou*n*s witerli · wist of here wille, 5288 — When Alphonse knew his brother-in-law was to be emperor of Rome,
þat þe riche emp*er*our of rome · was redeli god bi-tauȝt,

[1] See the note. [2] Read "his *wif that* was."—M.
[3] The capital W is mis-written M.

he was very glad,

þat his buxu*m* broþer · schuld be lord þere-after,
he was gretli glad · and oft god þonked,
& marie his moder · þat hi*m* swiche grace sente; 5292

and summoned his lords to get ready.

& swiþe lett of-sende · alle his segges nobul,
after alle þe lordes of þat lond · þe lasse & þe more,
& oþer perles puple · him prestili to serue.
whan þei gaili were greiþ · as hem god þouȝt, 5296
þei passeden toward palern · as fast as þei miȝt,

Alphonse and Melior, Braundinis and Alexandrine come to Palermo.

alphou*n*s & his worþi wif · will*i*ams sister,
& brau*n*dinis his bold broþ*er* · & alisau*n*drine his wif,
wiþ hu*n*dredes of kene kniȝtes · i knew nouȝt þe names.
& redili whan þei were come · þ*er* þei ariue schuld,
will*ia*m wiþ his wiȝes · went hem aȝens.

The great joy of William and Alphonse at their meeting.

but no man vpo*n* mold · miȝt telle þe ioye
þat þe bold breþeren · bi-tweyne [hem] [1] made, 5304
will*ia*m & alphou*n*s · whan þei mette samen,
& wiþ his semli sister · seþþen sone þer-after,
& wiþ his oþ*er* broþ*er* · brau*n*dinis þe bolde,
& after wiþ alysau*n*drine · & alle oþer seþþe; 5308

All go to Palermo and make merry for a week.

þat prestili with al þat puple · to palerne þei went,
& made hem þer as merie · as man miȝt deuise,
wiþ alle derworþe deinteyes · of drynkes & metes.
& þus þat p*er*les puple · in palerne hem rested 5312
sadli al a seuen niȝt · hem-seluen to ese.
& bi þat eche burn · on his best wise

[Fol. 83.] When all were ready, William set out for Rome,

was purueyed prestli · of al þat hem neded,
& will*ia*m þat worþi king · was þan wiȝtli ȝare, 5316
wiþ al his real route · remewed toward rome,
þan made he his moder · be menskfully greiþed,

providing rich apparel for Melior and his sister and mother.

Mid him & meliors his quen · in m*ur*þe to wende,
& wiþ his semli sister · to solas here hertes. 5320
þan wiþ al his real route · he rides on gate,
Redili to-wardes rome þo · riȝtes gates,
with al maner m*ur*þe · þat men miȝt on þenk.
& as þei caired ouer cuntre · & come neiȝ rome, 5324

[1] Read "bi tweyne *hem* made."—M.

On nearing Rome, kings and nobles come forth to meet them.

per com him a-ȝens · of kinges & oþer grete
þe fairest ferde of folk · þat eu*er* bi-fore was seie ;
no man vpo*n* molde · miȝt ayme þe nou*m*ber.
& worchipfulli þei welcomed · will*ia*m here lorde, 5328
& al his[1] freli felawchip · freli þei gret,
& receyued hem as realy · as any rinkes miȝt ;

All ride to Rome, and find the city richly decked out.

Riden riȝt in-to rome · with reaulte and m*ur*þe.
ac no tonge ne may þe atir · of þe cite telle, 5332
so richeli was al araied · in rome for his come.

The prelates meet them in procession, and the bells are rung.

þe prelates on p*ro*cession · prestili out comen,
& alle þe belles in burw · busili were runge,
for ioye þat here lege lord · his lordchip schuld take.
þan passed al þat puple · to þe paleys euene, 5337
& eche man was esed · euenli at wille,
wanted hem no þing · þat þei haue wold,
for plente to al þe puple · was purueide at þe fulle.

Next day, at mass, William is crowned emperor, and Melior empress.

& on þe morw at masse · to mu*n*ge þe soþe, 5341
will*ia*m with al his worchip · emp*er*our was maked,
& meliors his comli quen · was crouned emp*er*ice.
þer nis no clerk vnder c*ri*st · þat couþe half descriue
þe reaulte þat was araied · in rome for þat fest, 5345

Never was a more royal festival.

Ne þe tiþedel of hire atir · to telle þe riȝt,
for al þe men vpon mold · it amende ne miȝt,
nouȝt þat fel to swiche a fest · forsoþe, half a mite. 5348
for-þi wende i wol a while · wite ȝe for soþe, [Fol. 83 b.]
to reherce þe aray · of þe real fest,
& telle forþer of þis tale · what tidde after.

The feast lasted fifteen days.

Fulle fiftene daies · þat fest was holden, 5352
wiþ al þe realte of rome · þat eu*er*[2] rink of herde.
no tong miȝt telle · þe twentiþe parte

The minstrels had presents of rich robes and steeds.

of þe mede to menstrales · þat mene time was ȝeue,
of robes wiþ riche pane · & oþer richesse grete, 5356
sterne stedes & strong · & oþer stoute ȝiftes,

[1] MS. "hes."
[2] MS. "eu*er*i ;" but see l. 4232.

so þat eche man þer-mide · miȝt hold him a-paied.

The feast ended, William sent for the cowherd.

& er þe fest fulli · was fare to þe ende,
will*ia*m þemp*er*our · þat newe was crouned, 5360
as a curteys king · on þe kowherd þouȝt,
þat him hade fostered · to-fore, seuen ȝere;
& sent sone after him · & his semli wiue.

He asks the cowherd if he knows him.

& whan þe kowherde kom · þe king to him saide, 5364
"sire kowherde, knowestow me ouȝt · so þe crist help?"
þe kowherd kneled sone · & karped þese wordes,

"Yes, by your leave, you were as my son for seven years.

"ȝa! lord, wiþ ȝour leue · ful litel i ȝou knewe.
I fostered ȝou on mi flet · for soþe, as me þinkeþ, 5368
& seide ȝe were my sone · seuen ȝer and more.
þe riche emp*er*our of rome · þat regned here þat time,
wan ȝou fro me a-wei · wo was me þer-fore.

Praised be God, who hath preserved you from poverty."

but heriȝed be þe hiȝe king · ȝou þus haþ holpe, 5372
& pult ȝou to þis pliȝt · fram pouert eu*er*-more!"
will*ia*m þe worþi emp*er*our · ful wiȝtli þus saide,

"True, you fostered me, and shall lose nothing by it."

"bi crist, sire, þou hast seid · al þe soþe euene;
þou me fostredes ful faire · as fel for þin astate, 5376
& bi our lord, as i leue · þat schaltou lese neu*er*!"
anon þan het he in hast · do him forto come

William sends for his steward, and gives the cowherd a fair castle

his stiward wiþ-oute stint · to stiȝtli alle his londes,
& bi-fore kud kniȝtes · and oþer kene lordes, 5380
he ȝaf to þe kowherde · a kastel ful nobul,
þe fairest vpo*n* fold · þat euer freke seie,

[Fol. 84.]

& best set to þe siȝt · him-selue to kepe;

and a "tidy" earldom,

and al þat touched þer · to a tidi erldome, 5384
to þe kowherd & his wif · þe king ȝaf þat time,
as freli as eni freke · for euer couþe deuise.

and bade the castle-stewards see that men were obedient to the cowherd's command.

& hastili het eche a baili · þat hade it to kepe,
to do eche burn be buxu*m* · bi niȝtes & daie[s],[1] 5388
to þe cowherdes comau*n*dem*e*nt · as to here kinde lord,
as þei louede here liues · neu*er* to lette his wille;

[1] MS. "daie;" but "daies" is better; see l. 5490.

& sent his stiward as swiþe · to sese him þer-inne.
& hastili was his wille wrouȝt · witow for soþe, 5392
þus was þe kowherd out of kare · kindeli holpen,
he & his wilsum wif · wel to liuen for euer.
of þe kinde couherde · now nel i telle no more,
but lete him in his blisse · & his burde alse, 5396
& touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres.

Thus were the cowherd and his wife saved from the hardship of poverty.

Whan þis faire fest was finischid · at þe .xv daies end,
eche a lord ful loueli · his leue gan take
of emperour & emperice · & oft hem þonked 5400
of þe worchip & wele · þat þei hem wrouȝt hadde.
þemperour to þe grete god · ful godli hem bi-tauȝt;
but omage arst of hem alle · hendeli he tok,
Mekli as þe maner is · his men to bi-come, 5404
to com keneli to his kry · as to here kinde lord.
& he ful godly hem þonked · & to god bi-tauȝt,
& þan went þei here way · whider þaim god liked,
eche lord to his owne lond · & lenged þer in blisse.
& king alphouns a-non · after alle were went, 5409
& his worchipful wif · be-fore william comen,
& braundyns his broþer · and alisaundrine his burde;
at emperour & emperice · euereche on at ones 5412
loueli lauȝten here leue · to here lond to wend.
sone þan, soþli to seie · þer was sorwe riue,
whan þat william was war · þat þei wend wold,
Moche mournyng þei made · & meliors alse; 5416
but seþþe it miȝt be no beter · suffer hem be-houed.
william bi þe hond · hent alphouns his broþer,
& neiȝ wepande for wo · wiȝtli þus saide,
"broþer, ȝif it be · bi god þat vs wrouȝt, 5420
I wold it were þi wille · wiþ vs forto lenge,
hit forþinkes me sore · þat we schul de-parte;
but seþe it nel be non oþer · nouȝt for to striue, 5423
I bi-kenne ȝou to krist · þat on croyce was peyned,

The festival ended, each lord went to his own home;

but William first took homage of them all.

Alphonse and Braundinis and their wives took their leave to go home.

William and Melior were much grieved at their departure. [Fol. 84 b.]

William takes Alphonse by the hand, saying,

"I would thou couldst stay here,

and I pray thee, if any one wars against thee,

&, broþer, i þe bidde bi al · þat euer þow louedest,
ȝif destine falle of ani dede · þat þou to done haue,
þat eny wiȝt wiþ werre · wirche aȝens þi paie,

send to me and I will come to thee."

swiþe send me to say · & sone i come to þe, 5428
þat no liuend lud · schal me lette neuere,
wil me lasteþ þe lif · for loue ne for awe;
til þow be wel wroke · wol i neuer stinte."

"The same say I by thee," replied Alphonse.

"ȝa, blessed be þow, bold broþer" · seide alphouns[1] þan, 5432
þe same sey i be þe · so me wel time!"
feiþfullere frenchipe · saw neuer frek in erþe,
þat more plenerli hem profered · to plese eche oþer,
& to help oþer in hast · ho-so hade nede. 5436

The emperor William's mother tells Florence to love and obey her lord,

þemperours moder william · and meliors alse,
seide to hire douȝter · þe semli quen of spayne,
"loueli douȝter, leue lif · loue þi lord euere,
& be euer busili aboute him · buxumli to serue, 5440
& lede him euer wiþ þi lore · his lond to kepe;
so schaltow lelli be loued · wiþ lasse & wiþ more."

and she promises on her knees to do so.

& sche kneling on here knes · curtesli saide,
sche hoped to heuen king · whil here lif lasted, 5444
to wirche as þei here wissed · with-oute any lette.

They give Alexandrine the same advice, which she says she will follow.

& to alisaundrine a-non · riȝt þei sayde
sadli, in same wise · sche schold hire lord loue;
& sche sore sikande · seide þat sche wold. 5448
& whan þei samen had seide · what hem-self liked,

At last they have to take leave, to the great sorrow of all.

& time was atte laste · atwinne forto de-parte,
þer was siking & sorwe · on boþe sides sadde,
weping & wringinge · for wo at here hertes, 5452
& clippinge and kessing · þei cauȝt eche oþer,
bi-kenned hem to crist · þat on croyce was peyned,
& soute seþe on-sunder · þouȝh it hem sore greued.

[Fol. 85.]

The king of Spain mounted his horse, and went home with his company.

þe king of spayne spacli · spedde him þan to horse,
& went forþ in is way · wiþ-oute any more; 5457
& al his faire felawchip · folwed him after,

[1] The MS. has "william," an obvious blunder; see l. 5198.

& sped hem þanne spacli · to spayne þat þei come.
þer were þei reali resceyued · as god riȝt it wold, 5460
with alle man*er* m*ur*þe · þat man miȝt on þenke;
& þere þei lenged in lisse · al hire liue aft*er*,
& ledden wel þat lond · to gode lawes euere,
so þat eche burn hem blessed · þat eu*er* þei bore were.
of he*m* of spayne to speke · my speche now i lete, 5465
but lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wille,
of þe riche emp*er*our of rome · redeliche to telle.

They were royally received on their return.

Of the king of Spain I say no more.

Whanne þe king of spayne · spedli was faren, 5468
will*ia*m with him tok · al his worþi meyne,
& his menskful moder · & here maydenes alle,
& rides þurth þempire of rome · richeli & faire,
to alle solempne cites · & semliche holdes, 5472
to knowe þe kuntres · as a king ouȝt;
lauȝt omage of eche lud · þat longed to þe reaume.
& whan þat dede was don · deliuerli & sone,
Gode lawes þurth his lond · lelly he sette, 5476
& held hem so harde · i hete þe for soþe,
þat robboures ne reuowres · miȝt route none,
þat þei nere hastili hange · or with hors to-drawe.
flatereres & fals men · f*ra*m him sone he chased, 5480
Lieres ne losengeres · loued he neuer none,
but tok to him tidely · trewe cu*n*sayl euere,
þat al þe puple for him p*re*ide · þe pore & þe riche;
so wisli he wrouȝt · to sauen his reaume. 5484
& ȝif he meke were of maneres · meliors his quene,
was al swiche on hire side · to telle þe tre[w]þe,
so gracious to goddes me*n* · & alle gode werkes,
so pitevows to þe pore · hem prestili to help, 5488
þat eche man ñade ioye · to here of here speke,
& busily for hire bede · bi nyȝtes and daies.
& also will*ia*ms moder · þat menskful quene,
so god was & gracious · to eche gomes paye, 5492
so witty & willeful · to wirche alle gode dedes,

After this William made a progress through his empire,

to know all his countries as a king ought.

He established good laws, so that robbers might soon be hanged or drawn asunder.

Flatterers he chased from him, and loved no liars.

Rich and poor prayed for him.

[Fol. 85 b.]

Melior was so gracious to God's men and to good works,

that all prayed for her.

William's mother was so gracious that all blessed her.

þat eche burn hire blessed · busili euer-more,
& heiȝli *prei*ede to heuen king · to hold here liues.

Then she remembered her dream, that her right arm lay over Rome, and her left over Spain.

þan com here in mynde · at þat mene while, 5496
þat here sweuen was soþ · þat su*m* time hire mette,
þat here riȝt arm redeli · ouer rome a-teyned,
& lelli here lift arm · laye ouer spayne.
þan wist sche wiȝtli · what it be-tokened, 5500

William was her right arm, and Florence her left arm.

here sone þat regned in rome · here riȝt arme ment ;
þat here der-worþ douȝ*ter* · was drawe to spayne,
here lif time to be þere ladi · here left arm schewed.

She thanks God for all her bliss.

God þanked sche godli · of al his grete miȝt, 5504
& his menskful moder · þe milde quen of heuen,
þat out of bale hade hire brouȝt · to blisse so faire.

William and Melior had two sons.

Þus will*ia*m & his worþi quen · winteres fele,
liueden in liking & lisse · as our lord wolde, 5508
& haden two sones samen · ful semliche childeren,
þat seþþen þurth goddes *grace* · were grete lordes aft*er*.

One was emperor of Rome after his father, the other was king of Calabria and Apulia.

þat on was emp*er*our of rome · & regned after his fader,
þat oþer was a kud king · of calabre & poyle ; 5512
& miȝti men & menskful · were þei in here time,
& feiþful as here fader · to fre & to þewe.

So came William to be emperor of Rome after all his hardships.

þus þis worþi will*ia*m · was emp*er*our of rome,
þat hadde many hard happe · hade þere-bi-fore, 5516
& be in gret baret · and bale sum time ;
of alle bales was he brouȝt · blessed be goddes miȝt !

And so shall all [Fol. 86.] they that seek good prosper.

& so schal eu*er*ich seg · þat secheþ to þe gode,
& giues him in goddes grace · & godliche ay wircheþ.

Thus hath William ended all his work, following the French as well as he could.

In þise wise haþ will*ia*m · al his werke ended, 5521
as fully as þe frensche · fully wold aske,
& as his witte him wold se*r*ue · þouȝh it were febul.
but þouȝh þe metur be nouȝt mad · at eche ma*n*nes paye, 5524

The metre is the best he could make.

wite him nouȝt þat it wrouȝt · he wold haue do beter,

ȝif is witte in eny weiȝes · wold him haue serued.
but, faire frendes, for goddes loue · & for ȝour owne menek, — Fair friends,
ȝe þat liken in loue · swiche þinges to here, 5528 — pray for the good lord who caused this to be done, Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford.
preiȝes[1] for þat gode lord · þat gart þis do make,
þe hende erl of hereford · humfray de boune ;—
þe gode king edwardes douȝter · was his dere moder ;—
he let make þis mater · in þis maner speche, 5532 — He had it done for those who know no French.
for hem þat knowe no frensche · ne neuer vndersto[n].[2]
biddiþ þat blisful burn · þat bouȝt vs on þe rode,
& to his moder marie · of mercy þat is welle,
" ȝif þe lord god lif · wil he in erþe lenges, 5536 — God grant him a good life, and happiness without end after death.
& whan he wendes of þis world · welþe with-oute ende,
to lenge in þat liking ioye · þat lesteþ euer-more."
& god gif alle god grace · þat gladli so biddes, — God give grace to all, and a place in Paradise. Amen.
& pertli in paradis · a place for to haue. Amen. 5540

[1] MS. "preiȝed."
[2] Read "vnderstonde."—M. See note to l. 5262.

þe Gestes of þe worþie King and Emperour, Alisaunder of Macedoine.

Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes, and oo*þer*, [Fol. 1 *b*.]
Beurnes, or bachelers · þat boldely thinken — Ye lords and others, who seek to acquire praise,
Whe*þer* in werre, or in wo · wightly to dwell,
For to lachen hem loose · in hur lifetime, 4
Or dere thinken to doo · deedes of armes,
To be proued for p*ris* · & prest of hemselue,[1]
Tend yee tytely to mee · & take goode heede. — attend all to me.
I shall sigge forsothe · ensaumples ynow 8
Of one, þe boldest beurn · & best of his deeds, — I shall tell of the best man that ever bestrode steed.
That eu*er* steede bestrode · or sterne was holden!
Now shall I carp of a King · kid in his time,
þat had londes, & leedes[2] · & lordships feole;[3] 12
Amyntas þe mightie · was þe man hoten: — Amyntas was a mighty king of Macedonia.
Maist*er* of Macedoine · þe marches hee aught,
Bothe feeldes, & frith*es* · faire all aboute;
Trie towres, & tounes · terme of his life, 16
And kept þe croune · as a King sholde.
þen this cumlich King · & keene in his time,
Had wedde a wife · as hym well thought, — He wedded a wife, by whom he had two sons;
And long ladden hur life · in lond togeder. 20
Twoo seemlich sonnes · soone they hadden;
þe alder[4] hight Alisaund*er* · as I right tell; — Alexander the elder son, and Philip.
And sir Philip forsoothe · his frobroder hight.[5]

[1] MS. hymselue, with *e* written above the *y*.
[2] MS. "leethes," with *d* written above the *th*.
[3] MS. "fell," with *foole* written above it.
[4] MS. alder, *with* e *over* a. See note.
[5] Here follows the catchword, "Cas fel, dat dis K."

[Fol. 2.] Case fell, *þat* this Kyng · as Christe wolde *þanne*, 24

Amyntas fell sick and died.

Was *with* siknes of-sought · & soone *þer*-after,
Hee was graythed to grace · & to God went.

Alexander the eldest son was crowned king,

His alder-aldust[1] sonne · *þat* Alisaund*er* hight,
Þo was crouned King · to keepe *þe* reigne. 28

but soon died.

Well hee ladde *þe* londe · while hee lyfe hadde,
But his term was tint · or it tyme were.
And all *þe* cause of *þis* case · I con soone tell;
How hee was doolefully ded · & doone of his life. 32

His mother Eurydice caused his death.

Đat made his mod*er* *þe* Queene · *þat* moste was adouted;
Eurydice hue hight · unkinde of her deedes.

She lusted after her own children.

Hue loued so lecherie · & lust*es* of synne,
Þat her chyld*er* hue chase · unchastly to haue. 36

Alexander refused, and she killed him.

For Alisaund*er*, hur sonne · assent so ne wolde
To fulfill so foule · her fleshlych sinnes,
Hue let kyll *þis* Kyng · w*ith* care at his hert,
In *þe* formest yere · that hee first reigned. 40

Thus he departed this life.

And ȝus lafte hee his life · our Lorde haue his soule!
For a feller in fight · found men seelde,
While him lasted his life · londes to yeeme.[2]

[Fol. 2 b.] Now let wee *þis* lued · lengen in bliss, 44
And sithe myng wee more · of *þis* mery tale.

Many years before this, Philip was fostered and brought up

Fel[e] wintres tofore · in his faders life,
Than was Philip *þe* free · to fosteryng take,
In courte [of an] unkouthe kith · w*ith* a King ryche, 48
That was chuse[3] of *þe* childe · & choicelich hy*m* kept.
Hee that fostred, & founde · Philip in youthe,

by Epaminondas, king of Thebes.

King of Tebes that time · truly was holden,
Epaminondas hee hyght · full hardy to meete. 52

This king cherished the child well.

So hee cherished *þe* childe · cheefe ouer all,
Þat hee was woxen full weele · & wyght of his deede,

[1] An *e* is written above the first *a* in this word.
[2] Catchword—Now let wee dis lued, &c.
[3] A *y* is written above the *u*.

Forto abyde any beurn · in battle, or el*es*.[1]
When his brod*er* w*ith* bale · brought was of life, 56
Ryght was, þ*at* þ*is* renk · reigned hym after
To bee crouned a King · in his right riche,
As maist*er* of Macedoine · amonges þe greate,
For to leade þe lond · as hym leefe thought, 60
Men to holden of hym · þ*at* hed was of all,
Philip fared him forthe · in a fayre wyse,
To receiuen his right · & reigne on his londes;
But when þe Lordes of þe lond · lelich wysten 64
Of hur neew cu*m*men King · þ*at* his kith asketh,
With greate werre þ*at* wonne · þei werned hym soone,
That by force of hur fight · ȝei[2] firked hym ȝennes,[3]
That hee ne must in h*is* marche · w*ith* his menne dwell, 68
Ne beleue in his lond; · þ*at* liked hym yll.
Whan Philip felt tho folk · so ferse of hur deed*es*,
Ayen to Tebes hee turned · teenid full sore.
To þe Kyng of this case · hee carped soone, 72
How hee was kept at his coome · w*ith* a keene route,
That hee was faine w*ith* his folke · to flee fro*m* his owne.
Epaminondas þe King · was carefull in hert,
Till hee were wroken of þe wrong · þ*at* þei wrou*gh*t hadden. 76
Hee graythed hym a greate oste · grym to beholde,
And cheued forthe, w*ith* þe[4] childe · what chaunse so betide.
So w*ith* Philip þe free · hee fared on in haste,
To clayme his Kingdome · & catchen þe shrews, 80
That beraften hym h*is* ryght · w*ith* rufull deed*es*.
Than, shortly to showe · þei sharplich went,
And foughten for Philip · his fone to dustroye,
Tooke towres, & towne[s] · tamid[5] Knight*es*, 84

Philip was now the rightful heir to the crown.

He therefore went to Macedonia.

His lords withstood him.

[Fol. 3.] Philip returned to Thebes.

Epaminondas was wroth,

and joined Philip to punish the lords.

The Thebans fought for Philip, and discomfited his foes.

[1] MS. "ore*les*."
[2] MS. "dei."
[3] MS. "dennes," *with* thence *above it*.
[4] MS. Dou, as if for "ȝou;" but "þe" is written above it.
[5] MS. "tamed," with an *e* over the *a*.

Felled þe falsse folke · ferked[1] hem hard,
With skathe were þei skoumfyt[2] · skape þei ne my*ght*;
Who-so weldes a wrong · þe worsse hym[3] betides,
For hee,[3] þ*at* reigneth in ryght · reskueth troth. 88

The lords fled to Athens.

For fere of sir Philip · fledde they all,
And turned tit to a towne · þ*at* Attanus hyght,
A stiþ stede, & a strong · & straite for to winne,
And kept keenely þ*at* cost · fro þe Kyng than, 92
That hee ne my*ght* w*ith* þo menne · medle no while.

The king of Thebes attacked it,

The King of Tebs for teene · targed no leng*er*,
But sought to þe Citie · & a-saute made.
[Fol. 3 b.] They beseeged it so · on sides aboute, 96

and took it.

That they tooke þe towne · & traytour*es* sleew.
Thus faire Philip, þe free · his fomen awaited,
And thus sought hee his lond · w*ith* lo*ð*elike[4] dynt*es*.

Then was Philip crowned king, 400 years after Rome was built. [B.C. 359; A.U.C. 395.]

Than þ*is* cumly Knight · was crouned soone, 100
Of Macedoine made Kyng · maugre them all.
Fore hundred yere holly · as I here tell,
Sin þe Citie of Roome · sett was in erth,
Philip in his freedam · faire gan dwell, 104
So too reigne on his ry*ght* · as rink in his owne.

Philip is made king.

Now is hee crouned King · & keeppes his reigne,
And swiþe hardie is hee · happes too fonde.
Now fares P*hilip* þe free · too fonden his myght, 108

He defeats the Assyrians [Illyrians].

And attles to þe Assyriens · aunter*es* too seeche;
And nere blynd þe beurn · of battle stern,
Till hee had fenked þe folke · too fare at his wyll,
And wonne þe won · w*ith* werre full keene, 112
Folke to fare w*ith* hy*m* · as hee faine wolde,

They acknowledge him as lord.

To chesen[5] hy*m* for cheefe Lordo · & chaunge hy*m* neuer.
Philip full ferslich · in his fyght spedde,
And prooued in his powre · as Prince full noble. 116

Whan hee had so them · hollich ifenked,

[1] MS. seems to have "ferkerd;" see l. 67.
[2] MS. skoumkyt.
[3] See the note on these two words.
[4] MS. lodelike.
[5] MS. chosen, *with* e *above* o.

Hee sought too a Citie · full seemely too knowe,
Larissea hy*gh*t, þ*a*t helde · full hardie men in,
One þe klenist coste · þ*a*t any King aught. 120
Philip fetches hym folke · & foundes full soone
Too bidden þem battle · & brodes in haste,
For to lache hym as Lorde · þe lond for to haue,
Or deraine it w*ith* dint*es* · & deedes of armes. 124
Ferse were þo folke · & foughten in haste,
Or þei lesen þeir lond · their life for too spill.
Longe lasted þ*a*t strife · but lelli too knowe,
By fin force of his fight · P*hilip* it winnes. 128
Now hath P*hilip* in fy*gh*t · freely wonne
The Citie of Assyriens · w*ith* selkouthe dint*es*;
And lordship of Larisse · laught too h*is* will;
And intoo Greece hee gose · w*ith* a grim peeple. 132
Than hee turnes too a towne · Tessalonie it hyght;
And assailes it soone · þe Citie to haue.
Too [sese][2] onely þe towne · or any o*þ*er goodes,
Hee ne nyed it nought · but needely too haue 136
All þo mightfull menne · þ*a*t in þe marche*s* dwelt,
Too bryng at his baner · for bolde þei were,
And a-losed in lond · for leeflich Knight*es*.
For þ*is* enchesoun hee chused · too chasen hem þ*e*re,
Till þei were at his wyll · as hee wolde ax. 141
But or hee tooke so their toune · teene gan spring;
Many a dulfull dint · deled þei there.
But all þei were unware · wisly too knowe 144
Of þ*a*t sorowfull asaute · þ*a*t they so had;
For hadde þei knowe þe kast · of þe Kyng stern,
They had kept well his cu*m*me · w*ith* carefull dint*es*.
Þei see no succour · in no syde aboute, 148 [Fol. 4 b.]
That was come to hur koste · þe king for to lett;
And Philip w*ith* h*is* fresh folke · so fast þ*e*m assailes,
That þei gradden hur grip · his grace to haue,
Him to taken þeir toune · & trulich to serue, 152

He next attacks Larissa.

[Fol. 4.]

The people are fierce, and fight long.

He takes Larissa.

He attacks Thessalonica.

He did not care to rule over the town, but to make the men in it *his*.

It is a hard fight.

No one comes to help them.

They capitulate.

[1] MS. holde, *with* c *above* o. [2] See the note.

For to wend at his wyll · whereso hym liked,
And redy to his retainaunce · ry*ght* as hee wolde.

Philip now takes Athens,

Now is Philip full grym · in fyght for to meete,
And many mightfull menne · may w*ith* hym leade.
Atten*es*, þe trie toune · hee tooke too his wyll, 157
The folke too fare w*ith* hym · when hee fonde time.

and the city of Assyria [Illyria].

þe Citie of Assyrie · is sett too his paye,
And all þe beurn*es* in þe borowe · boune too h*is* heste.

So Larissa is his,

The Lordship of Larisse · is lauht too himselue, 161
Men too cu*m*me too his crie · & kiþen þeir might.

and Thessalonica.

Tessalonie þe trewe holde · is turned too hym alse,
With all þe weies in þe won · his werre too keepe. 164
Now is þ*at* peeple full prest · & preeued of strength
For too wirchen his will · & wend at his neede.

Philip is doughty and dreadful.

Philip, for his ferse folke · in fele [1] oþ*er* landes,
Doughtye men douten · for dreedfull hee seem*es*. 168
By euery koste, þ*at* hee com · kid was his might,
For when hee medled him moste · þe maistrie hee had.

I next speak of Erubel, King of Molossis.

To profre þ*is* process · prestly too here,
I karp of a kid king · Erubel Arisba was hote; 172
The Marques of Molosor [2] · menskliche hee aught,
For hee was King of þe kiþ · & knight wel a-losed.

He had a sister,

Hee had a suster in sight · seemely to sonde,
The moste lufsum of life · þ*at* euer*e* lud wyst; 176

[Fol. 5.] named Olympias.

Olympias þe onorable · ou*er* all hue hyght.
Rose red was hur rode · full riall of schape:
With large forhed & long · loueliche tresses,

She had golden hair, great gray eyes,

Glisiande as goldwire · growen on length; 180
Bryght browse ibent · blisfull of chere;
Grete yien, & graie · gracious lippes;
Bothe cheek*es*, & chinne · choice too beholde;

[1] MS. fale.

[2] MS. Molosor, *with* a's *over the two first* o's; *so in l.* 204. Marques *should perhaps be* marches.

Mouth meete þertoo · moste for too praise. 184 a meet mouth,
Hur nose namelich faire · hur necke full scheene;
Schuft shulders aright · well ischaped armes; well-shaped arms,
Hondes hendely wrought · helplich, sweete;
Faire fyngers unfolde · fetise nailes; 188 fair fingers,
Sides seemely sett · seemlich long. seemly sides,
Hupes had hue faire · & hih was hue þan; fair hips,
Hur þies all þorou-oute · þristliche ischape,
With likand legg*es* · louely too seene; 192
And þe fairest feete · þ*at* euer freke kende, and the fairest feet.
With ton[1] tidily wrou*gh*t · & tend*e*r of hur skinne.
Liliwhite was hur liche · to likne þe beurde;
Where is þer lengged in lond · a Lady so sweete? 196
Der sprong neu*e*r spicerie · so speciall in erþe, No spicery or treacle could be sweeter.
Ne triacle in his taste · so trie is too knowe,
As that Ladie, w*ith* loue · too lachen in armes!

Wherfore I carp of þ*is* case · knowe yee may. 200
Philip þe free king · that ferse was of myght, Philip desires to wed her,
For þe beurde so bry*gh*t was · of blee scheene,
He had his liking ilaide · þ*at* Ladie too wedde.
Too Molosor w*ith* his menne · hee meeued in haste, 204
Craued soone at þe Kyng · þ*at* comelich beurde, and craves her of her brother.
For too welde too his wife · as hee will hadde.
Þe king was full curtais · & coflich hym graunt*es*,
For had hee werned[2] þ*at* wy*ght* · wo had hee suffred, [Fol. 5 b.]
For þ*at* freelich fode · Philip, wolde el*es* 209 He dares not refuse Philip.
Haue geten [hire] w*ith* grim stroke · of grounden tooles.
þat time thought þe Kyng · to targe no leng*er*;
But bring þ*at* blisfull · to þe bern soone. 212 He brings the lady to Philip.
To kyng P*hilip* hee co*m*me · as curteis of deede,
And laft hym þe Ladie · to lache at his wyll.
For hee thought on this thing · þroliche[3] in hert, He thought that,

[1] MS. toze, *with* ton *above*.
[2] Over this word is the gloss—si prohibuisset.
[3] MS. þroliche, *with* e *over the* o.

were Philip his ally,

ȝif hee had too his help · in his hie neede 216
Of Macedoine þe King · a mighty man holden,
To alie him too þat Lorde · & his loue winne,

none would dare offend him.

þer shoulde no bydyng bern · so bolde bee in erth,
Too teene hym untruly · term of his reigne ; 220
Ne to greeue þe gome · for gremþe of his help,
The while Philip þe free · hym frendship kid.

But he made a mistake.

Hee was bitraide in his trust · for truly þer-after,

For, after Philip had made her his queen,

When Sir Philip was fare · with þe faire beurde, 224
And wedded þat wight · with worship & ioye,
To bee Ladie of his land · & his leeue make,
Men to queme hur as Queene · & quiklich hur serue,
Bothe beurdes & bern[es] · boune[1] too hur wyll, 228

he invades Molossis.

To Molosor with maine · his menne gan hee bryng.
Y-armed at all pointes · þei auntred hem ðider ;
Mani a lud of þe lond · raid hi to grounde,
And many a seemeli segge · sorowe they wrought. 232

His men seize the cities.

þei laft for þo þe lond · Lordshipes tooke,
Seseden[2] þe cities · and seemelich tounes,
Keuered hem casteles · þe Kyng too distrie ;
For his susteres sake · cease they nolde, 236
That hee with werre ne wan · þe won þat hee aught,

[Fol. 6.]

And þe Kyng of his kiþ · with care þei pinte.
And Philip unfaithfully · þe faire coste had,

Erubel goes into exile, and continues in sorrow till his death.

Eruba
Arisba in exile · euer was after, 240
And neuer comme too his kiþ · but caught was in teene.
With doole dried hee so · his dayes in sorowe,
To hee gaf[3] up his goste · with God for too dwell.

Of þat carefull kyng · carp I no farre, 244
But leaue hym in languor · & lysten too more,

Philip seeks to be feared in all lands.

How Philip chases as cheefe · chaunces too fonde,[4]
Too bee adouted as deth · in diuers londes.

[1] MS. *seems to have* boane.
[2] MS. ffefeden, *the* en *being above the line.*
[3] MS. gaue, *with* f *above* ue. [4] MS. fynde, *with* o *over the* y

When he had so hem [hampred · he] hendely fetched
His make too Macedoine · *with* mirthes ynow. 249
He laught leue at h*is* wife · & laft hur still
For too liue in hur londe · in liking of hert,
That no gome und*er* God · greeuen hur my*gh*t. 252
Ph*ilip* h*is* faire folke · ferselich araies,
Too Greece he gra[i]þes hym now · *with* a grete will.
Comothonham
Hee c*om*me too Methone · full cumlich a place,
Of any borowe best buylt · & bolde menne þere,[1] 256
One þe hugest holde · & hard for too wynne,
That was in Greece o þe grounde · *grai*þed too stond.
Hee brou*gh*t h*is* menne to þe borowe[2] · & bliue it asailes,
With prese of his power · hee profers þem fyght. 260
Many a cumly Knight · & oþ*er* kid peeple
On euery side was sett · asaute too make.
þough[3] Ph*ilip* fared *with* folke · ferefull in fyght,
Litle gained his greefe · for grim thei were, 264
To warden þeir walles · *with* weies ynow.
þat citie wer sure men · sett for too keepe,
With mich riall araie · redy too fight,
With atling of areblast[4] · & archers ryfe. 268
Well feþered flon · floungen aboute,
Grim arowes & graie · *with* grounden hed*es*
Wer enforced to flie · her fone for to greeue.
So bolde were in þe borowe · *with* balefull strokes, 272
þat of Philip*es* folke · fele they slew,
And many mightfull men · maymed hee þ*er*e,
þat þe prent of þ*at* prese · passed neuer.
And P*hilip* þe ferse King · foule was maimed; 276
A schaft *with* a scharp hed · shet[5] oute his yie,
That neu*er* siþþen forsoþe · sawe he therin.
þe gremþe of þo grim folke · glod to his hert,

He takes leave of his wife.

He comes to Methone.

He attacks Methone with his army.

He finds them ready to fight.

[Fol. 6 b.]
They vex him with arblasts and arrows.

They slay many of his men.

A shaft shoots out his own eye.

[1] MS. þere, *with* d (*for* ð) *over the* þ. *See the note on* bolde.
[2] MS. *has another* o *above the first* o.
[3] MS. Though, *with* þ *over the* Th.
[4] MS. areblast, *with* i *over it, between the* a *and* r.
[5] MS. shet, *with* o *over the* e.

For his eger enemies · his yie to lese. 280

He makes a vow to be avenged.

Hee made a uery uow · auenged too beene
Of þat teenefull tach · þat hee tooke þere,
And swore swiftlich his othe · aswage hee ne sholde,

[Fol. 7.]

With all þe maine þat hee might · too merken[1] hem care,
For to take þe toune · þough hee teene had, 285
All þe segg*es* in sight · sorowe too kiþe.

[Fol. 7 b.]

Philip enforceth hym now · h*is* folke for to gie ;

He renews the attack fiercely.

Hee rydes thorough-oute þe ronk[2] · araies him neew.
Many mightfull menne · made hee stryue, 289
With archers & oþ*er* folke · auntred hym nere.
þei lete flie to þe flocke · ferefull sondes,[3]
Gain*us*[4] grounden ary*ght* · gonne they dryue, 292

His men throw stones at the walls from engines, and crack the battlements.

Stones stirred they þo · & stightlich layde
On hur engines full gist[5] · to ungome þe walles.
þei craked þe cournal*es* · with carefull dynt*es*,
þat spedly to-sprong · & spradde beside. 296
þe Kyng w*ith* h*is* keene ost · coflich fight*es*,
And kiþes all þ*at* hee can · þe kiþ for to haue ;
þei [sesen][6] on þe citie · soothe for too tell,

They beat down the walls.

Hur borowe bet so doune · w*ith* balefull strokes, 300
And hemself in þe saute · sorowfully wounded ;
And many a lifeles lud · layed to þe grounde,
þat þei ne stirred of þe stede · strife for to make.

The citizens surrender.

Hur ȝates ȝeede þei too · & youlden hem soone, 304
To Philip farde þei forthe · as fenked[7] wight*es*,
Profred hym þe pris holde · & preies[8] in haste
To deeme what hee doo will · for hur deede yll.

Thus was the city won.

Ðus[9] was þe citie of-sett · & siþþen so wonne ; 308
But many a balefull beurn · bought it full dere,

[1] Cf. marked *in* l. 932. [2] MS. rank, *with* o *over the* a.
[3] MS. soundes *or* sonndes. [4] MS. Gam*us*.
[5] MS. iust, *with* gist *above it ; and* gist *is marked.*
[6] See note. [7] *Over* fenked *is the gloss*, unquisshed.
[8] MS. praies, *with* e *over the* a. [9] MS. Dus, *with* þ *over the* D.

Komothonham
Or kid Methone · too þe Kyng fell.
In Greece, many a grete toune · grim was of strength, — In Greece were many great towns.
And þe menne of þat marche · misproude were; 312
Thei were so ding of þeir deede · ded[a]in [1] þat they had, — They would let no one govern them.
þat any gome under God · gouern hem sholde.
But as they sayden hemself · and assent made,
þei nere encline to no King · hur kiþ for too gye. 316
They wrought by þeir owne will · & wolde nought eles, — They did as they liked best.
To seche þem a Souereine[2] · þe Citie to ȝeme.
Farre þen þeir owne folke · fare they nolde,
What lud liked hem best · þe Lordship hee gat,[3] 320 — They elected what chief they pleased.
And on chees for cheefe · & chaunged lome.
All swich cities · þat seemelich were,
Philip fenkes in fyght · & fayled lyte, — Philip conquers them all.
That all Greece hee ne gatt · with his grim werk. 324
In what maner & how · men may i lere, — [Fol. 8.]
þat hee withlich [4] whanne [5] · þe worship of Greece,
To bee holden of hym · holly þe raigne,
For to gye þe gomes · as hym goode thought. 328

Now tell wee of Tebes · that tristy [6] was holde, — I now speak of Thebes.
There as Philip þe free · to fostring dwelt,
How þe ludes of the land · a-losed for gode,
Wer enforced to fight · with hur fone hard. 332
þer turned a-ȝe Tebes · twoo trie places, — The Thebans are attacked by the Lacedæmonians and Phocians.
þe sikerest cities · that any seg wist;
þe Lordship of Lacedemonie · loþed hem than,
And of Phocos þe folke · fast hem assailes. 336 — The war between them is very stern.
þe werre wox [7] in þat won · wonderly stern,

[1] MS. dedin, *with* disdeine *over it.* Cf. l. 584.
[2] MS. Souereine, *with* a *over* ei.
[3] MS. hi þat, *with* ee *over* i, *and* g *over the* þ.
[4] MS. wightly, *with the older spelling* withlich *over it.*
[5] MS. wanne, *with* wh *over the* w. See "Werwolf," l. 2852.
[6] MS. trusty, *with* i *over the* u.
[7] MS. wax, *with* o *over the* a.

And eiþer on hur enemies · egerly wrought.
On a season isett · assembled they boþe,
With all þe maine þat they might · metten ifere; 340
Araide rinke*s* aright · reulich smiten,

They fight on foot and on horseback.

On foote & on faire horsse · fought þei sa*m*me.
Priken[1] on a plaine feelde · preeued Knight*es*,
Bolde were bore doune · on bothe twoo haluc*s*. 344

The Thebans are vexed at their enemies' fierceness, but are not afraid of them.

Of Tebes þe trie folke · wer teened in hert,
For hur ferefull fone · so ferslich spedde,
With wrayth of a woode will · wonde[2] þei nolde,
To riden into the route · rappes to deale. 348
Steedes stirred of þe stede · strane men under,
And oother folke on hur feete · folowed them aft*er*.
The Lacedemonieins · lowe laide were,
And of Phocus folke · feld they also. 352

The Thebans get the upper hand, and put their foes to a heavy ransom,

The Tebenieins teenfully · tooke this oþer,
And to a riche raunson · þe rink*es* they putt,
That amounted [to] more · then they might paye,
Or dereine w*ith* right · w*ith* rede of þemself, 356
To profer hem as prisoner*es* · till they payde had,

which they must pay or die.

To let loþely þ*at* goode · or hur life tine.
Þe companie was carefull · & kest[3] in hur hert,
Þat þei þ*at* raunson w*ith* right · arere ne might, 360

Not raising the sum, the Phocians resume the war.

Þei wer so sorowfull hemself · that su*m*me to rere,
Þat þei ne spared þ*at* space · to spenen[4] hur liues.
A proude Knight of þe prese · hur Prince þei made,

Philomelus is chosen their chief.

Philomelo[5] þe fell man · was þe freke hote, 364
Þe folke of Phocus too araie · & þe fight ȝeme,
With lud*es* of Lacedemonie · to leggen on hard;
[Fol. 8 b.] For they kende þe case · & kneew eche one,

They know they must pay or die.

But thei prestly payde · that precious summe, 368
Þei sholde leesen hur life · þei þe*m* lothe thou*gh*t.

[1] *An* e *over the* i. [2] MS. wonde, *with* e *over the* o.
[3] MS. kast, *with* e *over the* a; *also the* e *is marked.*
[4] MS. spend, *with* nen (*marked*) *over the* d.
[5] MS. Philomela, *with* o *over the* a; *see* l. 421.

And ȝif þei ferde[1] to fight · their fone for to nye,
With skathe to bee skoumfit · & askape neuer,
þei wisten all full well · wisly to knowe, 372
That more dreede þen deth · drie þei ne might;
As goode thought hem go · till they grounde sought,
To meete w*ith* hur fomen · & manlich deie,[2]
As bee cowardly killd · for catel*es* want. 376
Forthe t*ur*ned thei tid · hur teene to uenge,
All to lachen or leese · or hur lyfe tine.
Full stoutely w*ith* stiff will · þei stirred on hur gate,
To teene þe Tebenieins · þei t*ur*ned to fight. 380
þei dradden litle hur deth · & doughtily wrought,
þei putt þem in perril · & prikeden aboute,
þei rought lite of hur life · & laiden on hard;
For fere, ne fantasie · faile they nolde. 384
þei were so hardie too harm · happ*es* to fonde,
þat þei þ*at* stint at hur stroke · stirred no more;
So þei felden hur fone · by force of her dint*es*.
For greefe of hur grim stroke · grunt full many, 388
þat hem rued þe res · þ*at* þei ne rest had,
Whan þei þe bikering abide · w*ith* bostefull deed*es*.
þus Phosus[3] w*ith* fyght · felden this oþ*er*;
þei tooken hur tresour · & teened hem sore. 392
þei of Tebes w*ith* teene · t*ur*nede fro thanne
Ruefull & redeles · biraft of hur goodes.
In sorowe bene they of-sett · to siken in hert,
ȝif þei ne haue none help · hem[4] to auenge. 396

Wherefore they prefer to fight.

Better fall than be killed as cowards.

They attack the Thebans recklessly.

They fell their foes by sheer force.

Thus the Phocians win the battle.

The Thebans are rueful, and seek revenge.

For ȝis[5] feye folk ȝer[5] · so fouli was harmed,
Till þei were wreken of þ*at* wo · wolde þei nou*gh*t blinne;
To seeche more socour · assented they all.
þe mightie King of Macedoyne · moste was adouted
Of any wight in þe worlde · þei wist þe soothe. 401

They resolve to seek succour.

[1] MS. farde, *with* e *over the* a.
[2] MS. dye, *with* deie (*marked*) *above it*.
[3] MS. Φosus.
[4] MS. þem.
[5] MS. dis, der; *and* so *is written* fo.

[Fol. 11.] They go to fetch Philip, and proffer him their allegiance.

To fetch Philip, þe folke · farde in an haste,
And comen ryght to þe kith · þere þe King dwelt,
Besoughten hym of socour · hur Soueraine to bene, 404
To be Lorde of hur land · þeir lawes to keepe,
þei to holden of hym · þe hye & the lowe,
With *þat* hee wolde *with* hem · wend in an haste,
Hur enemies egerly · in ernest to meete. 408

Philip sets out for Thebes, ready to attack the Phocians.

Philip graunt*es* & gose · graithes his peple,
Til þei to Tebes wer turnd · targe þei nolde.
With his ferefull folke · to Phocus hee rides,
And is wilfull in werk · to wirchen hem care. 412

The Phocians send for help to Athens.

Folke of Phocus to fere · or the fight co*m*me,
Were*n* ware of hur werk · & went for help.
þei armed þe Atteniens · & aunter hem þid*er*,
Strained in stel ger[1] · on steedes of might, 416

The Lacedæmonians also join them.

With grim graiþed gomes · of Lacedemonie,
All redie araied · to ryden hem till.
Hem lacked a leader · þe lud*es* to araie,
Hur Prince in þe forme prese · was prened to þe erth,

Philomelus had been slain.

Philomelo þe faire Knight · in þe fight died. 421
When þei proffred hem prest · & þe pris wonne,
For þei myssed *þat* man · they made hem a neew.

Enomanus [Onomarchus] is chosen leader.

Enoman*us*, an eger Kny*gh*t · in erth to fight, 424
þei made mast*er* of hem · þe menne for too leade,
And busken to battaile · as bostfull in armes,
With a leflich lust · lachte toged*er*.

He is duke of Phocis.

Of Phocus þe fell Duke · in þe fight rydes; 428
Enoman*us* þe bolde beurn · þe battle araies,
Hee was chosen for cheefe · in chasing of werre,
Too bee þeir dereworthe Duke · for doughtie hee thou*gh*t.

Both sides are ready for battle.

Now beene þe parties prest · to proffren hur dint*es*,
With baners brode displaide · busken to meete, 433
[Fol. 11 b.] Gurden in goode speede · grislich farde,

[1] MS. stelger.

Bothe blonke*s* & beurn[*es*] · baren to grounde.
þer was feld many frekes · þ*at* on þe feelde lay, 436
Euery segge for hymself · bisetten hur might,
þat many a wounded wy*gh*t · walowed þere.
But Ph*ilip* w*ith* h*is* wight men · þe werre gan ȝeme,[1]
þat by strength of her strife · þei str*a*ught to foote 440
All so many as h*is* menne · mighten areche.
þus h*is* peple on þe plain · all þe pris[2] wonne,
þat none stirred of þe stede · þere þei stroke sett.
þe lude*s* of Lacedemonie · loþed in hert, 444
þat eu*er* þei stinten in strife · to sterue in þe place.
Of Phocus þe ferse men · forthoughten he*m* all,
þat eu*er* þei farde to fight · w*ith* Philip þe keene.
þus þis cumlich Kyng · þ*at* ilche kith wynnes; 448
Lorde of Lacedemoine · was þe lud þanne,
And Phocus by fin strokes · freelich hee walte,
And hathe all Greece at h*is* graunte · for h*is* grete yie.

Many are felled, and wounded wights wallow on the field.

Philip and his men overcome all they can reach.

Both Lacedæmonians and Phocians repent their rashness.

Thus Philip is lord of Lacedæmonia and Phocis.

Now cease wee þe sawe · of þis seg sterne, 452
And of a Kyng wel i-kid · karp wee now,
þat entred in Ægypt · eu*er* on h*is* liue,
To leng in þat Lordeship · & þe lond aught.
Of what kinne hee co*mm*e · can I nought fynde 456
In no buke[3] þ*at* i bed[4] · when I beganne here
þe Latine to þis language · lelliche turne.
Nectanabus þe noble man · his name was hote,
þe nede of Nigremauncie · hee nas nought to lern. 460
In art of Astronomie · able hee was holde,
And cheefe of enchauntment · chaunces to tell.
Hee was [kene] on his craft · & cunnyng of deede,
Egipt by eritage · entred hee neuer; 464
Hee wanne it by witchcraft · for y-wis hee was knowe.[5]

We now speak of a king of Egypt.

I find nothing about his kindred in any book.

His name was Nectanabus, and he was skilled in necromancy and astronomy.

He did not gain Egypt by inheritance, but by witchcraft.

[1] MS. ȝenn *or* ȝeme; see l. 365.
[2] MS. pris, *with* ce *over the* s.
[3] MS. booke, *with* u *above the* oo.
[4] MS. bed, *with* had *above it*.
[5] See the note.

A prince of Persia comes to Nectanabus, and says,

A proude Prince & a pris · fro Perss[1] was fare,
Þat helde of þis hye King · hollich his londes.
To noble Nectanabus · nam he his gate, 468
And tolde this tydyng · to þe Kyng soone,
[Fol. 12.] How hym was care to cumme · by costes aboute.
"Þe Kyng of Perce with prese · of peple full huge
"The king of Persia is going to attack you."
Graithes hym grim folke · & greue ȝou thenketh.[2] 472
But yee cast at his comme · to keepen hym hence,
Yee shall lose your lond · & your life also."

Nectanabus does nothing in defence,

For no care of þis case · þe King in his lond
Kleped[3] no Knighthod · ne no kid peeple, 476
Hee ne araide no route · þe raigne too keepe,

but secretly fills an earthen pot full of rain-water.

But passed priuily · in place full derne.
A prest erþen pott · hee proferes him till;
Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress; 480
A bright braseyn ȝerd · brode on his hond.

By his craft he sees ships coming, full of armed knights.

And by þe conning of craft · þat hee kid hadde,
Hee sawe saile on þe sea · seemelich Knightes,
Bothe schippes & schoute[s] · with schawes of myght,
Well i-armed, iwis · werre too holde, 485
Þe egerest of Egipt · in ernest too meete.

The prince says, "Sir, I told you the truth.

Whan hee had þat happe · hollich awaited,
Þe Prince to þe pris Kyng · prestly saide, 488
"Sir, I tolde you trouth · trist[4] yee no nooþer,
Yee beene greefly bigo · but grace you falle.

Artaxerxes is coming with nine nations,

Artasarses þe Kyng · & armed Knightes,
Oute of Perce beth prest · passing hider, 492
With nine grete nations · too nye þee here.

Persians, Parthians, Medians, Syrians,

Perce is þe principall · & Perthe þat ooþer,
Of Medie full mich folke · murder þee think;
Of Syria [a] siker oste · sechen too fight; 496

[1] MS. Perss, *with* ss *marked, and* ce *above it.*
[2] MS. you thinketh, *with* ȝ *above the* y, *and* e *above the* i.
[3] MS. Kliped, *with* e *above the* i.
[4] MS. trist, *with* u *above the* i.

With menne of Mesopotame · too mark þe teene; — Mesopotamians,
Of Augmi & Arabes · armed Princes; — Augmi, Arabians,
þer beene of Bosorij · beurnes ynow; — Bosorii, and the
Of Arofagi all men · that armes now welde. 500 — Agriophagi.
Yee bene enforced to fight · with þus fell beurnes,
And ooþer weies of þe weste · werre too make;
þis ilk tydyng of teene · trowe yee mowe,[1] 503 — Trust these
And but yee bett beene araide · bale you springeth." — tidings, and beware!"

Nectanabus ancnne right · nyed hym tyll, — Nectanabus
And gleming gainelich · too þe gome saide — — replies,
"Keepe well thyne owne koste · þat þei no komme — [Fol. 12 b.]
ðare,[2] — "Take care of
þat is take too þee · truly too ȝeme. 508 — your own lands.
þou kiþes no Knighthod · too karp as a Prince, — You do not speak
But as a gome wer agast · þou grendes thy speeche. — like a prince.
þei ðei[3] turn such teene · this time hider, — Though they try
With all þe might of hur maine · mee too distroie, 512 — to destroy me,
þe uertue of il uictorie · of unwele peeple, — victory is not on
Is noght stabled in strength · of no stiff prese. — the side of
Thorou graunte of þe greate God · if him goode thinkes, — strength.
In fight or in fell turn · ðer[4] as flight is of dintes, 516 — By God's help,
In battail or bolde stede · bigly too wirch,
As mich may a meane man · as a more stern, — a mean man may
For þou seeste well thiself · (saide þe king þan), — do as much as a
A Lioun in a launde · may lightlych driue 520 — sterner one.
Of hertes an holle herde · as happes ilome[5]; — A lion can drive a
For no strength, ne strife · no stifnes of members, — whole herd of
But as gracious Godde · grauntes too beene." — harts.
— Strength is from God only."

Anon as Nectanabus · had namned þese wordes, — Nectanabus goes
Hee passed in his Paleis · too a priuie sell, 525 — to a secret cell.
Hee tooke prestly a pott · too preeue yet more.

[1] MS. may, *with* owe *above* ay. [2] MS. dare, *with* þ *above* d.
[3] MS. der, *for* ðer; *but we must read* ðei.
[4] MS. der, *with* þ *above the* d. [5] *Before and above* i *is* wh.

He makes ships of wax, and puts rain-water in a pot.

Hee wraught shipps of wax · & rain-water hent*es* ;
Hee putt*es* it in þe pott · & a palme braunche 528
Hee helde hard in his hond · & his art kiþes ;[1]

By his sorcery, he sees the god of Barbary floating in the sea,

With all þe wyle of his werk · þe waie gon enchaunte,
By segging of sorsery · þ*at* hee sei[2] þere
Fleete in þe floode · farre fro þe lond, 532

and the god of Egypt sailing there too.

Of Barbre þe bry*ght* God · brem too beholde;
þe gaye God of Egipt · glisiande bright,
So sailed in þe sea · in that same tyme.

He sees the god of Barbary will not let the people help him.

Hee bihelde how þe God · þ*at* heried was in Barbre
Gouerned hur goodes · by grace of his my*ght*. 537
þe seg sei[2] well himself · þ*at* socour him fayles,
For no grace hur grete God · graunt ne[3] might ;
Of hem hoped hee help · too haue at h*is* neede, 540

He shaves off hair and beard, doffs his armour, and dons white sendal.

But hee kneew by that kast · þei kouth no*ght* help.
þe beurn for a barbour · bliue let send,
His berd, heire, & h*is* hedde · hett hee too schaue.
Hee cast of his Knightweede · & cloþes hym neew, 544
With white-sendal in syght · seemely too knowe,

[Fol. 13.]

Of gold swith gret won · graith*es* hee ȝanne ;[4]

His gold and instruments of astronomy he packs up,

All that Astronomie · aught too long,
With ginnes of Gemetrie · too ioinen his werk*es*, 548
Hee let trusse full tid · & takes nomore,
But fares w*ith* few folke · farre fro þe londe.

and passes into Ethiopia, and lives there.

Hee passes as a Prophet · priuely þanne
Fro Egipt till Ethiope · & eft on his gate. 552
þere hee lenged in þ*at* land · as a lud straunge
Men kneew hym for no king · kunnyng hee seemes.

When his men cannot find him, they pray to their god Seraphin. [Serapis.]

Whan h*is* menskfull menne · might nought fynde
Hur ked King in Egipt · carefull þei were. 556
To hur God Seraphin · þe gomes gon all
Koure doune on hur knees · [&] karpen þ*e*se wordes.

[1] MS. kipes, *with* ce *above the* i. *A* p *is often* (*in copies*) *written by mistake instead of* þ.

[2] MS. sei, *with* aw *above* ei.

[3] *An* o *is written above the* e.

[4] MS. danne.

"Seemely Seraphin" · saide they thanne,
"Tell us sum tydyng · of our true Prince, 560
Noble Nectanabus · that now is awaye!"
Hur God grathliche spake · & too þe gomes saide,
"Kares[1] nou*gh*t for y*our* Kyng · þis kith hath hee lete,
For peril of þe proude Kyng · fro*m* Perce þ*at* wend*es*;
Hee shall hye hym againe · & help you faire,
And schend þem schamelich · þ*at* sholde you greue."
Of þ*is* swift answer · þei wer swith glad,
And graueden a greate ston · a God as it were, 568
I-corue aft*er* a Kyng · full craftie of werk.
þe frekes in that faire ston · at his feete soone
Let write euery worde · wisly too knowe,
That Seraphin þ*at* Soueraine · saide hem till, 572
In mynde that more folke · myght it arede.

"Seraphin, tell us news of Nectanabus!"

The god replies, "He has gone away for fear of the Persians.

He will come again."

They were glad, and carved a god of stone,

at whose feet they wrote every word that Seraphin had said.

Now nolde Nectanabus · no while dwell,
Too þe Courte of þe Kyng · till hee co*m*me were,
Too looke on Olympias · þe onorable Queene, 576
þat was alosed in lond · of diuer*es* raignes,
For one þe brightest of blee · þ*at* bore was in erth.
Whan þe seg had seene · that seemely Ladie,
Too greete that gracious · hee gose in a haste, 580
Hee cummes too þ*at* comely · & coflich saide:
"Haile! quemfull Queene · quaintly shape! [Fol. 13 b.]
Moste of all Macedoine · menskfull Ladie!" 583
Hee was dedaine on his deede · "Madame" too segge
Too any Ladie in lond · for lordlich hee karp*es*.
þe Queene quitt hym his speche · & quikly saide,
"Maist*er*, welcome, ywis · will[e] yee sitte?"
þe Ladie laches þ*is* lude · & ledes in hand; 588
By hur side þ*at* seg · too sitten hue makes.
þat worthlych too þ*is* wight · wilsfully saide:
"Fro what kith bee yee co*m*me · kennes mee now;
Ert þou aught of Egipt · in ernest too tell?" 592

Soon after, Nectanabus goes to Philip's court to see Olympias.

He greets her, saying,

"Hail! gracious *Lady!*" For he would not say "Madame."

The queen says, "Master, welcome!

whence do you come? From Egypt?"

[1] MS. Kare, *with* s *above the* e.

"Queen, you please me. I am glad when I hear of Egypt.

"Queene," saide hee quikly · "þou quemest my hert;
A full speciall speeche · spoken yee haue.
Where euer menne saye 'Egipt' · myne eres ar prest,
For þat wortlich[1] worde · waketh my bliss. 596

The men of Egypt understand dreams, and the language of birds.

It is a Knightly kith · & kid men inne,
Of any wight*es* in wonne · wysest i-holde.
þei bene rink*es* aright · in reching of sweuen*es*,
Too preeue mich priuie thyng · & pypyng of bird*es*.
þe ludene[2] of þat language · lelli þei knowe, 601
And bothe of burd*es* & bern[*es*] · þe burth too tell.

I am an Egyptian prophet."

I am a lude of þat lond · lered therin,
Too preche as a Prophet · preeued of witt." 604
When hee þese tales her till · had tolde soone,
þe face of þat faire thyng · fast hee beholdes.

"Tell me what thrilled thy thought at seeing me?"

"Lude," saide þe Lady · "let mee iknowe 607
What thing thurlude thy thou*gh*t · þo þou mee bihelde?'

"A bright god hath sent me to save thee from sorrow."

"Forsoothe," saide that seg · "seemely Queene,
I segge, God sent mee · too saue thee now,
For too waste thy wo · w*ith* wille þat I owe.
Thorou bone[3] of a bright God · busked I hid*er*, 612
Too defend fro doole þee · dereworth Queene."

[Fol. 14.]

Whan hee w*ith* speede had spoke · his speche to þe end,

He fetches a brass tablet set in ivory, and decked with gold and silver.

A brem brasen borde · bring*es* hee soone,
Imped in iuory · too incle þe truthe, 616
With goode silu*er* & golde · gailich atired.
In this blisfull borde · beholde men myght

Three circles were set in it. In the first were the twelve signs of the Zodiac.

Three circles isett · seemelich rounde.
þe first cirkle in himself · seemely was holde, 620
þe twelue signes in sight · sett þerin.
If any wight in this wonne · wilne*s* þem knowe,
Kair*us* to þe Kalend*er* · & kenne yee may.

In the second was

Sithen in þe seconde circle · soothely too lere, 624

[1] MS. worclich. Cf. l. 1024. [2] MS. lude ne.
[3] MS. bone, *with a second* o *above the* o.

Was craftely conteined · þe course of þe sonne; — the course of the sun.
And þe mark of þe moone · made in þe third, — In the third, that of the moon.
þat bliss was for a beurn · þat borde too biholde.
þan fett*es* hee a forcer · freelich ischape, 628 — Then he fetched an ivory box,
þat wraught was of iuory · wonderly faire;
Seuin sterr*es* þat stounde · stoutlich imaked, — with seven shining stars in it,
Hee showes forthe scheenely · shynand bright.
þe bern couth þerby · boldely tell, 632 — by which he knew a man's birthhour.
When a gome were igett · by grace of his witt.
Foure stones in fath[1] · forthe gon hee bryng, — He chose four stones, belonging to planets.
þat lay longyng · too the louelich sterres;
Many thing*es* of man · myght hee showe, 636
By studie[2] of þe stones · in what state hee were.
"Maist*er*," quath þe Queene · "quainte of thy werk*es*, — "Master," said she, "when was my dear lord born?"
If þee liketh þat I leeue · thy lufsum deedes,
Tell mee tidly þe time · & term of þe ȝeres, 640
In what daie my dere Lorde · þat douhti is holde,
Was iborne of þe burd · þat hee best loued?"
þe King by his kunnyng · cast*es* it soone;
By ginnes of Gemetrie · hee ioifully tell*es* 644
Bothe þe date, & þe daie · & þe dere tyme, — He told her the date and the day.
þat Philip was forth brou*gh*t · of his faire moode*r*.
Whan this rink had arad · & redely showed, — [Fol. 11 b.]
All þe burth of þe bern · by his art one, 648
"Ladie," saide hee, "louelyche · liketh þee au*gh*t el*es*, — He asks if she would know aught else?
þat I shoolde þee showe · in a short time?"
"Maist*er*," saide þat menskfull · "mee likes too knowe,
What Philip my free lorde · þat fairest of londe, 652 — She asks what Philip will do to her;
Wil wirch by mee? · for weies mee tolde,
Hee wyll forsake mee soone · & seeche hym a neew, — for she has heard he will forsake her.
Whan hee is cu*m*me too þ*is* kith · too kithe mee sorowe."——

For yee ne hane no*gh*t i-herd · holly þe wrath, 656 — (As you have not heard Philip's cause for wrath,
By what cause þe Kyng · coueted in hert — I tell you *now*.

[1] *Sic.* Read "feiþ." [2] MS. studie, *with* i *above the* u.

Too lope this Ladie · mee list you tell.
As Philip farde to fight · in a fence place,

Once Philip went to the temple of Ammon, and said,

Hee turned too a temple · atired too-rightes, 660
His grete God Amon · grates too ȝelde ;
Hee kneeles coflich adoune · & kries hym till,

"What will happen to Olympias?"

And saide, "Seemely God · send mee too knowe,
Of onorable Olympias · þat I on think, 664
What shall hur happe to haue · þat hende is of deede?"
His God gaue an ansuer · & too þe gome saide,

"She will have a child, the greatest man on earth.

"Hur chaunce is too haue a childe · þat cheefe shall in erth
Of any ludes þat liue · in Lordship wex. 668

He will not be thine."

þe bern shall not bee ȝine[1] · bolde þo þou seeme,
But geten of a-nooper gome · in þat gaye burde."
þen was þe King carefull · & kest[2] for wrath

Therefore was Philip wrathful against her.)

For too bring þat beurde · in baile for euer. 672
Menne tolde this tydyng · too þe true Queene,
þerfore hur lyked þat lud · his lore too knowe.——

"Now," saide Nectanabus · anon too þe Lady, 675

Nectanabus answers, "It is uncertain.

"þe sawe þat þou haste saide · uncertain is founde ;
But ȝei[3] þou ne hap noght yet · too haue þat sorowe,
þat fere shall bifall þee · within few yeres.[4]

[Fol. 15.]

Whan Philip in his foule will · hathe þee for-lete,

When Philip has forsaken you, he will have to take you back again."

Maugre his malice · or his menne sterne, 680
Him tides to take þee aȝain · trowe þou no nooder."

"Who will be so bold as to make him do so?"

"Maister," quod þe Queene · "queme yee me might,
Of this unkouth case · too karp þe soothe.
When Philip þe ferefull · forsake mee thynkes, 684
Who durst bee so bolde · þat bides in erth,
Too make hym, maugre his menne · mee for too take?"
þus saide þe seg · "Such one I knowe ;

"A god shall

A God þat is gracious · & grete of his myght 688

[1] MS. þine; *but above the* þ *is a* ȝ *without the cross stroke.*
[2] *Over the* e *in* kest *is* a.
[3] MS. dei, *with* though *above it as a gloss.*
[4] Catchword—Whan Phelip.

Shall busk too thy borde bed · by þee too ligge,
And fro this harmfull happe · help þee faire."
þe Ladie full louely · of þe lud ask*es*,
"Which dereworthe dright · desires mee too haue?"
þis King carp*es* anon · & cofly saide, 693
"Hee is no*gh*t yonge of his yeres · þ*a*t yern*es* þee take,
Noþ*er* olde of h*is* age · but onely too showe,
In a meane man*er* · mightfull hee seemes. 696
Hee hath hye on h*is* hed · hornes of sylu*er*,
With golde gailye begonne · glisiing bright,
With here on h*is* hedde · & his berd also.
Hee wyll nye [þee] too-night · & neede þee bihooues 700
Bee full prest too his paie · & profer þee faire."
"ȝif I may trowe thy tale · trulich," hue saide,
"I shall hilich [þee] herie · w*ith* hert and wyll,
No*gh*t praise þee as a Prophet · þ*a*t passeth in londe,
But as a gracious Godde · greate I þee thynk, 705
And bileeue on thy lore · all my lifetime."

come to thy bed, and thus shalt thou have help."

"What god will that be?"

"He is neither old nor young.

On his head are silver horns.

He will be nigh thee to-night."

"If it comes true, I shall not praise thee as a prophet,

but greet thee as a god."

þan nolde Nectanabus · no lenger abide,
But gothe too a greene grounde · þ*er*e grases wer sett;
Farre fro þe Paleis · hee fares all alone, 709
And laches in a launde · full louely wortes.
Hee grindes hem grathly · & gripes in honde,
Hee wring*es* oute þe wet wus · and went on his gate.
Hee passed intoo þe Paleis · in a preeuy wyse. 713
When it dreew too þe derk · & þe daie slaked,
þe burd busked too bedde · & brou*gh*t was on slepe,
þis King w*ith* his conning · kith*es* his werk*es*, 716
With wiles of witchcraft · & wicked deedes,
þat by fauour of þe fende · & his foule craft*es*
Hee grath*es* hym as a God · & gothe too þe burde;
As hue slumbred on slepe · slilich hee wend*es*, 720
And lyeth by þ*a*t Ladie · þ*a*t louely was holde.
Whan hee his will had wraught · hee wend*es* in haste,
And straihte oute of þe stede · w*ith* a stiff wyll.

Nectanabus goes alone to gather worts,

[Fol. 15 b.]

and wrings out of them the wet ooze.

At dusk, Olympias goes to bed.

Nectanabus arrays himself as a god,

and goes to her, and soon returns.

She awakes in wonder.

Þan þe burde in her bed · braide of hur slepe, 724
And whan shee wakyng was · shee wondred in hert.

She had dreamt of Ammon, with silver horns and face like a burning coal.

Hue mett on þe midnight · of mirth full riue,[1]
Þat grete God Amon · gan þiþer wend,
And had seemelich isett · siluern hornes, 728
And bright blased his blee · as a brend glede.
Þen was Amon ywis · of worship a-losed,
And igrett for a God · gretest in lond.

Ammon was a god shaped like a sheep.

Hee was ishape as a sheepe · shinand bright, 732
I-painted full prisely · & precious stones
Wer sticked on þat stock · stoute too beholde.

All the land worshipped him.

All þe lud*es* of þe lond · Lordes & el*es*
Set hym for soueraine · þeir sokour too beene, 736
And saide þere sacrifice · in selkouth times.

Olympias had dreamt that he drew near her, and said,

Þanne or-trowed Olympias · þe onorable Queene,
Þat hee neihed þat night · nye too her syde,
And fonded hur fleshlych · or hee fare wolde. 740
Whan hee in his lykyng · þat Ladie lauht had,
Hur seemed in þat same stede · þat hee saide aft*er*,

"Now is he conceived that shall keep thee from care."

" Worldly wooman · well may þee lyke,
For thy keep*er* of care · is conceiued now." 744

[Fol. 16.]

A morowe on þe mirie daie · þ*is* menskfull Queene

She sends next day for Nectanabus.

Arises up redely · and a rink send*es*
Anon too Nectanabus · & needely hym praies,
Þat he cofly co*m*me · too carpen her tyll. 748
Þan laft þ*is* lud · no*gh*t long ther-after,
But cam*m*e too þat louely · too kenne of her lore.

She tells him her dream, and says,

Þe Queene tolde hym till · þe tales too þe ende,
Of her dereworth dreme · þat draihte hur in slepe, 752
And hue saide too þat seg · " Soothe oþ*er* el*es*

"I know not the truth of it, for I was asleep."

Ȝif it were, I ne wott · for wislich I slept,
Whan I þat sweuen so sweete · swiftly mette."

He answers, "It is quite true.

" Nay," saide Nectanabus · "ne trowe þou no noo*þer*, 756
Þis ilk sawe was soothe · & certain iprooued.

[1] MS. riue, *with* f *above* ue.

For ȝif þou lene mee leue · too leng biside,
for too stand in a stede · of a straite place,
Too waite at a windowe · & warn þee after, 760
I shoolde trie þe truthe · & tell þee soone,
Wheþer i faithfull or falss · founde thy sawe.
For I warne þee well · with worship & ioye,
Hee wyll þee nye too-nyght · in a neew fourme. 764
In dreme as a dragoun · dreche hee þee thenkes,
And sithen showe hym hee shall · a shawe as it were,
Mich liche[1] too mee · by mark of my face."
"Sir," saide þat seemelich · "þi sawes bee mirye, 768
þou shalt stond in a stede · still biside;
ȝif it bee certain & soothe · þiself shall i chese,
Too faþer þe free · that I forth bryng."
þe burd bad hastely · by hur boure side, 772
þat swich[2] a place[3] were prest · too prooue þe truthe.[4]

Give me leave to be near thee;

I will tell thee if it is true or false.

To-night thou wilt see him in a new form.

He will be a dragon, and afterwards a man, much like myself."

"Sir, thou shalt be near. If it be true, thou shalt be supposed the father."

Whan þe leme & þe light · of þe leefe sonne [Fol. 21.]
Was idrawne adowne · & dym were cloudes,
þe Ladie lay on hur bed · & lysted too slepe, 776
And this wonderfull weie · waites his place;
Hee stoode still on þe stede · & stirred no foote.
And sleyly, when þe first slepe · slaked on wightes,[5]
Hee chases by enchauntement · þe chamber within, 780
And with a dragones drem · dreew too þe bedde.
þan hee meeues too hur mouthe · & makes his lidene,
And kisses þat cumly · & kithes his wyll;
And sithen hee seemed a seg · hymself as it were, 784
And spake too her speedily · these speciall wordes;
"On þee is getten a gome · þe grimmest in erth,
þat all weies in þe worlde · worship shall."
þus quaintely þis Queene · was quemed with gyle, 788

At night, the lady fell asleep.

Nectanabus takes the form of a dragon,

comes to Olympias,

and tells her she shall have a mighty son.

[1] MS. liche, *with* ke *above* che.
[2] MS. swich, *with* u *above the* wi.
[3] MS. place, *with* is *over* ce; *perhaps the older copy had* plais.
[4] Catchword—Whan ȝe leme of ȝe liht of ȝe leue sonne.
[5] MS. nightes, *with* w *above* n.

And wend gamene *with* a God · gracious of might,
Whan a libbing lud · lay in hur armes.

At daybreak he returns.

þis rink, or þe sonne rist · romes a morowe,
And passes in þe Paleis · prestlich hym one. 792
And far forthe on þe daye · whan þe faire burde

The lady arises and is attired.

Had long *þere* layne · & had lyst too ryse,
Dereworth damsel*es* · drowen[1] them *þiþer*;
Too serue *þat* seemely · þei setten hur hond*es*. 796
Whan hue was redie araid · & riall on sight,

She sends for Nectanabus,

Hue send*es* soone for þe segge · & saide *þese* wordes,
"Menskfull maister · makeles of witt,
Tell mee now truly · & targe[2] no lenger, 800

and asks what Philip will do to her.

What kid King Philip · *þat* keene is of hert,
Deem*es* *with* mee too doo · mee dreed*es* it sore?"
þe lud too this Lady · full louely saide,
"Of Philip haue þou no fere · for faitly too knowe, 804

He says that Ammon will protect her.

Amon þe grete God · by graunte of my boone,
Schall þee wisse fro wo · & wreche of his teene."[3]

[Fol. 21 b.]

þan farde Nectanabus · forthe fro *þat* place,

He gathers herbs, squeezes and dries them.

Hee wend*es* too a wildernes · & waites him erb*es*, 808
Hee tempres hem tidly · & takes hem after,
And hee drain*es* in a dish · till þei dry were.

He takes a seafowl, and anoints it with the juice of herbs.

þan fetches hee a seafoule · faire of his wyng*es*,
And sawes of sorsery · hee saide therouer; 812
Of his grounden gras · þe wus can hee take,
þeron hee bryng*es* þe brid · & bathes his pil*us*.
By help of þe Hellfeende · hee haunt*es* his werk*es*,
To gille Philip in Greece · whan þe gome slept. 816
Whan it nied þe night · nedelich & soone,
Philip fared too bed · & fell on a slepe.

Philip, by his enchantment,

þe chaunce of enchauntment · chased his mynde,
þat hee was draiht *with* dreme · thorou deuil*es* engines.
þan met *þat* man · on his mirie slepe, 821

[1] MS. drowen, *with* eew *above* owen. [2] *Above the* ge *is* ie.
[3] Catchword—"Danne ferd Nect."

Þat hee sawe on h*is* sight · h*is* seemely make,
How *þat* louelich lif · laide was a bedde, — dreams that he sees Olympias with Ammon,
And a gracious God · gripte hur in armes.
Hee lay by *þat* Lady · his liking hee wrou*ght*; 825
And whan h*is* deede[1] so deerne · doone was in haste,
Amidd*es* hur membre · too maken it close,
Hee sawe hym sowen[2] a seme · by seeming of sweuen,
And w*ith* a gaie golde ring · hee gan it asele; 829 — who marked her with a seal.
A ston stiked *þ*erein · stoutlich igraue;
Þe cast of *þe* sonne course · was corue *þ*erin; — On the seal was the Zodiac, a lion's head, and a sword.
A litle lion*es* hed · louelich ishape, 832
With a swith faire swerd · sweetelich imaked,
Was isett on *þe* sell · *þe* seme all amidd*es*.
Whan Philip on *þe* forthe daie · first gan arise,
Hee cliped hym h*is* clerk*es* · full conning of witt, 836 — He asks what the dream signifies.
Full noble Nigremanciens · *þ*an[3] [nyed] hee in has te,
Þat kouth such sweuens · swiftly arede.
Hee minges his metyng · among*es* he*m* all,
And what it might bee too meane · *þe* menne gan hee ask.
His enchauntiour cheefe · *þat* *þe* chaunce herde, 841 — [Fol. 22.]
Too *þe* cunly Kyng · kid these wordes,
And saide, "Sir, forsoothe · thy seemely make — His magi say,
By a gracious God · shall go w*ith* childe. 844
Þe prent *þat* was i-putt · on hur priuie me*m*bre — that the seal-mark signifies what her son shall be like.
With *þe* gaie golde ring · graue too-right*es*,
Þe leue lion*es* hed · *þat* laide was amid,
As mich amounteth too meane · as I may tell, 848
When hur barn is ibore · bolde shall hee wex,
And bee kid for a King · kene of his deedes.
As *þe* lioun is Lorde · of liuing beastes, — He will be feared like a *lion*.
So *þe* lud*es* in *þe* lond · alouten him shall. 852
Þe sonne course[4] of *þe* sell · sinifieth also, — The *zodiac* means he will conquer all to the far East.
Þat hee shall fare as farre · as any freke dwell*es*,

[1] MS. deene, *an obvious error*. See note.
[2] MS. sowen, *with* ew *above* owen. [3] *Over the* þ *is* d, *for* ȝ.
[4] MS. cour*es*; *see* l. 831.

And right too þe sonne rist[1] · his raigne shall last.
þe sweord sweetlich imade · in sweuen too rede, 856
Bitokneth full treewly · in times here-after,
þat hee shall grow full grim · & graithlich[2] winne,
The *sword*, that he will be mighty in battle.
With stern strokes of sweord · & striuing of dint*es*,
Bothe bold*es* & borou[*es*] · & bern[*es*] to h*is* will, 860
And seemely cities · as soueraine in erth."
Philip says, "Ammon said her son would be her comforter."
Philip saide, "Forsoope · mee seemed þ*at* tyme,
That I sawe þe God · go graith too hur bedde.
Whan hee his will had wrou*ght* · 'Woman,' he saide,
'Thy keeper is conceiued · thy comefort too bene, 865
þat þee & Philip þe free · of fone shall auenge.'"
"Sir," said þe enchauntiour · "soothely too mene,
Whan þe God gan speake · too þe gaie beurde, 868
How hue conceiued had · þe help of hur teene,
Faire Philip & hur · freely too keepe,
"That means, he will defend you and her from peril."
þat is wisly too witte · hee will you defend
Fro paines & peril · þ*at* perce þee ne shall. 872
Of this mirie meting · well may þou lyke,
Of swiche[3] happes so hende · herde I nere tell."

[Fol. 22 *b*.]
In þe same sesoun · soothely too showe,
Philip farde too fight · as I tofore saide. 876
The Thebans again attack the Phocians.
þat time, þe Tebeniens · hee turned too fight
Azain þe ferefull folke · of Phocus[4] þe riche,
With lud*es* of Lacedemoine · lasches too deale.
Azain Philip too fare · feele þer[5] come. 880
Nectanabus becomes a dragon.
Nectanabus anon right · w*ith* his nice werk*es*,
Too begile þe gome · graith*es* hym soone,
Deraide as a dragoun · dreedfull in fight.
Hee wend*es* too þe werre · w*ith* Philip too holde; 884
In sight,[6] of þe same shape · hee seemed þan,

[1] MS. rist, *with* e *above* i, *making* rest, *which is wrong* (l. 791).
[2] MS. *has a gloss*, greately, *which is wrong*.
[3] MS. swiche, *with* u *above* wi.
[4] MS. *has an* s *above the* c.
[5] *A* d *above the* þ.
[6] *Above* sight *is written* sute.

As whan hee farde tofore · too þe faire Queene.
þan hee farde in þat fight · as hee folke sleew,
And brutned in that battle · buernes ynow. 888 and fights for Philip.
For dreede of þis dragoun · menne dreew þem pence,
And fell doune in þe feelde · fenked in haste.
þe dreede of þis dragoun · þat drof[1] men aboute,
So fought for Philip · & feld mo Knightes 892
þan all þe men of Macedonie · & more of his peeple.
Whan this Kyng had kill[e]d · with carefull strokes Philip defeats the Phocians.
þe Lacedemoniens · þat life loren[2] hadde,
And Phocus with ferse dynt · freelich ywonne 896
Thorou drede of þe dragoun · & drift of his Knightes,
þe fell folke of Attens · fledden hym soone,
And thought to sauen hemself · fro sorowe of his wrethe.

Philip after þis fight · in a foule time, 900
Was going too [ride] ouer Greece · as a grete Prince.[3] Philip's progress is opposed by the Athenians.
þe armed Attenieins · auntred hym till,
þei wern ware of his comme · & his waie stoppes.
þe King kipes[4] his grim · too keueren him gate, 904
But all his werk was in waste · þei werned his thoughtes.[5]
For hee ne sholde hem shend · & shamelich take [Fol. 23.]
Hur seemely cities · too sorowen hem all,
Enforced were þe entres · with egre men fele, 908 The passes are manned against him.
þat hee ne might in þat marche · no maner wend.
Whan þe seg sawe well · no sokour ne speede,
He was gretely agrise[6] · & greeued in hert,
For hee ne might in þo men · his malice kith. 912
To Tebes & Tessalonie · þat truly hym holpe, He goes to Thebes.

[1] MS. droue, *with* f *above* ue.
[2] MS. loren, *with* ne *above* en.
[3] This line is corrupt; see note.
[4] MS. keepes, *with* i *above* ee; *the* p *being obviously miswritten for* þ, *as elsewhere.* Cf. l. 529.
[5] Catchword—"For he ne scholde."
[6] MS. agrise, *with* d *above the* e *to the right.*

Hee went as a woode man · his wrath too auenge.
Whan hee com*me* too þ*a*t coste · þei kepten hym faire,
And gon too hur gates · & grathlich hem open*es*, 916
And lete þe rink riden in · w*ith* h*is* route sterne;
And weies hym welcomes · w*ith* worship & ioye.

His treachery.

þei trowed no tresoun · untruly too haue;
But Ph*ilip* þe ferefull · faire thei grette, 920
And lete hym prik w*ith* his prese · in hur p*ris* holdes.
As soone as þe seg · was þe citie within,
Hee, wrathfull [of] wille · wronglich þare,

He kills the princes and dukes of Thebes.

Hee lete catch þe King · & kyllen hym soone, 924
And his Princes of price · prestlich hee quelde.
Douhtie Dukes w*ith* doole · too deth gon hee bryng,
And ooþ*er* Lordes of lond · liueles hee made.

He burns their towns,

Hee brende holdes & borous · & beurn*es* therin, 928
And all went too wo · þ*a*t they with mett.

and harms them as much as he had helped them.

As mich as Ph*ilip* tofore · hem frendship wrou*ght*,
Whan hee fought for þ*em* · & Phocus distriede,[1]
As mich maugre & more · hee marked he*m* after, 932
Too be-traie them untruly · þ*a*t trusten hym till.
On weies & women · awrak hee his teene,
And solde the*m* too seruise · in sorowe too liue,
And robbed of riches · all þe riche tounes. 936

Thus did he out of spite.

þus hee wrou*ght* þ*a*t wrong · w*ith* wreche of his anger,
For teene of þe Attenieins · þ*a*t turned him too kepe.[2]

[Fol. 23 b.]

Whan hee þis cursed case · unkyndely wrou*ght*,
Hee ne laft no leng[*er*] · in that lond þan. 940

He next attacks Cappadocia. [Olynthus ?]

For too fonde more fight · his folke gan hee leade,
And fares too a countrie · w*ith* Knight*es* ynow,
þere a citie was sett · seemely & noble,
þat Cappadoce was cleped · a full kid place. 944
Many doughtie of deede · dwelt þerin,
þat wern fresh too fight · & fell of hur deed*es*.

The men must yield or fight.

Philip bed*es* hem biker · & biddes þ*em* yeelde

[1] MS. distroide, *with* ie *above* oi.
[2] Catchword —"Whan he dis kursede ca*se*."

þeir faire citie in faith · or fight þei shall. 948
þe seg*es* in þe citie · þ*e*mself so kept,
þat Ph*ilip* lafte þere long · & litle hee spedde.
But hee ne stint of his strife · no*gh*t a stounde while, — At last he takes the town.
Till hee had take þe toune · þ*at* tristy was holde, 952
And made all þe menne · meeke too h*is* wyll.
Whan hee had wonne þ*is* won · & wrou*gh*t more teene,
With mirth too Macedoine · hee makes his chace.
Hee priked too h*is* Paleis · w*ith* Princes & Dukes, 956 — He returns home.
And many a seemely seg · þ*at* sued hym þanne.
Of hym þe Queene was ware · & wend*es* w*ith* ioye, — The queen receives him.
And romed ri*gh*t too þe rink · receiued him faire.
Philip kisses his fere · as fell for too doone, 960
And kneew by hur countenaunce · hue co*n*ceiued had.
"Dame," saide þ*at* douhtie · "how haste þou doone now? — Philip says she has done amiss
Who hath þee unclene i-kept · sithen I co*m*me fro þee?
Þou haste medled amis · methynk, by thy chere. 964
Natheless I not ȝit · nai, as I trowe,
Ȝof þou haue cheuesed þee a chylde · as þi chaunce fall*es*;
For it is[1] geten of a God · thy ilt is þe lasse. — Yet no great blame is hers,
Of all þe happe þ*at* þou haste · hollich ifounde, 968
I had minde on my slepe · by meting of sweuen, — for he had learnt in a dream
Aȝain*es* mee & all men · þ*at* may thee biholde, — all about her.
Blameles þou might bee · of thy berem-chaunce.
No wight of thy werk · wite þee might, 972 — [Fol. 24.]
Sithen it is sonde of a God · soothelich i-prooued."

It betid in a time · tidly therafter,
þat Philip made of folke · a feaste full ryche. — Philip makes a rich feast.
All his Princes of price · praied hee thide*r*, 976
And ooþ*er* Lordes of lond · ne laft hee none.
Whan hee is fare fro fight · his folke for too feaste,
In Macedoine w*ith* h*is* men · this mirth hee made.
As soone as þei were sett · & serued too-right*es*, 980

[1] MS. it it.

Nectanabus appears as a dragon.

Nectanabus by Nigremauncie · neew hym attires,
And in a dragoun*es* drem · hee dreew to þe halle.
Hee co*m*me first too þe King · & too þe kid Queene,
And sithen hee busk*es* aboute · þe bordes echone, 984
Hee drouned as a dragon · dredefull of noyes,
Þat all þe gomes were agrise · of his grim sight.

He goes up to the queen and kisses her.

Þan farde hee forthe · too þe faire Queene,
And hee holdes his hed · ri*gh*t in hur lappe, 988
And kisses þat cumly · in knoweing of all.
Philip saide too h*is* fere · freely þ*e*se wordes,

Philip says it is the dragon who helped him.

"Dame, of this dragoun · I doo þee too knowe,
And euery liuand lud · þ*a*t leng*es* herin, 992
In a brem battail · abrode in þe feelde,
Whan I was greefly bigo[1] · w*ith* a grim peeple,
Hee co*m*me flie too feelde · & my fone schende,
Þat I was holpe by hym · hem too distrie." 996

The dragon flies away.

Whan þ*is* tale was tolde · & tended of all,
Þe dragoun dreew him awaie · w*ith* drift of his wing*es*.

In a somer seasoun · soone therafter,

Another time,

As Philip satt by hymself · soothe for too tell, 1000
A faire breeding brid · bremlich went,
And in þe lappe of þ*a*t lud · louely hee sitt*es*.

a bird lays an egg in Philip's lap.

Or þ*is* freelich foule · farde of þe place,
Hee bredde an ai on his barm · & braid*es* him þan.

[Fol. 24 b.]

Philip wondred was · of this werk quainte, 1005
And satte still on þe stede · stirred no foote.
Þe ai fell on þe flore · in the frekes sight,
And þe shell to-shett · on þe schire grounde. 1008

An adder comes out of the shell,

Whan it cofli too-clef[2] · þ*e*r crep oute an addre,
And busk*es* full boldely · aboute þe shell.
Whan this worme[3] had went · wislich aboute,
Hee wolde haue gliden in againe · graithlich & soone.

[1] MS. bigo, *with* ne *above* o *to the right*.

[2] MS. too clef, *with* eue *above* f.

[3] MS. worme, *with* wrom *above it; no doubt the older* MS. *had* wrom.

But or hee had in his hed : hee hastely deide,[1] 1013 — but dies before it can creep in again.
And dreew nere too his denne · but deide bi-side.
Philip for þis ferlich · fast gan wende
To noble Nigremauncieins · þat hym nyh were, 1016
And asked hem an answer · þis aunter too reede,
For cheef of enchauntment · chosen þei were.
" Sir," saide one enchauntiour · " your seemely make — It means that his son shall be a great conqueror,
Shall bere such a barn · in a brem tyde, 1020
þat by might of his maine · & maistrie of Kinges,
All so wide as þis worlde · shall welden his raigne.[2]
Whan hee aboute hath ibene · abrode in þe londes,
And iwonne at his will · þe wortlych[3] places, 1024
þe kith þat hee comme fro · or hee com till, — but will die before reaching home.
Hee shall bee doluen & ded · as destenie falles.
As þe addre of þe ai · auntred aboute,
And wolde haue shoten in þe schell · or hee schent were, 1028
So shall fare by þe freke · þat ferre may bee knowe.
Whan hee hath reigned a roum · as richest of all,
Or hee may too his marche · with his maine wende,
þere hee was fostred & fed · him falles too dye." 1032

Now will I cease þis sawe · & segge you more
Of hym þat hight Alisaunder · holly þe birth.[4] — The birth of Alexander.

[*A portion of the story being here lost, the omission is supplied from a French prose text of a similar type.*]

[Le terme de l'effantement la royne approchoit, et lui commençoit le ventre moult a douloir. Si fist appeller Nectanebuz et lui dist: "J'ai grant douleur en mon ventre." Nectanebuz compta l'eure et lui dist: "Sousleve toy, royne, ung poy de ton siege, car — The queen calls for Nectanabus.

[1] MS. deide dyed, *and* deide *is marked.*

[2] *Above the* a *is an* e.

[3] MS. wortlych, *with* worthly *above it.* Cf. l. 596.

[4] Here follows the catchword—" Swiche fortune fel," *but the next leaf is blank.* For an account of the piece here inserted to complete the sense, see the note.

ellemens sont orendroit orribles du soleil." Et la royne se leva, et la douleur se passa maintenant. Apres ung poy, lui dist : "Siez toy, royne." Et elle s' asist, et enfanta ung filz. Et quant li enfens chey sur terre, et la terra croulla, et foudra tonnoirie, et signes grans furent veus par tout le monde. La noif meslee avec gresil chey du ciel et ouvry le terre comme des[1] pierres. La nuit targa à venir, et celle fu plus longue des autres. Dont le roy Philippe fu moult esmayez, et dist a la royne : "Femme, j'ay pensay en mon cuer que cest enfant me feust nourris en aucune maniere, pour ce qu'il n'est de moy conceus. Mais pour ce que j'entens qu'il est conceus de Dieu, et pour ce que je voy les elemens changier en sa naissance, vueil-je qu'il soit aussi bien nourris en ma memoire, comme s'il feust miens propres. Et vueil qu'il ait nom Alexandre, aussi comme avait nom mon aultre filz que j'avais de mon aultre femme."

Alexander is born.

Earthquakes and thunder, snow and sleet.

Philip perceives that the child is divine.

The child is well taken care of.

His hair, eyes, and teeth.

Maintenant les dames de leans prindrent l'enffant et le nourirent par grant diligence. Et sachez qu'il ne-ressembloit au pere ne à la mere, mais avoit propre semblance. Car ses cheveux estoient comme crin de lyon, ses yeulx estoient grans et resplendissans, et ne resembloit pas l'un à l'autre. Car l'un estoit noir et l'autre vair. Ses dens estoient trop agües et sa regardence estoit comme du lyon. Et combien que sa sestature feust petite, non pour quant aux signes qui se demonstroient, sembloit il bien que Alixandre devoit estre.

How Aristotle taught him the 7 arts.

COMMENT ARISTOTE APRENT A ALIXANDRE LES SEPT ARS.

Apres, il fu de aage pour mectre à l'escolle. Le roy Philippe lui fist mectre et plusieurs autres enffans gentilzhommes avec lui, lequel enffant les surmontoit tous de toutes choses en lettres et en paroles. Et aussi fait il en ysnelette et en vigueur. Dont il advint,

He surpasses his companions.

[1] MS. deux.

quant il eut xii ans, il fu si aprins des sept ars par Aristote, le meilleur qui oncques feust, que il ne treuvoit homme qui tant en seust comme il faisoit. Quant Alixandre ot xii ans accomplis, on lui bailla escuiers sages et congnoissans, qui avoient este par le pais et par les terres, et avoient use toute leur vie les armes. Et ceux l'aprindrent et enseignerent si bien de toutes choses qui aux armes appartenoient, que il en toutes choses seurmontoit ses compaignons. Quant le roi Philippe congnut la grant vigueur qui estoit en luy, si lui dist: "Filz Alixandre, je ayme moult la ysnellete de ton corps et le soutil engin de ton courage. Mais tristre suis que ta semblance ne resemble à la mienne."[1] Quant ce ouy la royne Olimpias, si se doubta moult, et appella Nectanebuz, et lui dit:]

At the age of twelve,

he is taught to wield arms.

Philip's remark.

Olympias says to Nectanabus,

"Master on molde · what may mee befall? [Fol. 17.]
Of Ph*ilip* sore am I aferd · for h*is* fell speeche, 1036
For hee sayed too my soonne · in sy*ght* of myne yie,
Hee was purlich payed · of h*is* prise werk*es*,
But hee chaunged h*is* chere · & too þe chylde sayed,
'That þow ne art lyke mee, lude · mee lykes full yll;'
Therfore my mynde & my moode · is marred[2] too care,
For h*is* woorde am I wrou*ght* · wofull in hert." 1042
"Queene," q*uo*th Nectanabus · [care þou no more,[3]]
For the sake of thy soonne · [þat schal saue þe at nede."[3]]

"Philip complains that Alexander is not like him."

"Never mind that; your son will help you."

The Lude looked on-loft · late on an eeue, 1045
And on a starre too stare · hee stynt full long,
Hee hoped to haue there · of h*is* hert*es* desyres;
Too catche sum cunnyng · hee kest up h*is* yie. 1048
When Alisaunder þ*at* sawe · hee sayed full soone,
"Father, wherfore · is þ*at* farly too tell,

One eve, Nectanabus looks on the stars.

[1] MS. moye. [2] MS. maried, *with* r *above* i.
[3] Two half-lines are here lost, and are supplied from conjecture; blank spaces are left for them in the MS.

That thow lookest on-loft · so long at *þis* tyme?"
"Soonne," sayed þe segge · "in sy*gh*t I beholde
A brem sterre & a bry*gh*t · that mee best lykes." 1053

Alexander asks him to point out his favourite star.

"Leeue[1] fader," q*uoth* þe freke · "fonde I, mee tell,
The sterre *þat* yee staren on · sticketh it in heuin?"
"Yea, forsoothe, deare soonne" · sayed hee than,
"It is in heuin full hy · beholde who-so my*gh*t." 1057
"And may yee, syr," sayed þe chylde · "by su*m* maner wise,
Schowe mee schortly in shape · *þat* schynyng sterre?"

He says he must wait till midnight.

"Yea, wooste þou see, my soonne · in certeyn tymes,
The inkest howre of *þis* ny*gh*t · ny by my syde,
Withoute þe citie," he sayed · "in certeyn places, 1062
So, lo! myghtst þou see · *þat* seemely sterre!"

[Fol. 17 b.]

"That ilk for to see" · hee sayed, "I desyre,
And I shall wend thee w*ith* · when þee well lykes.

He asks if he knows his own fate.

But canst þou by any craft · kenne mee now 1066
What death dry þou shalt · by destinie shape?"

"Yea; my son will kill me."

"Yea," soonne, sayed hee þo · "in certein I knowe,
That I shall drye þe death · in dreedefull ded*es* stound*es*,
By encheson of my chylde · such chaunce shall fall;
But whan, wott I not well · ne in what place." 1071

Nectanabus goes down beside a ditch.

Nectanabus in *þat* ny*gh*t · as hym neede tho*gh*t,
Passeth forthe priuely · þe Paleis without,[2]
Hee gooth downe by þe dyche · *þat* deepe was of grounde, 1074
Euyll it is of syght · the walles besyde.
["Sone," sayde Nectanabus · "see ȝond þe sterres,][3]

He points out the planets.

Joyfull Jupiter · Myrthfull Mercurie, 1077
The leame of h*is* ly*gh*t · lykes well my hert!"
So hee stynted *þat* stounde · & styrred no foote,
Hee pored on þe planet*es* · pass ere hee woolde. 1080

[1] MS. Leeue, *with* fe *above* ue.

[2] *Here follows a half-line out of place*, "the walles besyde," *the line* "Euyll it is of syght" *being left incomplete.*

[3] A line is here lost.

Hee braid*es* too þe bank · of þe brode wat*er*, — Alexander pushes him into the ditch.
By þe shoulder*es* hym tooke · & shift hym in mydd*es*,
With a wrathfull wyll · þese woordes hee sayed:
"Wretched worldly wyght · why wylst þou knowe
The priuitie of planet*es* · or precious starres, 1085
Syn þou art erthly thyself? · in an yll tyme
Kaughtst þou in þ*at* craft · cunnyng of happ*es*
Let them þ*at* in heuin bee · knowe hy thyng*es*; 1088 "Only gods should know heavenly things."
That lore longes too Godde · & too no lud el*es*,
Thow þ*at* worldly art wraught · thy wytt þou bisett
On euery erthly thyng · & ern þou nomore!"
The segge sayed this sawe · sounk or hee wer, 1092
"Truthe haue I þee tolde · in tymes ypassed"— "I have always told you the truth."
And w*ith* þ*at* sawe þe soule · fro þe seg hee part*es*.
Alisaunder anonne · ryght armed in hert,
Hee did hym downe too þe dyche · as hee no dreede had; 1096 Alexander takes him out dead.
Hee sprainde in a sprite · & spradde it aboute,
[And cau;t vp þe cors · and cayres to þe queene.][1]
"Saye mee, seemely · sunne, what þou bryngst?" [Fol. 18.]
"Ich haue broght," q*uoth* þe burn · "a ded body here,
That noble Nectanabus · too name was hote." 1101
"Sunne," sayed þ*at* seemelich · "my sorowe is þe more!"
"It is thy foule fowlye · þ*at* this fare wrou*ght*, — Alexander reproves Olympias.
Yo*ur* carefull conscience · yee casten so large,
That yee wern no wy*ght* · but wyrch as yee lyst." 1105
The Queene quoth nou*ght* againe · but q*ui*ckly & soone — She cannot reply.
Too burye þ*at* burn · þe beurd gan heate.
Of this lyueles lud · ne lyst mee tell, 1108
Of hym I cease my sawe · & seche too more.

Ther was a Prince full price · of powre y-holde,
Keeper of Cappadoce · that Kyng Philip aught.
A huge horsse & a hy · hee had that tyme, 1112 A HORSS.
The moste seemely in sy*ght* · þ*at* eu*er* seg wyst.

[1] A line is here lost, and supplied from conjecture.

There was a horse that fed on men.

Hee bore a hedde as a bole · y-brested to-ryght,
And had hard on h*is* hedde · hornes y-grow,
Menne wern h*is* meate · that hee moste looued ; 1116
for as many as hee my*ght* · murdre hee woolde.
Hee was byglich ybownde · on bothe twoo halues,

He was kept chained up.

Bothe h*is* chaul & h*is* chynne · w*ith* chaynes of yren ;
Many lock*es* wer laft · h*is* legg*es* aboute, 1120
That hee nas loose in no lime · lud*es* to greeue,
To byte, ne to braundise · ne to break no wow*es*.
for hee so myghty was made · in all maner thyng*es*,
Of such a body as hee bore · þe blonke so sterne, 1124
Was neu*er* steede in no stede · þ*at* stynt upon erth.

Messengers took him to Philip as a present

Intoo meery Macedoine · þe messenger*es* þei cam*me*,
Fro*m* what kith þei cam*me* · cofly they tolde,
Let greete hym w*ith* God · & goode wyll,[1] 1128
And their presaunt of price · proffred hym tyll.
Hee had blyss of þ*at* beaste · & blythely hym thank*es*.

Philip has a cave built for him.

[A caue he comanded · to coynt men inouȝ,][2]
Dupe[3] as a dunioun · dyked in erth, 1132
All about bygge · w*ith* barr*es* of yern.

[Fol. 18 b.]

Therfore þe Kyng had cast · too keepe þ*at* steede,
In þ*at* caue craftely · enclosed w*ith* gynne.

Traitors were thrown to him to eat.

For if a trayter wer y-take · in tyme therafter, 1136
Or any thriftles theefe · for thyng*es* accused,
They shoolde bee cast in þ*at* caue · too þ*at* kene blonk,
And bee deuoured w*ith* doole · as þe doome woolde.
Anon as eu*er* þe nyght · nyied on erth, 1140

Philip dreams, that whoever tames the horse

Philip farde too bedde · & fell on a sleepe.
Of a myghtfull Godde · hee mett þ*at* tyme,
That on h*is* bedsyde satt · & þ*is* sawe tolde—
"Who prickes[4] on a playne feelde · þe perelous beaste,

will be king of Macedon.

Hee shall raigne as a ryng · ryall & noble, 1145

[1] This line occurs in the MS. two lines higher up, clearly out of place.

[2] A line is here again lost, and supplied from conjecture.

[3] MS. Dupe, *with* ee *above* u.

[4] MS. Tho pricked, *which is unintelligible.*

And bee Kyng of thy kith · Knyghtes too leade,
When þou art doone & dedde · & thy daye end*es*."

When Alisaund*er* was of age · as I shall tell, 1148
Of full fifteene yere · faren too þe end, — Alexander was now 15.
Hee was hardye & hende · happ*es* to fond,
And such wys of h*is* witt · in worldly thyng*es*;
Lered on letrure · was þe lud then, 1152
And of latin þe lore · lellich hee wyst. — He knew Latin.
In a tyme betyd · as I tell after,
That many menne of Atten*es* · w*ith* myckle ooþer peeple,
Did þ*em* forthe on a day · by þe dupe[1] caue, 1156 — Some Athenians see the horse lying amid men's bones.
There þe steede in stoode · strayned in bond*es*.
They sawe lygge in theyr looke · legg*es* & armes,
Fayre hand*es* & feete · freaten too the bonne,
Of menne þ*at* myslych wer · murdred therin, 1160
By iust*es*[2] unioyfull · iugged too death.
When Alisaunder was ware · of þe wylde b[easte],
That was of body so bolde · bremlych yshaped,
Too hym hee heelde forthe h*is* hand; · þe horss it awaytes. 1164 — [Fol 19.]
Hee layed þe neck oute along · & lycked h*is* hand*es*, — The horse licks Alexander's hands.
And sythe hee foldes his feete · & fall*es* too þe grounde,
And abowed [to] þe burn · on h*is* best wyse.
When Alisaund*er* so sawe · in h*is* sy*gh*t there, 1168
How þe steede was styll · & no stryfe made,
Bale thought þ*at* burn · too bynde þ*at* steede,
That so meeke was of moode · & made no noyes.
Hee unclosed þe caue · unclainte þe barres, 1172 — He enters the cave.
And straihte into þe stede · stroked hym fayre.
Hee raught forthe h*is* right hand · & his rigge frot*us*,
And coies hym as he kan · w*ith* his clene handes.
Þan hee loses his lock*es* · h*is* legg*es* unbyndes, 1176 — He unfastens the steed's bonds,

1 MS. Deepe, *with* u *above* ee; *see* l. 1132.
2 Indistinct and uncertain.

That hee nas fast in no foote · bifore ne bihynde.
Therof þe blonk was blythe · & blainte no furre[1]
But meeke was of maner*es* · w*ith*oute mischaunce.[2]

and it is as meek as a lamb.

Was nere lambe in no land · lower of chere, 1180
No hownde to his hous-lorde[3] · so hende to queme,
Þat was leuer to lyke · þe lude þ*at* hym aught,
Þen was þe blonk to þe beurn · þ*at* hym bistint.
Þan wend*es* þis weih · þe caue withoute, 1184
And þe horss w*ith* his hand · hendely bring*es*.

He rides him about.

Soone hee leapes on-loft · & lete hym worthe,[4]
To fare[5] as hym lyst faine · in feelde or in towne.
The steede strauht on his gate · & stired hy*m* und*er*,
And wrought no wod res · but his waye holdes. 1189

Philip is astonished,

When sire Ph*ilip* gan see · þe seg so too ryde,
And his blonk behelde · abated of wrath,
Of þe michel meekenes · marueil hee had, 1192
That þe steede so stern · stynt of his fare.

[Fol. 19 b.]

He sayde, "Sonne Alisaunder · of þ*is* same chaunce

and tells his son his dream.

Iche had mynde in my slepe · by metyng fownde.
A greate glisiande God · grathly mee tolde, 1196
That þou shalt raigne when I rotte[6] · on my ryche lond*es*."
"Faþ*er*," sayde þe freke · "if þou foreknowes
That I shall leade thy land*es* · when thy life end*es*,
Let mee be p*r*oued as Prince · in pres where I wend,
And fende mee finliche well · to fonde my strength."

Of this bounden beaste · blynne [we þe] speche,
Of King Philip þe keene · karp wee now. 1203

Philip goes to Byzantium.

When Ph*ilip* had w*ith* his folke · faren on Greece,
And taken tresure ynough · in townes full riche,
Hee hurd tell of a towne · thriftily walled,

[1] *An* i *above the* u. [2] che *above* unce. [3] unt*es* *above* us.
[4] MS. worche, *with* t *above* c. [5] *An* i *above and between* a *and* r.
[6] MS. rotte, *with* royte *above it, which may have been miswritten for* rotye *in the older copy.*

A citie sett by peece · *with* full siker wardes,
Byzaunce þe bolde sted · was þe borowe hote ; 1208 BYZANTIUM.
None bett*er* hym aboute · þ*at* any beurn wyst.
It was chosen for cheefe · to cheffaren in,
And many merchaunt*es* þ*er*-in · þ*at* much goode aught.
All þe Lordes of þe lond · þ*at* large was founde, 1212
Helde it hur cheefe holde · when happe cam*me* of warre.
Many menne of þe easte · of merchaunt*es* ynow, Many men from the East bought and sold there.
Wer brought to þe borowe · too biggen & sell.
No defaute nas founde · in þ*at* faire place, 1216
On euery syde þe sea · of-souhte [1] the walles.
Pausanias a p*ris* King · none prest*er* ifounde, Pausanias built it.
While hym lasted his lyfe · on his lond riche,
Let build þe borowe · too byde therin, 1220
When hee was ferkid w*ith* fyght · of his fone grimme.
That bolde borou Byzance · þ*at* buyld was to-riht*us*, [Fol. 20.]
Was called syn in þ*at* coste · Constantinoble [2], It was afterwards called Constantinople,
Of Roome a riche Emperour · þ*at* reigned sythe, 1224
Constantine hee was cleped · a Kny*gh*t well alosed, from Constantine, son of Helen.
The sonne of saint Elaine · þe seemelich Ladie,
That weihes [3] worshipen yet · for hur werk hende,
A neew name too þ*at* borowe · hee named þ*an*, 1228
And called it Constantinople · þ*at* knowen is wyde.
For þ*at* stalworthe sted · so strong was founded, Since it was so strong, Philip wanted it
Ph*ilip* [4] hoped þ*at* holde · w*ith* h*is* help to wynne,
For too keepe in that kith · cumlich & riche 1232
All h*is* tresour ytryed · for, in tresoun or gyle, to keep his treasures in.
That none robbed þe rink · of þ*ese* riche thyng*es*.
Philip w*ith* h*is* ferefull folke · fast hym arayes,
For too prouen h*is* pride · at þe p*ris* borowe. 1236

[1] MS. of souhte, *with* f *above the* s, *and also* saftie *above the latter part of* souhte.
[2] MS. Constantinople, *with* b *above the* p; see *Werwolf*, l. 1425.
[3] MS. wight*es*, *with* weihes (*marked*) *above it*.
[4] MS. For Ph.; *but we must omit this second* For.

Forthe rydes þe Kyng · *with* his route huge,

Philip besieges it.

And hath þe citie besett · on sydes aboute;
On floode & on faire lond · his folke gan hee sett, 1239
ȝif hee my*ght* derie w*ith* dint · þ*at* dereworthe place.
This seg biseeged so · þe citie full long,
With all þe maine þ*at* hee myght · made his assautes,

His men could not take it.

But all þe lud*es* þ*at* hee ladde · for loue ne for aie,[1]
No my*ght* apeire þe place · of a pèny brede. 1244
For þ*at* freelich freke · as I fore tolde,
The kid Knight Pausanias · þ*at* King was of Spart,

It was too strong for them.

That borowe in his best state · let build so strong,
That all þe wight*es* in þe worlde · it wynne ne myght,
But ȝif fode lacked · too lud*es* within. 1249

* * * *

[*The next page is blank, and the rest is wanting.*]

*** For an account of the continuation of the story, see the note at the end of the "Notes to Alisaunder," and consult the Preface.

[1] MS. awe, *with* aie *above it.*

NOTES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

P. 1. The first quire of the MS. consisted of 12 folios, or 6 pairs of leaves. Of these the three outer pairs have been slit up the back, which has occasioned the loss of the *first three* leaves, and of the *tenth*, which was once joined on to the *third*. The *eleventh* and *twelfth* are fastened in merely by their edges. The part omitted by the loss of fol. 10 corresponds to 144 lines of the French text, whilst the first three missing leaves correspond only to 186 lines of the same. This is to be accounted for, most probably, by the fact that the English translator did very much as he pleased, in some places following his original closely, in others condensing the story, and in others again giving us descriptions and explanations entirely, as it would appear, of his own invention. See note to l. 3.

P. 2. Of the later French prose version of the story a short specimen may suffice, as it is obviously inferior to the old version in rime.

The following corresponds to ll. 18—32 on pages 1 and 2 :—

"Et nous signifie lhistoire au premier liure que iadis fut vn Roy de Cecille duc de Calabre & seigneur de la pouille n*o*mme Ebron riche / puissant / craint & redoute sur tous princes de son t*e*mps / tellement que roy : Prince : ne autre neust ose sur luy entrependre ne guerroyer. Dequoy aduerty Lempereur de Grece luy donna a f*e*mme & espouse sa fille : tant belle sage / gente & plaine de vertus : & deuote enuers dieu que rien plus. Nommee estoit Felixe plaine de toute felicite. Laq*u*elle a cause de son bon bruict & religion augm*e*ntoit & accroissoit merueilleusem*e*nt la reno*m*mee du roy Ebron s*o*n mary tant que toutes gens prenoient plaisir a les voir & acquerir leur beneuolence."—*From the Paris edition, printed by N. Bonfons.*

A considerable portion of the commencement of the story is repeated in the English version near the end—(ll. 4624—4806)—where we find Embrons, Gloriande, and Acelone named Ebrouns, Gloriauns, and Achillones. A perusal of this repetition of the story gives us a very fair idea of the way in which the English translator must have begun his poem. Ebrouns died soon after the affair with the Werwolf, and his brother too (I suppose), for he is never again spoken of as alive. Queen Felice lived to a good old age, ending her days in happiness and peace. The Werwolf turns out to be the Prince Alphouns or Alphonse, eldest son of the king of Spain.

P. 4, l. 115. *Far* was the local name of the Strait of Messina, called

Faro di Messina, or *Far de Meschines;* thus we read of "fluvium magnum, qui dicitur Le Far de Meschines" in Benedict of Peterborough (ed. Stubbs, 1867), vol. 2, p. 125; and again, at p. 138 of the same work, we find the following.—"Et est notandum quod in fluvio illo del *Far* de Meschines sunt illa duo pericula maris maxima, scilicet Silla et Caribdis. Quarum una, Silla, est ad introitum del *Far* prope la Baignare, et Altera, scilicet Caribdis, est prope exitum del *Far*." Two formidable perils these, for the Werwolf to encounter on his way; but he seems to have safely avoided them!

P. 6, l. 170. The exact distance of this forest from Rome is afterwards stated to be seven miles. See l. 4679.

L. 1. (*English text*). The first two extant lines of the poem represent the concluding phrase of the extract from the French—*que tot li plaist Ce que la beste de lui fait.* The next line in the French text is, *Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit*, &c.

3—35. These *thirty-three* lines are represented in the French text by only *seven* short lines, which run thus:—

Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit,
qui en cele forest manoit,
el bois estoit avoec sa proie,
.i. chien tenoit en sa coroie,
de pasture la nuit repaire;
li chiens senti lenfant et flaire,
forment abaie, et cil le hue, &c.

Hence it is clear that the excellent lines, 20—31, are *original;* and they shew that our own author was a man of very considerable poetical power. So again, the idea in l. 59—

"appeles and alle þinges · þat childern after wilnen,"—

is entirely his own, and proves that he knew how to add a graceful touch to the poem he copied from.

P. 7, l. 19. *to wawe* was explained by Sir F. Madden as meaning *to the wall;* but I fancy it is but *one* word. See *To-wawe* in the Glossary.

P. 9, ll. 80—93. Having shewn (note to l. 3) how the translator has there written 33 lines where his original had but 7, it seems right to give an extract shewing, on the other hand, that he has here only 14 lines where his original has 26, some of them being very curious.

——" or oies
del leu qui estoit repairies
de la viande quala enquerre
par les vilains et par la terre;
avoec lenfant tant en avoit
que a grant paine laportoit.
et quant lenfant na retrouve,
onques nus hon, de mere ne,
ne vist a beste tel duel faire,
qui li oïst uller et braire,
et les pies ensamble detordre,

et la terre engouler et mordre,
esrachier lerbe et esgrater,
et soi couchier et relever ;
et comme il socit et confont,
et querre aval et querre amont,
et les larmes fondre des ex,
bien peust dire, si grans dex
ne fu par nule beste fais.
lors ert saillis ens el markais,
si met a la terre le nes,
tout si com lenfes ert ales
desi ou le mist li vilains.
le suit li leus de rage plains ;
tant la sui a esperon,
que venus est a la maison."

P. 9, l. 80. The letter *l*, like *r*, is one that sometimes shifts its place in a word. As we find *brid* for *bird*, so we find *wordle* for *worlde;* and *wolnk* may be *intentionally* put for *wlonk*. Cf. *carfti* for *crafti*, l. 3221.

83. *no neiȝ* = *non eiȝ*, i. e. no egg. So *thi narmes* for *thin armes*, thy arms, in l. 666.

84. *grinneþ*. The MS. has *ginneþ*. Sir F. Madden's note is—"A verb is wanting after *ginneth*. We may, probably, supply it by 'so balfully he ginneth *greue*,' or by some similar word." But this rather spoils the rhythm of the line. Mr Morris says—"it seems probable that *ginneþ* = howl, utter, send out, from AS. *ginan*, to open, *yawn*." This is somewhat farfetched. It is simpler to suppose that it is miswritten for *grinneþ*, which is not an inappropriate word, and is familiar to us from the expression in the Psalms—to *grin like a dog*, i. e. to grin with rage and spite. But it is still more to the point to observe that there is, as it were, some authority for the grinning of werwolves, if we compare with the text the following quotation—"þai *grennede* for gladschipe euchan toward oðer, as *wode wulues* þet fainen of hare praie." Morris: Early English Homilies, p. 277 (E. E. T. S. to be published shortly). Cf. also "The Lyon did both gape and *gren*." Bp. Percy's Folio MS. *Carle of Carlile*, 213.

P. 10, l. 121. Between this line and the next, the translator has missed a portion of the original, viz. the lines following :

" de mult de gens estoit loee ;
de son signor avoit .i. fil,
biau damoisel, franc et gentil ;
Brandins ot non, ce dist lescris."

"She was praised by many people. She had by her lord one son, a fine lad, frank and gentle ; he bore the name of Brandins [or Braundins], as says the writing." The name of *Brandins* being so very like *Brande*, the translator may easily have lost his place, and omitted the passage unintentionally. Braundins is mentioned afterwards, as the reader will find.

136. *a noynement* = *an oynement*, i.e. an ointment, unguent. Cf. note to l. 83. See l. 139.

141. "All the form of man so amiss had she shaped (transformed)." —Morris; *note to the line in* "Specimens of Early English."

143, 144. "But truly he never after possessed any other resemblance that belongs to human nature, but (was) a wild werwolf." The construction is involved.

P. 11, ll. 156—160. Here the translator, finding a tendency to repetition in his original, cuts matters short, omitting how the werwolf lived two years in Apulia, and grew fierce and big and strong; and how, hearing of the treachery of King Embrouns' brother, he resolved to steal away William in the manner already described. It is needless to say that ll. 161—169 are wholly interpolated.

P. 12. l. 206. There is something amiss with this line; it hardly makes sense as it stands. In l. 35 the phrase is "to hold to baie;" in l. 46 it is "to hold at a baye." So here, if one may be permitted to change "&" into "at," we have,

to haue bruttenet þat bor · *at* þe abaie seþþen,

i.e. "to have afterwards destroyed the boar, (when held) at bay."

P. 14, l. 251. In the original, William very properly grounds his refusal on the fact that he does not know who the emperor is, or what he wants to do.

"non ferai, sire, et por coi,
car je ne sai que vos voles,
qui vos estes, ne que queres;
ne se voles riens, se bien non,
ja ne me face Dix pardon!"

261. "Read *wend*," and again elsewhere, in l. 5185. This elision of a final *d* in such words as *hond*, *lond*, *sheld*, *held*, &c. is by no means uncommon in ancient poetry, and arises simply from pronunciation."—M. We find *wend* in l. 229.

267—272. Hereabouts the translator condenses his original with great judgment. The "churl's" grumbling, as there given, is not very interesting.

P. 15, ll. 293—295. The French merely says,

"en ceste forest le trouvai,
asses pres dont nous somes ore."—

The man who could turn this prosaic statement into

"how he him fond in þat forest · þere fast bi-side,
clothed in comly cloþing · for any kinges sone,
vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge"—

had certainly both poetic power and a lively imagination. Indeed, the translation is very superior to the original, as far as I have compared the two It should be observed that, immediately after writing the two lines printed above in italics, the translator boldly omits about 16 lines of the cowherd's rather prosy story.

P. 16, l. 325. Mr Morris explains *fordedes* by making it equivalent to

fayre dedes, kind actions. That this is incorrect appears from the fourth line on fol. 81 (l. 5182),

"of al þe *faire fordede* · þat he hade for hem wrouȝt."

The expression "*fair fair deed*" would be unmeaning tautology. See the glossary.

329—343. The translator here follows the original pretty closely, giving, however, rather the sense than the exact words.

P. 17, l. 347. "This is not an error of the scribe, as at first supposed, but formed by the same analogy, as *alizt* for *alighted*, *comfort* for *comforted*, *gerde* for *girded*, &c. It occurs often in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible."—M. The very word *comaund* (= commanded) occurs in ll. 2557 and 2564 of the alliterative Romance on the Destruction of Troy.

P. 17, l. 360—365. Compare the original text—

"Salues moi Huet *le nain*,
et Hugenet et Aubelot,
et Martinet le fil Heugot,
et Akarin et Crestien,
et Thumassin le fil Paien,
et tos mes autres compaignons;" &c.

In l. 362, Sir F. Madden printed *dwery*, but he says, "This word is doubtful in the MS. and may either be read *owery* (as printed by Hartshorne) or *dwerth*. It seems to be intended to represent the F. *dru*, *drue*, B. Bret. *drew*, *drud*, signifying a loved friend or companion. But if the final letter be supposed to take the place of *g*, it may then mean dwarf, from S. *dwerg*."

The excellent suggestion at the end of this notice of the word is now seen to be perfectly right; for *dwerth* (dwarf) is simply the translation of *le nain*, Lat. *nanus;* and just as *dwerþ* is written for *dwerg*, so our author continually writes *þurþ* for *þurȝ* = through.

For *kinnesman* in l. 365, I should propose to read *Thomasin* or *Thomasyn*. It would improve the alliteration, of which there is none in the line as it stands.

P. 18, l. 379. She would have slain herself by *refusing food*, according to the French text.

"jamais sa bouche ne mangast,
se cil ne la reconfortast."

388, 389. These "boars and bears, many horse loads, harts and hinds, and many other beasts" have all grown out of four boars only, like Falstaff's "men in buckram." The French merely says,

de iiij senglers quorent pris.

403. *held* = *eld*, age. Compare

et meisme de tel aage
com Guill*iames* pooit bien estre.

P. 19, l. 423. The translator here misses a very curious statement, not perhaps understanding the allusion. Nor do I.

de riches dras batus a or,
com sil fust fix roi Alphinor,

qui sire et rois est de hongrie,
qui si est de tos biens plentive ;
ne adonques a icel tans
navoit mie plus de . iiii . ans
et norri puis . vii . ans tos plains.

Here we not only learn, once more, that William was about 11 years old when arriving at the emperor's court (see p. 2, l. 35, and p. 15, l. 296), but we are told that the child was found in rich apparel adorned with beaten gold, *as if he had been son to the king Alphinor, who is lord and king of Hungary*, (and) who is so abundantly possessed of wealth.

429—432. The French text has

"li damoisiax," fait lemperere,
"je cuit, par le baron saint Pere,
quil est de mult tres haute gens ;
car mult par est et biax, et gens," &c.

P. 23, l. 433. The French text continues thus:—

et souspirer et baaillier,
et refroidier et reschaufer,
muer color et tressuer,
et trambler tot en itel guise,
comme se fievre mestoit prise, &c.

P. 24, l. 455. Compare

dont ai je tort qui en blasmoie
mon *cuer*.

460. The French text throws no light on the true reading. The *am* in the MS. is indistinct. Sir F. Madden suggested "nad þei ben, i may boute bale," &c., which I have adopted, with the slight change of *may* into *miȝt*.

470. We should have expected to find *brouner* rather than *broun*.

472. There seems something wrong here. I had proposed to read —"*to* the harde asente," i. e. assent to the infliction. Sir F. Madden considers that the introduction of *to* offends the ear, and proposes, but with diffidence, "the hardere asente," i. e. assent with difficulty. The French does not help one, being much more concise in this passage.

P. 25. After l. 500 we should expect some such line as,

"So heried ouer al · and so heyȝ holden."

P. 28, l. 576. The catchwords are written, as usual, at the bottom of the last page of each quire.

584. The MS. has "he kosin ful nere," instead of "here kosin." This is due to the omission of the small flourish which is used as a contraction for *er*. In the same way we find "þide" instead of "þid*ere*" in l. 47, and elsewhere.

592. For *leliest*, Sir F. Madden has *leuest*. The two words would be exceedingly alike, for the scribe makes his *l*'s so short that they are very little longer than the first stroke of a *u*. But over the second downstroke (which is a *little* shorter than the first) a long fine stroke can be detected,

which is his method of dotting an *i*. *Leuest* means *most dearly*, and *leliest* is *most leally*, so that the sense is much the same.

600. The MS. has l. 601 before 600, but the emendation so obviously assists the sense, that it hardly requires apology.

P. 29, l. 611. For this line and the preceding the MS. has—

"& ofter þan ix. times · hit takeþ me a-daye,
& ten times on þe niȝt · nouȝt ones lesse."

I have taken the considerable liberty of changing the places of *nine* and *ten*, because the alliteration of *both* lines is thereby improved. The *ten* is as well suited to the chief-letter in *takeþ*, as *nine* is to the initials of *niȝt* and *nouȝt*. I do not suppose that any one will quarrel with the alteration of the *sense*. When we consider that these numbers were selected for *no other reason* than to *secure alliteration* it must be right to place them where they best fulfil that object.

625. For "cosynes" read "cosyne."—M. This suggestion is supported by ll. 594 and 602. But there is no harm in retaining *cosynes*, as it is used to denote a female cousin, as in *Lancelot of the Laik*, ll. 1185, 1270, 2287, and 2802.

P. 30, l. 645. I suspect that "answeres" ought to have been "answered." Cf. note to l. 1076.

649. The MS. has merely "after þrowe," which makes the line halt.

P. 31, l. 692. The MS. having here the letters "ihū" it is difficult to write the word otherwise than "ih*e*su." Otherwise the *h* is a corruption of the Greek H or *e*, so that "iesu" would be a truer form. On the contraction IHC for IHCOYC, out of which I.H.S. has been made (the mark of contraction being at the same time turned into a small cross), see Hone's Ancient Mysteries Described, p. 282.

698. The *c* and *t* being much alike, *Metynt* may be meant for *Metync*, but *Metyng* is better spelling; see l. 706.

P. 32, ll. 712, 713. The construction is—"For there is no lord in any land, enjoying life—no emperor nor renowned king known to be so rich—that he is not of sufficiently low birth to wed that seemly lady."

723. The word *houes* nowhere occurs again in the poem, the usual form being *bihoues*. The alliteration also points out that the initial *bi* is really required.

P. 33, l. 753. "Read, tok him *til* a sete."—M. But I am not sure that this ingenious emendation is altogether required; *tid* may be here, as elsewhere, another spelling of *tit* = soon, quickly.

756. Here "For þat" seems to mean "for *whom*." See l. 769.

771. The MS. seems to have "chanber" in 685 and here; but it is probably a mere slip for "chaūber," the spelling adopted in ll. 755 and 769.

P. 34, l. 788. "This is not so much an error as an abbreviation before an infinitive, which has occurred to me often in other MSS. It should properly be '*for to* slake.' Bryant places this, very unnecessarily, among the list of provincialisms."—M. *Forto* is very common in this MS. See l. 783 just above. Another form is *forte*, which occurs in Piers Plowman, Text A. vii. 277.

793. Sir F. Madden prints "as a wo werþ weiȝh," with a reference to the common phrase "wo worth." The MS. may also be read "wo wery" = wo-weary, weary with wo. The word "worþ" is spelt elsewhere in the MS. with an *o*.

799. *wher*, whether.

804. *Go we* is a form of invitation. Cf. "gowe dyne, gowe" in Piers Plowman; A. *prol.* 105. It occurs again in l. 1184.

P. 35, l. 824. "to glade with uch gome," i. e. to gladden each man with. See note to l. 1825.

843. *þa* is put for *þat* frequently in the present poem. See ll. 765 and 903.

P. 36, l. 862. *whiles*, wiles. So also we find *where* for *were*.

P. 37, l. 883. "So completely was that word wound in to his heart." But this is rather a forced phrase, and it would have been quite as well if the scribe had written—

so witerly was þat wiȝh · wounded to herte,

i. e. so completely was that man wounded to the heart.

909. Repeated, nearly, from l. 433.

P. 38, l. 920. Read "ther *ne* schal wizth."—M. I copy "no wiȝth" from l. 786.

P. 39, l. 964. *salerne*. "The city of *Salerno* was famous from very early times for its university and school of medicine, which was protected and flourished most under the Norman princes."—*English Cyclopædia*. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, ed. Perry, l. 4312.

P. 41, l. 1021. "There is some error here, apparently, in the MS."—M. If *hete* is to stand, it may mean to *bid*, from the A.S. *hátan*, to bid, promise. Then the line means—"and to bid her then to play as she pleased in the meanwhile." *Here* = her. Cf. l. 1716.

1028. For *antresse* we should expect to find "aunteres."

P. 42, l. 1069. "*Ouer gart gret ost. Gart* appears here to be an error of the scribe, and should be omitted. *Ouer-gret* is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116."—M.

1075. *tyding* seems to be the plural form. See l. 1134, and note to l. 4877.

1076. Read "a-greued."—M. It is worth noting that *s* is not unfrequently written for *d*. In "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," l. 6, *patres* is written for *patred*.

P. 43, l. 1093. So, too, *e* is often written for *o*; we should expect to find *onys* in this line, for in alliterative lines the vowels used as rime-letters are generally *different* ones. *O* is written for *e* in l. 818.

P. 44, l. 1127. In a strong light, the word "þider" can be traced as having occupied the apparently blank space. It was probably erased as having been repeated by mistake. Hence, there is no word to be supplied here.

P. 45, l. 1163. "þe ferst batayle" means "the first *battalion* or company." Cf. l. 1152.

P. 46, l. 1190. *fresly* = *fersly*, fiercely. This shifting of the letter *r*

may have been intentional. See "The Romans of Partenay;" ed. Skeat, 1866; preface, p. xvi. Cf. note to l. 80.

1196. "Read 'grettest;' and also in l. 1365. The *t* is similarly elided from 'menskfullest,' in l. 1435."—M.

1211. The word *so* is required for the alliteration, and it improves the sense. *What so* = howsoever, and occurs elsewhere.

P. 47, l. 1222. "For *te* read *to*."—M. But perhaps *te* may stand. See notes to l. 788 and 1093.

1226. In the "Romans of Partenay," *for* is miswritten for *fro* over and over again. See note to l. 1190.

P. 48, l. 1280. The initial *vn-* belongs to *both* words, i. e. *un*wounded or *un*taken.

P. 49, l. 1299. *dede clepe*, caused to be summoned. Cf. *dede fecche* in l. 1303.

1307. We must read *hem*, not *he*. The scribe probably forgot to make the stroke over the *e*.

P. 50, ll. 1323-4. I have ventured to transpose these lines, as they are otherwise devoid of sense. The MS. has—

"wiþ alle worchipe & wele so was he sone
to burye him as out to be swiche a burne nobul;"

but it is clear that "so was he sone" (= so was he soon buried) must end the sentence.

1350. The sense seems to require the insertion of *be* or *ben*—"nadde *be* þe socour of o seg," &c. Cf. l. 1358.

P. 51, l. 1358. *forsake*, deny. Cf. Germ. *versagen*.

P. 52, l. 1401. The second *he* may be miswritten for *hire* or *here*, i. e. her. Read "to come, here granted." Cf. note to l. 584.

1415. *but thei thre one*, except they three only.

P. 53, l. 1425. "And who, by descent, was then keeper of Constantinople." But the relative is omitted, probably by an intentional idiom.

It may be observed here, that it appears by the sequel that the Emperor of Greece was the father of the Queen of Palermo, and William's grandfather. Also, the emperor's son was called Partendo or Partenedon, and was, of course, William's uncle.

1427. The ending *-and* in *grethand* is doubtless a mere mistake, due to the word *glimerand* just before.

P. 54, l. 1478. *Diting* is simply miswritten for *tiding*. Such an inversion of letters is occasionally found; thus, in the Romance of Parthenay, *aduertise* is written for *aduersite* (adversity) more than once.

1490. *mened of*, bemoaned by; so in ll. 1491, 1492, we find *biloued wiþ* meaning *beloved by*.

P. 55, l. 1504. We have had this line before. See l. 246.

1516. *her sche sese miȝt*, ere she might cease.

P. 57, l. 1576. This line has occurred before. See l. 1033.

P. 58, l. 1627. Compare,

"In middes on a mountayne · at midmorwe tyde
Was piht vp a pauilon · a proud for þe nones,

And ten þousend of tentes · I-tilled besydes," &c.

Piers Plowman, Text A. ii. 42.

"Tentes and pauilons streght and pight freshly."

Romans of Partenay, 869.

P. 59, l. 1638. *hese*, ease. Cf. *her*, ere, l. 1516; and *hende*, end, l. 1369.

1640. *Mornyng out mesure*, mourning without measure.

1644. The line would sound better, if *born* and *was* were to change places, as in—

"*Mai banne þat he born was* · to bodi or to soule."

Piers Plowman, A. i. 60.

1654. Both alliteration and sense require some such word as *wist*, which I have inserted.

1662. *tent*, intent, purpose, design. See *Tent* in Halliwell's Dictionary.

1664. *profites loue*. This might seem to mean "for love of the prophet." But this would be quite out of place, and, in fact, the line expresses the same idea as l. 3251 does.

P. 60, l. 1676. The negative prefix in *vnperceyued* affects all the words following it in the same line. Cf. note to l. 1280.

1686. For this story of dressing up in bears' skins, see S. Baring Gould's Book of Werewolves, p. 36. Egillson's explanation of the O.Norse word *berserkr* is, one who wears a *bear's sark*, or a habit made of bear-skin over his armour.

P. 61, l. 1723. This mention of *bear-baiting at a stake* is worth remarking. Cf. Havelok, l. 1840.

P. 62, l. 1742. "You appear so furious a bear for a man to look upon."

P. 63, l. 1777. *whiche*. We should have expected to find *hou* used here.

1793. This is William's *second* experience of a "dern den" under a "holw hok." See ll. 17, 295.

P. 64, l. 1825. *to kepe wiþ our liues*, to preserve our lives with. Compare—

"Oþer catell, oþer cloþ · to coveren wiþ our bones,"

(i. e. or wealth, or cloth to cover our bones with); *Pierce the Ploughmans Crede*, l. 116.

P. 67, l. 1944. *lengeþ* may also be read *lengey*. But the true reading is probably *lengþe*, i. e. lengthen, as in l. 1040. Cf. l. 2345.

P. 68, l. 1957. It is not uncommon in MSS. to find the word *pope* erased or struck out. See *The Romans of Partenay*, p. xviii.

P. 69, l. 1983. For *at sent* Sir F. Madden would read *a-sente*, assented. But I think the MS. reading may stand; *at sent* = at assent, i. e. that she was an assenting party. For *sent* = assent, see Halliwell. See also l. 3017.

P. 71, l. 2073. *treie and tene*. "This expression is very ancient, and may be found in Cædmon."—M. See *Cædmon;* ed. Thorpe, p. 137, l. 15.

P. 73, l. 2127. *do crie*, cause to be proclaimed. So in l. 2145, *let he sende* = he caused to be sent. See l. 2174.

P. 76, l. 2236. *for-walked*, tired out with waking or watching, fatigued for want of sleep.

"It should properly be *for-waked* [as in l. 790], but this variation between *waked* and *walked* is to be met with in other MSS."—M. Compare

> "And sone the knycht he be the brydill nom,
> Saying, "*Awalk! It is no tyme to slep.*"
>
> *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1048.

P. 77, l. 2254. Perhaps *bi* should be *be;* then *þat him bi ȝiue schold* = that should be given him.

P. 82, l. 2432. *helles.* "Read *delles.*"—M. But *helles* may stand, as being the plural of *hel*, a hill; see ll. 2233, 2318.

P. 83, l. 2463. I think the rhythm, alliteration, and sense would all be improved by inserting *softeliche:*

> And as sone as he hade *softeliche* sette it adowne.

2471. Perhaps we should read *blemched*, i. e. blemished.

P. 84, l. 2501. *þat he bar*, that which he bare.

P. 85, l. 2554. *semes.* Printed *serues* in Sir F. Madden's edition, with the note:—"This word is doubtful, and looks in the MS. more like *seines.*" But the word is *semes*, in which the first stroke of the *m* is not quite joined on to the second. There is no stroke above it to show that it is an *i;* nor do I read the word as *selues.* *Semes* means *horse-loads.*

P. 87, l. 2626. Here is a direct allusion to the part of the story which is lost in our English MS. It will be found in the French text, on p. 2.

P. 89, l. 2680. *lengþe.* Or it may be read *lengye*, which would be perhaps better in this place. *Lengye* (the infinitive mood, like *wonye* in l. 3312) is to *dwell, remain;* *lengþe* is to *lengthen.*

P. 90, l. 2707. *sece.* Printed *seie* in Sir F. Madden's edition; but a close examination of the MS. shews *sece* to be the word. The sense is—"Now *cease* we to talk about the besiegers;" of which "Now *say* we" is the exact contrary.

P. 91, l. 2731. *greyt.* This may be also read *greþt;* the usual form is *greyþed.* Cf. the form *a-greþed* in l. 52.

P. 94, l. 2845. This "park" is the orchard or menagerie already mentioned at p. 3, l. 65.

2864. *drey.* This may also be read *dreþ*, as printed by Sir F. Madden. I have printed *drey*, as coming closer to the form *dreiȝh*, in l. 2796.

P. 95. l. 2870. The sense and alliteration both require the word *douȝter* to be inserted; see l. 2875.

2890. *bilaft*, remained or stayed behind, whilst the hart fought the beasts.

P. 96, l. 2900. Sir F. Madden prints "þat he *gart*," &c.; but the MS. has *gate.* *Gart* or *garte* makes better sense, and is perhaps right. If so, the wrong spelling *gate* was copied from l. 2895.

P. 97, l. 2964. *þe kinges sone*, i. e. *to* the king's son.

P. 98, l. 2998. So also we have *hire* *þouȝt* in l. 2873, and *here* *þouȝt* four lines below it.

P. 99, l. 3021. *busked hem*, i. e. *þei* busked hem. This omission of the nominative is frequent, and no doubt intentional.

P. 102, l. 3105. "Probably for *er than an ern*."—M. *Er than* would mean *ere then*, or *sooner then*, with reference to the *er* following. I almost think the first of the three *er*'s is best omitted. That *ar* is miswritten for *an*, there can be no doubt.

3116. Insert the metrical dot after *ben*. The alliteration follows a rule not unusual in old English, that each half-line is alliterative within itself. Thus:—

It *wó*neþ þat *wó* ben · riȝt *s*wíche as it-*s*élue.

P. 105, l. 3203. Something seems wrong here. If *ne* be inserted, and *fair* changed into *fairre* (= more fair, as in l. 4437) it would be clearer. Perhaps, then, we should read—

alle men vpo*n* mold · ne miȝt sen a fairre coupel, &c.

3220. "Something seems wanting to complete the sense, such as neuer wol i haue.'"—M. That is, we should read—

o*þ*er armes al my lif atteli · neuer wol i haue—

where *atteli* is the infinitive mood. If the line is to stand unaltered, *atteli* must be put for *attele i*; i.e. other arms all my life I design never (to) have. Then the alliteration would fall upon the *vowels*, as thus:—

*o*þer *a*rmes *a*l my lif · *a*tteli neuer haue.

3221. It is difficult to tell whether or not the spelling *carfti* was intentional. *Carfty* appears also in *The Romans of Partenay*, l. 5708; and *kerse* is the usual old spelling of *cress*.

P. 106, l. 3260. The word *to* seems to be required, and the line then means, "for it had advanced to night, by that time." To *fare forth* is to proceed, advance, go onward, go forth; see ll. 2730, 4450. Cf. also l. 3526.

P. 107, l. 3282. For *kniȝt kud*, a better reading would be *kud kniȝt*. The sense is the same both ways.

3290. For *is*, Sir F. Madden prints *his*. Both spellings of the word occur throughout the poem. The MS. has *is* in this place.

P. 108, l. 3315. One of the *now*'s is redundant.

P. 110, l. 3374. "A word seems requisite to eke out the line. Perhaps we might read—'Kniztes with sire William *thanne* kauzt god hert.'" —M. Whilst adopting this suggestion, I have ventured slightly to shift the inserted word. It now occurs to me, however, that the real error is in *kauȝt*. This, being *plural*, should be *-kauȝten* or *kauȝtè*, and then the flow of the verse would be preserved without any insertion of an extra word at all.

P. 111, l. 3399. Perhaps it should be, "ac spacly *as* þe spaynoles," &c.

3404. *lorlde*. "Read *lorde*, and in the following line *lord*. The same singular mistake (if it be one) occurs in *p.* 142, *l.* 24 [l. 3955 of the present edition] for *lordschip*."—M.

P. 112, l. 3450. "The illuminator has neglected to supply the capital letter here."—M. The little *w* was made, as usual, by the scribe for his guidance. Three times the illuminator has mistaken his instructions, and made a large M instead of a W; see ll. 4660, 4880, 4923.

P. 113, l. 3477. The word omitted is no doubt *knizt*, for this word is considered as being alliterative to *crist;* see l. 3671.

P. 114, l. 3509. The werwolf leapt into the sea, and crossed the Straits of Messina to the opposite shore. This part of the story gives us some idea of what the missing part of the English translation was like. See p. 4.

P. 115, l. 3530. The MS. may be read either *sthoure*, or *schoure* (as in Sir F. Madden's edition). *Sthoure* is, I think, the word meant; for see l. 3536. The scribe uses *th* as equivalent to the sound of *t* very frequently; see *mizthi*, *mizth* in ll. 3549, 3557 just below, and *wizthli* in l. 3581.

3533. We should perhaps read, "*&* conquered."

P. 117, l. 3597. *lat me worþ*, let me be, let me alone.

So in Piers Plowman, ed. Wright, p. 12.

For-thi I counseille al the commune
To late the cat worthe.

P. 118, l. 3639. There is a sort of gap in the sense which seems to point to the loss of some such line as

Meyntened so his men · þat manly, þei sone.

3646. "The final words of this and the two preceding lines are partly erased, but legible. The later hand has endeavoured to restore them." —M.

P. 119, l. 3665. *for he*, sc. the king of Spain's son. The change of the subject is rather a rapid one.

P. 120, l. 3695. "A verb is here wanting to complete the sense."—M. It is difficult to guess the missing word; perhaps the sense may be bettered by reading,

but I mizt nouzt *awei* þer-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe.

3705. *þe saules.* Read "there saules."—M. An almost better reading would be "*here* saules," but is not so like what the scribe has given us.

P. 121, l. 3737. *man wod.* Perhaps an error for *wod man.*

P. 122, l. 3778. *tom*, opportunity. Not a very common word. It occurs, however, in *Piers Plowman*, A. ii. 160.

I have no *tom* to telle · þe tayl þat hem folweþ.

P. 123, l. 3789. *Iced.* This, if pronounced *issed*, seems to be equivalent to the Scottish *yschit*, issued, a not uncommon word in Barbour's *Brus.*

3799. The scribe's spelling of *þurh* was clearly influenced by his knowledge that he was about to write the word *zour* very soon.

3803. *& I mowe come bi*, if I can get hold cf.

P. 124, l. 3825. The word *þat* should be omitted, but it is in the MS.

3835. In *hounde*, there is a (superfluous) stroke over the *n*.

P. 125, l. 3883. *Ferde* is the reading in the parallel line, 3737.

3884. The question has been raised whether in the phrase in Judges ix. 53—"all to-brake his skull"—we ought to join the *to* to the word *all* or to the verb *brake*. It seems certain that, originally, the *to* was a part of the verb, and separate from *all*, and the present line is an excellent evidence of this. It seems equally certain that, in the sixteenth century, the prefix *to* was not very well understood, and the result was that *all-to* was considered as a short way of writing *altogether*. See "The Bible Wordbook," by J. Eastwood and W. Aldis Wright. Those who would consider the *to* as belonging to *al*, and who consider *alto* as properly only *one* word, must go on to explain what is meant by *alfor*, *albi*, and *ala*; for we find in this very poem the prefixes *for-*, *bi-*, and *a-* also preceded by the word *al*. See ll. 790, 793, 661, 872.

P. 127, l. 3925. The first "&" seems redundant.

P. 130, l. 4042. *& þouȝt*, i. e. and *he* thought, an example of the omission of the pronoun, a license in which the author indulges rather freely.

4055. *dared*, became motionless as if stupefied. The word occurs in Chaucer.

P. 131, l. 4061. *any-skines*, written *any skines* in the MS. I have preserved this curious spelling, because I have observed it elsewhere, viz., in one of the Trinity MSS. of Piers Plowman. See the foot-note to *P. Pl.* A. ii. 26, in my edition, and also the foot-note to Passus x. 2. In the latter place, *foure skenis*, *foure skynnes* are various readings for *foure kunne*. In fact, *any skines* is only another way of writing *anys kines*. "Such forms as *alleskynnes* (all kinds of), *noskynnes* (no kind of), are instances of the genitives *alles* (of all), and *nones* (of none)." Morris: *Specimens of Early English*, p. xxiv. I would submit, however, that *alleskynnes*, *noskynnes*, are here wrongly translated; the former means, *of every kind*, the latter, *of no kind*, just as *anyskines* means *of any kind*, and *foure skynnes* means *of four kinds*. The phrase in Piers Plowman, "of foure kunne þinges," means, *of things of four kinds*.

4065. Probably an error for—"þattow *ne* wost." The sense is, "It can't be that you don't know."

P. 132, l. 4104. That *chaunged* is the right reading is rendered probable not only by the recurrence of the word in l. 4500, but by the use of the equivalent word *forschop* in l. 4394.

P. 133, l. 4150. Probably we should read, "ne may zou deliuere."—M. This is a slightly bolder alteration, but a considerable improvement.

P. 137, l. 4278. "*Seþe* in MS. Read 'sothli for sothe.' A pleonasm arising from some blunder of the scribe."—M.

P. 140, l. 4379. "A slight liberty has been taken here, and also [in lines 2323, 3942]. In all three cases the word is written in the MS. 'wir*the*' or 'wor*the*,' but the correction is so obvious, and the difference so small between *c* and *t* [in the MS.], as to warrant the alteration."—M. It may be added that *sc* is almost always written like *st*.

P. 141, l. 4418. *his gref forgaf*, gave away, i. e. laid aside his anger. *Gref* is sometimes anger caused by vexation, as in *Alisaunder*, l. 264.

P. 145, l. 4551. *knew his sone sone*, knew his son soon.

P. 146, l. 4577. "Therefore, O King of heaven, praised should you be, who have lent thee (Alphonse) thy life, to deliver us all." It is rather an awkward sentence; but it is usual, in Early English, to find "haþ" put for "hast" in a sentence thus framed.

P. 147, l. 4632. *boute bot*, without a boat? The usual meaning of *boute bot* is "without remedy," but this would be unsuitable here, for we have "boute hurt oþer harm" in the next line. The werwolf had to swim across the Straits of Messina, and doubtless found it a hard task, for he took care to secure a boat for the return journey. See l. 2729. In l. 567 we have "boute mast," and in l. 568 "boute anker or ore." More probably, however, *boute bot* = *boute bod*, without delay, as in l. 149.

P. 148, l. 4662. *ioye*. Sir F. Madden prints "foþe," with a note that we should read "ioye." A close inspection of the MS. shews that the first letter is really an *i*, with a blur to the right of it making it look like a long *s*. The letters *y* and *þ* are made alike, throughout the MS.

4666. *most*, i. e. most glad.

P. 150, l. 4716. *god vnder god*, wealth under God; the author uses *under God* or *under heuene* to signify *throughout the world*. The expression is repeated in l. 4732, and in l. 4730 we find "worldes god" for *worldly wealth*.

4717. Read "it *ne* schal redili."—M. After this line occur the lines,

"& þerto heiȝeli am i holde · for holliche i knowe,
þat alle þi sawes be soþ · þat þou seidest ere."

These lines are out of place here, and occur in their proper places lower down. The repetition of them, however, teaches us somewhat; for it affords a most certain proof of the unsettled state of orthography. We here find the same scribe, in re-writing the same lines, altering *heiȝeli* and *holliche* into *heiȝeliche* and *holli*, so that he considered the endings *-li* and *-liche* as perfectly interchangeable, and it was a mere chance which of the two he adopted. We also find *seidest* altered to *saidest*, shewing the equivalence of the *ei* and *ai* sounds. There is also a difference of reading; for "*þi* sawes" reappears as "*þe* sawes." Lastly, the change of "holde" into "hold" shews the uncertainty attending the use by scribes of the final *e*.

4730. *woldest ȝerne*, wouldst yearn for, wouldst desire to have.

P. 151, l. 4736. *a mite worþ*. Just below, l. 4754, the phrase used is *a bene worþ*. Compare

Schal no deuel at his deþ-day · deren him *worþ a myte*.
Piers Plowman, A. viii. 54.

A straw for alle swevenes signifiaunce!
God help me so, I counte hem *nought a bene*.
Chaucer, Troil. & Cress. bk. v. st. 52.

So we find, in the Knightes Tale—the mountance of *a tare* (l. 712)—nought worth *a myte* (l. 700); in the Milleres Tale—nat *a kers* (l. 568); and in the Pardoneres Tale—the mountance of *a corn of whete* (l. 401).

P. 152, l. 4785. *wil our lord wold*, whilst our Lord would (permit us

to live). This is repeated in l. 4802. In the present line, however, *wil our lord willeþ* would be a better reading.

P. 153, ll. 4797, 4798. "All the nobles immediately prayed for them busily, (on the understanding) that they must by all means amend their trespass," viz., by a life of penitence. Such an ellipsis is not uncommon; in l. 4800, however, the introduction of the word *so* before *that* makes the sense clearer.

P. 154, l. 4827. This line is repeated, slightly varied, at l. 4888.

P. 155, l. 4877. *tiding*. Both this and *tidinges* are plural forms. Cf. l. 1075.

P. 159, l. 5004. *bemleem;* so in MS. Read "beþleem," i. e. Bethlehem.

5013. *hurtel*. "This term is used in Chaucer twice, Cant. T. 2618, 4717 [ed. Tyrwhitt], and in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible is far from uncommon. We find it also inserted in the Prompt. Parv. '*Hurtelyne*, as too thynges togedur, *impingo*, *collido;*' and, at a more recent period, Shakspeare introduces it into his Julius Cæsar, Act ii., sc. 2.

'The noise of battle *hurtled* in the air,
Horses did neigh, and dying men did groan.'

The line in which this word occurs in our Romance is, perhaps, the finest of the whole poem, and not surpassed by the more polished diction of the Dramatist."—M.

I would add that *hurlest* is a reading adopted for *hurtlest* in later editions of Cant. Tales, in l. 4717. But we find in Chaucer the word in another place, "And hertely they *hurtelen* al attones."

Legend of Good Women; Cleopatra, l. 59.

It occurs twice in the "Romans of Partenay;" see the glossary. It is used with great effect by Gray—

Iron sleet of arrowy shower
Hurtles in the darkened air;—

though he obviously copies here from Shakespeare.

5014. *desgeli*. I let this word stand, though I believe it should be *desgesli*, or, better still, *desgisli*, *disgisli*, or *disgisili*, for which latter form see l. 485. It is best explained by a passage from Chaucer's Persones Tale—"precious clothing is coupable for . . . his straungeness and *disgisines*," &c. Hence *disgisili* means *strangely*, *extraordinarily*, *unusually*, *inordinately*, and is equivalent etymologically to *disguisedly;* but it should be noted that the meaning of the Old French *desguiser* is rather to *alter* than to *conceal* the outward appearance of a thing, whence *desguiser* is often used in the sense of to trim, deck out, or adorn. In the present case, the sense is, that "there was so strange and unusual a din, that all the earth quaked." In l. 485, Meliors laments that she would, if she married beneath her, "be extraordinarily disgraced." We must not connect this with the A. S. *digellice*, secretly, for this would contradict the sense in both places. The din (l. 5014) was not *secret*, but very manifest; and in l. 485 Meliors is expressing that it is open and public and unusual disgrace that she is afraid of, and that if she could keep the matter secret, all would be well.

P. 160. l. 5035. I fail to discover any alliteration in this line.

P. 167. l. 5262. *vnderston* is probably the provincial pronunciation of *vnderstonde;* thus, and only thus, can we explain the curious reading *vndersto* in l. 5533 (which is very clearly written), where the scribe has forgotten to make a stroke over the *o* to denote the *n*. Cf. note to l. 261.

P. 168. l. 5300. For *i knew* we should probably read *i know*. The letters *e* and *o* are often miswritten, one for the other.

5322. *þo*. Read "þe."—M. But I do not feel convinced that the alteration is needed. As it stands, we may translate it—"Readily towards Rome then, by the direct way;" taking *riȝtes gates* as an adverbial expression. There is some difficulty about *riȝtes;* see the glossary.

P. 170. l. 5378. "Anon then in haste he bad (men) cause his steward to come to him," &c. *Come* sometimes means *become;* this might suggest the sense, that William made the cowherd his steward, but the latter explanation is disposed of by l. 5391.

P. 172. l. 5437. This curious expression, "the emperor's mother William," meaning "the emperor William's mother," deserves notice. It is the usual old English phrase. Thus, in Chaucer's Squyeres Tale, we find

"Or elles it was the *Grekes hors Sinon*" (C. T. ed. Tyrwhitt; l. 10523).

That is, "or else it was Sinon the Greek's horse." In my opinion, it was very injudicious of later editors to substitute *Grekissch* for *Grekes;* for, with the latter reading, the line can only mean—"or else it was the Greek horse, Sinon," which makes out Sinon to be *the name of the horse!*

P. 174. l. 5516. "That had had many hard haps theretofore, and (had) been once in great trouble and misfortune." The repetition of *hadde* is quite right.

P. 175. l. 5536. *ȝif*, give; like *gif* in l. 5539 below. It is not the conjunction *ȝif* (if) in this instance.

NOTES TO "ALISAUNDER."

[N.B.—In the following notes, by the *Greek* text is meant the text of MS. No. 113 (du supplément) of the Bibliothéque du Roi, a long extract from which is given in "Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothéque du Roi," tom. xiii. p. 219, edited by M. Berger de Xivrey. By the *French* text is meant the text of MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, quoted in the same volume. By the *Latin* text (unless otherwise specified) is meant the version contained in "Historia Alexandri magni regis Macedonie de preliis," printed, according to the colophon, in A.D. 1490.]

P. 177, l. 9. *one*, i. e. Alexander; though in l. 11 the poet begins to tell first of all about his grandfather Amyntas.

21. *Twoo sonnes*. Rather *three*, viz. Alexander, Perdiccas, and Philip. Perdiccas, like Alexander, was put to death by the wiles of Eurydice, according to MS. C.C.C. 219.

22. The variations of spelling are due to the fact that the copyist has evidently made alterations of his own in order to make the significations plainer. Thus *alder* (which occurs again in l. 27) is explained by *elder*. It is very fortunate that he has been at the pains to preserve the old spelling. It must be noted that he sometimes places the *old* spelling, sometimes the *modernized* spelling, in the text. Thus, in l. 1132, we find *Dupe* altered to *deepe*, but in l. 1156 he writes *deepe*, with the old spelling *dupe* above it. I have therefore, in all cases, adopted that spelling which seems rightly to belong to the original MS.

P. 178. l. 28. Ll. 4651 and 5226 of the *Werwolf* resemble this one.

30. "Nec multo post alexander, insidiis eurydicis mat*ris* appetit*us* occumbit. Cui amintas, in scelere dep*r*ehensæ, propter communes liberos, ignarus eisdem q*ua*ndoq*ue* existiosam fore, pep*er*cerat." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 2. See also *Orosius*, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 168.

33. In this line, the cross-stroke to the initial D *is made* in the MS., showing plainly that the letter Ð was used in the original. In other places, the copyist has written the small letter ꝺ *without* the cross-stroke, as in l. 41, and elsewhere, and I have not always noticed this; for the omission of the cross-stroke is very common even in a *thirteenth* century MS.; see Mr Morris's *Genesis and Exodus* (E. E. T. S., 1865). It may be added that the copyist has two ways of making a *d*; one with a long up-stroke, i. e. ꝺ without the cross-stroke, and the other with the up-stroke curled round to the left and brought down again. *Only the former* of

these is used where ȝ is meant. This is a convenient place for observing that there is a *second copy* (inferior and with several omissions) of the first 43 lines, at a later page of the MS., viz. on fol. 16 *b*. The following variations may be noted:—In l. 2, for *thinken*, the second copy has *thynken*, with an *e* over the *y*. No doubt the original had *thenken* (the right spelling, see *Werwolf*, l. 711), and it was rendered by *thinken* or *thynken*. In l. 3, for *wheþer*, another reading is *outher*. In l. 4, for *loose* the second copy has *lose*, which is better; I am convinced that the original could not have had so many *double vowels* as abound in this copy; thus *yee* and *ooþer* in l. 1 should rather have been *ye* and *oþer*. In l. 38, for *her* the second copy has the more usual spelling *hur*.

44. In the *Werwolf*, we find the same method of concluding a paragraph, and nearly in the same words; see ll. 5396, 5466.

47. "Igitur alexander, inter prima initia regni, bellum ab illiriis, pacta mercede *et* philippo fratre dato obside, redemit. Interiecto quoque tempore, per eundem obsidem cum thebanis gratiam pacis reconciliat. Quæ res philippo maxima incrementa egregiæ indolis dedit. Si quidem thebis triennio obses habitus, prima puericiæ rudimenta in urbe seueritatis antiquæ *et* in domo epaminondæ summi *et* philosophi *et* imperatoris deposuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 2. And see *Orosius*, as above.

P. 180, ll. 87, 88. *hym betides*, *For hee*. The MS. has *hee* betides, for *hym*, with *ee* over *ym* in the latter word. The reading given in the text is the only one that can be grammatically correct.

90. "Primum bellum cum Atheniensibus gessit."—*Orosius*.

102. This date is from *Orosius*. It is right within a few years.

109. *Assyriens*, i. e. Illyrians. "Post hos, bello in illiriis (*sic*) translato, multa milia hostium cædit; urbem nobilissimam larisseam capit." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 2 *b*. So in *Orosius;* and indeed, the *Assyrians* are out of the question. The reader must expect to find the greatest confusion in the proper names; in one of the French copies, for instance, Artaxerxes is called *Arressessers*. In l. 130, we have *Larissa* called the city of the *Assyrians*.

P. 181, ll. 119, 131. In both places, the *e* in *Larissea* or *Larisse* has a slight tag below it. In Latin MSS., this denotes *æ*, and we thus have another slight indication that our author translated from the Latin. Cf. note to l. 255.

124. Over *deraine* is written, as a gloss, the later spelling *deraigne*. One or two quite unimportant variations of this kind I have omitted to mention.

133. "Inde Thessaliam non magis amore victoriæ, quam ambitione habendorum equitum Thessalorum, quorum robur ut exercitui suo admisceret, invasit."—*Orosius*, as above.

135. The MS. has *see*, with *swee* or *swa* above it, hardly legible. In l. 299, there is a similar difficult word. Considering *both* passages, the word blundered over is probably *sese*, *sesen*. Cf. *Seseden* in l. 234.

P. 182, ll. 155—170. Orosius simply says, "Igitur victis Atheniensibus, subjectisque Thessalis;" and in MS. C.C.C. 219 we merely find, "Quibus

rebus feliciter prouenientibus." That the poet has spun this out into 16 lines seems to me highly probable, and it will therefore be but a vain search to look for an original that may agree with his translation more closely. Just below we have 22 lines, 178—199, which seem to me *evidently* his own, every word of them.

172. *Arisba* or *Erubel*. In his edition of *Orosius*, Havercamp adopts the spelling *Aruba*, the common reading being *Eurucha;* we also find the spellings *Arucha*, *Erybba*, *Arymba*, &c. Compare—"Olimpiadem, neoptolemi regis molossorum filiam, uxorem ducit, conciliante nuptias fratre patrueli auctore uirginis *sarraba* rege molossorum, qui sororem olimpiadis troadam in matrimonio habebat; quæ causa illi exitium (*sic*) malorumque omnium fuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 3.

P. 183, l. 199. Cf. *Werwolf*, l. 671.

P. 184, l. 234. *Sededen* begins with a double long *s*. Wherever I have printed *ss*, it is to denote a character resembling a German *sz*.

240. "(Aruba) privatus in exilio consenuit."—*Orosius*.

P. 185, l. 248. *hampred* is doubtless the word wanted. It occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1115, &c.

255. *Comothonham*. Several MSS. of *Orosius* have "Cū mothonam urbem oppugnaret," &c.; where Cū means Cum. Hence the strange word *Comothonham*, repeated in l. 310; and hence, also, a clear proof that the poet translated from a *Latin* original, as he himself asserts in l. 458.

256. The MS. has "holde menne þere," but the alliteration shows that we must read *bolde; holde* belongs to the next line, which see.

264. *greefe*, i. e. vexation, anger; cf. *Werwolf*, 4418.

268. *areblast*. Rather, read *arblast*, which the copyist has turned into *aireblast*, i. e. *air-blast!*

P. 186, l. 284. *merken*. Probably *not* an error for *maken*, as might be thought; for the word occurs again in l. 932. See the Glossary.

291. *flocke*. Possibly an error for *folke;* yet *flocke* makes good sense. *Sonndes* or *soundes* is no doubt put for *sondes*, messengers.

292. The MS. reading "Gamus" must be a mistake for Gainus or Ganus; see *Gainus* in the Glossary.

295. *cournales;* see *Werwolf*, l. 2858.

299. The MS. has *seene* or *seeue*, with *i* over the *ee*. The right word is perhaps *sesen*, written *sesene*, and read as *seiene* by the copyist.

302. Here and elsewhere *many a* is written "many ª," with the *a* above the line, as if it did not belong to the phrase; but see *Werwolf*, ll. 3410, 3411. A large portion of the description of this siege of Methone is doubtless of the poet's own invention.

P. 187, l. 329. The outline of the story of these wars is given in *Orosius*.

P. 188, l. 347. *wonde* is no doubt the right word, *wende* being an ignorant gloss upon it, subversive of the sense.

349. MS. has *strane*, or *straue*. Perhaps it means,

"Steeds, stirred from the place, strain under men."

Otherwise, for *strane* read *stronge*, and the sense is,

"Steeds stirred from the place under strong men."

For *men under* = under men, see l. 1188.

362. *spenen* is the right reading, and is put for *spenden*, like *wen* for *wend*, &c.

P. 189, l. 391. The alteration of *Phosus* into *Φosus* is a convincing proof that the copyist took an occasional liberty with the spelling. He could not have had *Φosus* before him in an Old English MS. of the 14th century.

P. 190, l. 416. The copyist has written *stelger*, and marked it as being a word he did not understand. The words may have been run together in the older MS. *Stel ger* is simply "steel gear."

421. Here is another proof that the poet probably followed the Latin of *Orosius*. We find there the phrase—"Philomelo duce"—whence he adopted the form *Philomelo* in l. 364, and did not alter it here. Yet *Orosius* afterwards has—"sequenti prælio inter immensas utriusque populi strages Philomelus occisus est: in cujus locum Phocenses Onomarchum ducem creaverunt."

P. 191, l. 439. *ȝeme*. The MS. has either "ȝenn" or "ȝeme." The latter is right; see l. 365.

445. This line means, "that ever they paused in the strife, (though it had caused them) to die upon the field."

451. *for his grete yie*, in return for his great eye; a curious way of expressing that his vow, mentioned in l. 281, had been fulfilled.

452. Here the more historical part of the story ceases, and the romance properly begins. From this point, also, the poet translates from a different source, as explained in the Preface. Ll. 452—1092 should be compared with the first 722 lines of Mr Stevenson's edition of "The Alliterative Romance of Alexander" (Roxburghe Club, 1849); from MS. Ashmole 44. See also Gower, Conf. Amant. bk. vi.

457. This shews that the poet used more books than one to translate from. His regret that he could not trace the lineage of Nectanabus shews that his probable object in the preceding part of the poem was to trace the lineage of Alexander, and to say something about his father and grandfather.

459. *Nectanabus*; called also *Anectanabus*, *Anec*, or *Natabus*. The story of Nectanabus is utterly rejected by Lambert li Tors. See "Li Romans d'Alixandre," par Lambert li Tors et Alexandre de Bernay; herausgegeben von Heinrich Michelant: Stuttgart, 1846, p. 5.

460. This line occurs, slightly altered, in the *Werwolf*, l. 119.

463. Some such word as *kene* or *kid* must be supplied.

465. *Y-wis* may mean *prudent*, *knowing* (A.S. *ge-wis*), but as it is elsewhere *always* an adverb in *both* poems, I prefer to think that the sentence is incomplete; and that this line ought to be followed by some such line as—

"For a wel kud clerke · and koynt in his liue."

P. 192, l. 473. *But*, except.

475—483. The Latin is—"non movit militiam, neque preparavit exercitum, sed intravit cubiculum palatii sui; et deprendens concham

eream plenam aqua pluuiali, tenensque in manu virgam eream, hic per magicos incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes."

493. *nine grete nations.* The number nine may have been selected merely for the alliteration. The names of these nations vary greatly in the different copies. The "Augmi" or "Augni" (for our MS. may be read either way, on account of the *m* or *n* being here represented by a horizontal line) may perhaps be the Ἀζανοὶ of the Greek, or the "Argiri" of the Latin text. By the "Bosorii" the translator would probably mean the men of Bussorah or Bassorah; yet this city was not founded till A.D. 636. It represents the Βόσποροι of the Greek text, and possibly answers to the "Rospharіens" of the French text (MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517). The "Agiofagi"—("Agiophii" in the Latin text)—are the "Agriophagi" mentioned in the Latin MS. No. 8518 of the Bibl. du Roi:

"Another folk woneth in the west half,
That eteth never kow no kalf,
Bote of panteris and lyouns,
And that they nymeth as venesons.
Othir flesch, no othir fysch,
No othir bred, heo no haveth, y-wis.
Feorne men, and othir therby,
Clepeth heom *Agofagy*."

Weber's Metrical Romances, v. i. p. 261.

P. 193, l. 515. The Christian sentiment in this line and in l. 523, of ascribing strength to God only, is the poet's own.

I here add, by way of illustration, the speech of Nectanabus as given in the various texts.

Σὺ μέν, καλῶς καὶ ἐπιεικῶς ἣν ἐπιστεύθης φρουρὰν φυλάττων, καὶ μὴ ταῦτα λέγε. Δειλῶς γὰρ καὶ οὐ στρατιωτικῶς ἐφθέγξω. Οὐ γὰρ ἐν ὄχλῳ ἡ δύναμις, ἀλλ' ἐν προθυμίᾳ ὁ πόλεμος. Καὶ γὰρ εἷς λέων πολλὰς ἐλάφους ἐχειρώσατο. Καὶ εἷς λύκος πολλὰς ἀγέλας ποιμνίων ἐσκύλευσεν. Ὥστε οὖν σὺ πορευθῆς ἅμα τοῖς ἐν ὑποταγῇ σοι στρατιώταις τὴν ἰδίαν παράταξιν φύλαττε· λόγῳ γὰρ ἑνὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἀναρίθμητον πλῆθος πελάγει ἐπικαλύψω.—*MS. Bibl. du Roi*, No. 113 (suppl.); quoted in Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothéque du Roi; tom. xiii. p. 223.

"Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene obserua; sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Uirtus enim non heo valet in multitudine populi, sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod vnus leo multos ceruos in fugam vertit?"—*Historia Alexandri;* edition of 1490, page 1.

"Va-t-en à la garde que je t'ai commandee, et veille curieusement, et pense de bien garder ta reccomandise. Car tu n'a pas parle comme prince de chevalerie, mais comme homme paoureux. Car il n'affiert pas à gouverneur de peuple qu'il s'espouvente pour grant quantite de gent; car victoire ne gist pas en multitude de gent, mais en vigueur et force de courage. N'as tu pas veu par plusieurs fois que ung [lyon?] meit à la

fuite grant quantite de serfz [cerfz ?].[1] Aussi se peut poy contretenir la grant multitude contre les vigureux."—*MS. Bibl. du Roi;* quoted in the above vol., p. 287. See also *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson; p. 4, ll. 97—110.

P. 194, l. 532. *Fleete* certainly means *to float* here; yet the Latin has "videbat qualiter egiptii sternebant*ur* impetu classium Barbarorum." Out of this the translator has made this curious passage about the "god of Barbre," the origin of which is to be traced to a misunderstanding of the Greek text, which says, "he sees the gods of the Egyptians steering the enemies' boats, and the armies of the Barbarians being guided by them."

545. *white sendal;* "linea vestimenta."

549. *let trusse*, commanded his men to pack up.

557. *Seraphin;* so spelt in the French text. The Latin has *Serapis.*

P. 195, l. 565. *He shall hye hym againe.* The response of the oracle must be given in the words of the Greek text. It runs thus: ὁ φυγὼν βασιλεὺς ἥξει πάλιν ἐν αἰγύπτῳ, οὐ γηράσκων, ἀλλὰ νεάζων, καὶ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν πέρσας ὑποτάξει. Here the word πέρσας is ambiguous, and may mean "having destroyed" or "the Persians." M. Berger de Xivrey draws special attention to this oracle, which he considers as the basis of the whole romance. It was fulfilled, not by the return of the old man Nectanabus, but by the visit to Egypt of his son, the young man Alexander. It is accordingly alluded to again in the passage where Alexander, seeing the great image (mentioned by our author in l. 568), inquires whom it represents. He is told it represents Nectanabus, upon hearing which he falls down and kisses the feet of it. Cf. *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 1135; *Weber's Metr. Rom.* vol. i. p. 67.

574. Here begins a new paragraph—"Quomodo Anectanab*us* ascendit palaciu*m* ad Olimpiam reginam;" and in Mr Stevenson's edition is the heading—"Secundus passus Alexandri."

584. "Aue *regina* Macedonie! dedignat*us* ei dicere *domina.*"

P. 196, l. 594. "Uerbum regale dixisti, qua*n*do egiptios nomi*n*asti."

596. The MS. has *worclich*, a mere error for *wortlich*, which is another spelling of *worthlich;* cf. l. 1024.

601. *ludene of þat language*, the speech (or meaning) of that language.

"Sum understandis in a stounde · the steven (*voice*) of the briddis," &c.
Alexander, ed. Stev. l. 252.

Compare also the passage in Chaucer about Canace understanding the language of birds.

—sche understood wel euery thing
That eny foul may in his *lydne* sayn,
And couthe answer him in his *lydne* again.
The Squyeres Tale, Pars Secunda; ll. 88—90.

613. We should rather read, *Too defend þee fro doole.*

616. *Imped*, set; lit. engrafted. "Tabula*m* erea*m* *et* eburnea*m*

[1] The editor has a note—"On reconnaît là les idées provenant de la supériorité si marquée de la chevalerie, au moyen âge, sur les serfs et sur les vilains." True, no doubt; but *serfz* probably means *stags* in this passage, nevertheless.

mixtam auro *et* argento." Cf. "His ars-table he tok oute sone;" *Weber, Metr. Rom.*, vol. i. p. 17. It was, I suppose, an astrolabe-planisphere.

620. The contents of the circles are wrongly given. They should be (1.) The 12 intelligences—"duodeci*m* intelligen*t*ias"—"les xii. intelligences, c'est assavoir les xii. entendemens;" (2.) the signs of the zodiac, called in MS. Ashmole "a dusan of bestes;" and (3.) the courses of the sun and moon.

P. 197, l. 628. *forcer*, a box; "une boiste d'ivoire." It contained a species of horoscope, in which were the seven planets, to each of which was assigned a particular kind of stone. Thus in l. 634 we should rather read, "*Seuen* stones," but the poet has written *Foure* for the sake of alliteration, regardless of facts. The seven stones are mentioned in the Latin MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 8518. "Jovem quippe viseres aërino lapide nuncupatum. Solem cristallo, Lunam adamante, Martem dici sub lapide hematite, Mercurium smaragdo. Venus autem saphirina erat; Saturnus in ophite. At vero horoscopus lygdinus erat." The Greek text has the same.

656—674. This passage is not in the Greek, Latin, or French texts, and was inserted by the translator from another source (see note to l. 837), to account for Philip's ill-will against Olympias. The interpolation is needless, as a dream is contrived by Nectanabus expressly for Philip's information soon afterwards; see ll. 807—874. The present passage is also omitted in MS. Ashmole 44.

P. 199, l. 694. "Neq*ue* iuvenis neq*ue* senex, et barba*m* canis habens ornata*m*. Und*e* si placet, esto illi pa*r*ata," &c. The "silver horns," however, are essential, as being the chief characteristic of the god Ammon.

"With tachid in his for-toppe · *twa tufe hornes.*"

Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 319.

698. *glisiing* is another form of *glisiande*, glistening.

700. Supply the word *þee*. *Nye*, to draw nigh, occurs in ll. 739, 817; and *nye þee* in l. 764.

702. "Si hec videro, non vt pr*o*phetam nec diuinu*m*, sed vt deu*m* ipsu*m* adorabo."

710-744. This passage is much amplified. It is much shorter in the Ashmole MS., and the Latin merely has—"euellit herbas, tere*n*sq*ue* eas *et* succos illaru*m* tulit, *et* fecit incantationes p*er* diabolica figme*n*ta; vt in eadem nocte Olimpia deu*m* Hamo*n* co*n*cu*m*bente*m* secum videret, dicente*m*q*ue* ei post co*n*cubitu*m*, mulier, concepisti defensore*m* tuu*m*."

P. 200, l. 726. *riue*. The MS. has *riue*, with *f* over the *u*, rightly explaining *riue* by the modern word *rife*.

738. *Or-trowed*, lit. over-trowed, and hence, suspected, imagined. Compare *ouer-trowe* in the Glossary.

756. *No nooþer*, none other, nothing else. So also *þi narmes* for *þin armes* (*Werwolf*, l. 666).

P. 201, l. 760. *Too waite at a window*, to watch at a window. A favourite phrase of our author's. See *Werwolf*, ll. 779, 2982, 3030, 3300.

764. The line would run as well again if *þee nye* were altered to *nye*

þes. Compare—"Nam ille deus in figura draconis ad te veniet; *et* exinde humanam formam accipiens; *et* mea similitudine apparebit."

770. "Si veritatem probare valebis, te quasi patrem pueri habebo." But this is sometimes curiously altered, as in the following:

"Then salle I cherische the with chere · as thou *my child* were,
Loute the lovely and love · alle my lyfe days."
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 368.

774, 775. These two fine lines certainly surpass the bald statement—"circa autem primam vigiliam noctis."

779. *slaked on wightes*, fell relaxingly upon men. *Wightes*, not *mightes*, is the right reading. Compare—

"Qwen it was metyn to the merke · that *menn* ware taryst,[1]
And *folke* was on thair firste slepe · and it was furth evyne."
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 374.

781. *a dragones drem*, a dragon's droning. *Drem* or *dream* is sometimes a loud, droning sound. The Latin has—"et *sibilando* contra cubiculum Olimpie cepit transuolare." The French has "ala *sufflant* entour le lit." Cf. ll. 982, 985.

782. *makes his lidene*, i. e. talks softly. Compare *ludene* above, l. 601.

P. 202, l. 802. *Deemes*, i. e. *will* deem. Philip had been from home for some time; she wonders what he will say when he returns.

808. "Euellens herbas, triturauit eas *et* tulit succum illarum, apprehendensque auem marinam, cepit super eam incantare, illam de succo herbarum liniens."

813. Compare—

"And [with?] the wose of the wede · hire wengis anoyntes."
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 413.

817. The phrase *nied þe night* occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 770.

P. 203, l. 824. The Latin has "deus *Hamon;*" and "Amon" is here mentioned in MS. Ashmole.

826. The word *deede* was miswritten *deene* owing to confusion with *deerne*. Compare—

"þat *deede derne* · do no mon scholde."
Piers Plowman, ed. Skeat, A. x. 199.

In the Latin follows—"quod videret os uulue consuere et annulo aureo consignare *et* in ipso annulo erat lapis vbi erat sculptum caput leonis et currus solis *et* gladius peracutus."

837. *nyed*, approached (a favourite word with our author), is almost certainly the word required here. The following passage is worth notice here.

"Philipe aussi long temps apres ses nopces songea quil seelloit le ventre de sa femme dung grant seel auquel estoit graue lymaige dung lyon; par lequel songe, comme plusieurs eussent expose a phellippe quil

[1] Read "ta ryst," i. e. to rest.

se donnast garde de sa femme, Aristander le deuin affermoit quelle auoit chargie denfant. Car on ne seelle point les choses vuydes; et que elle se delieueroit dung enfant, plain de couraige et ayant nature de lyon. ¶ Deuant ce on auoit veu vng dragon couchant empres olympie qui lors dormit, la quelle chose Refroida tresfort Phelippe enuers elle." MS. Douce 318, chap. iii. The same MS. informs us further that Philip avoided Olympias, because he feared magic or poison; that he sent to Delphos, and was told to sacrifice to the god "Amon," and that he would lose an eye as a punishment for having beheld Amon with her; all which is related by Plutarch. But Eratosthenes says, his mother only told Alexander the secret of his birth on his setting out on his expedition. A similar story is told of the mother of Scipio Africanus. Plutarch explains the dragon story by saying that Olympias belonged to a tribe that religiously cherished serpents of great size. Justin says, Olympias dreamt of having conceived a serpent. "Vincent lystorial" (i. e. Vincent of Beauvais, in his "Speculum Historiale") ascribes the engendrure of Alexander to Neptanabus, but this is flat against Holy Scripture, since in the book of Maccabees [bk. 1. chap. i. v. 1] Alexander is expressly called the "son of Philip." All this, and more, is to be found in the above-mentioned MS., chap. iii.

853. *þe sonne course of þe sell*, the course of the sun upon the seal. MS. Ashmole has "the course one the sonne."

P. 204, l. 855. *sonne rist*, rising of the sun, the far East; "ad orientem, vnde sol egreditur."

860. The MS. has *boldes*, but we must read *holdes*; cf. note to l. 256.

873. *meting*, dream. See the Glossary.

875. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Qualiter Anectanabus in figura draconis antecedebat Philippum in prelio deuincendo *et* hostes."

879. *lasches*, lashes, i. e. heavy strokes. Cf. the phrase "to deal dints;" *Werwolf*, 3440.

883. *Deraide*, acted madly or terribly. It is the past tense, not the past participle, but we ought perhaps to supply *hym* after it.

P. 205, l. 895. Here *loren* is correctly glossed by *lorne*, i. e. lost.

900-953. The whole of this passage is an interpolation from another source, and belongs rather to history than to the romance. The drift of it agrees with the account given by Orosius.

901. The MS. has—"Was going too þe ouer Greece," &c. But the word "þe" must be corrupt, being an article without a substantive, and, moreover, a verb is required. I propose *ride* as very probably being the correct reading, as it is the expression used in l. 5471 of the *Werwolf* in a similar case. If the first two letters of *ride* were erased, *de* might easily be confused with *ðe* or *þe*.

903. The Athenians stopped him by occupying the pass of Thermopylæ. "Athenienses . . . angustias Thermopylarum . . . occupavere." *Orosius*, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 171.

904. *to keueren him gate*, to recover (or obtain) for himself a passage.

908. *þe entres;* the entries, i. e. the pass. *Enforced*, strengthened, forcibly occupied.

909. We must read either *þo marches*, or *þat marche;* for the plural form *þo* see l. 912. The MS. has *þat marches.*

911. *agrised* is a gloss upon *agrise*, the form used by our author.

913. Philip, failing to harm his enemies, cruelly attacks his own allies; "paratum in hostes bellum vertit in socios." *Orosius.*

P. 206, l. 923. Besides *of*, we almost require to insert *was.*

"Hee wrathfull *of* wille *was* · wronglich þare."

928. Lines 2621, 2647 in the *Werwolf* resemble this line.

933. The MS. has *traie*, with *be* written before it above the line; perhaps *traie* is the right reading, and *betraie* the gloss upon it.

934. "Conjuges liberosque omnium sub corona vendidit, templa quoque universa subvertit, spoliavitque," &c. *Orosius.*

940. *He ne laft no lenger*, he remained no longer; cf. l. 950.

942. *fares*, goes. This makes sense, but I suspect the right word is *cayres.*

944. "Post hæc in Cappadociam transiit, ibique bellum pari perfidia gessit, captos per dolum finitimos reges interfecit, totamque Cappadociam imperio Macedoniæ subdidit." *Orosius.* The editor (Havercamp) remarks that this is false, and that *Cappadociam* is a mere mistake for *Chalcidicam* or *Chalcidem;* and he is doubtless right, as the siege of Olynthus in Chalcidice must be meant.

P. 207, l. 954. At about this line we drop the history and return to the romance, taking it up from l. 899.

965. "Nevertheless I know (it) not yet, nay, as I trow." *Not* = *ne wot.* This is awkward enough. It represents the Latin—"Peccasti, inquit, *et* non peccasti, quia violentiam a deo passa es."

974. This line occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1416; cf. also l. 5250. It should be observed that a new paragraph begins here in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo Anectanabus in figura*m* draconis apparuit Philippo i*n* conuiuio, et osculatus est Oli*m*piam."

980. Cf. *Werwolf*, l. 4906.

P. 208, l. 982. See note to l. 781, and cf. l. 985. The Latin has "fortiter sibilabat."

992. *liuand lud*, living man; a favourite phrase of our author's; see l. 790, and *Werwolf*, ll. 1690, 3678, 5429.

994. *greefly bigo*, grievously beset; *bigo* is glossed by *bigone.*

999. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo auis generavit ouu*m* in gremio philippi, d*e* quo co*n*fracto exiuit serpens, qui statim mortu*us* est."

1004. "He laid an egg in his lap, and then hurries away." *Hee* might stand for *she*, but *him* is always masculine. We should certainly have expected to find the feminine, as in the Latin and in MS. Ashmole 44.

1008. *to-shett*, i. e. "brast all esoundir," as MS. Ashmole has it. Cf. *too-clef* in the next line.

P. 209, l. 1013. *had in his hed*, got his head in. *Deide* is the right spelling, and *dyed* the gloss.

1022. *Raigne* is the old spelling, *reigne* the gloss.

1024. *wortlych* is found as an occasional spelling of *worthlych*; *worthly* is a gloss. Cf. l. 596.

1025. "Ere he come unto the country that he came from."

1026. *doluen and ded*; more correctly, *ded and doluen*, i. e. dead and buried. Cf. *Werwolf*, 5252, 5280.

1030. *roum* may mean *room*, space; and hence, a while.

1031-2. "Ere he may wend with his host to his (own) land where he was fostered and fed—it befalls him to die."

1033. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, without a heading, and in MS. Ashmole 44 is the heading "Tercius Passus Alexandri."

1034. A portion of the story is here lost. I might have supplied the omission from MS. Ashmole 44 (see Stevenson's edition, ll. 525—672), but the great length of this passage and the consideration that to supply the omission from another *alliterative* poem might lead to confusion between the two, were reasons against this. Or it might have been supplied from the Latin, beginning at—"Appropi*n*quan*s* aut*em* temp*us* parien*d*i" —and ending—"Audiens hec Oli*m*pia terrore p*er*territa vocauit Anectanabum, et dixit." It seemed to me, however, that a quotation from the French would be more acceptable, and the omission is supplied therefore from MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, as edited in the 13th vol. of "*Notices des Manuscrits*," &c.; pp. 297-299. The following words may require explanation:—

chey, fell;—*croulla*, shook;—*noif*, snow (explained by *neige* by the editor of the French text);—*targa*, tarried, delayed;—*me feust*, perhaps we should read *ne feust*, for the Latin has, "cogitaui q*uod* infantul*us* iste nullaten*us* nutriatur," and the Ashmole MS. has, "That this frute shall haue na fostring · ne be fed nouthire;"—*vair* (*Lat.* "glaucus"), gray; MS. Ashmole has "ȝelow;"—*sestature*, stature;—*non pour quant*, nevertheless;—*ysnellete*, quickness (cf. O.E. *snell*);—*doubta moult*, feared greatly.

P. 211, l. 1038. "He was very well pleased with his noble deeds, but (then) he changed his demeanour," &c.

1041. The MS. has *maried*, with *r* over the *i*. Hence, the old word was *marred*, altered to *maried*; for *marred* is a common word with our author. *Marred too care*, vexed unto great anxiety, is a not very intelligible phrase, and therefore liable to alteration. It means much the same as *wofull in hert* in the next line.

1043, 1044. Blank spaces are left in the MS. for the two half-lines. Compare—

> "Be noȝt afriȝt," quoth the freke · "ne afrayd nouthir,
> It sall the noy noȝt a neg · nane of his thoȝtes."
>
> *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 675.

In which passage, *a neg* is equivalent to *an eg*. There is nothing lost (save a half-line) between ll. 1044 and 1045.

P. 212, l. 1054. *fonde I, mee tell*, I ask (you to) tell me.

1055. Cf. "Quat sterne is at ȝe stody one · quare stekis it in hevyne." *Alex.* l. 683.

1061. *inkest*, blackest. The MS. is rather indistinct; the "*kest*" is plain, but the beginning of the word is represented by a straight horizontal stroke (elsewhere used for *m* or *n*), with a dot over the very commencement of it. *Enke* = *ink* occurs in "*Meidan Maregrete*," ed. Cockayne, stanza 61; and in Wycliffe's version of the Bible. The Latin merely has, "Sequere me hora noctis," &c.

1076-7. Compare the version in MS. Ashmole—

"Alexander, athill sonne · (quoth Anec his syre),
Loo yondir, behald over thi hede · and se my hatter werdis (*dire destinies*),
The evylle sterne of Ercules · how egirly it soroȝes,
And how the mode Marcure · makis sa mekill joy,
Loo ȝondir, the gentill Jubiter · how jolyle he schynes." (ll. 701-705.)

1080-1. *Hee* pored, i.e. Nectanabus. *Hee* braides, i.e. Alexander. Perhaps there are a few lines lost between these two. Compare—

"The domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe,
Thik and thrathly am I thret · and thole mone I sone
The slaȝter of myne awen son · as me was sett ever."
Unethis werped he that worde · the writt me recordis,
Thanne Alexander as sone · was at him behind,
And on the bake with slike a bire · he bare with his handis
That doune he drafe to the depest · of the dike bothom.
Alexander, ll. 706—712.

The Latin has—"Fata mea mihi propinquam mortem a filio meo comminantur. Taliter eo videntе, accessit ad eum propinquius alexander," &c.

P. 213, l. 1092. *sounk or hee wer*, ere he was sunken.

1094. This corresponds with l. 722 of MS. Ashmole 44. Though there is not the slightest hint of any omission in Mr Stevenson's edition, there must be several pages lost in the Ashmole MS. between this line and the next; for the story leaps at once from the dying words of Nectanabus to the duel of Alexander and Nicolas, entirely omitting the rest of the story as told in the Greaves MS. Hence from l. 1094 to the end is the *only existing copy in alliterative verse* of this portion of the story. It does not go quite far enough to supply the whole of the *lacuna* in the Ashmole MS., but it nearly does so, contributing 155 lines towards it.

1094. *hee* in this line is probably put for *hue*, i.e. *she*, the word *soule* being feminine.

1095. *armed*, fortified, bold.

1098. The French has—"et prist maintenant le corps et le porta au palais. Quant la royne le vit, si lui dist, 'Filz Alixandre, que aportes tu?'"

1103—1105. These words belong to *Alexander*. The French has—"En ycelle maniere que tu souffris que il feusse mon pere, à tort, pour ce que tu ne le me deis, l'as tu fait occire à tort."

1107. *heate*, false spelling for *hete*, command.

1110. The initial T of this letter is rather larger than usual, and a new paragraph begins here. At this point I should conjecture that the *Quartus Passus* of the Ashmole MS. may have commenced. In our MS. "A HORSS" is here written in the margin, to intimate that the story of Bucephalus begins here. In the Latin, a new paragraph begins here with the heading—"Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia aduxit equum bucifallum ad philippum regem macedonum."

P. 214, l. 1114. *a hedde as a bole*, a head like a bull; an allusion to the etymology of Bucephalus, from βοῦς, an ox, and κεφαλή, a head. The name, however, really means a horse branded with a mark like a bull's head; see Liddell and Scott's Greek Lexicon. I here add the description of Bucephalus as given in the Old High German poem of Alexander, written in the twelfth century by a priest named Lamprecht, as a specimen of that version. For the translation I crave indulgence, as it may not be quite correct. The letter *ſ* (*italic*) is used instead of a letter in Weismann's edition which resembles a *z* with a slight tag to it.

daſ ros daſ was wunderlich	The horse was wonderfully
irre unde vil strítich,	wilful and very full-of-strife,
snel unde starc von gescafnisse,	quick and strong of shape,
des sult ir sin gwisse.	(of it should ye be certain).
iſ héte unzallíche craft	He had unspeakable strength,
unde ummázlíche macht;	and measureless might;
iſ irbeiſ di lúte unde irslúch,	he bit people and slew (them),
iſ was freislích gnúch.	he was terrible enough.
ime was sín munt,	To him, was his mouth
daſ wil ih ú tún kunt,	(that will I make known to you)
alseime esele getán.	just-like an ass's made.
di nasen wáren ime wíte úf getán.	His nostrils were wide opened,
síne óren wáren ime lanc,	his ears were to him long,
daſ houbit magir unde slanc.	his head meagre and lank.
síne ougen wáren ime allirvare	his eyes were to him of-all-colours
glích eineme fliegendin are.	like (those of a) flying eagle.
Sín hals was ime lockechte,	His neck was to him covered-with-locks,
ih wéne iſ wére lewin geslehte.	I ween he was of a lion's kind.
úf den goffen hátiſ rindis hár,	On his shanks had he heifer's hair,
an den síten liebarten mál:	on his sides leopards' spots:
só sarrazín ioh cristin man	like Saracen, so-also Christian man
nie nihein bezzer ros gwan.	never a better horse won.

Alexander, vom Pfaffen Lamprecht, von Dr H. Weismann, 1850, p. 16. See also the description of Bucephalus in Weber's *Met. Rom.*, vol. i. p. 33.

1130. *hym* may refer to the spokesman of the messengers; but *hem* would be a better reading.

1131. The French has—"si dist à ses ministres, Receves ce cheval, et le metes en une grant quage de fer, et illeuc l'encloys," &c. *He comanded bygge*, would mean "he commanded (men) to build."

1144. *Who prickes* is surely the right reading; compare—"celle nuit songa li roys que une voys li disoit, que *cil qui chevaucheroit* se cheval regneroit en son rengne apres sa mort."

P. 215, l. 1158. *in theyr looke*, in their sight.

1159. *freaten*, false spelling for *freten*, eaten.

1161. The MS. may be read as "iust*es*" or "iuys*es*," the word being indistinct. The former, however, is certainly meant.

1162. The line ends with the letter *b* followed by a space; *beaste* is the spelling in l. 1130.

1167. *abowed*, like *alouted* (for which see *Werwolf*, 3716, 3721), should perhaps be followed by the word *to*.

P. 216, l. 1186. *lete hym worthe*, let him be, let him do as he liked. See note to *Werwolf*, l. 3597.

1193. The MS. has *stynt*, with *ed* above it to the right. Thus *stynt* is the old reading, *stynted* the gloss.

1201. We learn from the Latin that Philip grants Alexander's request by giving him a royal chariot and a company of knights, and the story of the duel between Alexander and Nicolaus or Nicholas follows shortly after. But our author again digresses from the romance story at this point, and takes up the history of Orosius.

P. 217, l. 1226. The story of the Finding of the Cross by Helen, the mother of Constantine, is well known, and is here alluded to.

1231. This line begins with "*For* Philip," but the *For* is redundant, as it appears in the line above. For "*to* wynne" we should probably read "wynne," as the *to* is inserted above the line by the copyist, who may not have known that infinitives are often used without it.

1233, 1234. "For that, in treason or guile, none should rob the man," &c.

P. 218, l. 1241. The conclusion answers to the passage in Orosius—"Philippus vero, post longam et irritam obsidionem, ut pecuniam quam obsidendo exhauserat, prædando repararet, piraticam adgressus est." *Orosius*, lib. iii., cap. xiii., ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 174. We may readily imagine that the poet, after a description of Philip's fleet and piratical expeditions, would, on arriving at the passage—"ad Scythiam quoque cum Alexandro filio prædandi intentione pertransiit"—revert to Alexander's exploits at the mention of his name. No doubt also, instead of giving the historical account, he must here have taken up the romance again by relating Alexander's duel with Nicolas; for which see Mr Stevenson's edition and Weber's *Metrical Romances*.

But it may fairly be observed, that the portion of the Romance exhibited in this fragment is, in a certain sense, complete. The whole Romance may be divided into three parts: (1.) the infancy of Alexander; (2.) his acts; (3.) his death. The first of these is contained in the first 1201 lines of the fragment, and lines 1202—1249 do not properly belong to the Romance at all. To add a sketch of the remaining two parts is inexpedient, on account of the great length of the second part. The first part is contained in the first 37 pages of Weber, whilst the whole Romance occupies 327 pages.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

ABBREVIATIONS, &c.

Dan. Danish.—Du. Dutch.—F. French.—G. German.—Lat. Latin.—O.N. Old Norse or Icelandic.—A.S. or S. Anglo-Saxon.—Su.G. Suio-Gothic (Ihre's Glossary). —Prompt. Parv. Promptorium Parvulorum (ed. Way, Camden Soc.).—P. Pl. Piers Plowman.—Ch. Chaucer.—Roq. Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane.—Wycl. Gloss. Wycliffite English Glossary.—*adj.* adjective, &c.

The following are used in a special sense—*v.* a verb in the infinitive mood; *pr. s.* present tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.* present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. s.* past tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. pl.* past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by 1 *p.* and 2 *p.* Also *imp.* is used for the imperative mood, and *pp.* for the past or passive participle.

NOTE. Numbers with an *obelus* (†) prefixed, refer to the "Alisaunder."

The numbers refer to the *lines* of the two poems. For an account of the method of reference in the former edition, see note at the end of this index.

A-, throughout the poem, is *generally* disjoined from the word of which it forms a prefix or part, and this is universally the practice in MSS. of ancient English poetry. In most, if not all, words of Saxon origin it represents and is equivalent to the S. *on*, *an*, *of*, or *af*, as *aboute*, *a-doun*, *a-drad*, *a-ioyned*, *a-liue*, *a-nizt*, *a-slepe*, *a-wey*, *a-wondred*, &c. The same rule holds good in other branches of the Gothic language. See Ihre and Wachter. —M.

A, *int.* ah! 602, 663, 845, 928, &c.

A, 2 *p. s. imp.* have, 978, 1177.

Abaie, 206, Abaye, 46, Baie, 35, } *n.* F. bay. A term borrowed from the F. hunting phrase, *être aux abbois*, to stand at bay. See *abbois* in Cotgrave, and *abash* in Wedgwood.

A-bate, *v.* to abate, 1141.

A-beye, *v.* S. to atone for, 2790. Cf. *abye* in Chaucer.

A-bide, *v.* S. to wait for, await, tarry for, 1131, 1732, 2269, 3072.

Abowed to, bowed down to, †1167.

A-buschid, *pp.* F. in ambush, 3634.

Ac, 106, &c. Ak, 678, Ek, 715, } *conj.* S. but.

A-chape, 1248, A-schape, 1671, 1855, 3013, } *v.* F. to escape; *pp.* a-chaped, 2805; a-schaped, 2341, 2816; a-schapet, 2549.

Acorde, *v.* F. to agree, 2657. Ch.

A-cord, *n.* F. agreement, 2964. Ch.

A-coupyng, 3438, Coupyng, 3602, } *n.* F. violent

encounter. O. F. *acoper*, heurter, frapper au côtè. Roq.

Acoyed, *pt. s.* enticed, 56. Ch. *See* Coies.

A-cuntred, *pt. pl.* F. encountered, 3602.

A-day, 190, } in a day, in the
A-daye, 610, } day-time.

A-doteþ, *pr. s.* grows silly, 2054. *See* Doted.

A-doun, *adv.* down, 1073, 1244. "See Taylor's Note on Tooke's Diversions of Purley, v. I. p. ix. ed. 8vo."—M.

Adouted, *pp.* F. feared, dreaded, † 33, † 247, † 400.

A-drad, 1980, 2005, } *pp.* S. afraid,
Adradde, 1783, } terrified. A.S.
A-dredde, 4034, } *on-drǽdan.*

A-fraied, *pp.* afraid, 2158.

A-friȝt, *pp.* frightened, 2784. A.S. *frihtan.*

Agast, *pp.* aghast, terrified, 1778.

A-gayn, *adv.* S. again, 395. *See* A-ȝayne.

A-gayn, 233, } *prep.* S. against,
A-geynes, 1341, } towards. *See* A-ȝeynes.

A-gelt. *See* A-gult.

A-greþed, 52, } *pp.* dressed, pre-
A-greiþed, 1598, } pared, made ready. *See* Greiþe.

A-greued, *pp.* grieved, 641, 2116. [Miswritten *a-greues*, in l. 1076.]

A-grise, *pp.* afraid, terrified, 1743, † 911, † 986. Ch. Cf. A.S. *a-grísan*, to fear.

Agult, *v.* to offend, sin against, 4401; *pp.* a-gelt, 4391. A.S. *a-giltan.*

A-hiȝt, *pt. s.* was called, 586. *See* Hiȝt.

Ai, *n.* S. an egg, † 1004, † 1007.

Aie, *n.* S. awe, fear, † 1243.

A-ioyned, *pp.* F. adjoining, near, 1753.

Ak. *See* Ac.

A-knowe, *pp.* S. Always joined with the verb *ben*, to be, as "*was* aknowe," 421; "ich *am* aknowe," 4391; "we *be* aknowe," 4788. *To be aknowe* = to be aware, to acknowledge, confess. "Beeñ a-knowe wylfully. *Confiteor.* Be a-knowe a-geyne wylle. *Fateor.*" Prompt. Parv. Cf. A.S. *on-cnáwan.*

Al, Alle, *adj.* S. all. "To write correctly *al* should be used for the *sing. nom.* and *alle* for the *pl.* (as the S. *eal* and *ealle*) but the rule is often violated, particularly in MSS. of the 14th and subsequent centuries. This observation might be extended to a large class of adjectives and substantives which have now lost their final syllables."—M. *Att alle*, *At al*, in all things, 283, 597. *Al bothe*, both of them, where *al* is an expletive, 851. *Al a niȝt*, all one night, all night, 2215. *And see* Algate, Alway.

Alday, all day, 1682.

Alden, *pp.* holden, 1875. *See* Halde.

Alder, elder, † 22.

Alder-, *gen. pl.* of all. Used only with an adjective in the superl. degree. *Alder-aldust*, eldest of all, † 27. *Alderfirst*, *Alder-formest*, first of all, 3345, 4884.

Aldes, *pr. s.* holds, 441. *See* Halde.

A-legget, *pp.* F. alleviated, allayed, 1034. See *Allay* in Wedgwood.

A-leide, *pt. s.* S. abolished, put down, 5240.

Algate, Al-gate, in all ways, by all means, always, 649, 948, 1064. Ch.

A-liue, alive, 4235, 5279. [A.S. *on life* (Mat. 27. 63), which are two separate words.]

A-liȝt, *pt. s.* alighted, 399, 3923.

Almauns, Germans, 1165.

A-losed, *pp.* F. praised, renowned, † 139, † 174, † 331, † 577. *See* Loos. Ch.

Alouten, *v.* to bow down to, † 852; *pt. s.* a-louted, bowed down, made obeisance, 3721. A.S. *hlútan.*

Als, 996, 3543, } also. *Alse swiþe,*
Alse, 163, 2503, } as quickly as may be, very quickly, 3158. [A.S. *eall-swá,* whence O. E. *al-so, alse,* and *als,* now contracted into *as,* the words *as* and *also* being etymologically identical.]

Alto-shiuered, broke in pieces, 3603. See note to l. 3884.

Al-way, *adv.* all the while, 345.

Alwes, *n. pl.* S. 371. *Hal alwes* = all hallows, all saints.

Amased, *pp.* distracted, confounded, 686. *See* Mase.

Amendis, *n. pl.* amends, 488, 493, 3919.

A-meruailed, *pp.* F. astonished, 3857.

Amiddes, amidst, † 834. Ch.

Amonges, amongst, † 59. Ch.

An, *put for* And, 445, 884, 1538.

An, *put for* On, *in phrase* wel an fiue myle = nearly five miles, 5110.

And, *conj.* if, 3803, 4168. [In l. 3803 it is written "&."]

Anger, *n.* anxiety, sorrow, 552. A.S. *ange.*

An-honged, *pp.* S. hung up, 4773. Ch.

A-niȝt, 2920, } by night, by nights,
A-niȝtes, 785, } at night. Ch.

Anker, *n.* anchor, 568.

A-non, Anon, *adv.* immediately, 813, 913. *Anon riȝt, Anon riȝtes,* immediately, 273, 235.

Antresse (? Aunteres), *pr. s.* adventures, ventures, 1028. *See* Aunter.

A-paraile, 5028, } apparel.
A-parrayl, 3224, }

Aparaylde hem, apparelled themselves, 1146.

A-paied, 1883, 5358, } *pp.* pleased,
Apaiȝed, 1871, 4007, } contented.
Apayed, 1, 1314, }
See Paide.

Apeire, *v.* F. to impair, injure, † 1244; *pp.* a-peyred, marred, 933. "Appeyryn, or make wors." Prom. Parv. Ch.

Apertly, A-pertli, *adv.* evidently, plainly, 1, 4706. Ch.

Apes, 2299.

Arad, *pp.* divined, explained, † 647. *See* Arede.

Araie, 3367, } *n.* F. array,
Aray, 1597, 1601, } order.

Araie, *v.* F. to array, dispose troops in order, 3561; *pp.* a-raied, 1926, 1942; a-raid, 1934; a-raiȝed, 3375, 3563; arayed, 1153.

Are, *adv.* S. ere, before, 226; *superl.* arst, q. v. *See* Er.

Are-blast, *n.* F. arblast, a kind of crossbow, † 268. From Lat. *arcus* and *balista.*

Areche, *v.* S. to reach, † 441.

Arede, *v.* to divine, expound, † 573; to read, † 838; *pp.* arad, q.v. A.S. *a-rédian.*

A-redili, *adv.* S. readily, easily, 5006, 5026, 5230.

A-reise, *v.* S. to raise, 4342.

Aren, are; 2 *p. pl.* 2665; 3 *p. pl.* 615. *See* Arn *and* Ben.

Arere, *v.* S. to raise, † 360; *pt. pl.* a-rered, 2645. See *Wycl. Gloss.*

Arewe, *n.* S. an arrow, 885.

Arise. *See* A-ros.

Armed, *pp.* fortified, emboldened, courageous, † 1095.

Armure, armour, 3769.

Arn, are; 2 *p. pl.* 106, 3123;

3 *p. pl.* 1694, 5131. *See* Aren *and* Ben.

Arnd, errand, 5287. *See* Erand.

A-ros, *pt. s.* arose, 810, 2744, 3270; arise, 2737; *pp.* arise, 1297. *The form* arise = arose *occurs in both texts of* Layamon, l. 25988.

Artou, 5157, } art thou.
Artow, 1250, }

Arst, *superl. adv.* first, before, 2737, 3046, 4154, 4863, 5403; at arst = at first, i. e. for the first time, 1028.

As = has, 2029.

A-saie, *v.* F. to essay, try, 3754; *pp.* a-saide, 637, 4984.

A-saute, Asaute, *n.* F. an assault, † 95, † 145, † 262; *pl.* a-sautes, 2708; a-sawtes, 4221.

A-schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 1035.

A-schape. *See* A-chape.

Aschis, *n. pl.* S. ashes, 4368.

Aschried, *pt. s.* 3895, } cried
A-schrized, *pt. s.* 3827, } out to,
Ascried, *pt. pl.* 3814, }
called out to. O. Fr. *escrier*. Cf. *ascry* in Ch.

A-seged, *pp.* F. besieged, 4224.

A-segned, *pp.* F. assigned, 581. Cf. A-signed *in* l. 3627.

Asele, *v.* F. to seal, † 829.

A-sembled, *pp.* F. assembled, 1120, 1288; *pt. s.* a-sembled to, attacked, 3425; *pt. pl.* a-sembled, met in a hostile manner, encountered, 3409; a-sembleden, 3815. Cf. Sembul.

A-sent, *n.* F. assent, 1300.

A-sent, *v.* F. to assent, 482, 2692; *pp.* a-sented, 538.

Asise, *n.* F. site, situation, 4451.

A-slepe, S. asleep, 792, 798, 839. *Spelt* a-slape, 1995.

A-spie, *v.* F. to spy after, watch after, 774; *pp.* a-spied, 2577.

A-spyes, *n. pl.* F. spies, 860.

Assone as, as soon as, 4345.

Astate, *n.* F. state, condition, 5376. O. F. *estat*. Ch.

A-stente, *v.* S. to stop, 1527. *See* Stint.

Astit, *adv.* very soon, 3943. *See* Tit.

A-stoneyd, *pp.* F. astonished, 880.

Astow, hast thou, 4724.

A-strangeled, *pp.* strangled, 150. O. F. *estraindre*.

Aswiþe, as soon as might be, very soon, 3555, 3811. *See* Swiþe.

A-teyned, *pt. s.* F. extended, 5498.

A-tir, *n.* F. attire, dress, 1721, 3183; equipment for battle, 1147; — atyr, 1428.

A-tired, *pp.* F. equipped, 1228. *See* A-tyred.

A-tiryng, *n.* dress, apparel, 1941.

Atling, *n.* preparation, a getting ready, † 268.

Attele, } *v.* to go towards, ap-
Attely, } proach, 205; to conjecture, aim at, judge, 404; 1 *p. pr.* atteli (= attele i), I intend, I design, 3220; 3 *p. pr.* attles, goes towards, † 109; *pt. s.* atteled, guessed, conjectured, 813; attlede, 861, 941, 1015; attelede, went towards, 1760; *pt. pl.* etteleden, went towards, 272. North E. and Sc. *ettle*, O. N. *ætla*, to aim at, intend, design.

Atte, Att, at the; *in the following. Att best, Atte best*, at the best, 1142, 1575, 4121 (cf. *atte best* in l. 4283 with *at te best* in the line following); *atte cherche*, at the church, 1961; *atte deþe*, 1511; *atte fulle*, 4916; *atte last*, at the last, 1389; *atte roche*, at the rock, 2367; in all which cases the article seems to be comprehended in the second syllable. But in *atte hese*, at ease, 3208, and *atte wille*, 1414, *atte* seems to

be no more than the preposition *at*. And it is certain that *atte*=*at* and no more, in the following: *atte here herte*, at her heart, 539; *atte þe day*, 1599; *atte þe best*, 4186; *att alle*, in all things, wholly, 283. The spelling *atte* being adopted to signify *at te* or *at þe*, it was erroneously used instead of *at* in other cases.

Attese, at ease, 1295.

Atwinne, *adv.* S. in two, asunder, 5450. Ch.

A-tyred hire, *pt. s.* dressed herself, 1706; *pp.* dressed, 1997, 5043.

Auenantli, 3784, Auenauntli, 4885, 5040, } *adv.* F. suitably, well, courteously.

Auentayle, *n.* F. The movable front to a helmet, and through which the wearer breathed, 3608. "*Ventaille*, the breathing part of a helmet, the sight of the beaver." Cotgrave.

Auenturre, adventure, 4921.

Aught, *pt. s.* S. possessed, owned, † 14, † 173, † 237, A.S. *ágan*, pt. t. *ic áhte*. *See* Out.

Aught too long, ought to belong, † 547.

Aunceteres, *n. pl.* ancestors, 5133.

Aunter, *n.* F. adventure, occurrence, † 1017; *pl.* aunteres (adventures), † 109.

Aunter, *v.* F. to adventure; aunter hem out=to adventure themselves out, 3268; *pr. s.* antresse, 1028; *pt. s.* auntred, ventured, went about seeking an entrance, † 1027; auntred hym, † 290; *pt. pl.* auntred hem, † 230; auntred hym till, ventured against him, † 902.

Auntrose, *adj.* F. adventurous; *hence*, dangerous, 921. "Awnterows, or dowtefulle. *Fortunalis, fortuitus.*" Prompt. Parv.

A-vowe, *n.* F. a vow, 532. Ch.

A-wai, 735, A-waie, 578, A-wey, 1280, A-weye, 221, } *adv.* S. away.

A-waked, *pt. s.* awoke, 677; *pp.* a-waked, 679; *imp. pl.* a-wakes, 2049.

Awe, *n.* S. *in* "for loue ne for awe," 5430. For this expression, see also † 1243. "The phrase appears at length in *Speculum istius Mundi*, MS. Reg. 17, B. xvii.

Thou shalt not spare for no drede,
Ne for loue to God ne for his awe,
To go out of the right lawe."—M.

A-wede, *v.* to lose the senses, become mad, 45, 1750; 1 *p. pr. s.* a-wede, 3185. A.S. *a-wédan*.

A-weite, *v.* F. to observe sedulously, espy, 2415; *pt. s.* a-wayted, 1711, 1890; a-weited, 791. Cf. Waite.

A-weiwardes, away, 2188.

A-went, *pp.* gone away, 1672.

A-wondred, 872, 2389, A-wondered, 310, 392, } *pp.* astonished. A.S. *a-wundrian*.

A-wrek, 2111, A-wreke, 1128, 3422, } *v.* S. to avenge; *pt. s.* awrak, wreaked, † 934.

Ax, *v.* S. to ask, require, † 141. Ch.

Ay, *adv.* S. ever, always, 615, 2239, 2849.

Ayme, *v.* F. to estimate, compute, 1596, 3819, 3875; *pp.* aymed, 5010. O. F. *esmer*.

A-ȝayne, *adv.* S. again, 5235; a-ȝe, 4256, 5172; —a-ȝen, 1837; —a-ȝein, 270; —a-ȝeine, 1508; —aȝeyn, 1921; —aȝen lepes=runs back, returns quickly, 1973.

A-ȝeynes, *prep.* S. against, towards, 1264, 1341; —a-ȝenis, 3533; —a-ȝens, 2371; —aȝene, 12; —a-ȝe, † 333.

Aȝen-turn, *n.* retreat, way of

escape, 4182. *See* ȝain-torn; and cf. Aȝenturned in *Wycl. Gloss.*

Bacheler, *n.* F. a bachelor, i. e. a novice in arms, 840, 1136; *pl.* bachilers, 1477. See *Bacheler* in Roq.

Baden. *See* Bidde.

Baie. *See* Abaie.

Baili, *a.* F. a steward, 5387. See *Bailleul* in Roq.

Baite, 1723, } *v.* to set on a dog,
Bayte, 11, } to bait (a bear). O. N. *beita.* See *Abet* in Wedgwood.

Bakkes, *n. pl.* 2096, outer clothes (?) A word of doubtful meaning. Sir F. Madden conjectured it to mean "cheeks, from the Teutonic *backe*, Celt. *boch*, which the Romans formed into *bucca*. *Vide* Wachter and Haltaus, in v. and Meusel's *Wurzel-Wörter*, p. 216." Stratmann suggests that it is another form of *bagges*, used for *clothes*. The context favours such a rendering; "rent all his *clothes*" is more likely than "rent all his *cheeks*;" but whether we are to connect the word with *bag* or with *back* is hard to tell, yet it may mean no more than a *covering for the back*, as in Chaucer, Chan. Yem. Prol. l. 328, where another reading for *bak* is *bratt*. Cf.

—dowell it hatte
To breke beggeris bred · & *bakken* hem with *clopis*.
Piers. Pl. ed. Skeat, A. xi. 184.

Indeed, the phrase "oure *bakkes* that moth-eten be," as used in P. Pl. Pass. X. of Text B (p. 195 of Wright's edition), convinces me that this last explanation is right. Curiously enough, as if to remove all doubt, the word *bakkes*, as there used, is, in MS. Laud 581, actually glossed by the Latin *panni*.

Bale, *n.* S. sorrow, misfortune, evil, 107, 134, 460, 741, † 56; harm, i. e. a pity, † 1170; — bal, 1819; *pl.* bales, 476, 1055.

Baleful, *adj.* S. harmful, unfortunate, 1815; — balefull = harmful, † 272.

Balfulli, *adv.* miserably, 3959, 4261;—balfully = harmfully, hurtfully, 84, 1202.

Bane, *n.* S. a ban, proclamation, edict, 2252.

Banne, *v.* S. to ban, to curse, 476, 1644; *pt. s.* banned, 2100.

Baret, *n.* embarrassment, trouble, 486, 5518. Cf. O. F. *barat*, O. N. *baratta*.

Barge, *n.* a ship, 2767, 2807. See Glossary to *Romans of Partenay*.

Barm, *n.* S. the lap, † 1004. Ch.

Barn, Barne, *n.* S. a child, 9, 16, 18, † 1020; a man, 812, 1491; *gen. sing.* barnes, 100, 2230; *pl.* barnes, 187. *See* Burn.

Barnage, *n.* F. baronage, nobles, 4797.

Bataile, *n.* F. a battalion, squadron, 3783; *pl.* batailes, 3561, 3562; batayles, 1152.

Baucynes, *n. pl.* badgers, 2299. "The term occurs in Juliana Berners, spelt *Bausyn*, and in the Prompt. Parv. is 'Bawstone, or bawsone, or a gray' [see Mr Way's note]. It is not uncommon in writers of the 16th or 17th century, and is still retained in Cheshire. See Todd's Johnson, Nares, and Wilbraham. The root is evidently the Celtic *bal* or *baizhl* (see Bullet, in v.), whence the F. *balsan*, Ital. *balzano*, applied to an animal with a white streak or spot in the face or foot. Hence also is derived the Sc. *bawsand*, brindled. *See* Jamieson."—M. Cf. *pie-bald*, and *Bawson* in Wedgwood.

Bayte on, *v.* to set on a dog at anything, 11. *See* Baite.

Be, Bi, *prep.* S. by, *passim*. When

compounded with verbs, the orthography is perpetually interchanged.

Be = been, 4103. *See* Ben.

Beaute, *n.* F. beauty, 4534; — beuaute, 4074.

Bed, Bede. *See* Bidde.

Bedes, *pr. s.* offers, † 947. Cf. † 260. A.S. *beódan.* Ch.

Bedes, *n. pl.* S. prayers, beads, 3024. See *Bead* in Wedgwood.

Be-dolue, *pp.* buried, 5252. *See* Doluen.

Begonne, *pp.* gone about, i. e. surrounded, † 698. Cf. Bi-go. See *Begone* in Wedgwood.

Be-hilde, beheld, 2783.

Behiȝt. *See* Bihote.

Be-honged, *pp.* S. hung about, 5015.

Be-houes, 2349, } behoves, is suit-
Be-houis, 1815, } able for.

Be-kenned. *See* Bikenne.

Be-knowe, *pp.* S. aware, 2172.

Belaunce, *n.* F. balance, 948.

Beleue, *v.* S. to remain, † 69. A.S. *be-lífan.*

Bellyng, *part. pres.* bellowing, 1891. "Dame Juliana Berners confines the term to the noise made by a deer, in which sense it occurs in Gawin Douglas, *Virg. Prol.* 94, 26. But in the Prompt. Parv. we have '*Bellyn*, or lowyn as nette (roryn). *Mugio*,' and '*Bellynge*, of rorynge of bestys (bellinge of nete). *Mugitus*.'"—M. See *Bell* in Wedgwood.

Be-maked, *pp.* made, 5060.

Bemes, *n. pl.* S. trumpets, 1154. Ch.

Ben, Bene, *v.* S. to be, 464, 1930; 2 *p. s. pr.* (with a *future* signification), bestow, shalt thou be, 344; 3 *p. s. pr.* beþ, 547; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ben, 3148, bene, 1672; 3 *p. pl. pr.* bene, 4217, ben, 946; buþ, 4447; *imp. pl.* beth, 3797; *pp.* be, 1943, 3957. *See* Bi, Arn, Aren.

Be-nom, *pp.* taken away, 2450. A.S. *be-niman.*

Beraften, *pt. pl.* bereft of, † 81.

Bere, *n.* a violent noise; here applied to the barking of a hound, 43. See Wycliffite Glossary, s. v. bire; Layamon (glossary), s. v. *i*bere; Stratmann, *s. v.* bere. Jamieson refers it to Su-G. *boer*, the wind. Sir F. Madden and Stratmann refer it to A.S. *ge-bære*, which, however, generally means *a gesture.* It may be an imitative word, like *birr, buzz.*

Bere-felles, *n. pl.* S. bear-skins, 2430, 2560. *See* Fel.

Berem-chaunce, *n.* chance of progeny, conception, † 971. *For the spelling, cf.* Berem-tem in *Genesis & Exodus*, ed. Morris, l. 3903.

Bern, *n.* S. a man, † 212, † 219. *See* Barn, Burn.

Be-seme, 2 *p. pl. pr.* seem, appear (to be), 1742; 3 *p. pl. pr.* be-semen, 2529.

Be-sewed. *See* Bi-sowe.

Bestow. *See* Ben.

Bet, *pt. s.* S. he beat, 1073, † 300.

Bet, *adv.* S. better, 172, 344, 1012;—bett, † 504; cf. the phrase *more beter*, 4279.

Bete, *v.* S. to make better, to better, repair, 3167; *pl. s.* bet, 3960. A.S. *bétan.*

Beþ, it shall be, 547. *See* Ben.

Be-þout, Be-þouȝt. *See* Bi-þenke.

Beurde. *See* Burde.

Beurne. *See* Burn.

Be-wrapped, *pt. s.* wrapped up, 1735.

Be-wrie, *v.* S. to bewray, 2435.

Bi, Be, *prep.* S. by, *passim.*

Bi, be thou, 322; bi ȝiue, be given, 2254. [*As* bi, be (= by) *are often*

interchanged, in both places we should rather read be.]

Bi-cast, *pp.* beset, 2287. *For* all bi-cast *an equivalent phrase is* umbecast. *See* l. 4693.

Bi-cheche, 1 *p. s. pr.* I beseech, 1258.

Bi-com, *pt. s.* became, 881; *pp.* bi-come, *in phrase* were bi-come = had gone to, 222; it bi-comes = it goes to, 911.

Bidde, 1 *p. pr. s.* I ask or pray for, 4754; *pr. s.* biddes, 5539, † 947; 1 *p. pt. s.* bed, I asked for, borrowed, † 457 (where the MS. gloss "had" is wrong); *pt. s.* bede, 5490; *pt. pl.* baden, 4797; *imp. pl.* biddiþ, 5534; *part. pres.* bidd-ande, 3024; *pp.* bede, 2410. A.S. *biddan.*

Bi-falle, *v.* S. to befal, 547; *pp.* bi-falle, 2475, 4169.

Bi-forn, *adv.* S. before, 428.

Bi-gat him, procured for himself, 177.

Biggen, *v.* S. to buy, † 1215.

Bi-go, *pp.* S. beset, † 490, † 994. *See* Begonne, and *Bigoo* in Ch.

Bi-gunne, *pt. pl.* began, 2555.

Bi-hest, 600, } *n.* S. promise.
By-hest, 57, }

Bi-het. *See* Bi-hote.

Bi-hilde, *pt. s.* S. looked, beheld, 2783; bi-huld, 2426; *pp.* bi-hold, 683.

Bi-hote (*spelt* by-hote), *v.* S. to promise, 3688; 2 *p. s. imp.* bi-hote, 2135; *pt. s.* bi-het, 4376, 4647; bihiȝt, 576; *pt. pl.* bi-hiȝt, 4649; *pp.* be-hiȝt, 606.

Bi-huld. *See* Bi-hilde.

Bi-houes, it behoves, 729 (*cf.* l. 723); *pt. s.* bi-houed, 2720.

Bi-kenne, *v.* S. to commit to the charge or protection of another; 1 *p. s. pr.* bi-kenne, 5434; *pt. s.* bi-kenned, 350; be-kenned, 371; *pt. pl.* bi-kenned, 5454. Cf. Bi-teche, *and* Kenne.

Biker, *n.* fight, battle; bedes hem biker = offers them battle, † 947. "Bikyr of fytynge. *Pugna.*" Prom. Parv. *See* Way's note.

Bikering, *n.* conflict, attack, † 390.

Bi-komsed, *pt. pl.* commenced, 2523. *See* Comse.

Bileue, *v. transitive*, S. to leave behind, 2577; *pt. s.* (*intrans.*) bi-laft, stayed behind, remained, 2385; *pt. pl.* bi-laft, 2890.

Bilfoder, 81, } *n.* provisions.
Bilfodur, 1858, }
"Perhaps from the S. *bylg*, the belly, and *fodder*, food."—M. Cf. *belly-timber*, food, in Halliwell.

Bi-liue. *See* Bliue.

Bi-reft, 1 *p. s. pt.* bereaved, deprived of, 4628; *pp.* biraft, † 394.

Bi-schet, *pp.* S. shut up, immured, 2014. Ch.

Bi-seget, *pt. s.* besieged, 2650; bi-seged, 2843.

Bi-seme, 2 *p. pl. pr.* seem, appear (to be), 1733. *See* Be-seme.

Bi-set, *pt. pl.* beset, 2281; bi-sett, 2927; bi-sette, 1214; bi-setten, set forth, employed, † 437.

Bi-side, *adv.* S. 3, 1889.

Bi-sowe, *v.* S. to sew up, 1689; *pp.* be-sewed, 3117.

Bi-stint, *pt. s.* made calm, † 1183. "*Stynlyn'* or make a thynge to secyn' of his werke or mevynge. *Obsto.* Prom. Parv.

Bi-stode, *pt. s.* S. stood near, approached, 175.

Bi-teche, *v.* S. to commit to the charge of any one, entrust, recommend, 5184; *pt. s.* bi-tok, 66, 4167; *pt. pl.* bi-tauȝt, 5211; *pp.* bi-tauȝt, 5289. A.S. *be-tǽcan.*

Bi-þenke, *v.* S. to think attentively, consider; 2 *p. s. imp.* bi-þenke, 3057; *pt. s.* bi-þout, 2748; be-þout,

290, 2370; be-þouȝt him, 2773; bi-þouȝt hire, 630, 650; *pt. pl.* bi-þout hem, 4776; be-þout, 2410.

Bi-tide, *v.* S. to befal, 730; *pt. s.* bitid, 4087; bitide, 7; bi-tidde, 1211; by-tidde, 32.

Bitraide, *pp.* betrayed, † 223.

Bitterly, *adv.* S. painfully, 2083.

Bi-weped, *pp.* covered with tears, 661.

Bi-ȝete, *n.* S. progeny, 2303.

Blake-beries, *n. pl.* S. blackberries, 1809.

Ble, *n.* S. complexion, 3083; — blee, † 202, † 578.

Blenched, *pp.* blemished, hurt, 2471. "Blemschyde, blemysshed. *Obfuscatus.* Blenschyn, blemysshen, *Obfusco.*" Prompt. Parv. *See Blemish* in Wedgwood.

Blessed, *pt. s.* 1192. Sir F. Madden explains it by "wounded, inflicted wounds," from the F. *blesser.* Or it may mean that he *waved* or *brandished* his sword, as in Spenser. F. Q. I. v. 6, and Fairfax's Tasso, ix. 67.

Blesseden, *pt. pl.* blessed, 196.

Bleþeli. *See* Bliþeliche.

Bleynte, *pt. pl.* looked, 3111. [*Lit.* blinked; cf. Du. and G. *blinken.* Sw. *blinka.* Dan. *blinke.*]

Blinne, *v.* S. to pause, cause, leave off, 55, † 398; *pt. s.* blynd, † 110; 2 *p. s. imp.* blinne, 322; 1 *p. pl. imp.* blynne, † 1202.

Blisful, *adj.* S. happy, 1055; blessed, 1669.

Bliþeliche, *adv.* S. merrily, with good will, 819; bleþeli, 1144, 1994; *in the latter place it means* in sport.

Bliue, 1705, † 259, } *adv.* S. quick-
Biliue, 248, }
ly;—as bliue, as quickly as might be, 379; as biliue, 351.

Blonk, *n.* a horse, 3326, 3362; *pl.* blonkes, 5041, † 435. "In old Teutonic, *planchaz* means a *white* horse, and the root is to be found in the Su. G. and Franc. *blank*, still preserved in the F. *blanc.* See Ihre and Jamieson."—M.

Blowand, *pres. part.* blowing, 3358.

Bobaunce, *n.* F. pride, boasting, presumption, *always in phr.* "bobaunce and bost," 1071, 1129, 3358. See *Boban* in Roq.

Bod, *n.* S. abiding, delay, 149.

Bode, *n.* S. a message, tidings, an order, 2145, 2154, 3767.

Bodiesse, *n. pl.* bodies, 3767. [*Should be spelt* bodies; *but cf.* Antresse, Hayresse.]

Bogeysliche, *adv.* S. in a boasting, boisterous, or bold manner, 1707. "In the Prompt. Parv. is '*Boggyschely*, Tumide,' and in Ray's S. and E. Country Words, '*Bogge*, bold, forward, sawcy.'"—M. See also *Bagge* in Prompt. Parv. and *Bulge* in Wedgwood.

Boiȝes, *gen. sing.* boy's, 1705.

Bolaces, *n. pl.* bullaces, a sort of plum or sloe, 1809. Used by Chaucer, Rom. Rose, 1377. See *Bolleche* in Roq.

Boles, *n. pl.* S. bulls, 2299.

Bolstrauȝt, *pp.* prostrate, stretched on the belly, 1852. From A.S. *bælg*, the belly, and *streccan*, to stretch.

Bonde, *pl. adj.* S. (put for *bonde men*), bondsmen, villains, as opposed to the orders of barons and burgesses, 2128. Cf. "Barouns and burgeis and bonde men also." *Piers Plowman;* A. *prol.* 96.

Bonden, *pp.* S. bound, 2238; *pt. pl.* bounden, 1219.

Bone, *n.* S. boon, prayer, 1095, 4410; entreaty, † 612.

Bonke, *n.* S. bank, shore, 2718.

Bonure, *adj.* F. courteous, affable, 332. *See* Debonureli.

Bordes, *n. pl.* S. 5070.

Bore, *pp.* S. born, 240; *spelt* borne, 510.

Borwe, *n.* S. borough, town, 1889, 2221; — borowe, † 300; borwȝ, 2835; *pl.* borwes, 2123; borous, † 928. *See* Burw.

Borwȝ, *n.* (*the same word as the above*), a place of shelter, 9. A.S. *beorh*. Cf. the term, "a rabbit's *burrow*."

Borwed, *pt. s.* S. borrowed, 1705.

Bost, *n.* boast, pride, 1141. *And see* Bobaunce.

Bot, *conj.* S. but, unless, except, 497, 2008; *also spelt* but, 627. But ȝif, unless, 472. Cf. Bout.

Bot, *n.* S. a boat (?) 4632. *Or else* boute bot = boute bod, without delay, *as in* l. 149.

Bote, *n.* S. remedy, 627, 741, 959, &c.; do bote = provide a remedy, 1378.

Botles, *adj.* S. without remedy, 134, 1819;—botlesse, 540; botteles, 896; botelesse, 1539.

Botned, *pp.* S. bettered, cured, 1055. Cf. Bete.

Bouf, *n.* F. beef, 1849, 1868.

Boun, *adj.* ready, 1088, 1138, 1144;—boune, † 160, † 228.

Bounden. *See* Bonden.

Bour, *n.* S. bower, chamber, 657, 1971;—boure, 1760, † 772. *See* Burwȝ-maidenes.

Bourde, *n.* F. a jest, 1705. Ch.

Bourdes, *n. sing.* F. a tournament, jousting. See *Behordeis* in Roq. The word is probably (like many other *war* terms) of Teutonic origin.

Boute, *prep.* S. without, 149, 211, 567, 812.

Bouwes, *pr. s.* bows, inclines, 948.

Bowes, *n. pl.* S. boughs, 23.

Boxumly, *adv.* S. courteously, 332. *See* Buxumli.

Brag, *adj. or adv.* bold, boastful, *or* boastfully, 2352; *sup.* braggest, bravest, 3048. Cf. "Hy schulde nouȝt *beren hem so bragg*." P. Pl. Crede, l. 706. See *Braguer* in Cot.

Braides, *pr. s.* moves quickly, hurries, † 1081;—braydes, 149; braides him, departs quickly, † 1004; *pt. s.* braid doun, threw down or beat down; braide, awoke, started up, † 724, 686, *cf.* l. 2096; rushed, 3848; drew quickly, 1867. O. N. *bregða*. Cf. *Abrayde* in Ch.

Braundise, *v.* F. to fling about (as a horse), † 1122; *pt. s.* braundised, 3294; *pres. part.* brandissende, waving (their weapons), 2322.

Brayn-wod, *adj.* S. brain-mad, i.e. mad, furious, 2096. *See* P. Pl. A. x. 61.

Bredde, *pt. pl.* S. went hurriedly, hurried, 1782. "The sense of *breed* is evidently not admissible here. Cf. Braides."—M.

Brede, *n.* S. breadth, 3055; a peny brede, a penny's breadth, † 1244.

Brem, Breme, *adj.* S. (*of very common occurrence, and with many meanings*) notable, bold, strong, fierce, &c.; (*applied to* men) 3641, (bears) 1689, (beasts) 1699, (a child) 18, (a battle) 1157, (a host) 3767, (a duke) 1141, (deeds) 1387, (blood) 3861, (an oar) 4700, (a time) † 1020, (a god) † 533, (a tablet) † 615, &c.; *sup.* bremest, 1686, 2936. Ch.

Bremli, *adv.* S. fiercely, 3294; exceedingly, 2158; — bremely, loudly, 23; — bremly, fiercely, 4342; — bremlich, boldly, † 1001. *Sup.* bremliest, most decisively, 948.

Brenne, *v.* S. to burn, 1133, 2123, 4261; *pt. s.* brent, 1071,

1109; *pp.* brent, 3634, 4367; brend, 2646, † 729.

Breres, *n. pl.* briars, 1809.

Bretages, *n. pl.* F. parapets of a wall, ramparts. O. F. *bretesche* (see Roq.), Low Lat. *brestachia.*

Breþer, *n. pl.* S. brothers, 2641. [The *nom. pl. in* A.S. *is* broðra, broðru, broðor, *or* broður.]

Brid, *n.* S. a bird, † 814; *pl.* briddes, 29, 179, 819.

Bridhale, *n.* S. bridal, 4947.

Brit, bright, 3572.

Brode, *adj.* S. broad, 754, 1674; —brod, 1732.

Brode, *adv.* S. *in phr.* to brode = too wide apart, too far, 11.

Brodes, *pr. s.* publishes abroad, proclaims, † 122.

Brond, 1244, } *n.* S. a brand,
Bront, 1192, } sword.

Broder, *n.* S. brother, † 56. [*Probably miswritten for* broðer; cf. 4938.]

Brout, brought, 3959; brouȝt of liue = brought out of life, killed, 1159.

Brug, 1674, } *n.* S. a bridge.
Brugge, 2140, }

Brusten, *v.* to injure severely, destroy, 154. Cf. Dan. *bröst*, hurt, damage.

Brusure, *n.* F. a bruise, wound, 2461.

Bruten, *n.* S. to destroy, 3760; bruttene, 1133; *pt. s.* brutned, 1073, 1202, †888; *pt. pl.* bruttened, 2647; *pp.* bruttenet, 206. Swed. *bryta;* Dan. *bryde;* A.S. *brytan, breotan.*

Bugles, *n. pl.* F. 1154.

Burd, *n.* S. a lady, maiden, damsel, † 715;—burde, 683, 765, 812, 830, † 670; beurde, † 202, † 205; *pl.* burdes, 3669, 5017; beurdes, † 228. Burde no barn, neither man nor maid, 1971.

Burgeis, *n.* F. a burgess, 1889; *pl.* burgeys, 2128, 5017.

Burn, *n.* S. a man, 332, 510, 511, 657, &c.;—burne, 444, 477; beurn, † 9, † 110; *pl.* burnes, 617, 1129; beurnes, † 2.

Burþenes, *n. pl.* S. burdens, 2555.

Burw, *n.* S. a town, 5335; *pl.* burwes, 1073, 1109; *the same as* Borwe, q. v.

Burwȝ-maidenes, *n. pl.* S. bower-maidens, attendants, 3071. *See* Bour.

Buschen, *v.* to move about briskly, 173. *See* Buske.

Busily, *adv.* S. industriously, eagerly, carefully, 650, 2181, 2210; —busili, 2577.

Busk, *n.* F. a bush, 3062, 3069; busch, 3101, 3111.

Buske, *v.* to brush about, hurry about, hurry, 2210; busk to *or* buske to, to hurry towards, 1968, 2264; busk of *or* buske of, to hurry from, 1653, 1997; *pr. pl.* busken, † 426, † 433; 1 *p. s. pt.* busked, † 612; *pt. s.* busked, 1085; (prepared), 3196; busked to, 1707, 2055; buskede him *or* busked him (went), 21, 1863; *pt. pl.* busked (prepared), 1152; buskeden (hurried), 2819; busked hem (went quickly), 1530, 2477, 2770. *See* Buschen. Icel. *at buast.* See *Busk* in Wedgwood.

But, *conj.* S. except, unless, 476, 627, 937, 972, † 368, &c. But ȝif, unless, 758, 939 1276. *See* Bot.

Buþ, *pr. pl.* are, 4447. *See* Ben.

Buxum, *adj.* S. tractable, obedient, 2943; meek (*applied to* beasts), 2720, 2854, 3085, 4062. A.S. *bocsam.*

Buxumli, 3717, 4972, } *adv.* S.
Buxumly, 2, 510, } meek; boxumly, 332; *comp.* buxumlier, 723.

By, *prep.* S. near; by þat barn = near that child, 220.

Bygge, *v.* S. to build, construct, † 1133. Swed. *bygga;* Dan. *bygge.*

By-hote. *See* Bi-hote.

By-þan, by the time that, 220. Cf. A.S. *be þám þe.*

Cacche, *v.* to catch, take, obtain, get, 806, 2266, 2940;—kacche, 2217; *pr. s.* caccheth, 3750; *pt. s.* cauȝt, 4302; *pt. pl.* cauȝt, 1053, 1495, 2867; kauȝt, 1053, 3374; *pp.* cauȝt, 4214; kauȝt, 2531.

Caire, *v.* S. to return, travel, go, 5184; 2 *p. s. pr.* cairest, 5190; *pr. s.* cayres, 2977; *pt. s.* kayred, 373; *pt. pl.* caired, 2714, 5324; cayred, 2201; kayred, 3734; *imp. pl.* kairus, † 623; *pres. part.* cairende, 1922. A.S. *cérran.*

Calles, *pr. pl.* call, 239; *pt. s.* cald, 887; calde, 1460.

(Can) can, know, acknowledge; *in the past tense*, could, knew, *inf.* kenne, † 623;—1 *p. s. pr.* kan, 321, 635; con, 297; 1 *p. pl. pr.* kunne, 4184; *pr. pl.* konne, 3334; *pt. s.* couþe, 2, 174, 655; kowþe, 5055; kouþe, 952; coude, 4378; couȝde, 120; couȝþe, 118; kende, † 193; *pt. pl.* couþe, 577; kowden, 4810; couþen, 1033; coþen, 1576; kende, † 367; *pp.* couþ, known, famous, 5053.

Care, *n.* S. care, grief, sorrow, regret, 496;—kare, 288, 424, 726, 743.

Carefull, *adj.* S. full of care or anxiety, anxious, sorrowful, † 75, † 244; causing care, woful, † 295; —carful, 2201, 2860, 3181;—karful, 373, 3774.

Carestow, carest thou, art thou sad, 3182. *See* Kares.

Carfti, *adj.* crafty, skilful, 3221. [*It should rather be* crafti, *but this form is sometimes found.* See *Romans of Partenay*, l. 5708.]

Carfulli, *adv.* S. sorrowfully, 4347; —carfuli, 152;—karfulli, 3734.

Carpen, *v.* to speak, tell, talk, † 748; carpe, 4581; carp, 832, † 11; karpe, 2523; 1 *p. s. pr.* carp, † 200, † 244; karp, † 172; *pr. s.* carpes, † 693; karpes, † 585; 1 *p. s. pt.* karped, 5233; carped, 217; *pt. s.* carped, † 72, 990; 1 *p. pl. imp.* carpe, 2855; karpe, 4054. *Phrase*—to kárp (karpe, carpp) þe soþe, to tell the truth, 503, 2804, 655, † 683. "Carpyn or talkyn. *Fabulor.*" Prompt. Parv.

Carping, *n.* talking, speech, 4660; — karping, 3100.

Cas, *n.* F. chance, hap, fortune, event, 326, 915, 2919;—case, † 24; bi cas, 595; for cas, 1037. Ch.

Cast, *pt. s.* cast away, i. e. lost, 881;—caste, contrived, 1981. *See* Kest.

Castel-werk, castellated work, 2220.

Castis, *n. pl.* events, 654.

Catel, *n.* F. wealth, possessions; *gen. sing.* cateles, † 376. Ch. See *Catels* in Roq.

Caytif, *n.* F. a wretch, person of low extraction, 710. Ch.

Cayreden, *pt. pl.* carried, 2520.

Ceput. *See* Kepe.

Certes, *adv.* certainly, verily, indeed, 732, 1380, 1500, &c. Ch.

Chambur, *n.* F. chamber, 685. [MS. chanbur.]

Chamly, *adv.* S. shamefully, 2124. Cf. Schamly.

Charge, *n.* F. load, 388.

Chase, chose, † 36. *See* Chese.

Chases, 2 *p. pl. imp.* chase ye, 1207.

Chast, *v.* to chasten, chastise, 729; 2 *p. s. imp.* chaste, 5157. P. Pl.

Chaul, *n.* S. jowl, jaw, † 1119. A.S. *ceole.* Cf. *chol* in P. Pl. Crede, and *chall* in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua.*

Chaunche, *n.* F. chance, 137.

Chaunded, *pt. s.* enchanted (?) [*But we should perhaps read* chaunged.]

Chauntemens, *n. pl.* F. enchantments, 654.

Che, *pron.* she, 462, 641, 2317. Cf. Sche, *and* Hue.

Chef, *adj.* F. chief, 3841;—cheefe, † 1210.

Cheffaren, *v.* to chaffer, bargain, buy and sell, † 1210.

Chepinge, *n.* S. market, 1822;—fro chepinge ward, from towards market, on the return from market, 1844.

Chere, *n.* F. countenance, look, appearance, demeanour, 647, 4882, 5263. Ch.

Cherl, *n.* S. churl, countryman, 54, 60, 62, &c.;—cherle, 1675; *pl.* cherls, 513. Ch.

Cherli, *adv.* F. cheerily, kindly, 62.

Chese, *v.* to choose, † 770; *pt. s.* ches, 4165; chees, † 321; chused, † 140; *imp. s.* ches, 4161; *pp.* chuse of = chosen by, beloved by, † 49. Ch.

Cheued forth, *pt. s.* hastened forth, † 78. Cf. O.F. *eschever*, and see *esquiver* in Cotgrave.

Cheuesed, *pt. s.* obtained, procured, † 966. See *Chevir* and *Chevissance* in Roq. and *Chevis* in Ch. *Mars and Venus*, st. 37.

Cheueteyn, *n.* F. chieftain, 3379.

Child, *n.* S. child, 1822. "It is here used for a person of gentle birth, in opposition to *cherl*."—M. In l. 541 it is used of a person of mean birth, but grown up to manhood.

Chipmen, *n. pl.* S. shipmen, sailors, 2811, 2818.

Choisli, *adv.* F. aptly, 1753;—choicelich, choicely, † 49.

Chold, *pt. s.* should, 2014.

Choliers. *See* Kolieres.

Chortly, *adv.* S. shortly, 2035.

Choys, *adj.* F. choice, fair, 400.

Chul, (ye) shall, 3339.

Chused. *See* Chese.

Chylder, *n. pl.* S. children, † 36. [*The* A.S. *pl. is* cildra, cildru.]

Clatered. *See* To-clatered.

Clene, *adj.* S. fair, noble, 1083, 1124, 1434; *sup.* clennest, 1609.

Clenli, *adv.* S. cleanly, fairly, clearly, 3847;—clenliche, 3477;—clanli, 3288.

Clepe, *v.* S. to call, 1299, 1977, 3181; 2 *p. s. pr.* clepus, 249; *pr. pl.* clepun, 2221; *pt. s.* clepud, 56, 260, 274, 977, 1182; cliped, † 836; kleped, † 476; *pp.* clepud, 1956; cleped, † 944; y-clepud, 121. Ch.

Cleppende. *See* Clipped.

Clere, *adj.* F. fair, fine (colour), 579;—cler (strength), 2037.

Clerli, *adv.* F. finely, 4422.

Cleued, *pt. s.* cleaved, stuck, 734.

Cleymeþ, *pr. s.* calls out, calls, 4481. Lat. *clamare*.

Clipped, *pt. s.* S. embraced, 63, 1570; clipte, 672, 1265; clipt, 3205; clept, 675; clupte, 1587; *pt. pl.* clipt, 1833, 3100; *pres. part.* clippend, 2808; cleppende, 2804; clipping, 1396; *pp.* clipped, 859.

Clipping, *n.* S. embracing, 1053, 3474.

Clouȝtand, *pres. part.* S. mending, clouting, 14. A.S. *clút*, a clout. "The verb is preserved in Belgic *klutsen*, *kluteren*, to cobble or repair."—M. Cf. Du. *klotsen*, to strike on; and see *Clouted* in Ch.

Cofli, *adv.* S. quickly, boldly, † 1009;—cofly, † 693, † 748;—coflich, † 207, † 297, † 581, † 662. A.S. *cóflice*.

Coies, *pr. s.* soothes, coaxes, † 1175.

Cf. Acoyed. F. *coi*, from Lat. *quietus*.

Col, *n.* coal, 2520; *pl.* coles, 4367.

Colled, *pt. s.* embraced, 3032;—kolled, 69; *pres. part.* collinge, 2984. O.F. *acoler*. See Spenser, F. Q. iii. 2, 34.

Com, *pt. s.* came, 39, 47, 61;—kom, 507; *pt. pl.* come, 151, 3363; *pp.* come, 80, 816;—kome, 504;—komen, 513. Com bi = acquire, 1688.

Comande, Komande, commanded, 347, 1110. See note to l. 347.

Come, *n.* S. arrival, 4192, 4953, 5222;—kome, 807;—coome, † 73; — cumme, † 147.

Comen, *adj.* Lat. common, 6. *See* Komwne.

Comfort, *pt. pl.* comforted, 1495; *pt. s.* cumfort, 1512; *pp.* conforted, 380.

Comly, *adj.* comely, 294;—comliche, 963, 2704;—comelich, † 205; — comeliche, 987; — komli, 873, 2858; — cumlich, † 18; — cumly, 783.

Comliche, *adv.* in a comely manner, 660;—comeliche, 2220;—komly, 51;—komeliche, 423.

Compacement, *n.* F. contrivance, stratagem, 1981.

Compers, *n. pl.* F. companions, 370. Ch.

Comse, *v.* F. to commence, begin, 2244; *pr. s.* komses, 616; *pt. s.* comsed, 37, 194, 288, 579, &c.; comsede, 832; komsed, 1430; cumsed, 424, 764. P. Pl.

Comsing, *n.* F. commencement;—fram comsing to þende, from beginning to end, 4869, 5092.

Con. *See* Can.

Confort, *n.* F. comfort, 1408.

Conforted, *pp.* comforted, 380. *See* Comfort.

Coninge, *n.* F. cunning, skill, 120;—kunning, † 643.

Conseyl, *n.* counsel, advice, 114;—cunsail, 595;—cunsaile, 969;—cunseil, 2126;—cunseyl, 2105;—cunsayle, 1118.

Contenaunce, *n.* F. countenance, demeanour, 1401, 3076, 4900; — countenaunce, † 961; — cuntenaunce, 1397; — kuntenaunce, 942, 3323.

Conyng, *adj.* S. cunning, skilful, 653;—cunning, † 463;—konyng, 2917; *comp.* cunnyngere, 406; *sup.* konyngest, 4810.

Conyng, *n. pl.* conies, rabbits, 182. [*The sing. is* conyng (*Wycl. Gloss.*), *and we should expect to find* conynges *here, as in* P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 12. *See* Conynge *in* Halliwell, *who calls it* Anglo-Norman. *It is Teutonic; cf.* Du. *konijn*, G. *kaninchen*.]

Coraious, *adj.* F. courageous, 3318;—koraious, 3352.

Corteys, *adj.* F. courteous, 194, 2704; — curteyse, 406, 601;—curteise, 1397;—kurtes, 4405;—curteys, 231;—curtais, † 207.

Cortynes, *n. pl.* curtains, 2056. Ch.

Corue, *pp.* carved, cut, 3233.

Cosynes, *n.* F. female cousin, 625. *See the note.*

Coude. *See* Can.

Couenabul, *adj.* F. meet, agreeable, suitable, 4089; *sup.* couenablest, 3219. Ch.

Coupyng, *n.* F. violent encounter, 3602. *See* Acoupyng.

Couren, *pr. pl.* F. cower, crouch, 3336; *pt. s.* koured, 47. *See* Koure.

Cournales, *n. pl.* F. battlements, † 295. *See* Kerneles.

Couþe, *adj.* S. kind, affable, 3659.

Couþe, Couȝde, Couȝþe, &c. *See* Can.

Couwardli, *adv.* cowardly, 3336.

Couyne, *n.* F. contrivance, plan, 3147; — koueyne, 952. O. Fr. *convine.* See Roq. and *Covyne* in Ch.

Coynt, *adj.* F. crafty, artful, skilful, 653, 1981; — coynte, 2824; — koynt, 4090; — coynte crag (as we say a *sly corner*), 2850.

Coynted him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 4644.

Coyntise, *n.* F. stratagem, art, 448, 1688, 1972; — coyntice, 1665; — coyntyse, 1670, 1825.

Cracche, *n.* F. manger, 3233. "Cracche, cratche, *stall, crib,* Job vi. 5; Lk. ii. 7, 12, &c." *Wycl. Gloss.*

Craft, *n.* 635; — kraft, 559.

Crafti, *adj.* S. skilful, clever, 1681; *comp.* craftier, 1680. *See* Carfti.

Craftli, *adv.* S. prudently, 3828.

Crep, *pt. s.* crept, † 1009; *pt. pl.* crepten, 2235. *See* Krepe.

Cri, *n.* F. proclamation, 2249; — kri, 2174; — kry, 5405.

Criande, *pres. part.* crying, 4347.

Crie mercy, to beg for mercy, 1276.

Croice, *n.* F. cross, 350, 3127; — croyce, 1343, 3493.

Cristen, *adj.* Christian, 522.

Cumly, Cumme, Cumsed. *See* Comly, Come, Comsed.

Cunstabul, *gen. sing.*, constable's, 4212.

Cunter, *n.* F. an encounter, 1344.

Cuntre, *n.* F. country, 6; — kontrey, 241; — kuntre, 1673; — kontre, 722; *pl.* cuntreis, 1922; kuntres, 5474.

Curtais, Curteise. *See* Corteys.

Curtesliche, *adv.* F. courteously, 233; — curteysly, 274; — curtesli, 347; — curteisle, 353; — kurteyslyche, 873; — kurtesliche, 1430; — kurteisly, 1986; — curteyseliche, 2662; — kortesliche, 1430; &c. *See* Corteys.

Cuuerede. *See* Keuer.

Dalt. *See* Dele.

Damisele, *n.* F. damsel, 401, 562, 589; *pl.* damiseles, 1978.

Dar, 1 *p. pres. s.* I dare, 564, 938; der, 2169; 1 *p. s. pt.* dorst, 2040; *pt. s.* dorst, 305.

Dar, *pr. s. in the phrase* "*dar* no mon hem wite," no one *need* blame them, 2434. "It is equivalent here to *tharf*, from S. *þearfan*, Teut. *darfen*, to need."—M. *See* Thort.

Dared, *pt. s.* looked dazed, stared as if stupefied, gazed fixedly, 4055. *See* Way's note on "Daryn" in Prompt. Parv. Ch.

Darked, *pt. s.* lay hid, lurked, 17, 44, 2543; *pl.* darkeden, 1834; darked, 2851.

Dawe, *n.* S. day, *in phr.* brouȝt of dawe = bereft of life, 3818 (cf. † 56); *pl.* dawes, 77, 3704, 4719; daywes, 570; daies, 5490. [*When the pl. takes the form* dawes (daywes) *it is preceded by* lif.]

Dawe, *v.* S. to dawn, 3261; *pt. s.* it dawed, 1791, 2218, 2480.

Debate, *n.* F. strife, 2779; — debat, 4380.

Debonureli, *adv.* F. courteously, meekly, 730. *Cf.* Bonure.

Ded, dead; *in phr.* "ded as dore-nail," 628, 3396. [In P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 26, we have "as deed as a dore-tree," where the earlier text has "ded as a dore-nayl." See P. Pl. A. i. 161.]

Dedain, *n.* F. disdain, † 313. O.F. *desdaing.*

Dedaine, *adj.* F. disdainful, † 584.

Dede, *n.* S. deed, 1197; an action, i. e. a battle, 1137, 1187; *pl.* dede, 3807; dedes, 1368; dedus, 1096, 3406, 4115.

Dede, *n.* S. death, 2072; *usually* deth, *as in* 151.

Dede, did. *See* Do.

Dedut, *n.* F. pleasure, 4998.

Deerne. *See* Dern.

Defaute, *n.* F. default, 1185.

Defoyled, *pt. pl.* F. trampled on, depressed, 4614.

Degised. *See* Disgised.

Deie, *v.* to die, 546, † 375;—dei, 696;—deyen, 3353; 1 *p. s. pr.* deiȝe, 4349; deie, 919; 1 *p. pl. pr.* deiȝen, 3898; *pt. s.* deide, 1322, † 1013; deyde, 113; *pt. pl.* deyde, 1407.

Del, *n.* S. part; furþe del = fourth part, 1284. *Cf.* Tenþedel.

Del, *n.* F. dool, sorrow, 349, 1510;—dol, 781, 2054;—doel, 1909;—dool, 88;—doole, † 242, † 613, † 926;—dul, 2757;—duel, 564, 919, 1318, 1321, 1370, 1647, &c.

Delfulli, *adv.* sorrowfully, grievously, 1980;—dolfulli, 2434;—doolefully, † 32;—dulfulli, 2335, 4371;—duelfulli, 578, 3422. *See also* Dulfull.

Dele, *v.* S. to deal, deliver (blows), 1222; *pt. s.* dalt, 2791; *pt. pl.* delten, 3440; *pres. part.* deland, 1235; *pp.* dult, 1271.

Deliuer, *adj.* F. quick, nimble, 3596.

Deliuerly, *adv.* quickly, 349, 776, 1119, 1702;—deliuerli, 1510, 1909;—deliuerliche, 1245. Ch.

Deme, *v.* S. to judge, declare, 151, 1074; *phr.* "to deme þe soþe," 151, 583, 1161, 2633.

Demeyned him, *pt. s.* behaved, 1201, 3636; *pt. pl.* demened hem, 1222.

Denede, *pt. s.* dinned, resounded, 5014.

Dent. *See* Dint.

Departe, *v.* F. (*intr.*) to part asunder, sever, 2334, 5422; 1 *p. pl. pt.* departed, 2026; *pt. s.* (*trans.*) departed, 3894.

Depeinted, *pp.* painted, pourtrayed, 3573;—depeynted, 3217. Ch.

Der. *See* Dar.

Deraied him, *pt. s.* F. acted madly (like a man *disordered* in mind), 2061;—deraiȝed him, 3741;—drayed (*read* derayed?) him, 1210;—deraide [hym?], † 883. O. F. *desroyer, deroyer, dessarroyer.*

Deraine, *v.* F. to make good, to sustain a refusal (*a law term*), † 124;—dereine, † 356. "*Desrener*, to dereine; to justifie, or make good, the deniall of an act, or fact." Cotgrave.

Dere, *v.* S. to harm, injure, 953;—derie, † 1240. Ch.

Dere, *adj.* S. dear, precious, 401; *phr.* "whan ȝou *dere* likes," 1050; "him *dere* þouȝt," 1268; "ȝou *dere* þinkes," 4352, 4727.

Derk, *n.* darkness, 1285, † 714.

Derly, *adv.* S. dearly, sumptuously, 1421;—derli, 4312, 4374.

Derling, *n.* S. a darling, 1538; *pl.* derlinges, 2568.

Dern, *adj.* S. secret, 1792;—derne, † 478;—deerne, † 826; *pl.* derne, † 860. Ch.

Dernly, *adv.* S. secretly, 17, 131, 1311, 1799;—dernli, 1050, 2208.

Derworþ, *adj.* S. precious, dear, 585, 2585;—derworþe, 1745, 2633, 4140, 5311;—dereworth, † 613;—dereworthe, † 431, † 692, † 1240; *sup.* de[r]worþest, 3209. P. Pl.

Des, *n.* F. The *daïs*, or seat of honour, 4312, 4338;—dese, 4011.

Descriue, *v.* F. to describe, 5005, 5025; 1 *p. s. pt.* descriued, 3042.

Deschuuer, *v.* F. to discover, reveal, 3192.

Descuuering, *n.* discovery, 1043; —discuueryng, 1024.

Deseuy, *v.* F. to deceive, 3306.

Desgeli. *See* Disgisili, *and the note on* l. 5014.

Desmaye ȝou, *imp.* be dismayed, 3040.

Desparaged, *pp.* disparaged, 485.

Despit, *n.* F. mischief, injury, 555, 4227;—despyt, 3335.

Despitously, *adv.* mischievously, maliciously, 1137; — despitusly, 1210.

Dessece, *n.* F. decease, 4101.

Destene, *n.* F. destiny, 315.

Destruye, *v.* F to destroy, 2930; —destrue, 4147;—destrye, 4262; *pp.* destruyt, 2847; destrued, 2646; destruyed, 2124.

Deuel, *n.* S. devil, 1976; *phr.* "a deuel wai," 1978. Ch.

Deuer, *n.* F. duty, 474, 2546;— deuere, 520. Ch.

Deuis, *n.* F. device, 3222.

Deuise, *v.* F. to describe, talk about, tell of, 2985;—diuise, 1316, 2635; deuice, 1603; *pt. pl.* deuised, 3302.

Deuouteliche, *adv.* devoutly, earnestly, 2976;—deuoteliche, 1245.

Deuoyde, *v.* F. to quit, leave, 2044.

Digised. *See* Disgised.

Digne, *adj.* F. worthy, 583, 4583; —ding, † 313. Ch.

Dignely, *adv.* worthily, 520;— dingneli, 4567.

Diked, *pp.* dug out, 2233.

Dint, *n.* a stroke, blow, 1234, 2784, † 343;—dent, 2757, 3750; *pl.* dintes, 1222, † 124, † 130;— dentes, 1215, 3440; — dyntes, † 295.

Disgised, *pp.* disguised, 1677;— degised, 3888;—digised, 2530.

Disgisi, *adj.* F. in disguise, masked, mummerwise, 1620;—disgesye, secret, 2715.

Disgisili, *adv.* strangely, extraordinarily, 485;—desgeli, 5014, *on which line see the* Note.

Diting, *an error for* Tiding, 1478.

Diuise. *See* Deuise.

Diȝt, *v.* S. to dispose, get ready, prepare, 3253; *pt. s.* (*with* him), 1119; *pt. pl.* (*with* hem), 1799; *pp.* diȝt, i. e. dressed, prepared, ready, destined (*with reference to* death), 151, 315, 776, 1620, 1643, 1677, 3222; 1 *p. imp. pl.* "diȝt we vs henne," let us readily go hence, 2553. Ch.

Done, *v.* S. to do, to cause, 320, 860; *also* to fight (metaphorically), 3252; 1 *p. pr. s.* do, 3249; 3 *p. pr. s.* doþ, 925; dos, 4202; 2 *p. pr. pl.* doþ, 1452; 3 *p. pr. pl.* don, 3244; 1 *p. pt. s.* dede, 555; 3 *p. pt. s.* dede, 862, 1025; dude, 3427; *pt. pl.* dede, 2092; dude, 1145; *imp. s.* do, 2127; *imp. pl.* doþ, 3807; *pp.* don, 2928; do, 936, 1024. *Phr.* dude to dethe = did to death, killed, 3427; dude hem forþ = went forth, 1145; dede hem on gate = went on their way, 2092; *cf.* 1119; dede him out, went out, 2061; done (*pp.*) = dead, 937. "When followed by another verb, the latter is always in the infinitive mood (as in the case after all the other auxiliaries) and [often] receives a passive signification."—M. E. g. *dede calle*, caused to be called, 1522; *dede clepe*, 1299; *do crie*, cause to be proclaimed, 2127, 4049; *do kepe*, cause to be kept, 413, *dede fecche*, 1303; *do quelle*, cause to be killed, 1246; *dede translate*, caused to be translated, 167. The exception to this is when the verb following is *neuter*. E.g. *dede astente*, made to stop, 1526; *dede to mete*, caused to dream, 862; *dede renne*, caused to run, 3390; *do vanisch*, 639.

Another exception is when *do* is followed by *him* (used reflexively), as in *do him loþe mi loue*, cause himself to loathe my love, 546. Another *phrase* is *do to wite* (651, 1331, 1459) = to cause to know, which is still in use, and in which *to wite* takes the place of the A.S. *gerund*.

Doel, Dol, Dool. *See* Del.

Dof, *imp. s.* doff thou, do thou off, 2342.

Doluen, *pp.* (*from* delve), buried, 4210; doluen quic, buried alive, 1564; ded and doluen, dead and buried, 2630, 5280, † 1026. Ch.

Dom, *n.* S. judgment, doom, 1220. Ch.

Dornayl, Dorenail. *See* Ded.

Dorst. *See* Dar.

Doted, *pp.* F. foolish, idiotic, 4055. *See* A-doteþ. Ch.

Dounes, *n. pl.* S. downs, 2903.

Doun riȝtes. *See* Riȝtes.

Douten, *pr. pl.* fear, are afraid of, † 168. O. F. *douter*. Cf. Adouted.

Douȝter, *gen. sing.* daughter's, 3152.

Doutusli, *adv.* doubtfully, 4338. Cf. *Douteous* in Ch.

Douȝti, *adj.* S. doughty, brave, 1101, 1215, 1352;—douȝthi, 1302, 2709; — douȝty, 1318; *comp.* douȝtiere, 1161; *sup.* douȝtiest, 1197.

Douȝtili, *adv.* bravely, 1222.

Draiht. *See* Dreche.

Drawe. *See* Drouȝ.

Drayed. *See* Deraied.

Dreche, *v.* S. to disturb, molest, † 765; *pt. s.* draihte, † 752; *pp.* draiht, † 820. A.S. *dreccan*, pt. t. *dréhte*, pp. *dréht*, *gedréht*. Ch. *See* Way's note in Prompt. Parv.

Drede, *n.* S. dread, fear, 1909; *misworitten* dredre, 1892.

Dreew. *See* Drouȝ.

Drem, *n.* S. a droning noise, †781, † 982. See note to l. † 781.

Dreme, *n.* S. a dream, 752.

Dressed him, *pt. s.* addressed himself, 1237.

Dreȝing, *n* S. suffering, 919. Cf. Drie.

Drie, *v.* S. to endure, suffer, 1772, † 373;—drye, 459, † 1069;—dry, † 1067; 1 *p. pr. s.* drye, 459; 2 *p. pr. pl.* driȝen, 3704; *pt. s.* dried, † 242; drey, 2864; dreiȝh, 2796. A.S. *dreógan*. Sc. *dree*. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *driugan*.

Drift, *n.* S. driving-power, † 998; chasing, onset, † 897.

Driuen, *pr. pl.* "driuen forþ þat day," drive forth (i. e. pass) the day, 3065; *pt. s.* drof (drove), † 891; *pp.* driue (driven), 979.

Dronked, *pp.* drenched, i. e. drowned, 3516.

Dronken, *pt. pl.* drank, 1906.

Drouned, *pt. s.* droned, made a droning noise, † 985. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *drunjus*.

Drouȝ, *pt. s.* drew, drew near, approached, 2208; dreew, † 714; drow, 1068, 1235, 1321, 1526, 1914; drow him, 4338; *pt. pl.* drouȝ, 781, 3065; drowe, 1089; drowen, 1220; drow hem, 1792; drowen them, † 795; was drawe him = had drawn himself, 44.

Duel, Dul. *See* Del.

Dulfull, *adj.* doleful, causing dole, † 143;—duelful, 3440.

Dupe, *adj.* S. deep, †1132, †1156.

Duresse, *n.* F. hardship, constraint, cruelty, 1074, 1114, 1125, 1546, &c. Ch.

Dwelle, *v.* to delay, tarry, 701; *pr. s.* dwelles, 1989; *pt. s.* dwelled, 1966. Dan. *dvæle*. Sw. *dväljas*.

Dwerþ, *n.* S. a dwarf, 362 (*see* Note). A.S. *dweorg*, Dan. and Sw. *dverg*.

Dwined, *pt. s.* pined, dwindled, 578. A.S. *dwinan.* Ch.

Eche, each, 517. "It is usual to find *a* (for *an*, one) used after this word, as *eche a barn*, 188; *eche a rynk*, 1472; *eche a strete*, 1617; *eche a kuntre*, 1673; *eche a gom*, 3465; [*eche a seg*, 3932;] *eche a baili*, 5387; *eche a lord*, 5399; and when combined with it, is written both in Old English and Scotch, *ilka*."—M.

Eft, *adv.* afterwards, again, 882, 1049, †552;—eft as fele, as many again, 3372.

Egge-tol, *n.* edged tool, sharp instrument, 3755. [*It seems to be a compound noun;* cf. A.S. *ecg-bana*, *ecg-héte*, &c.]

Egged, *pt. s.* S. incited, urged, 1130. A.S. *eggian.* O.N. *eggia.* Dan. *egge.* "*Eggyn*, or entycyn' to doon' wel or yvele." Prompt. Parv.

Egre, *adj.* F. eager, courageous, 3636.

Eiles, *pr. s.* ails, afflicts, 634, 1533;—eyles, 944; *pt. s.* eilede, 951;—eyled, 831, 888.

Eir, *n.* F. heir, 709, 1474, 4102; —eyr, 4641;—eyer, 77;—eyre, 128.

Eiþer . . . other, each . . . the other, i. e. one another, 1010, 1032, 1613, 2505, 3032, 4889, 5200. Eiþer (each), 1054; *spelt* eþer, 833; *cf.* eiȝþer, 1240; *gen. sing.* eiþers (each other's), 1014.

Eiȝen, *n. pl.* S. eyes, 463, 465, 1063, 1585;—eiȝyen, 228;—eyiȝen, 458.

Ek, but, 715. *See* Ak.

Eke, *adv.* also, 473.

Eld, *adj.* S. old, 3498.

Elde, *n.* S. old age, 5227.

Elles, else, otherwise, 1132, 1571, 2671;—eles, †55, †209. A.S. *elles.*

Em, *n.* S. uncle, 3421, 3435; *gen. sing.* emes, 3426. Ch.

Emperice, *n.* F. empress, 5343, 5400. Ch.

Enchaunmens, *n. pl.* enchantments, 137.

Encheson, *n.* F. occasion, cause, †1070, 3697, 4173;—enchesoun, 1172, †140.

Ender day, by-gone day, day past, 3042. *See* P. Pl. Crede, l. 239, and *hendre* in Jamieson.

Enforced, *pp.* strengthened, forcibly occupied, †908.

Engines, *n. pl.* warlike engines, †294;—engynes, 3000.

Enpoysoun, *v.* F. to poison, 4650.

Ensaumples, *n. pl.* F. examples, †8.

Entecches, *n. pl.* F. spots, stains (metaphorically used), 558.

Entent, *n.* F. intention, 1544.

Entres, *n. pl.* F. entries, passes, †908.

Eny, any, 2223;—eni, 1077.

Enys, *adv.* once, 1093. A.S. *ánes*, gen. of *án*, one. [*But it is a mere expletive in this place.*]

Er, *conj.* S. before, ere, 1612, 2026;—her, 1515;—or, †310, †791. *See* Ere.

Erande, *n.* S. an errand, 4156;—herend, 1469;—herande, 1592;—arnd, 5287. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *airinon*, to go on a message.

Erber, *n.* arbour, 1752.

Erden, *v.* S. to dwell, 5260; *pt. s.* erded, 1417.

Ere, *adv.* S. before, formerly, 160, 3031, 4180, 5233. *Cf.* Are.

Eritage, *n.* F. heritage, 4097, †464.

Erliche, *adv.* S. early, 1296, 2519.

Ern, *n.* S. an eagle, 3105. Ch.

Ern = ȝerne, †1091. *See* ȝerne.

Ert, art thou, †592. Ch.

Eschel, *n.* F. troop, company, battalion, 3379, 3564, 3785. O.F. *eschelle.*

Esed, *pp.* made at ease, accommodated, 1632, 5338.

Estres, *n. pl.* F. retreats, recesses (of a garden), 1768. Applied in Ch. to the inward parts of a house, &c. *See* O.F. *estre* in Roq.
"Like to the *estres* of the grisly place,
That hight the gret tempul of Mars in Trace."—Ch. Kn. Ta. 1113.
Cf. *Rom. of the Rose,* 1448, 3626.

Eten, *pt. pl.* ate, 1906, 2515.

Eth, *adj.* S. easy, 3571. Ch. A.S. *eáð.*

Eþer, either, each, 833. *See* Eiþer.

Etteleden, *pt. pl.* hurried, 272. *See* Attele.

Euele, *n.* S. evil, mischief, 558, 1065.

Euen, *adv.* straight, exactly, hard by, 755, 1093;—euene, 747, 762, 811.

Euenly, *adv.* straightway, 1747.

Euen-while, *n.* even-time, eventide, 1747.

Euerich, every, 622, 1474;—euereche on, every one, 5412.

Facioun. *See* Fasoun.

Fade, *pp.* faded, 891.

Fader, *n.* S. father, 241, &c.; *gen. sing.* fader, 4996.

Faileden, *pt. pl.* failed, 2660.

Fain. *See* Fayn.

Fairre, *comp. adj.* fairer, 4437.

Falle, *v.* S. to befall, happen, 324, 806, 1700; *pr. s.* falles me (happens to me), 439; falles (suits, appertains, belongs), 14, 339, 1685, 2789; *pt. s.* fel (befell), 903; fel for (suited), 1766; him fel (behoved him), 4440.

Fantasie, *n.* F. fancy, apprehension (of evil), †384. Ch.

Fanteme, *n.* F. a phantom, a fancy, 703, 2315, 4109.

Fare, *v.* S. to go, 5079, 5142; *pr. s.* fares, 1315; *pt. s.* ferd *or* ferde, 30, 1479, 2649, (behaved) 884, 2073, (fared, did) 1497, 1499, (befell) 1922; *pt. pl.* ferden, 2745, 2809; ferde, 1913; ferd, 1915; farde, † 305; *pp.* faren, 1514, 5468; fare, 2485, † 224; faren forþ = proceeded, advanced, 3260; *cf.* 2730, 4450.

Fare, *n.* S. journey; *hence,* business, "goings-on," affair (*esp.* a *troublesome* business), 1091, 2079, 2802, 2943, 4580, &c.

Farre, *comp. adv.* farther, † 244.

Farly. *See* Ferli.

Fasoun, *n.* F. fashion, shape, make, 402, 934, 4440;—fason, 2836;—facioun, 500.

Fauȝt, *pt. s.* fought, 3426; *pt. pl.* fouȝten, 3414.

Fax, *n.* S. hair, 2097.

Fayn, *adj.* S. glad, 2817;—fain, 1783; *sup.* faynest, 3933; (*adv.*) fayn (gladly), 858.

Fayre, *adv.* fairly, kindly, 347.

Feele, Feole. *See* Fele.

Feffe, *v.* F. to enfeoff, provide for, give presents to, 1061; *pp.* feffed, 193. Ch.

Feintise, *n.* F. faintness, 436;—feyntyce (cowardice), 1188;—feyntise (flinching), 763; *phrase,* "feiþli boute feintyse," verily, without flinching (or hesitation), 1543, 3169. Ch.

Feiþ, *n.* S. faith, 858;—feiȝþ, 275.

Feiþli, *adv.* in faith, truly, 777, 828, 912, 1317;—feiþely, 201;—feiþliche, 2732;—feiȝþli, 4793;—feiȝþely, 230;—feþli, 132;—feþly, 209;—feiȝliche [? feiȝþliche], 261;—faitly, † 804;—feȝtly, 703.

Feiȝtful, *adj.* faithful, 337; *comp.* feiþfullere, 5434.

Fel. *See* Falle.

Fel, *n.* S. skin, 1720, 2361; *pl.* bere-felles (bear-skins), 2414, 2430, 2560.

Felachipe, *n.* S. fellowship, 777, 1317, 4510; — felachip, 1479.

Felawe, *n.* S. fellow, companion, 275, 339; *pl.* felawes, 186, 193, 360, &c.

Feld, *pr. s.* felt, 1; feld foute = perceived the scent, 33; *pp.* feled, 638.

Feldfares, *n. pl.* fieldfares, 183. Ch.

Fele, *adj.* S. many, 5, 186, 388, 801, &c; —fel, † 46; —feele, † 880: —feole, † 12.

Fell, *adj.* S. fierce, cruel, † 364, † 946. *Comp.* feller (of a *fever*), 897; (of a *sickness*), 609; (of a *battle*), 3614; (of a *man*), † 42. Ch.

Felled, *pt. s.* felled, killed, † 85; *pt. pl.* † 387, 3415; feld, † 352; *pp.* felde, 3638.

Felli, *adv.* fiercely, 3274; —felly, 3451.

Felþe, *n.* S. filth; *hence* (by metaphor) a low fellow, a wretch, 2542, 2545.

Fend, *n.* S. a fiend, 3130.

Fende, *v.* to defend, 3650; fende mee = defend myself, fight, † 1201.

Fenkes, *pr. s.* vanquishes, conquers, † 323; *pp.* fenked, † 111, † 305, † 890; ifenked, † 117. *Probably a modification of* F. *vaincre, as the spelling* venkud *occurs in* The Seuen Sages, 2024. *Cf.* "For haddest thou *fenked* the fon (foes)," &c. *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, p. 208, l. 339.

Fer, *adv.* far, 2546, 2781; *comp.* ferre, 2613, 5167, 5397; *sup.* ferrest, 2433, 5079.

Ferche. *See* Fers.

Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 3366.

Ferd, *n.* S. a troop, company, 386, 5326. A.S. *fyrd.*

Ferden. *See* Fare.

Fere, *n.* S. a companion, 364, 1639, 2866; (a spouse), † 960. *Cf.* I-fere.

Fere, *adj.* entire, sound, 1583. Cf. Icel. *færr*, Su.-Go. *foer*. Dan. and Sw. *för.*

Fere, † 413. I can only suggest that *to fere* may mean *for fear* (which seems a forced construction), or that we should read *to-fore*, beforehand. *Cf.* To-fore. Line † 415 also seems to be corrupt, and for *þei* we might read *þen.*

Ferefull, *adj.* S. terrible, † 291, † 411.

Ferforþ, *adv.* far away, 209.

Ferke, *v.* to drive, drive onwards by beating, to press hard upon, 3630; *pt. s.* ferked, † 85, † 1221; *pt. pl.* firked, † 67. "*Firk*, to whip, to beat." Halliwell.

Ferli, *adj.* S. terrible, fearful, 2449, 3186, 3934. A.S. *fœrlic.*

Ferli, *sb.* a wonder, 3280, 4531; —ferlich, † 1015; —farly, † 1050. *See preceding word.*

Ferliche, *adv.* terribly, wonderfully, 3238.

Fers, *adj.* F. fierce, severe, 436, 3351, 3641; —ferse, † 70, † 276; —ferche, 3796.

Fersche, *adj.* fresh, 3633. A.S. *fersc.* *See* Fresch.

Fersly, *adj.* fiercely, 1766; —fersli, 3348; —ferslich, † 115; —ferselich, † 253; —ferscheli, 3426. *Also spelt* fresly, 1190.

Ferst, *adv.* first, 648; *adj.* 1163.

Fesauns, *n. pl.* pheasants, 183. Ch.

Festened, *pt. s.* fastened, 1720; festned, 1239; *pp.* festened, 447, 3437, 3593; fest, 1650.

Fet, *n. pl.* S. feet, 1766.

Fetis, *adj.* F. well made, lovely, pretty, genteel, 126, 1447, 4095;

— fetys, 225, 4435; fetyse, 393; — fetise, † 188. O. F. *fetis*. Low Latin, *factitius*. Ch.

Fetisliche, *adv.* fairly, neatly, properly, 98.

Fettes, *pr. s.* fetches, † 628.

Fetures, *n. pl.* features, 857, 2886.

Feuer, *n.* F. fever, 897. *In* l. 1239, *for* of feuer (*as in* MS.) *read* on feuter. *See* Feuter.

Feute, *n.* scent, trace, 90, 2189; — foute, 33. "*Fewte.* Vestigium." Prompt. Parv. "*Fewt*, trace of a fox or beast of chase by the odour." — Morris.

Feuter, *n.* F. the rest for the spear, 3437, 3593. From Lat. *fulcrum*. Cf. *fautre* in Roq., and see *Morte Arthure*, l. 1366. Sir F. Madden points out that this is obviously the meaning in *Wallace*, iii. 168 (where Jamieson renders *fewtir* by *rage*, from the Icel. *fudra*, efflagro!)

Feye, *adj.* fated to die, unlucky, † 397. A.S. *fǽge*. Cf. *Morte Arth.* 121, 4253.

Feyntice (1239), Feyntise, Feyntyce. *See* Feintise.

Feyre, *n.* F. a fair, 1822.

Feyrye, *n.* F. race of fairies, 230. "See Keightley's *Fairy Mythology*, vol. i."—M.

Feȝtly, Feþli. *See* Feiþli.

Fifte, fifth, 1322.

Fin, *adj.* fine, great (applied to *force*), 1117, † 128; — fyn, 1217.

Finched, *pp.* finished, 3934.

Findestow = findest thou, 132.

Finliche, *adv.* finely, 768, † 1201.

Firked. *See* Ferke.

Flagetes, *n. pl.* F. flagons, 1893; — flaketes, 1888.

Flebled, *pt. pl.* became feeble, 2660, [*But we should rather read* febled. Cf. *febul* in l. 5227.]

Flecchinge, *n.* F. flinching, turning aside. See *fléchir* in Cotgrave.

Fleete, *v.* S. to float, † 532. Ch.

Flen, *v.* S. to flay, 1682; *pp.* flayne, 2607.

Flen, *v.* S. to flee, to fly, 3872; — flene, 1856, 3879, 3892; *pt. s.* flei, 1896; *imp. pl.* fleþ, 3366.

Flet, *n.* S. floor of a cottage; *hence*, on mi flet = in my cottage, 5368. A.S. *flett*. See *Myrk's Instructions for Parish Priests*, ed. Peacock; l. 273, *note*.

Flite, *v.* S. to chide, debate, 2545.

Flitte, *v.* S. to drive away, banish, 623.

Flon, *n. pl.* S. arrows, † 269.

Floriched, *pp.* flourished, clothed with verdure, 2438.

Floungen, *pt. pl.* flew as if flung, were thrown, † 269.

Fode, *n.* a man, † 209. Cf. Sw. *föda*, to bring forth.

Fodest, 2 *p. pr. s.* thou feedest, i. e. suppliest, 1646; *pt. s.* foded, 57; *imp. pl.* fodes, 2050. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *fodjan*.

Fold, *n.* S. earth, ground, 5382.

Fold, *pp.* folded, 858.

Folili, *adv.* foolishly, 4596; — folliche, 1557.

Folwe, *v.* S. to follow, 189; *pr. s.* folwes, 436; fulwes, 33; *pt. pl.* folwed, 3351, 3631; *imp. pl.* folweþ, 3344.

Fomen, *n. pl.* S. foemen, foes, 3274, 3372, † 98.

Fon, *n. pl.* S. foes, 3269, 3338; — fone, † 271, † 332, † 866.

Fonden, *v.* S. to try, seek, attempt, † 108; — fonde, 1019, 3387, † 246, † 385; fond, 777, 3599; 1 *p pr. s.* fonde (I seek, ask), † 1054; 3 *p. pr. s.* foundes (goes), † 121; *pr. pl.* fonden (are busy), 1682; *pt. s.* fonded, † 740; *pt. pl.* fondede (busied themselves),

3629; *imp. pl.* fondes, 1114; *pp.* fonded, 623, 801; *pres. part.* founding (going), 1749. A.S. *fandian.*

Fond, *pt. s.* found, 293, 422, 2730, 4847; *pl.* fond him = found for him, 73.

Foos. *See* Fos.

For, *prep.* on account of, 1691; as suited for, 294, 506; in spite of (?), 1226. [*But we should, in the last place, read* fro.]

For, *conj.* in order that, 746, 2751; because, 1319, 1668.

For —, an intensive prefix. A.S. *for* —. Mœso-Goth. *fra* —. G. *ver* —. See below.

For-barre, *v.* to bar up, enclose forcibly, 3333; *pt. pl.* for-barred (parried), 1217.

For-brenne, *v.* S. to burn up, 1188; *pp.* for-brent, 2621, 2831, 3001.

Forcer, *n.* F. a casket, coffer, 4432, † 628. *See* Way's note on *Foorcere* in Prompt. Parv.

For-dede, *pt. s.* killed, destroyed (= should kill), 2972; *pp.* fordon, 1563.

Fordedes, *n. pl.* previous deeds, 325; — fordede, 5182. *See* note to l. 325, and cf. l. 2076.

Fore, *adv.* beforehand, 2076, 4142. *Cf.* To-fore.

Fore, *prep.* for, 2941.

Forfare, *v.* S. to kill, 2762.

For-fouten, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3686. *See* Jamieson.

For-frete, *pp.* eaten up, 2376. *See* Fret.

For-gaf, *pt. s.* gave up, 4418.

For-gete, *pp.* forgotten, 5156.

For-go, *v.* to forego, lose, 5187.

For-hungred, *pp.* exhausted with hunger, 2515.

For-left, *pp.* left, 2497.

For-lete, *pt. pl.* left, forsook, 2311; *pp.* for-lete, 679.

For-lore, *pp.* wholly lost, 2955, 4571.

Formest, *adj.* first, foremost, 1191, 5079, † 40; — formast, 2324; *adv.* (at first, first of all), 939, 1362, 2324.

For-oute, *prep.* without, 2681.

Fors, *n.* force, 1117. *See* Fin. *Phrase,* "no fors þei ne leten," they little cared for, 3651. Cf. *I do no fors,* I don't care, in *Chaucer* (Aldine edition), vol. vi. p. 305.

Forschop, 1 *p. pt. s.* I transformed, misshaped, 4394; *pp.* for-schaped, 2639. Ch.

For-sake, *v.* to deny, 1358. A.S. *for-sacan.*

Fort, *put for* Forto, 788. *See* note.

Forþeres, *pr. s.* proceeds, 5397.

Forþ-fare, *pp.* departed, 5266.

Forþi, For-þi, *conj.* S. on that account, therefore, 723, 1051, 1624, &c.

Forþinkes me, *pr. s. impers.* it mislikes me, grieves me, 5422; *pt. pl. refl.* forthoughten hem, repented, † 446. Ch.

Forþward, *adv.* S. forward, 3630.

For-waked, *pp.* exhausted with waking, worn out for want of sleep, 785, 793, 1797; —al for-waked, 790; —al for-walked, 2236. "Chaucer uses it, Cant. Ta. 5016, and Wyntoun, viii. 16. 141."—M.

Forwandreþ, *pr. s.* wanders long, 739. "In Chaucer is the *pp.* forwandred, *Rom. Rose,* 3336."—M. See also P. Pl. A. *prol.* 7.

Forward, *n.* S. a compact, 1451; *pl.* forwardes, 1557, 1568, 1650.

For-wept, *pp.* worn out with weeping, 2868. "In Chaucer's *Dreme,* 1833, and *King's Quair,* ii. 54."—M. Cf. Bi-wept.

For-wery, *adj.* exceeding weary, 2443. "In Chaucer, *Rom. Rose,* 3336."—M. Cf. Dan. *langvarig.*

For-wounded, *pp.* much wounded, 3686. "In Chaucer, *Rom. Rose*, 1830."—M.

For-ȝeten, *pt. pl.* forgot, 1909; *pp.* for-ȝete, 4934. *See* For-gete.

Fos, *n. pl.* foes, 1190; — foos, 2699. *See* Fon.

Fostredes, 2 *p. pt. s.* didst foster, 5376.

Fote, *n.* S. a foot (used as a measure), 4033.

Fouche, *in phrase*, "sauf wol I fouche," I will vouch-safe or guarantee, 4152.

Foule, *adv.* fully, 1646.

Foules, *n. pl.* S. birds, 822; *gen.* foulen, 805.

Foundes, Founding. *See* Fonden.

Fourteniȝt, *n.* S. a fortnight, 2681; — fourteneniȝt, 1337; — forteniȝt, 2423; *gen.* fourteniȝtes, 2683.

Foute. *See* Feute.

Fouȝten. *See* Fauȝt.

Fowlye, *n.* folly, † 1103.

Frakes. *See* Freke.

Fram. *See* Fro.

Frauȝt, *pp.* freighted, 2732.

Frayne, *v.* S. to ask, inquire, 250; 1 *p. pt. s.* freyned, 2034; *pt. s.* freyned, 1303, 3587; *pt. pl.* freyned, 394. "Somner says that in his time this word still prevailed in Lancashire."—M.

Fre, *adj.* S. liberal, generous, noble, 337, 386, 1061, 3277; *used as sb.* 505; *opposed to* þewe, 5514. See Sir F. Madden's *Reply to Mr Singer's Remarks on Havelok*, p. 15.

Fredom, *n.* S. liberal disposition, 189.

Freke, *n.* S. a man, 402, 1117, † 193, &c.;—frek, 264, 897, 934, &c.; *gen.* frekes, 3886; *pl.* frekes, 442, 2286;—frakes, 3504. Applied to a young boy in l. 4078. The A.S. *frec* is chiefly used "in a bad sense, but the root exists in the Su.-G. *fræck*, Isl. *frek*, strenuus, ferox."—M. Cf. Sw. *fräck*, Dan. *fräk*.

Freliche, *adj.* S. noble, genteel, 428, 822, 3876;—freli, 5329;—frely, 124, 366, 500;—freyliche, 360; — freelich, † 209, † 1003, † 1245.

Freli, *adv.* S. nobly, honourably, 5329. *Generally in phr.* "freliche schapen," finely shaped, 126, 225, 393; "freli schapen," 1447; *sup.* "frelokest i-schapen," 2634. "In the Isl. *fráligr* is alacer, celer, strenuus. *Orkneyinga Saga*."—M.

Fresly. *See* Fersly.

Fresch, *adj.* fresh, 3640. *See* Fersche.

Fret, *pt. s.* gnawed, 87; *pp.* freaten (*rather read* freten), † 1159. A.S. *fretan*. G. *fressen*. Cf. For-frete.

Friþ, *n.* a thicket, wood, forest, 822; *pl.* friþes, 2216, † 15. W. *ffridd*. Cf. O. Fr. *fraitis* in Roq.

Fro, *prep.* from, 13, &c.; — fromme, 425;—fram, 5373.

Frobroder, *n.* younger brother (*apparently contr. from* from-brother), † 23. [*I cannot find the word elsewhere.*]

Frond, *n.* F. front, 3584.

Frotus, *pr. s.* rubs, strokes, † 1174.

Ful, *adv.* very, 983.

Fulfillen, *v.* to fulfil, 1451; *pp.* fulfulled, 4319.

Fulsumli, *adv.* S. plenteously, 4325.

Fulwes. *See* Folwe.

Fundeling, *n.* foundling, 481, 502, 2077.

Fur, *n.* S. fire, 1188, 4773; — fure, 907, 3759.

Furþe del, fourth part, 1284.

Fy, *interj.* fie! 481.

Gabbe, *pr. pl.* S. talk idly, 1994. Ch.

Gadere, *v.* S. to gather, 30; — gader, 1022.

Gaf. *See* Gif.

Gailiche, *adv.* gaily, 2591;—gayli, 1625, 2597;—gayly, 2731.

Gainli. *See* Gaynli.

Gainelich, *adv.* † 506. *It is doubtless an error for* gamelich: *the parallel passage in* MS. Ashm. 44 *is*, "A lowde laȝter he loȝe." *See* Gamely.

Gainus, *n. pl.* javelins, † 292. Cf. "*Ganye, Gainye, Genye, Ganyhe*, an arrow, javelin." Jamieson. Cf. Ir. *gain*, an arrow; W. *gaing*, a chisel or wedge. [*In* MS. *miswritten* gamus.]

Gamely, *adv.* playfully, joyfully, laughingly, 427;—gamelich, † 506; —gamli, 3383;—gameliche, 2591.

Gamsum, *adj.* S. joyful, 4193.

Gan, Ganne. *See* Gin.

Gan, *pr. pl.* they go, 811.

Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 2372; —gapande, 2875; —gapind, 3503.

Garisun, *n.* F. provision, reward, 5073; — garissoun, 2491. Cf. Warissoun.

Garnemens, *n. pl.* garments, 3207, 4460. P. Pl. Crede, 188, *foot-note.*

Gart, *pt. s.* caused, made, 1248, 2082, 2168, &c.;—garte, 1365;— "gart þis do make," caused this to be done, 5529. *See also* 2900.

Gat. *See* Gete.

Gate, *n.* S. road, way; *on gate*, on his way, on their way, 1119, 2092, 4014; *on his gate*, 372; *on here gate*, 1912; *on oure gate*, 2800; *on hur gate*, † 379; *pl.* gatis, gates; *heie gates*, high-roads, 1691; *geynest gatis*, nearest ways, 4189; *oþer-gate*, otherwise, 3761.

Gayne, *v. impers.* to avail, help, profit, 598; *pr. s.* gayneþ, 3109; geineþ, 3899; *pt. s.* geyned, 3891; *pr. s. subj.* geyne, 3107. Dan. *gavne.* Sw. *gagna.*

Gayned, *pt. s.* in "na gref *gayned* to his ioye," no grief accrued to his joy, 2473. Cf. O. F. *gaagner.* A.S. *gynan.*

Gaynest, *adj. sup.* nearest, readiest, 3465;—geynest, 4189. *Cf.* Gayne; and *Gane* in Jamieson.

Gaynli, *adv.* readily, well, thoroughly, 636, 2665, 2706, 3135; —gaynliche, 369;—geinli, 3448;— geinliche, 744;—geynliche, 1030; —geynli, 3553, &c. *Cf.* Gaynest.

Gelt, *n.* S. guilt, 2339, 4403.

Gemetrie, *n.* geometry, † 548, † 644. P. Pl. A. xi. 153.

Genge, *n.* S. gang, assemblage, 1600, 1625.

Gerd him, *pt. s.* girt himself, 3291.

Gerdeþ, *pr. s.* strikes, 1240. See *Girde* in Ch. "But perhaps we should read *greteþ*."—M.

Gere, *n.* S. gear, clothing, 1716, 2588; *stel ger*, steel armour, † 416. Ch.

Gergeis, Greeks, 2200.

Gerles, girls, 816.

Gest, *n.* F. geste, romance, 5033; *pl.* deeds, adventures, 2780. *Cf.* Spenser, F. Q. ii. 2, 16.

Gestes, *n. pl.* S. guests, 4904.

Gete, *n.* S. to get, obtain, 644; 1 *p. pt. s.* gat (begat), 4191; *pt. s.* gat, 2895; 1 *p. pt. pl.* gete, 4077; *pt. pl.* gaten, 1592; *pp.* geten, 1030; gete, 799.

Gie. *See* Gye.

Gif, *v.* S. to give, 5539;—giif, 1169; 1 *p. pr. s.* giue, 531, gif, 536, 1000; *pt. s.* gaf, 395, 992, 1559; *pt. pl.* goue, 4781; *pp.* giue, 5075. *God gif* (God grant), 2157; *God goue*, 1648; *God gof*, 2348. *See also under* ȝeue.

Ginne, 1 *p. pr. s.* begin, 1929; *pr. pl.* ginneþ, 1185, 2080; *pt. s.* gan, 691, 736; *pt. pl.* gonne, 4009; 1 *p. imp. pl.* ginne, 5104. *Also, as an auxiliary verb; pr. s.* ginnes ride (doth ride), 1189; *pt. s.* gan, 71, 647, 831, &c.; *pt. s. subj.* gun, 290; *pt. pl.* gonne, 1961, 2200, † 292; gun, 1154, 3274; gunne, 1164, 1272, 1530, 1600; gon, 3825.

Ginnes. *See* Gynne.

Gist, *adv.* (?) justly (placed), exactly (set), † 294. *The gloss* iust *seems correct.*

Glade, *v.* S. to gladden, 824, 827; *intr.* to rejoice, 351; *pp.* gladed, 600, 870, 1593. Ch.

Gle, *n.* S. melody, 824.

Glede, *n.* S. a burning coal, † 729. Ch.

Gleming, *pres. part.* looking askance, † 506. See *Glime* in Jamieson.

Glimerand, *pres. pt.* shining, 1427.

Glisiande, *pres. pt.* glistening, shining, † 180, † 534, † 1196;—glisiing, † 698.

Glod, *pt. s.* glided, † 279.

Glosed, *pt. s.* spoke coaxingly, persuaded, 60.

Go we, let us go, *used for* let us, 1184. *Cf.* "gowe dyne, gowe." P. Pl. A. *prol.* 105.

God, *n.* S. goods, riches, possessions, 1731, 3523, 5071.

God, Gode, *adj.* S. good, 1765, &c. "*Used substantively*, 504, 1334, 3777. In the first and last instances *parentage* or *birth* is understood, and *lady* in the second."—M.

Godli, *adv.* S. goodly, well, fairly, 1305, 1450, 1461;—godliche, 1270, 2444, 5031;—godly, 169, 2916;—goddeli, 306.

Godelyche, *adj.* S. goodly, fair, 355.

Godmen, *n. pl.* good men, strong men, 1069.

Gof. *See* Gif.

Gome, *n.* S. a man, 670, 824, 851, † 221, † 252, &c.;—gom, 747, 1007, 1092, &c.;—gum, 4441; *gen. sing.* gomes, 346, 1687; *pl.* gomes, 1169, 1939.

Gon, *v.* S. to go, 4902;—gone, 2600; *pr. s.* goþ, 271, 747, &c.; *pr. pl.* gon, 1687; gan, 811; *imp. pl.* goþ, 263.

Gon, Gonne. *See* Ginne.

Gost, *n.* S. spirit, breath of life, 992, 1559, 2120; a phantom, 1730.

Goue. *See* Gif.

Gradden, *pt. pl.* cried out; *gradden hur griþ*, cried out for peace, made a treaty, † 151. P. Pl. A. ii. 59.

Graith, *adv.* straight, at once, † 863. *Cf.* Greiþ.

Graiþed. *See* Greiþe.

Graithlich. *See* Greiþli.

Grame, *n.* S. anger, wrath, 2200. Ch.

Gras, *n.* S. grass, herb, 644, 799, 1030; *pl.* grases, 27.

Grathly. *See* Greiþli.

Greate, *v.* to greet, † 705.

Grece, *n.* S. grass, 636. *See* Gras.

Grece, *n.* F. a flight of steps, stairs, 811. See Way's note in Prompt. Parv.

Gref, *n.* F. grief, 2473; vexation, anger, 4418;—greefe, † 264; *pl.* greues, 778, 868, 956, &c.

Greefly, *adv.* grievously; *greefly bigo*, grievously beset, † 490, † 994.

Gregoyse, *n. pl.* Greeks, 5104.

Greiþ, *adj.* ready, 5296;—greyt, 2731. [*These seem to be adjectives rather than from* Greiþe.]

Greiþe, *v.* to dress, prepare, make ready, array, 1719, 3558, 4274;

pr. s. graiþes, † 254; *pt. s.* greiþed, 3288; graythed, † 77; *pt. pl.* greiþed, 1931, 3207; *pp.* greiþed, 1945, 3766, 3768; graythed, † 26; graiþed, † 258, 2933; greiȝed (? greiþed) 5002; greyt, 2731; greiþ, 5296 (*but see* Greiþ); 1 *p. imp. pl.* greiþe we us, 2588. O. N. *greiða*. [For *greþand*, 1427, read *greþed*.] *Cf.* A-greþed.

Greiþli, *adv.* readily, quickly, 984, 3492, 4257;—greþli, 998;—graithlich, † 858;—grathliche, † 562;—grathly, † 711.

Grembe, *n.* S. anger, fierceness, 2080, † 221, † 279. "In Isl. *grimd*; see *Gautrek's Saga*, p. 251."—M. *Cf.* Grame.

Grendes, 2 *p. pr. s.* thou grindest, † 510.

Gresli. *See* Grisli.

Grete, *adj.* great; used (in *pl.*) substantively (as at present) for persons of rank, 1107, 1595, 1936; *comp.* gretter, 1859; *sup.* grettest, 928; *misworitten* grettes, 1196.

Grete, *v.* S. to greet, accost, 1430; *pr. s.* gretes, 233; *pt. s.* gret, 1393, 1986; grett, 873, 4532; grette, 369; *pt. pl.* gretten, 1334; grette, † 920; *imp. pl.* gretes, 355; greteþ, 359; *pres. part.* gretand, 3816.

Greteli, *adv.* greatly, 1292;—gretliche, 975, 2444;—gretly, 600;—grettli, 2665;—gretteli, 4872.

Gretyng, *n.* S. salutation, 234.

Greue, *n.* S. a grove, 3634.

Greue, *v.* F. to vex, injure, 689, 2875, 4028; *pr. s.* greues, 530, 608, 889, 899; *pr. pl.* greuen (*sub.* wounds), 1378; *imp. s.* greue, 2793.

Greues. *See* Gref.

Grewes, Greeks, 2080.

Grim, *n.* S. anger, fury, † 904. A.S. *grim*, fury.

Grint, *pt. s.* S. ground, pierced through, 1242, 3443.

Gript, *pt. s.* S. gripped, seized, 744.

Grisli, *adj.* S. formidable, frightful, 1730;—grisiliche, 4343;—grissiliche, 4935;—grislich, † 434;—gresli, 1687.

Griþ, *n.* S. peace, security, 3891, 3899; *gradden hur griþ*, sued for peace, † 151; *graunted him griþ*, granted him peace, 3927.

Grocching. *See* Grucching.

Grom, *n.* S. groom, man, 1767. "Evidently the representative of *gome* and formed from it, as bride-*groom* is from *brid-guma*."—M.

Grot, *n.* groat, 4257. "It may also mean a thing of no value, from S. *greót*, pulvis."—M.

Growen, *pr. pl.* grow, 1812.

Grucche, *v.* F. to murmur, be unwilling; 2 *p. pr. subj.* grutche, 4257; *imp. s.* grucche, 1450; *pt. s.* grucched, 3927; *pres. part.* grocching, 271. Ch.

Grucching, *n.* S. murmuring, 1461, 2687.

Grunt, *pt. pl.* groaned, † 388.

Gryffouns, Greeks, 1961. Cf. *Griffouns* in Halliwell.

Gult, 1 *p. pt. s.* injured, 1172. *See* A-gult.

Gum. *See* Gome.

Gun, Gunne. *See* Ginne.

Gye, *v.* F. to guide, lead, govern, 1105, 2664, † 316, † 328;—gie, † 287. Ch.

Gye, *n.* F. guide, 2727, 2849.

Gyled, *pp.* beguiled, cheated, 689. Ch.

Gynne, *n.* a contrivance, art, † 1135; *pl.* ginnes, † 548, † 644. Ch.

Hache, *n.* S. ache, pain, 905;—hacche, 847; *pl.* haches, 615, 1575;—hacches, 826, 902. "Still pronounced *aitch* in Cheshire. *Vide* Wilbraham's Glossary."—M.

Hacches, *n. pl.* hatches (of a ship), 2770, 2776. Ch.

Hadden, Hadestow. *See* Haue.

Hakernes, *n. pl.* S. acorns, 1811.

Hal, *adj.* all, 323, 371.

Halde, *v.* S. to hold, 1304; *pr. s.* haldes, 905, 932; *pr. pl.* holden, 2711; *pt. pl.* helden, 946; *pp.* holde (bound, beholden), 317; hold, 4722; holde (considered as, esteemed), 2833, 3773, 4158; hold, 1355; *imp. s.* hald, 343; *imp. pl.* haldes, 106.

Half, *n.* side, 3971; *on goddes halue*, on God's side, in God's name, 2803.

Halp. *See* Helpes.

Hampris, *pr. s.* hampers, impedes, troubles, 668; *pp.* hampered, 441; hampred, 4694; *imp. pl.* hampres, 1115. *Cf.* Su.-Goth. *hæmma*, Dan. *hemme*, to *hem* in.

Han. *See* Haue.

Hange, *pp.* hung, 5479. [*Better* hanged. *Cf.* Honget.]

Hap, *n.* chance, fortune, 414, 440, 1794, 1798; — happ, 806; — happe, 32; *pl.* happes, 1815, 1840, 1885, &c.; —vp happe (perhaps), 2722. Icel. *happ.* W. *hap.* Ch.

Happe, *v.* F. to get, receive, light on, 3340. Cf. F. *happer*, to seize.

Happili, *adv.* haply, by chance, 2774, 4130; —happiliche (luckily), 2495.

Hard, *adj. used substantively to denote* danger *or* hardship, 435; — harde, 472, 2339; — as harde as (as fast as), 1082, 1857; cf. 1286.

Hardien, *vb.* to make hard, embolden, 1156.

Hardnesse, *n.* hardship, 1816. Ch.

Harmes, *n. pl.* sorrows, 453.

Harmles, *adj.* unharmed, 1671.

Harneis, *n.* harness, body-armour, horse-trappings, 1582; — harneys, 2349, 4187, 4281. Ch.

Has, *for* As, 1857.

Has, *for* Hast, 606.

Haselnotes, *n. pl.* hazel-nuts, 1811.

Hastely, *adv.* quickly, soon, 58, 233, 1566; — hasteli, 597, 1051; — hastilyche, 2571; *comp.* hastlier (sooner), 4160.

Hastou, Hastow, hast thou. *See* Haue.

Haue, *v.* to have, 72; 1 *p. pr. s.* haue, 519; 2 *p. pr. s.* hastou (hast thou), 1545; hastow, 1005, 1556; has, 606; 3 *p. pr. s.* haþ, 477, &c.; has, 475; 2 *p. pr. pl.* han, 4093; haue, 1030; *pr. pl.* han, 361; 2 *p. pt. s.* hadestow (hadst thou), 1816; *pt. s.* had, 369; *pt. pl.* hadden, 1014; hadde, 1289; *imp. s.* a, 1177; *imp. pl.* haueþ, 3339; 2 *p. pr. s. subj.* haue, 4255.

Hautene, *adj.* F. haughty, proud, 3982; — hauteyn, 472, 529, 707, 729; (loud), 2187.

Hawes, *n. pl.* haws, berries, 1811.

Hed, *pt. pl.* hid, 2848; — hedde, 1793; *pp.* hed, 688.

Heie, *adj.* high, 749; — heiȝ, 103; — heiȝh, 569, 1156; — heye, 252; — hiȝe, 5372; *adv.* hyeȝ, 707; *comp.* herre, 529, 1178; *superl.* heiȝest, 2907. *Heie gates*, highways, 1691; *heiȝ-waye*, 1846. *On heiȝ*, 2020. *Hieȝ midniȝt*, 2066. *Heiȝe dese*, high daïs, 4011.

Heili, *adv.* highly, greatly, *often joined to the vb.* herie, *as*, heriȝeden heili, 3461; —heriend heiliche, 1584; — heriede hiȝliche, 1798; — to herien heiȝli, 1875; — hilich herie, † 703; — heiȝli (earnestly), 5495; —heiȝeliche, 2336; —heiȝeli, 4720.

Heiȝ vs, *vb. refl.* *See* Hiȝe.

Heiȝing, *n.* hurrying, fast travelling, 2440.

Heiȝresse, *n. pl.* S. hairs, i. e. hair-

cloths (by way of penance), 4778. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. v. 48. The spelling *heiȝresse* for *heiȝres* is like that of *bodiesse* for *bodies*, 3767, and *lordesse* for *lordes*, 4539. A.S. *hæra*, a hair-cloth.

Hel, *n.* S. a hill, 2233, 2318; *pl.* helles, 2432.

Held, *n.* S. (*put for* Eld), age, 403.

Helden. *See* Halde.

Hele, *v.* S. to hide, conceal, 960, 4206; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* hele þou, 945. Ch.

Hele, *v.* S. to heal, 595; *pp.* heled, 1329, 1575.

Hele, *n.* S. health, 597, 1375. Ch.

Helpes, *imp. pl.* S. help ye, 2378; helpeþ, 4409; *pt. s.* halp, 2206; *pp.* holpen, 3611; holpe, 4012, 4149; holp, 4494.

Helplich, *adj.* helpful, † 187.

Hem, *pron. dat.* to them, 169; *acc.* them, *passim.* Hemself (themselves), 812, &c.

Hende, *v.* to end, 540.

Hende, *n.* end, 2333, 4178.

Hende, *adj.* courteous, gentle, 106, 184, 348, 362, † 665, &c.;—hend, 165, 1103. O.N. *hendt*, adapted; Dan. and Sw. *händig*.

Hende, *adv.* at hand, near, 278, 2513.

Hendeli, *adv.* courteously, gently, 1917, 4311; — hendely, 269, 523, † 187, † 248; — hendli, 2469, 3032; — hendly, 2785.

Heng, *pt. s.* hung, 734.

Henne, *adv.* hence, 1746, 2553; hennes, 329. Ch.

Hennes-forþ, henceforth, 1050.

Hent, *v.* S. to take, catch, get, 2394; 1 *p. pr. s.* hent, 414; 2 *p. pr. s.* hentest, 2787; *pr. s.* hentes, † 527; hentis, 907; 1 *p. pt. s.* hent, 615; *pt. s.* hent, 150, 1010, 2754, &c.; *pt. pl.* henten, 4023; hent, 2420. Hentes vp (catches up), 1896; hent vp (caught up), 3948.

Hepus, *n. pl.* hips, berries, 1811.

Her, *conj.* ere, 1516. *See* Er.

Herande, Herend. *See* Erand.

Herberwed, *pp.* harboured, lodged, 1626. Ch.

Herberes, *n. pl.* garden-plots, 1768. *See* P. Pl. Crede, 166.

Herde, *n.* S. host, army, 1120.

Herden, *pt. pl.* heard, 1298.

Here, *pers. pron.* her, 1716, &c.; — hire, 150, &c; — hir, 673, &c.; — hure, 2915. *The spelling* hire *is the commonest;* hure *occurs but once;* here *is used of* the sun, 3073.

Here, Hire, *poss. pron.* her. *See* page 95.

Here, *poss. pron.* their, 14, 73, &c.

Here-bi-fore, heretofore, 3043, 3959.

Herende. *See* Erande.

Heres, 2 *p. imp. pl.* hear ye, 2291, 2624. *Cf.* Herden.

Herien, *v.* S. to praise, 1875; herie, 5208, † 703; *pt. pl.* heriede, 1798; heriȝeden, 3461; *pp.* heriȝed, 4484, 5372; heried, 4577, † 536; *pres. part.* heriend, 1584. Ch. *See* Heili.

Heried, *pt. s.* S. harried, harrowed, 3725. *An allusion to* "The Harrowing of Hell."

Herken, *v.* S. to hearken, 213; 2 *p. imp. pl.* herkenes, 2248, 2617.

Hert, *n.* S. a hart, 2569.

Herted, *pp.* encouraged, 3417.

Herre. *See* Heie.

Hertily, *adv.* heartily, 97, 102;— hertly, 3324.

Herto, *adv.* hitherto, 4656.

Hese, *n.* ease, 1638, 3208.

Hest, *n.* S. command, 468, 495, 2137, 2146, &c.;—heste, † 160. A.S. *hǽs*.

Hete, *v.* S. to bid, tell, 1021; 1 *p. pr. s.* hete, 572, 1002, 1626; *pt. s.* 1082, 2045, 2089; hett, † 543; *imp. pl.* hete, 4159. *See also* Hote, Hiȝt.

Hetterly, *adv.* violently, angrily, 150, 886, 1243; — hetterli, 2756. *Cf.* A.S. *hǽtol*, hot, furious; Sw. *hetta*, heat; O.N. *heitr*, hot, angry. See *Gawayne and the Grene Kniȝt.*

Heue vp, *v.* to heave up, 348.

Hewe, *n.* S. hue, 3502, 3572.

Hewen, *pp.* hewn, 3616.

Hi, they, † 231.

Hiden, *v.* S. to hide, 4697;—hude, 2743. *And see* Hed.

Hider, *adv.* hither, 2277.

Hider-to, hitherto, up to the present time, 3510.

Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 3177, 3201, 3218.

Hidus, *n. pl.* hides, 3201.

Hight. *See* Hiȝt.

Him, *referring to* day, 2993.

Hir, Hire. *See* Here.

Hirne, *n.* S. a corner, 3201;—hurne, 688. Ch.

Hirt, *pt. s.* hurt, 3607.

His, *put for* Is, 3836.

Hise, *poss. pron. pl.* his, 4115.

Hit, it, 198, 470, &c.

Hiȝe, *v.* S. to hasten, haste, 1082, 1286, 2146, 3454, 4162, 5258; heiȝ us, 1746; hiȝe hire, 1969; hiȝe me, 5196; *used as transit. vb.* to make to haste, 1482; *pt. s.* hiȝed, 1261, 2177; *pt. pl.* hiȝed, 1123; hiȝed hem, 1940; heiȝden, 2280; heȝeden, 2285; hieȝeden, 2878; hiȝeden. 4546; *imp. pl.* hiȝes, 4486; hiȝes ȝou, 1187; heiȝe ȝou, 1051.

Hiȝt, 1 *p. pr. s.* am called, 70; *pt. s.* hiȝt (was called), 2838, 2918; hight, † 23, † 34; hyght, † 52, † 119, † 133; *pt. pl.* hiȝten, 4775; *pp.* hote, hoten. *See* Hote. *Cf.* A-hiȝt.

Hiȝt, promised. *See* Hote.

Ho, *pron.* who, 188, 4919; *pl.* ho, 2733. Ho-so (whoso), 1286, 4519; hoo-so, 2135.

Hok, *n.* S. oak, 1793. *See* Ok.

Hol, *adj.* S. whole, sound, 1056, 1566, 1655, 3522.

Holde, *n.* S. a fortress, place of strength, 2836, † 257; — hold (prison), 4573; *pl.* holdes, 5472, † 921.

Holde, Holden. *See* Halde.

Holde, *adj.* S. faithful, true, 2833, 3773.

Holle, *adj.* whole, complete, †521.

Holli, *adv.* wholly, 1106;—hollich, † 117; —holliche, 945, 974; —holly, 495, 531, 534, † 327.

Holpe, Holpen. *See* Helpes.

Holw, *adj.* hollow, 1793.

Hom-kome, *n.* home-coming, 807.

Homward, homeward, 2477, 2487.

Hond-werk, *n.* handiwork, creatures, 929.

Honget, *pp.* hung, 2020;—honged, 2086.

Hony, *n.* S. honey (as a term of endearment), 1655.

Hope, 1 *p. pr. s.* I believe, think, 1344, 1780; *pt. pl.* hopeden, 4308.

Hordere, *n.* order, 4461.

Hors, *n. pl.* horses, 1940, 4187, 4281, 4820. Hors charge (horses' load), 388.

Hote, 1 *p. pr. s.* I tell, 1123, 1384, 4989; *imp. s.* hote, 4162; 1 *p. pt. s.* hiȝt (promised), 1030; *pt. s.* hiȝt (promised), 58; het (called), 521; *pp.* hoten (called), 405, † 13; hote, 3497, † 172, † 364. *See also* Hete, Hiȝt.

Hotend, *pres. part.* hooting, shouting, 2387. See *Hoot* in Wedgwood.

Houȝ, *adv.* how, 4265;—hov, 97, 98, 225.

Houes, 723. *See* the note.

Hude, *v.* S. to hide, 2743. *Cf.* Hiden, Hed.

Hue, she, † 34, † 36, † 39.

Hulde, *v.* to flay, take off the covering or hide, 1708; 1 *p. pl. imp.* hulde, 2587. "From the same root proceeds the modern verb *to hull*, to take off the *hull* or husk. It corresponds to the Goth. *and-huljan*, Lu. x. 22. Hence also A.S. *hyldere*, a butcher."—M.

Hules, *pr. s.* fondles, lulls, hushes, 97. See *Hull* in Wedgwood.

Hupes, *n. pl.* hips, † 190.

Hur, her, † 185; (their), † 4, † 65. *See* Here.

Hure, *v.* S. to hear, 3270.

Hurne. *See* Hirne.

Hurtel, *v.* F. to strike together, meet together with a shock, 5013. *See* the note. Ch.

Hyeȝ. *See* Heie.

I-, Y-, a prefix, used (in these poems) chiefly in past participles, where it represents the A.S. *ge-*; or as an abbreviation for *in*, as in *i-fere*, *y-fere*, *i-liue*.

[*The past participles are here collected for convenience.*]

I-armed, armed, † 485.

Ibene, been, † 1023.

I-bent, bent, † 181.

I-bet, bettered, remedied, 4613.

Ibore, born, † 849.

Iborne, born, † 642.

Ichaped. *See* I-schapen.

I-charged, loaded, 2499.

I-cloþed, clothed, 2416.

I-corue, carved, † 569.

I-diȝt, prepared, 3918.

I-fed, fed, 768.

Ifenked, vanquished, † 117.

Igett, begotten (*or, perhaps,* born), † 633.

Igraue, graven, † 830.

Igrett, greeted, worshipped, † 731.

I-herd, heard, † 656.

I-holde, held, † 598.

I-horsed, mounted, 1950.

I-kid, known, renowned, † 453.

Ilaide, laid, † 203.

I-lengþed, lengthened, 1040.

Imaked, made, † 630.

I-painted, painted, † 733.

I-proued, proved, 4661.

I-putt, put, † 845.

I-quelled, killed, 1166.

I-schapen, shaped, 2634; — ischape, † 191, † 628; — ischaped, † 186; — ishape, † 732.

I-seie, seen, 1874.

I-sett, set, † 339, † 618, † 728.

I-slayne, slain, 3908.

I-told, told, 1493.
[*See also under* Y-.]

Iced, *pt. pl.* issued, 3789. See *Isch* in Jamieson.

Ich, I, 548, 598, 624, &c.

Icham, (*for* Ich am), I am, 594, 1743, 3951.

Ich, each, 332, 510. *See* Eche.

I-fere, together, 2180, 2523, † 340. *See* Infere.

Iknowe, *v.* to know, † 607. [*The only instance of an infinitive preceded by* i-.]

Ilk, *pron.* S. same; *almost always preceded by* þat. *Hence,* þat ilk = that same, that very, 281, 688, 2878; *used absolutely* (that very thing, that very time), 531, 629, 1041, &c. *Also,* þis ilk, 2263; þat ilk selue (that very same), 4106. *Spelt* þat ilke, 1041; þat ilche, † 448. Ch.

I-liue, in life, i. e. alive, 1690.

Imped, set, *lit.* engrafted, † 616.

Incle, *v.* to give an inkling of, to hint, † 616.

In-fere, together, 2984, 3300, 3342. *Cf.* I-fere, Y-fere, Fere.

Inkest, *sup. adj.* darkest, blackest, † 1061. [*The word is a little doubtful.*]

Inne, *n.* an inn, lodging, 1485, 1524, 1574, &c.

Inned, *pt. s.* lodged, 2479; *pp.* 1638. Wycl. Gloss.

I-now, *adv.* enough, 483, 1121; i-nov, 100; i-nouȝ, 714; i-nouȝe, 1673; y-now, 836; y-nouȝ, 118.

Ioly, *adj.* F. jolly, i. e. pleasant, pretty, 3479.

Ioyned, *pp.* adjoined, adjoining, 751.

Irn, *adj.* iron, 3232. *Cf.* Yren.

Is, *put for* His, 8, 69, 181, &c. *Both spellings occur in* l. 4369.

It-selue, itself, 3116.

Iuste, *v.* to joust, 1237. P. Pl.

Iustislich, *adv.* justly, exactly, closely, 1724; — iustili, 2596; — iustly, 751.

Iurnes, *n. pl.* journeys, 4286.

I-wisse, *adv.* verily, truly, 697, 739, 960, &c.; — i-wis, 3397. *See* Y-wisse. Ch.

[*For some words beginning with* ka, ko, ku, *see under* C.]

Kairus, go ye, † 623. *See* Caire.

Kan. *See* Can.

Kares, *imp. pl.* be ye sad, be anxious, † 563. *Cf.* Carestow.

Karp, Karpes. *See* Carpen.

Kast, *sb.* design, † 146. Ch.

Kastyng, *sb.* casting, 942.

Kauȝt. *See* Cacche.

Kaysers, *n. pl.* Cæsars, emperors, 483.

Kechene. *See* Kichen.

Ked, *adj.* renowned, famous, † 556. *See* Kid. [In P. Pl. A. xi. 56, MS. U has *kedde* where MS. T has *kid.*]

Kempe, *n.* S. knight, champion, 4029; — kemp, 3746; *pl.* kempes, 3352. A.S. *cempa.* Icel. *kempa.*

Ken, *n.* kindred. *See* Kin.

Ken, *n. pl.* kine. *See* Kin.

Kende. *See* Kenne, *v. intr.*

Kende, *adj.* natural. *See* Kinde.

Kendely. *See* Kindeli.

Kene, *adj.* keen, eager (*said of* thought), 616; (cold), 908; (kisses), 1011; (knights), 1205.

Keneli, *adv.* sharply, eagerly, shrilly, 4843; — kenely, 152, 859; — kenly, 37, 2174; — kenliche, 2532.

Kenne, *v. tr.* to inform, shew, instruct, charge, 1665; *pt. s.* kenned, 2212, 5205; *pt. pl.* kenned, 343; *imp. pl.* kennes, 591. "Kenne, or teche. *Doceo.*" Prompt. Parv.

Kenne, *v. intr.* to know, † 623; *pt. s.* kende, † 193; *pt. pl.* kende, † 367. Ch. "Kennyn, or knowyn. *Agnosco.*" Prompt. Parv.

Kepen, *v.* S. to keep, take care of, 8; — kepe, 66, 123; 1 *p. s. pr.* kepe = I care, intend, wish, 993; kepe = I tend, 244; kepe = I regard, desire, 4738; *pt. s.* keped, 171; *pt. pl.* keped, 187; kepten, 3645; *pp.* kepud, 5; ceput, 4094.

Kerneles, *n. pl.* battlements, 2858; — cournales, † 295. Ch. Rom. Rose, 4195. P. Pl. A. vi. 78. O. F. *crenelx.*

Kesse, *v.* S. to kiss, 5045; *pt. s.* kest, 63, 1265, 1570, 3205; keste, 1587, 1613, 4015; kessed, 1833; kessede, 4239; kust, 675; *pt. pl.* keste, 3100; kest, 2424; *pp.* kest, 859; *pres. part.* kessing, 1396. Ch.

Kessing, *n.* kissing, 1053, 3076,

3474; —kesseng, 3659. [*Always joined with* clipping.]

Kete, *adj.* bold, fierce (?), *or* quick, smart (?), 330, 3793. A rare word, of which the following are instances. We find, "in a poem of the 13th century:—

Pikede beth the shete,
And wormes ther beth *kete*
To don the soule tene.
Sawe of Seint Bede, MS. Digby 86, f. 127 *b*."—M.

We also find mention of "a king *kete*," Rel. Ant. ii. 9; and the beams of the sun are called "*kete*," in Wright's Popular Treatises on Science, p. 138, l. 262 of the English fragment. Cf. also "Clerkes and *kete* men," P. Pl. A. xi. 56, where *kid* and *kedde* are other readings. "In our text, the most obvious etymology seems to be the Teut. *kut*, Belg. *kuyt*, audax, ferox."—M. Coleridge suggested O. N. *katr*, glad; and the Sw. *katighed*, boldness, may also be worth considering. Or again, as we find the forms *moulder* and *smoulder*, *knap* and *snap*, we may connect it with the O. E. *skeet*, O. N. *skjóttr*, sharp, quick, which is connected with *to shoot* and *to skate*. This would give the sense *sharp*, *quick*, or *smart*, which seems not inappropriate. *See* Ketli.

Ketli, *adv.* quickly, smartly (?), 3023; —ketly, 1986, 2105. *See* Kete.

Keþþe. *See* Kiþen.

Keuer, *v. tr.* F. to make to recover, to heal, 635; —keuere, 1521; —kuuere, to attain to, 128; —keueren him gate = to procure *or* make for himself a passage, †904; *pt. s.* cuuerede (recovered), 2824; *pt. pl.* keuered hem = obtained for themselves, †235; *also* (2) keuer, *v. intr.* to recover, become whole, 1488; *pt. s.* keuered, made good his retreat, retreated, 3625; *pl. pl.* keuered, 3647; *cf.* vp-keuerede, 2759; *pp.* keuered, procured, made ready (*unless it means* covered), 4450. [Connected with F. *recouvrer*, Lat. *recuperare*.]

Keuered, *pt. s.* covered, 3034; *pp.* keuered (*unless it is from the preceding*), 4450. [Connected with F. *couvrir*, Lat. *cooperire*.] *See* Kuuere.

Kichen, *n.* kitchen, 2171; —kychene, 1707; —kechene, 1681.

Kid, *pt. t.* and *pp. of* Kiþen, q. v. *Also, as adj.* renowned, famous, far-known, †11, †172, †310, †597; —kud, 51, 111, 114, 501, 512, 713, &c.; ked, †556; *sup.* kuddest, 631, 3047, 4231; *in the first of which it simply means* best. "It is very evident, that the *adj.* and *pp.* of kiþe are one and the same word."—M.

Kin, *n.* S. kindred, 584; —ken, 513, 722; —kun, 110.

Kin, *n. pl.* kine, 480, 503; —ken, 6; —kyn, 244.

Kinde, *adj.* natural, related, *spoken of* that which is conferred by kindred or acquired by birth, 128, 3138, 3474, 4098; —kynde, 241; —kende, 513; —kyn, 364.

Kinde, *n.* S. nature, kindred, birth, 107, 109, 821, 3136; —kynde, 1445, 2506; bi kinde = by birth, 1425; bi kynde, 507.

Kindeli, *adv.* by nature, kindly, in an accustomed manner, 1265, 1570; —kindely, 111, 522; —kindliche, 1697; —kindeliche, 1613; —kyndely, 14; —kyndeliche, 1396; —kendeli, 4867; —kendely, 1110.

Kinghod, *n.* S. kingly office, 4059.

King-riche, *n.* S. kingdom, 2127.

Kinhed, *n.* S. kindness, such as one relation shews to another, 4514.

Kinnesman, *n.* S. kinsman, 365. [Probably an error for *Thomasin*; see note.]

Kinrade, *n.* S. kindred, 522.

Kiþ, *n.* S. country, 4254, 4511, †241, †298; — kith, †48, †65, †591.

Kiþen, *v.* S. to cause to know, to make known, shew, declare, †162; — kiþe, 1184, 2126, 2986, 4086, †286; — kithe, †655; — kuþe, 1680; — keþþe, 4964; 2 *p. s. pr.* kuþest, 603; kiþes, 4515, †509; *pr s.* kiþes, †298, †529; kithes, †716, †783; *pt. s.* kudde, 231; kid, †222, †842; *pt. pl.* kidden, 2301, 4526; kudden, 1223; kiþed, 5287; kuþþed, 1011; *imp. s.* kiþe, 626; *pp.* kid, †169; kyd, 321, A.S. *cyðan.* [In l. 2301, kidden = shewed how to *rather than* knew how to.]

Kleped. *See* Clepe.

Knaue, *n.* S. a boy, 2394. Ch.

Knightweede, *n.* S. knight's clothing, armour, †544.

Knoulecheden, *pt. pl.* acknowledged, 4782.

Knowen, *v.* S. to know, 577; 2 *p. s. pr.* knowes, 1174; knowestow (knowest thou), 5365; 2 *p. pl. pr.* knowen, 594; 2 *p. s. pt.* knew, 3182; *pt. pl.* kneu, 2209; *pp.* knowe, 726. Ch.

Kolieres, *n. pl.* colliers, 2523; —choliers, 2520.

Komaundment, *n.* commandment, 1084.

Kome. *See* Com.

Konichauns, *n.* F. cognisance, badge, 3569. P. Pl. Crede, 185.

Konyng. *See* Conyng.

Kontre, Kontrey. *See* Cuntre.

Koraious. *See* Coraious.

Kortesie, *n.* F. courtesy, 3926; —kurteysie, 501.

Kortesliche. *See* Curtesliche.

Kosses, *n. pl.* kisses, 1011.

Kouchid him, laid him down, 2240.

Koueyne. *See* Couyne.

Koure, *v.* to cower, crouch down, kneel, †558. *See* Couren.

Kowden. *See* Can.

Krepe of, creep out of, 3084. *See* Crep.

Kud. *See* Kid, Kiþen.

Kun. *See* Kin.

Kunne. *See* Can.

Kuntenaunce. *See* Contenaunce.

Kunteyned, *pt. s.* demeaned himself, 3301. *See* Contenaunce.

Kurteyslyche. *See* Curtesliche.

Kust. *See* Kesse.

Kuþe, Kuþest, Kuþþed. *See* Kiþen.

Kuþþes, *n. pl.* S. manners, habits, 331.

Kuuere, (1) *v.* F. to cover, 1037; *pt. s. and pp.* keuered, q. v.

Kuuere, (2) *v.* F. to attain to, succeed, 128. *See* Keuer.

Kyrke, *n.* church, 4086.

Lac, *v.* S. to lack, be without, 453. [Sir F. Madden suggests to read *lat*, dismiss: I think *lac* may stand.]

Laced, *pt. s.* laced up, 1736.

Lachen, *v.* S. to catch, receive, take, acquire, embrace, †4, †199; lache, †123, †214; *pr. s.* lacchis, 4525; *imp. s.* lacche, 666; *pt. s.* lauȝt, 1234, 2237, 4708; lauȝt lond (landed), 2761; laught leue (took leave), †250; lauȝt vp (caught up), 2308; lauȝt out (drew out), 1244; *pt. pl.* lauȝten leue, 5413; lauȝt leue, 5087, 5201; lachte (they embraced, greeted, i.e. the Phocians and their allies), †427; *pp.* lauȝt, 671; lauht, †161. A.S. *læccan, gelæccan,* whence E. *c-latch.*

Ladde, *pt. s.* led, 1609, 2618; *pt. pl.* ladden, 1226, †20; ladde, 4292; lad, 459; ledden (governed), 5463.

Lafte. *See* Leue (2).

Laike. *See* Layk.

Lang, long, 4130.

Langes. *See* Long.

Langour, *n.* F. languishing, faintness, pain, 918, 986, † 245; — langor, 869; — langure, 737; *pl.* langoures, 1034. Ch.

Langured, *pp.* F. pined, languished, 983.

Lappen, *v.* S. to lap, wrap, 1712; lappe, 2576; *pt. s.* lapped, 1908; *pp.* lapped, 740, 2153, 2246.

Laske, *v.* F. to relax, slacken; *hence*, to shorten, 570; lask it (= lask it, relax it, assuage it), 950. *Cf.* O. F. *lascher;* Sc. *lasche* (lazy); E. *lax, slack;* Sw. *läska-dryck* (cooling-draught); Sw. *sloka*, to droop, &c. *Cf.* Lask, *sb.* in Halliwell.

Lasse, *adj. comp.* less, 1079, 1490, 2414, &c. Ch.

Last, *conj.* lest, 641, 953, 2971.

Last, *pp.* lasted, endured, 1281; *pres. part.* lastend (enduring, strong), 1736.

Late, *v.* S. to let, permit, 2680; 2 *p. s. imp.* late, 2336, 2355; 3 *p. s. pr. subj.* late, 2581; 2 *p. pl. pr. subj.* late, 985; — late me worþ, 2355, 3597; *cf.* † 1186. *See* Lete.

Lauȝeden, *pt. pl.* laughed, 1784.

Lauȝt. *See* Lachen.

Launced, *pt. s.* launched, i. e. leapt, 2755. *Cf.* F. *se lancer*, and see *Lans* in Jamieson.

Launde, *n.* a lawn, or open space in a wood, † 520, † 710. Ch.

Layk, *sb.* a "lark," a game, play, 678, 1784;—laike, 3110. Sw. *lek.*

Layke, *v.* to play, 1021; *pt. s.* layked, 1026; layked him, 31, 1411; *pt. pl.* laykeden, 3110; *pres. part.* layking, 699.

Layne, *v.* to conceal, act falsely, 906, 918, 1309. O. N. *leyna.*

Leame. *See* Leme.

Lebard, *n.* F. leopard, 2935; — lybard, 2896; *pl.* lebardes, 2874.

Leche, *n.* S. a physician, 576, 1032; *pl.* leches, 1328. Ch.

Ledden. *See* Ladde.

Ledes. *See* Lud.

Lederes, *gen. sing.* leader's, provost's, 2303.

Leef, Leefe, *adj.* *See* Leue.

Leef, leave we, 1836. *See* Leue.

Leese, Leeue. *See* Lese, Leue.

Lef, *adj.* lief, dear, 1879, 4372; (glad), 517; *as sb.* (dear one, the dear one), 2314, 1645; lef þinkes (seems dear, i. e. pleases), 384; *cf.* leefe thought (pleased), † 60; — leefe, † 774; — leef, 1839; — leue, 341, 666, 887, 1183, † 847; — leeue, † 226; *sup.* leuest, 3213. Ch.

Leflich, *adj.* trustful, † 427; — leeflich (trusty), † 139. A. S. *leóflíc*, lovely, faithful. *Cf.* Leue.

Lege, *adj.* F. liege, 1174, 2663, 3004.

Legge, *v.* S. to lay, 3234; *pp.* leide, 1448. Ch.

Leie, *pt. pl.* *See* Ligge.

Lel, *adj.* F. loyal, leal, true, just, 5119; *pl.* lele, 1312, 4158; *sup.* lellest, 4809.

Lelen, *v.* to make leal, sanction, authorize, 5284.

Lelli, *adv.* F. loyally, leally, truly, 687, 1281, 1807; — lelly, 985, 989;—lelliche, 117, 999;—lellyche, 357;—lelich, † 64; *sup.* leliest, 592. [*It occurs more than* 30 *times.*]

Leme, *n.* a limb, 1736.

Leme, *n.* gleam, light, † 774; — leame, † 1078. Ch.

Lemman, *n.* S. (lief-man), love, sweetheart, 663, 666, 695, 717, &c. [*Used of both sexes.*] Ch.

Lende, *v.* to tarry, stay, 1466. See *Leind* in Jamieson. *Cf.* Lengen.

Lene, 3 *p. s. imp.* grant, impart, give, bestow, afford, 327; 2 *p. s. imp.* 4398; *pt. s.* lente, 1233; lent, 885; *pt. pl.* lent, 22; *pp.* lend, 4578. Ch.

Lengen, *v.* S. to tarry, stay, remain long, dwell, † 44; lenge, 5421, 5538; leng, † 455, † 758; *pr. s.* lenges, 843, 5536; lengeþ, 2070; 2 *p. pl. pr.* lengen, † 1; *pt. s.* lenged, 2842; *pt. pl.* lenged, 2205, 5408, 5462; *pp.* (beþ) lenged, 1457; (is) lengged, † 196. A.S. *lengian*, to prolong. [*In* l. 2680, *the* MS. *can be read* lengþe *or* lengye; *read* lengye, *another form of the infinitive.*]

Lenger, longer, 633, 1113, &c. Ch.

Lengþe, *v.* S. to lengthen, 957; *misworitten* lengeþ, 1944; *imp. pl.* lengþes, 4348; lengþeþ, 4353; *pp.* lengþed, 1351, 1549; *misworitten* lengeþd *or* lengeyd, 2345.

Lep, *pt. s* leapt, 702, 2756.

Lere, *n.* S. countenance, features, 227. A.S. *hleor.* P. Pl.

Leren, *v.* S. to teach, 4770; 1 *p. pr.* lere, † 325; *pt. s.* lerde, 341; *pp.* lered (taught, learned), † 603, † 1152. A.S. *læran.*

Lere, *v.* S. to learn, 119. Ch.

Lese, *n.* S. a pasture, 175, 3138, 3141. See *Lease, Leasow*, in Halliwell; *cf.* A.S. *læsu.* It is not the plural of *lea.*

Lese, *v.* S. to lose, 1258, 1484, 1645, † 280; leese, † 378; *pr. pl.* lesen, † 126; *imp. s.* les, 988; *imp. pl.* leses, 3369; *pt. s.* les, 887, 1234. Ch.

Lesed, *pp.* *See* Lissen.

Lesten, *v.* to listen to, 31; 1 *p. imp. pl.* lesten, 3528; 2 *p. imp. pl.* lestenes, 1183, 3329; listenes, 170, 1929; lusteneþ, 384; lesteneþ, 4607; lesten, 1439. Ch.

Lestes. *See* Listes.

Lesteþ, *pr. s.* lasts, 5538.

Leten, *v.* to forego, let go, leave, forsake, 2184; 1 *p. s. pr.* lete, 382, 5465; *pt. s.* let (liȝtere of, i. e. thought the less of), 2119; 1 *p. pl. imp.* let, 3528; *imp. pl.* lettes, 1186; 3 *p. pr. subj.* lette, 4144; *pp.* lete (left), † 563. *As a simple auxiliary vb. it is spelt* late, q. v. *It is common with infinitives in the sense* to cause; *as*, he let sende, 2145; lete wite, 2171; let make, 5532. *See* Do. *For the phrase*, lete him worþe, † 1186, *see note to* "Werwolf," 3597.

Leþerly, *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 1231; — luþerli, 2646, 3151; — luþerly, 2334, 2775. *See* Liþer.

Letrure, *n.* F. letters, reading, † 1152. Ch.

Lette, *n.* S. stay, hindrance, 1340, 2685, 4751. Ch.

Lette, *v.* S. to prevent, hinder, 1253, 3552, 4258; — lett, 2971, † 149. *Cf.* Late, Lete. [*It is worth noting that this verb, in the sense* to permit, *is usually spelt* late; *in the sense* to forego, *it is* lete; *in the sense* to prevent, *it is* lette.] *Cf.* A.S. *lætan, lettan.*

Lettered, *pp.* learned, instructed, 4088.

Letteres, *n. pl.* (*in sing. signification*), a letter, 4842, 4844.

Leue, *v.* S. to believe, 708, 4175; 1 *p. s. pr.* leue, 497, 1032, 4105; leeue, † 639; 2 *p. s. pr.* leuestow (believest thou), 2358; *imp. s.* leue, 1553; *imp. pl.* leue, 1351, 2071; leueth, 5068. Ch.

Leue, *v.* S. to leave, 2358; *pt. s.* lafte, 1858; *pp.* leued, 83; 1 *p. pl. imp.* leef, 1836; 2 *p. pl. imp.* leues, 1806. *In neuter sense*, to remain, dwell, *pt. pl.* left, 1588; *cf.* Leuis.

Leue, *adj.* dear. *See* Lef.

Leued, *pp.* leaved, covered with leaves, 22, 757.

Leuer, *comp. adv.* liefer, rather, 453, 546, 855, 918, &c. *Cf.* Lef. Ch.

Leuere. *See* Liuere.

Leuis, *pr. s.* lives, dwells, 525; *cf.* left *in* l. 1588. *See* Liuen.

Leute, *n.* F. loyalty, fealty, 4838. Ch.

Leye, *v.* S. to lay; "leye mi lif," 2169; *pr. s.* leyes on (lays on), 1208.

Liand, Ligand. *See* Ligge.

Libbing. *See* Liuen.

Liche, *adj.* like, 3678, 3698, †767.

Liche, *n.* S. body, † 195.

Lidene, *n.* S. speech, † 782; — ludene, † 601. A.S. *lyden.* Ch.

Lift, *adj.* left (arm), 2961, 5499.

Ligge, *v.* to lie, dwell, 2194, 3062, † 689; lygge, † 1158; *pr. s.* ligges, 166; lis, 965; *pr. pl.* lyen, 2266; *pt. pl.* leie, 4307; *part. pres.* liand, 2180; ligand, 2246. Ch.

Liif, *n.* life, 957, 961, 994.

Liken, *v.* like, 2 *p. pl. pr.* 5529; lyken, 162; *as impers. vb.* (= pleases), likes me wel, 450; likes þe, 957, 1727; likes ȝou dere, 1050; *pt.* liked him, 28, 678; liked hire, 2032; *pres. part.* likand (pleasing), † 192; *pp.* lyked, 1012. Ch.

Liking, *n.* S. pleasure, 452, 2023; —likyng, 869, 1021. Ch.

Lime, *n.* S. limb, † 1121. Ch.

Lisse, *n.* S. comfort, happiness, 631, 2828, 5228. A.S. *liss.* Dan. *lise.* Ch.

Lissen, *v.* to loosen, assuage, mitigate, heal, 848; — lisse, 631; *pp.* lissed, 869; lesed, 1577. A.S. *lysan.*

List, *v. impers. pt. s.* it pleases, † 658; *pt. s.* lust, 1907; list, 2600. A.S. *lystan.*

Listenes. *See* Lesten.

Listes, *n. pl.* lists (*in the phrase,* lists of love), 740, 1057; — lestes, 946.

Listli, *adv.* S. slily, 2742; — listly, 2355; — listely, 25. A.S. *listlice,* artfully.

Litel and litel, 950.

Liþ, *n.* S. a joint, 1724. [*It also means* a limb. Ch.]

Liþer, *adj.* S. wicked, evil, bad, 2169; — luþer, 5240. A.S. *lyðer.* Ch.

Liuen, *v.* to live, 5394; *pr. s.* leuis, 525; *pt. pl.* liueden, 4802, 5508; *pres. part.* liuande, 3678; liuand, 1690; libbing, † 790.

Liuere, *n.* F. delivery (of blows), 3822; —leuere, 1233.

Liȝt, *v.* S. to lighten, gladden, 10. Ch.

Liȝtere, *comp. adv.* lighter, less, 2119; — liȝttere, *adj.* (nimbler, lighter), 154.

Liȝteli, *adv.* lightly, 702; — liȝtly, 1244; — liȝtli, 1973; *comp.* liȝtliere, 1894.

Lo, lo! 731; — loo, 1208.

Lof, *n.* S. love, 430.

Loged, *pp.* F. lodged, 1918.

Loke, *v.* S. to keep, guard, take care of, 1757, 3166, 4770; *imp. s.* loke, 430.

Lome, *adv.* frequently, often, † 321; — ilome, † 521. A.S. *gelóme.*

Londe, *n.* S. land, 2763; — lond, 2761; *pl.* londes, 1175, 3055. Ch.

Long, *v.* S. to belong, † 547; *pr. s.* longeþ, 143; longes, 360; langes, 331; *pt. s.* longed, 73, 1147; longet, 2719; *pt. pl.* longede, 2766; *pres. part.* longyng, † 635.

Loos. *See* Los.

Lorchipe (*read* lordchipe), *n.* S. lordship, 3680; —lorldschip, 3955. [*Cf.* Lorld, Lorlde (*for* Lord), 3404, 3405.] Lordship = lords, † 335.

Lordesse, *n. pl.* lords, 4539. *Cf.* Heiȝresse.

Lordinges, *n. pl.* lords, 1183, 1206, 3004.

Lore, *n.* S. lore, learning, teaching, advice, 328, 346, 2070, 2917. Ch.

Lore, *pp.* lost, 1360, 1556, 2584; —lorn, 668;—lorne, 4396. Ch.

Lorel, *n.* F. laurel, 2983.

Lorked, *pt. s.* lurked, slunk along, 25; *pres. part.* lorkinde, 2213.

Los, *n.* F. praise, 1386, 5132; — loos, 1448, 3973; — loose, † 4. Lat. *laus.* Ch.

Losengeres, *n.* F. flatterers, 5482. Ch.

Loþ, *adj.* S. loath; him loþ þouȝt (= it seemed loath to him), 1255; hem loþ were, 5201. Ch.

Loþed, *pt. pl.* loathed, † 335.

Loþli, *adj.* S. loathly, 50; — loðelike, † 99. Ch.

Loueliche, *adj.* S. lovely, 965; *adv.* in a lovely mannner, excellently, 975, 1315.

Louen, 2 *p. pl. pr.* love, 162.

Lourand, *pres. part.* louring, 2119. Du. *loeren.* P. Pl.

Louwe (hire), *v.* S. to lower herself, condescend, 708; *pt. s.* lowed, 695.

Louȝte, *v.* S. to bow, make obeisance, submit, 2900; *pt. s.* louted, 3485; *pt. pl.* louted, 3464. A.S. *hlútan.* *Cf.* A-louted. Ch.

Lowed. *See* Louwe.

Lud, *n.* S. a man, 452, 535, 1001, † 231, &c.; — lude, † 588; — lued, † 44; *pl.* ludes, 390, 525, † 331; ledes, 195, 1233. Londes and *ledes*, 4001; londes and *leedes* (where the MS. has *leethes*, with a *d*, or a ð, above it), † 12. On this difficult phrase see Sir F. Madden's reply to Mr Singer's remarks on Havelok. Cf. also Wedgwood on *Lease*, *Leet*. It seems to mean "lands and *leases*," or "lands and tenements," as Robert of Brunne uses it frequently to mean *tenements*, *rents*, or *fees*. The older form of the word is *lethe* or *lithe*, and it may, after all, not be connected in any way with *ledes*, the plural of *lud*. In l. † 12, we surely ought to read *leeðes* or *leðes*.

Lufsum, *adj.* S. lovesome, lovable, † 176.

Lust. *See* List.

Lusteneth. *See* Lesten.

Luþerli. *See* Leþerly.

Lybard. *See* Lebard.

Lykame, *n.* S. body, 227. P. Pl.

Lyked. *See* Liken.

Lyst, *n.* S. desire, inclination, † 794. Ch.

Lysted, *pt. s.* desired, † 776. *Cf.* List.

Lyte, *adv.* S. little, † 323.

Maat. *See* Mat.

Maister, *n.* F. master, 2735, † 682; *pl.* maistres, 2744.

Maistres, *n.* F. mistress, 1016.

Maistrie, *n.* F. mastery, victory, † 170; — maistry, 3341; — maistrye, 3137. Ch.

Make, *n.* S. mate, companion, 1898, 2498, † 249, † 843, &c.; *pl.* makes, 1757. Ch.

Makeles, *adj.* matchless, † 799.

Makes, *imp. pl.* make ye, 4933; *pp.* maked, 1951, 4131, 4933; mad, 4876; *pres. part.* makende, 2985.

Malencoli, *n.* F. anger, 4362.

Malskrid, *pt. s.* wandered, 416. Probably with the sense of *bewilderment*; cf. *Maskede* in Halliwell, *Mask* in Coleridge's Glossarial Index, and *masquer* in Burguy. *Malskred* seems = bewildered, *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris. C. 255.

Manchipe, *n.* S. manhood, courage, 3337;—manchip, 2676.

Maner, *n.* manner, kind (*used without* of *following*), 698, 1155, 3278.

Manerli, *adv.* in a mannerly way, 5008.

Manhede, *n.* S. manhood, 431; — man-hede, 4390; — manhed, 197. Ch.

Mankynne, *n.* S. mankind, 143.

Manly, *adv.* S. manly, *hence*, fittingly, suitably, 1042, 2040; — manli, 2690, 3341; — manliche, 2325, 3253; — manlich, † 375. "This adverb is often used as a mere expletive, merely to fill up the alliteration, as *manly hem meked*, 1276."—M.

Manly, *adj.* S. manly, 1424; *sup.* manlokest, 3419.

Manquellere, *n.* S. mankiller, murderer, 993.

Marche, *n.* S. boundary, limit of territory, territory, † 312, † 1031; *pl.* marches, 2214, † 14, † 137; *no doubt* marques *is written for, or is equivalent to,* marches, † 173; cf. † 14.

Mark, *v.* F. to inflict by way of reprisal, † 497; — merken, † 284; *pt. s.* marked, † 932. O. F. "*marquer*, user de représailles." Roq. *Cf. the phrase*, letters of *marque*.

Marques. *See* Marche.

Marres, *pr. s.* mars, harms, 1171; *pp.* marred (bitterly vexed, maddened with chagrin), 438, 664, 884, 995, † 1041.

Marring, *n.* a harming, injuring, 4362.

Mase, 1 *p. pr. s.* am confounded, am at a loss, 438; *pp.* mased (stupefied), 884. *Cf.* A-mased.

Massager, *n.* F. a messenger, 4156; —messanger, 4204; *pl.* massegeres, 4251; — messageres, 1441; — messageris, 1382; — messagers, 1465; — messangers, 1330; — messangeres, 1143.

Mat, *adj.* F. dejected, faint, almost dead, 2441;—maat, 1776. Du. *mat*. Fr. *mat*. G. *matt*. *Cf.* Span. *matar*, to kill. Ch.

Maugre, *n.* F. ill-will, spite, harm, † 932; *used as an adv.* in spite of, † 101, † 680; — mawgrey, 3745. F. *mal grè*. Ch.

May, *n.* S. maiden, 659. Mœso-Goth. *mawi*. Ch.

Mayne, *n.* S. a company, host of attendants, 416; — meyne, 184, 202, 1199, 1573. G. *menge*. Mœso-Goth. *managei*.

Mayntene, *v.* F. to maintain, 2698; — meintene, 3002; — meyntene, 3642; *imp. pl.* meyntenes, 2676. [*Miswritten* meynte, 1098.]

Mechef. *See* Meschef.

Mede, *n.* S. reward, 2135, 4726, 5355; to mede (= by way of return, by way of security), 2341; to medis (= by way of requital on *my* part), 3253. P. Pl. Ch.

Mede, *adj.* meet, fitting, 604. *Cf.* A.S. *médeme*.

Meded, *pt. s.* bribed, 4646.

Medle, *v.* F. to mingle (in fight), † 93; *pt. s.* medled him (was busy), 2492, † 170; medled, 2325; *pp.* medled (meddled), † 964. Ch. [*It occurs also in the shorter form* mele (2) q. v.]

Meken, *v.* to humble oneself, to submit, 2118; — meke him, 2104, 3928; 1 *p. s. pr.* meke me, 665; *pt. pl.* meked hem, 1276; *imp. s.* meke, 3919; *imp. pl.* mekes (quiet, silence), 4604.

Mekeli, *adv.* S. meekly, 642, 659, 1480; — mekkeli, 4456; — mekliche, 408; — mekeliche, 808.

Mele (1), *v.* S. to talk, speak, discuss, 621, 4009; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mele, 1342; *pt. s.* meled, 4684, 5204; *pt. pl.* meleden (twittered), 821. A.S. *mǽlan*, to speak, converse. [*Observe the distinction between this word and the next.*]

Mele (2), *v.* F. to mingle in fight, to fight, 3325; *pt. s.* meled (assembled), 1287; melled hire (busied herself), 1709, 1719. O.F. *mesler*, to meddle, mingle, mell. [*This verb is a shortened form of* medle, q. v.]

Meling, *n.* S. conversation, 760. *See* Mele (1).

Meling, *n.* mingling, 5257; *hence*, meling-while (hour of combat), 3858. *See* Mele (2).

Menden, *v.* F. to mend, 647; *imp. pl.* mendes, 845.

Mene, *v.* S. to mean, intend, signify, tell, 4808; 1 *p. s. pt.* mente, 560; mennede, 1925; *pt. s.* ment, 641; *pt. pl.* mened, 4845; *pp.* ment (intended, designed), 1819. A.S. *mænan*. Ch.

Mene, *v.* S. to bemoan oneself, mourn, 493; *pt. s.* mened, 940; *pp.* mened, 561, 1490. A.S. *mǽnan*.

Menge, *v.* S. to tell, speak, mention, 1422; — mengge, 449; — meng, 613; — minge, 1624, 1925, 1937, 4327, 5032, &c.; — munge, 831, 1441, 1635, 2616, 2735, 4767; — myng, 1404; *pr. s.* minges, 1067, † 839; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mingeþ, 1876; 1 *p. s. pt.* munged, 4863; *pt. s.* munged, 833; *pt. pl.* munged, 2999; minged, 3711; mynged, 1335; *pp.* munged, 4847; minged, 2844; 1 *p. pl. imp.* munge, 3097; menge, 794; myng, † 45. A.S. *myngian*.

Mennes, *gen. pl.* men's, 6; — mennis, 480.

Mensk, *n.* S. honour, worship (*lit.* humanity), 1257, 2028, 3900, 5527; — menske, 313, 2050. Cf. *P. Pl. Crede*, 81. O.S. *menniski*.

Mensk, *v.* to honour, 4815; — menske, 4834; *pp.* menskked, 5132.

Menskful, *adj.* honourable, worshipful, 202, 242, 405, 431, 508, &c.; — menskfull, † 555; *sup.* menskfulles[t], 1435.

Menskfully, *adv.* honourably, worshipfully, 1142; — menskfulli, 4992, 5048.

Menskliche, *adv.* honourably, with worship, † 173. *Cf. the preceding*.

Menstracie, *n.* F. minstrelsy, 1155, 1619, 3812; — menstracye, 1951; — minstracie, 5011.

Merciabul, *adj.* F. merciful, 4406, 5131; — merciabule, 5146; — mercyabul, 5118.

Merie, *adj.* S. *pl.* 1148, 1880; — merye, 821; — miric, 1905, † 821; — murie, 2853; — muri (houndes), 2192; *sup.* muriest, 4926.

Merken. *See* Mark.

Merþe, *n.* S. mirth, 823, 2017; —murþe, 1634.

Meschef, *n.* F. mischief, misfortune, sorrow, 1044, 1247, 1362, 3096; — mechef, 5131.

Mest, *sup. adj.* most, chief, 2735; *adv.* chiefly, above all, 1433, 4729.

Mesurabul, *adj.* F. moderate, 333. P. Pl.

Mete, *v.* S. to meet, 815; *imp. pl.* meteþ, 3338.

Mete, *v.* S. to dream, 658, 862; *pt. s.* mette, 2869; mett, † 726, † 1142; met, † 821; *used reflexively*, hire mette, 2920, 5497. Ch.

Meting, *n.* S. a dream, 900; — metyng, 698, 706, 716, 733, † 839, &c. Ch.

Meued, *pt. s.* moved, 4285; — meeued, † 204; *pt. pl.* meuede, 4330. Ch.

Meuwe, *n.* F. a mew, i. e. a cage, prison, 3336. Ch.

Miche, *adj.* S. great, much, 117, 1362, 3555; — mich, † 600, † 932; — moch, 313; — moche, 202, 891, 1073; — muche, 2374. *Cf.* Mo.

Michel, *adv.* S. greatly, very, very much, 4305; — mochel, 367, 900, 1044, 1406, 1490, 2039; — muchel, 850. Ful mochel (very

much), 4095; to mochel (too much), 1747. *See* Mo.

Midde, *prep.* with, 5009;—mide, 2133; — myd, 3143. A.S. *mid.*

Midesomer, *n.* midsummer, 1464.

Middel-erþe, *n.* S. the earth, world, 1004.

Mildeliche, *adv.* S. mildly, 1898.

Mile-wei, *n.* a mile-way, *used to denote* a very short space of time, 1578. *Cf.* Ch. Shipm. Ta. 276.

Minge, Minges, Minged. *See* Menge.

Mires, *n. pl.* miry places, 3507; *cf.* 2619.

Mirie. *See* Merie.

Misdone, *v. tr.* S. to wrong, harm, 2581; *pt. pl.* misdede, 2548; *intr.* 2 *p. pl. pr.* misdon (do amiss), 3949.

Misdrede ȝow, *imp. pl.* fear, 1567.

Misferde, *pt. pl.* fared amiss, 2999; *pp.* misfaren, 1359; misfare, 995.

Mis-gilt, *n.* S. offence, fault, 2118, 3919, 4792; — mis-gelt, 3996, 4397; — mis-gelt, 1541; — misse-gilt, 2104.

Mislikede me, *pt. s. impers.* misliked me, 2039.

Misproude, *adj.* S. *pl.* haughty, † 312; — misseproude, 2944.

Missaide, 1 *p. pt. s.* reproved, 2040.

Misse, *n.* S. a fault, error, offence, 532; *hence* mysse, *adv.* amiss, wrongly, 141, 1480. *Perhaps in* l. 1480 myssetrowed *is one word; cf.* Mistrowe.

Misse, *v.* S. to miss, 1016; *pt. pl.* misseden, 1827.

Misseliche, *adv.* S. wrongly, 711; — missely (mistakenly), 207.

Misseproude. *See* Misproud.

Missespeche, *n.* S. evil report, defamation, 1523. "In the same manner is formed the Isl. *mismæli*, from *mis* and *mæli*, loquela."—M.

Mister, *n.* F. need, want, 1919. O.F. *mester;* Roq.

Mistrowe, *n.* S. mistrust, 3314.

Miswerche, *v.* S. to act amiss, 5148.

Mite; *in phrase* a mite worþ (the worth of a mite), 4543.

Mix, *n.* S. a vile wretch, 125. *Cf.* Felþe, *which is similarly used.* A.S. *meox.* O.E. *mixe*, filth. Hence the *pp.* mixed = filthy.

"That *fule* traytour, that *mixed* cherl." Havelok, 2533.

Miȝt. *See* Mow.

Miȝth, *n.* S. might, 3508.

Miȝthi, *adj.* S. mighty, 2859.

Miȝtow, thou mightest, 3041. *See* Mow.

Mo, *comp. adj.* S. more, 1162, 1189, 1454, 2780, 5241; — more (greater), 3464.

Mo, *adv.* more, 1271, 3457. More beter, 2134.

Moche, Mochel. *See* Miche, Michel.

Mod, *n.* S. mood, mind, 1985.

Moder, *n.* S. mother, 242; *gen. sing.* moder, 1177.

Molde, *n.* S. mould, i. e. earth, 85; — mold, 377, 528, 618. *Men vpon molde* is a common phrase, both here and in P. Pl.

Mornes, *imp. pl.* mourn ye, 633; *pt. s.* morned, 1761; *pres. part.* mornyng, 1640.

Morning, *n.* S. mourning, sorrow, 742; — mornyng, 746.

Morwe, *n.* S. morning, 763, 776. A morwe (on the morrow), 1296.

Most, Moste. *See* Mot.

Mot, 1 *p. s. pr.* I am obliged, I must, I ought, 548; *pr. s.* mot, 4141, 4171; 1 *p. pl. pr.* mot, 3988;

2 *p. pl. pr.* mote, 1043; *pt. s.* most, 5188; *pt. pl.* moste, 1052; *pr. s. subj.* mot (expressing a *wish*), 602, 1433, 1547, 4509; 1 *p. pt. subj.* most (= might, would), 3252; *pt. s. subj.* most, 3547, 3978, 4226, 4817; must, † 68; *pt. pl. subj.* most, 4798. Mot nede, *pr. s.* 4141; most nedes, *pt. s.* 5188. A.S. *ic mót*, pt. t. *ic móste.*

Mountance, *n.* F. amount, 2391.

Mow, 1 *p. s. pr.* I may, I can, I am able, 636, 3802; *pr. s.* 730, 2085, 3998; 1 *p. pl. pr.* mowe, 2794, 3903; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mow, 1458, 4092; *pr. pl.* mowe, 4162; 1 *p. s. pt.* miȝt (could), 2351; *pt. s.* miȝt, 3623; miȝth, 3621; *pt. pl.* miȝth, 3539; miȝt, 3632. Miȝtow (= mightest thou), 3041. A.S. *magan*, pr. t. *ic mǽg*, pt. t. *ic mihte.* Mœso-Goth. *magan*, pr. t. *ik mag*, pt. t. *ik mahta.*

Muche. *See* Miche.

Muchel. *See* Michel.

Munde, *n.* S. mind, 4123.

Munge, Munged. *See* Menge.

Muntaynes, *n. pl.* F. mountains, 2619, 3507.

Mures, *n. pl.* moors, 2619. *Cf.* Mires *in* l. 3507.

Murdred (to deþe), *pp.* 2859; — murþered (to deþe), 1774.

Muri, Murie. *See* Merie.

Mut, *n.* F. cry of hounds, 2192. O. F. *esmeute;* Cotgrave.

Mys, *adj.* false, 716. [But *mys* is generally a substantive, or a prefix, and I should prefer to read *mys-metyng.*] *See* Misse.

Myslych, *adj.* S. various, of all kinds, † 1160. Mœso-Goth. *missaleiks.*

N. "This letter, by a species of prosthesis, is often taken from the end of an article or pronoun, and prefixed to the substantive which follows. Examples of this occur in *no neiȝ*, for *non eiȝ*, 83; *a noynement*, for *an oynement*, 136; *my nother*, for *myn other*, 468; *thi narmes*, for *thin armes*, 666; *ȝister neue*, for *ȝistern eue*, 2160, &c. *See* Tyrwhitt's Gloss. in v. *nale.* The practice existed in familiar writing so late as the reign of Q. Elizabeth, and, perhaps, later still."—M. *Cf.* note on Nones.

Na, *adv.* not, 1172. *See* Ne. Namore, no more, 2812, 2924, 4907; *written* na more, 2556; na mo, 1271.

Nad (*contr. from* ne had), *pt. s.* had not, 154; — nade, 1358; — nadde, 119, 1350, 2465; *pt. pl.* nad, 460.

Nam. *See* Nym.

Nameliche, *adv.* S. namely, especially, 1203; — namliche, 2604; — namli, 2508.

Namned. *See* Nempne.

Narmes. *See under* N.

Nas (*contr. from* ne was), was not, 278, 2784, † 460, &c.

Naþ (*contr. from* ne haþ), hath not, 4934.

Naþeles, *adv.* nevertheless, 1751, 4506, 5265. Ch.

Naueye, *n.* navy, collection of ships, 2719. Ch.

Nay, *adv.* no, 251, 482, 543, 547, 1559, 1814, 1826, 2003, 2314, &c.; — nai, 916, 965. *There is a clear distinction between* no *and* nay. No *signifies assent to the previous speaker;* nay *implies strong denial, and is generally followed by an oath. See* No, *and* Nickes.

Ne, *adv.* not, nor, 315, 450, 457, &c. Hence, *nad* for *ne had; nis* for *ne is; nas* for *ne was; nath* for *ne hath; nel* for *ne wil; nere* for *ne were; nolde* for *ne wolde; not* for *ne wot; nist* for *ne wist.*

Ned, *n.* S. need, 3210; — nede, 119; *pl.* nedes, 1436, 4164, 4251.

Neded, *pt. s.* needed, 1919.

Nedes, *adv.* of necessity, necessarily, 1042, 1679, 5185, 5188; — nede, 3922, 4141. A.S. *neádes, neáde.*

Needely, *adv.* S. urgently, † 747; —nedelich (necessarily), † 817. Ch.

Neiȝ. *See* Nest.

Neiȝh, *adv.* nigh, nearly, 434, 664, 686; — neiȝ, 151; — neiȝe, 1511; —neieȝ, 3185; — neȝh, 979; — ney, 2074. *Comp.* nerre, 1911; þe nere, 758. Neiȝhonde (*lit.* nigh hand), nearly, 1494; —neiȝ honde, 884; —neiȝh hondes, 438.

Neiȝhe, *v.* S. to approach, draw nigh, 3230, 3241; — neȝh, 278; — nye, † 493, † 700, † 764; *pt. s.* neiȝed, 770; neiȝet, 2599; neiyed, 1606; neihed, † 739; nyed, † 136, † 505; *pt. pl.* neiȝed, 4899; neyȝþed, 2179. [*In* l. † 493 it *may* mean, to *annoy; cf.* Noyȝed.]

Neiȝede, *pt. s.* S. neighed, 3238.

Nel (*for* ne wil), 1 *p. s. pr.* I will not, 484, 718, 1098, 4907; *pr. s.* nel, 986, 4260; *pr. pl.* nelle, 4937.

Nempne, *v.* S. to name, tell, 4213; — nymphe, 2179; *pt. s.* nemned, 368; *pp.* namned, † 524. Ch.

Nende; *here,* a nende = an ende, 3946.

Nere (*contr. from* ne were), *pr. s. subj.* were not, 714, 2409. *Cf.* Nas.

Nere, Nerre. *See* Neiȝh.

Nere, never, † 316; *the usual form is* neuer, 735, &c.

Nesche, *adj.* S. soft. In hard and in nesche, 495; to harde and to nesche, 534. Ch.

Nest, *n.* 83. "Nest and no neiȝ (= nest and non eiȝ, i. e. nest and no egg), evidently a proverbial phrase."—M.

Neuen, *v.* S. to name, tell, 2453, 2517. Ch.

Neuew, *n.* F. nephew, 1198, 3537, 4211; — newe, 1023, 3418, 4983; — neweu, 5095, 5098 (*in which last line it seems to mean* great-nephew).

Newe, *adv.* S. newly, lately, 1354; (anew), 2999.

Newene, *v.* S. to renew, 779.

Nickes with nay, refuses with a "no," 4145. "A proverbial phrase familiar to our old poets. See *Gawayne and the Grene Knizt,* 706; *Pistill of Susan,* st. xii. ap. Laing; *Amis & Amiloun,* 2176, ap. Weber; *King Estmere,* 47, ap. Percy, and Pinkerton's Scotish Poems, vol. iii. pp. 15, 72, 82."—M. Cf. Swed. *neka.*

Nigramauncy, necromancy, 119; —nigremauncie, † 460, † 981.

Nigremaunciens, necromancers, † 837.

Nis (*contr. from* ne is), is not, 377, 1357, 3210; —nys, 712.

Nist. *See* Not.

No, *adv.* no, 2701, 3115; — ne, 1556. *See note on* Nay.

No, *put for* Ne, not, 67, 85, &c. *Conversely, we find* ne *for* no; *see the preceding.*

Nobul, *adj.* noble, 1109, 1198.

Noiþer. *See* Noþer.

Nold (*for* ne wold), would not, 1 *p. s. pt.* 1731, 1877; *pt. s.* 561, 2692; nolde, 2184; *pt. pl.* nolde, † 236.

Nome, Nomen. *See* Nym.

Non, *pron.* no one, 396, 443, 2461; (neither of them) 2423; *adj.* (= no) 509; — no, 275, 1282; — none, 74; *adv.* no, 2455.

Nones, for þe, 1157, 2015. In the note to l. 7160 of Dr White's Ormulum, vol. ii. p. 642, we find— "*Forr þe naness,* for the purpose. This phrase is so written in the MS., but its grammatical structure, as admitted on the authority of the late Mr Price and of Sir F. Madden,

requires the form *forr þen aness*, being a slight variation of the A.S. *for þan ænes*, literally *for the once*. In Laȝamon we have *to þan anes*, *to þan ane*, for that only." For further information, see the rest of the note, and cf. the remark under N.

Nory, *n.* F. nurse, 1511.

Not (*for* ne wot), know not, 1 *p. s. pr* 320, 541, 903, 4155; *pt. s.* nist (*for* ne wist), 741.

Noþer, *conj.* neither, 1675; — noiþer, 722, 2385. "This broad pronunciation is not peculiar to the English provinces, but has also been remarked in France, in such words as *chandoile* for *chandelle*, &c. A writer on the subject says, "En general, quand, dans le Français, se trouve un *e* ouvert, le rustique y substitue *oi*." *Melanges sur les langues*, p. 71. 8vo. Paris, 1831."—M.

Noþer; *we find* my noþer (= myn oþer), my other, 468; no noþer (= non oþer), no other thing, nothing else, 1679; *spelt* no nooþer, † 489, † 756.

Nov, *adv.* now, 78, 79; — nou, 454; — nouþe, 1543; — nowþe, 354, 356, 603; — noþe, 1005, 5032; — nouȝ, 626.

Nouȝt, *adv.* not, 13, 299, 358, 450, &c.; *n.* nothing, naught, 72, 83; *miswritten* nouȝ, 720.

Noyce, *n.* noise, 823.

Noynement, 136. *A noynement* = an oynement, an ointment, unguent.

Noyȝed, *pp.* annoyed, grieved, 770. *See* note to Neiȝhe.

Nyce, *adj.* foolish, 491. Ch.

Nym, *v.* to take (take prisoner), 1364; *pt. s.* nam, 1203, 2450, † 468; nam hede (took heed), 368; *pt. pl.* nomen (*the nom. case being* sondes), 1309; *pp.* nome, 2330. Mœso-Goth. *niman*, pt. t. *ik nam*, pl. *weis nemum*, pp. *numans*.

Nymphe. *See* Nempne.

O, *art.* and *adj.* one, a, 1112, 1350, 1628, 2461, 3017, 4033, 4321, 4733; — on, 192, 403, 1345; þat on (the one), 1198.

O, *miswritten for* Or, 1455.

O, *prep.* on, † 258.

Of, *prep.* of, *passim;* (out of), 1039, 3084, 3141; (off), 1218; (for), 442, 500. Brouȝt *of* liue, brouȝt *of* dawe (brought out of life, brought out of day), killed, 1159, 3817; as opposed to *on liue*. As a verbal prefix, it is the A.S. *of-* or *a-*. Mœso-Goth., Du., Dan., Swed., Isl. *af-*. It occurs in Of-reche, Of-se, Of-sende, Of-sette, Of-souȝt, Of-take; see below.

Of-reche, *v.* to reach to, 3874; *pt. s.* of-rauȝte, 1233. A.S. *arǽcan*. *Cf.* Rob. Glouc. 285,6.

Of-se, *v.* S. to perceive, 2223; *pt. s.* of-sei, 2245; of-seie, 273, 2771; of-sey, 4444; of-seye, 224; of-saw, 49, 3283; *pt. pl.* of-seiȝyen, 1221. A.S. *of-seón*.

Of-sende, *v.* S. to send after, send for, 5293; *pt. s.* of-sent, 1081. *See of-sended* in Laȝamon.

Of-sette, *pt. pl.* beset, 2648; *pp.* of-sett, † 308, † 395. A.S. *of-settan*.

Of-souhte, *pt. s.* searched out, *hence* approached, † 1217; *pp.* of-souȝt (sought after), 1676; of-sought (attacked), † 25. A.S. *asécan*.

Of-take, *v.* to overtake, 1275, 2198, 2398, 2590; *pt. s.* of-tok, 3895; of-toke, 3916; *pt. pl.* of-toke, 3881. See *oftake*, *atake*, in Wycl. Gloss., and *oftake* in Laȝamon.

Of-turned, *pt. pl.* turned off, stripped off, 2590. [*Perhaps the words* of *and* turned *should be separated.*]

Ofte, *adv.* S. oft, often, 1570; *comp.* ofter, 610.

Oiþer, *conj.* or, 3130. *See* Oþer.

Ok, *n.* S. an oak, 295.

Omage, *n.* F. homage, 1306, 5403, 5474.

On, *prep.* in; often represented in modern language by *a-*; see Acts xiii. 36. *On dayes*, by day, 244, 773. *On face*, in face, 2634. *On felde*, afield, 173. *On gate*, on their way, 2092; *see* Gate. *Vpon hast*, hastily, 5195. *On heiȝ*, on high, 2020. *On liue*, alive, 2100 (cf. *I-liue*, 1690). *On-loft*, aloft, † 1186. *On morwe*, in the morning, 3640. *On niȝtes*, by night, 739; *on a niȝt*, 656. *On peces*, in pieces, 3410. *On-sunder*, asunder, 5455 (cf. *a-sunder*, 1759). *On swowe*, in a swoon, 87. *On weie*, on their way, 1751.

On, *adj.* one. *See* O.

One, *adj.* S. alone, 211, 511, 3156. *Al him-self one*, 3316; *him-self one*, 657; *bi here-self one*, 3101. *Him one*, 17, 4112; *hym one*, † 792. *Þei þre one*, 1415. *Al-one*, 659, 864; *allone but*, 1532. *God one*, 4002. *On þe one* (by thee alone), 4575. Cf. *Alane* in Jamieson.

Ones, *adv.* S. once, 195, 611, 637. *At ones* (at once), 5412; *at onis* (together), 5180; (once for all), 3255.

On-honged, *pp.* S. hanged, 1564.

Onliche, *adv.* S. only, 3155, 3799.

Onwhar, *adv.* anywhere, somewhere, 1820; — onwar, 2251.

Or, *adv.* S. before, 147, 1747, 2351, † 30, † 142, † 310.

Or-trowed, *pt. s.* supposed, imagined, † 738. See *or-troweden* in Wycl. Gloss., and cf. Ouer-trowe.

Ost, *n.* F. host, 1127, 1197, 3767. Ch.

Oþer, *conj.* or, 696, 966, 1498, 1823; (or else), 4067. Oþer—or (either—or), 1212, 1822. Ch.

Oþer, *adj.* other; *hence*, þat oþer = the second, the next, 1199; *pl.* oþer (others), 5218. Oþer-gate (otherwise), 3761; *and hence, elliptically*, oþer = otherwise, 2071, 2122.

Ouer-borde, overboard, 2823; — ouer-bord, 2778.

Ouer-gret, *adj.* over-great, very great, 1069. *The* MS. *has* ouer-gart gret ost, *probably by mistake.* "*Ouer-gret* is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116 (Chan. Yem. Prol.)."—M.

Ouer-macched, *pp.* over-matched, 1216.

Ouer-pase, *v.* to pass by, pass unnoticed, 4113.

Ouer-ride, *v.* to ride over, harry, 4147, 4262. Ch.

Ouer-slide, *v.* to pass away without effort to retain it, to slip away, 3519.

Ouer-trowe, *n.* S. mistrust, suspicion, 1402. *Cf.* Or-trowed.

Our, *adv.* over. *But our on titly tumbel*, except one (of us) soon tumble over, 3388.

Our, *poss. pron.* our, 4223; *pl.* oure, 3385.

Out, *prep.* out of, 1640; — ouȝt (out), 3068; — ouȝt of (out of), 1204, 1691.

Out-wende, *v.* S. to go out, 4853.

Ouȝt, *n.* S. anything, aught, 952; — out, 1823, 2090, 2971; *adv.* ouȝt (at all), 2395, 3244, 5219.

Out, *pt. s.* possessed, 2627; ouȝt, 3229; aught, † 14, † 173, † 237; *pt. pl.* ouȝten (owed), 1080. *As auxil. vb.* out; *pt. s.* ought, 520, 874, 1323; aught, † 547; 1 *p. pl. pr.* ouȝt, 3589; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ouȝt, 4129; *pr. pl.* ouȝt, 5221.

Ow, you, 106. *See* ȝou.

Paide, *pt. s.* pleased, 4988; *pp.* payed, 1313, † 1038. *From* Lat. *pacare.* Ch.

Paie, *n.* F. pleasure, 193, 5427, † 701; — paye, 5492, 5524, † 159.

Paleis, *n.* F. palace, 2838; — paleys, 2845.

Pane, *n.* F. cloth, *or* fur, 5356. "See *Sir Tristrem*, p. 37."—M. See also *Pane* in Wedgwood and Halliwell.

Paradiȝs, Paradise, 443.

Paramours, *n.* F. mistress, lover, 1534; *gen. pl.* paramoures, lovers', 2987; for paramours, for love, 1758; of paramours, of love, 1412.

Parayled, *pp.* apparelled, 1990.

Park, *n.* a park, 2845. F. *parc.* A.S. *pearroc.*

Partened, *pt. pl.* belonged, 1419.

Party, *n.* F. to hold *party* to = to maintain the battle against, 3643; *pl.* partiȝes, sides, 1146; partyes, 1150.

Pas, *n.* F. course, 3915; a "passus," canto, 161; — pase, pace, 4337.

Passed, *pt. s.* passed, went, 4112; passad, 3068; *pt. pl.* passeden, 2166, 3938.

Patriarkes, *n. pl.* patriarchs, 5047.

Pauilons, *n. pl.* pavilions, tents, 1630; — pauilounns, 1627.

Payenes, *gen. sing.* pagan's, 365.

Payþe, *or* Paþþe, *n.* path, 1674.

Pellure, *n.* F. costly fur, 53. "See Roq. and Jamieson's examples, which might be greatly augmented." —M. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ii. 9.

Peple, *n.* F. people, 1122; — puple, 499, 4139, 5061.

Perauenture, peradventure, 254.

Perced, *pp.* pierced, 1225.

Pere, *n.* F. peer, equal, 443, 709; *pl.* pers, 3976. Ch.

Perelouste, *sup. adj.* F. most perilous, 1191.

Perles, *adj.* F. peerless, 499, 516, 740, 933, &c.

Perrey, *n.* F. precious stones, jewels, 53. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ii. 12, and Ch.

Pert, *adj.* F. true, *lit.* evident, 4930. Lat. *apertus.*

Pertly, *adv.* F. openly, clearly, plainly, 180, 2536; — pertli, 2489; — pertely, 156, 684; — pertily, 1225; — pertili, 4384; — pertliche, 5044, — pertelyche, 53; — pertilyche, 361; — pertiliche, 96, 291. *Cf* Apertli.

Pes, *n.* F. peace, 2951.

Peter, by saint Peter! 681. The line means—"But, by saint Peter! it was only his pillow," &c. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. vi. 28; Ch. House of Fame, ii. 526; Morte Arth. (ed. Perry), 2884.

Peyne, *v.* S. to punish, 2898, 3662; *pt. pl.* pinte, † 238; *pp.* peyned, *in phr.* þat on croyce was peyned, that was put to a painful death on the cross, 350, 3127, 4151.

Piled, *pp.* F. robbed, plundered, 5123. Ch.

Pilus, *n. pl.* feathers, down, † 814. "*Poil folet*, the first down or soft feathers of a young bird." Cotgrave.

Pitous, *adj.* F. piteous, 643; — pytous, 1180; — pitevows, 5488. Ch.

Pitousli, *adv.* F. piteously, 1168; — pitously, 933; pituosli, 1756.

Piȝt, *pp.* S. pitched, 1627. Ch.

Plece, *v.* F. to please, 4729; — plese, 5435.

Pleie, *v.* to play, 678, 1020, 2736; *pt. s.* pleide, 216, 1195; *pt. pl.* pleide, 1477; pleyed, 1058.

Pleint, *n.* F. complaint, 1180. Ch.

Plenerli, *adv.* F. fully, 5435.

Plenteousliche, *adv.* F. plenteously, 180; — plenteousli, 4970; — plentiuosly, 1122.

Pleyn, *adv.* F. full, 3158. Ch.

Pleyned hem, *pt. pl.* complained, 1845.

Pliȝt, *n.* S. plight, condition, 5373.

Pope, 1957. See the note.

Porayle, *n.* F. the poor, the lower order of people, 5123. Ch.

Porsewed, *pt. pl.* pursued, 2196; *pp.* porsewed, 2474.

Portingale, Portugal, 116.

Portreide, *pp.* pourtrayed, 445, 619.

Posterne, *n.* F. postern-gate, 1752, 3068; posterne-gate, 2166; posterne-ȝate, 2871.

Pouert, *n.* F. poverty, 5373. Ch.

Praide, *pt. s.* he prayed, 270; praiȝed, 3546; preiede, 1168; preide, 643; *pt. pl.* preid, 1903; *imp. pl.* preieth, 164; preiȝes, 5529.

Praire, *n.* prayer, 996.

Praisen, *pr. pl.* praise, 617.

Preeued, *pp.* proved, approved, † 604.

Prened, *pp.* pinned, † 420. See *Prein* in Jamieson. A.S. *preon*, Dan. *preen*, a bodkin. We still use the phrase, "*pinned* to the earth."

Prent, *n.* F. print, † 845.

Pres, *n.* F. press, throng, crowd, 1191, 1225, 1481, 3431; — prese, 3848. Ch.

Presed, *pt. s.* pressed forward, 3424, 4959.

Prest, *adj.* F. ready, prepared, 1598, † 6, † 165, † 422, † 595, &c. Ch.

Prestly, *adv.* F. readily, quickly, soon, 1146, 1232, † 171, † 368; — prestli, 2649; —prestely, 291, 335, 996; — presteli, 1237, 1717; — prestili, 3319, 3431; —presteliche, 399; —prestlich, † 792. [It occurs more than 20 times.]

Prie, *v.* to pry, look, 5019; *pt. s.* pried, 96.

Prike, *v.* S. to spur, ride fast, 2382; *pt. s.* priked, 1191, 3319; prikede, 1481, 3362; *pt. pl.* prikeden, † 382.

Pris, *adj.* F. worthy, choice, rich, noble, 161, 411, 2442, † 306, † 466; *pl.* pris, † 6; prise, † 1038; price, 1630.

Prisely, *adv.* choicely, well, † 733.

Prisoun, *n.* F. a prisoner, 1251; *pl.* prisouns, 1290; prisons, 3458, 4215. P. Pl.

Proddest, *sup. adj.* proudest, 2942.

Properly, *adv.* F. properly, truly, 652; — propirli, 619; — propirly, 672.

Proueyed hire, *pt. s.* provided for herself, procured, 3064.

Prouost, *n.* provost, 2265, 2270.

Pult, *v.* to put, 3093; *pt. s.* pult, 4593; *pp.* pult, 381, 4219, 4223, 4236, 4522, 5373. "In O.E. the word *put* was frequently written with an intrusive *l*, *pult*, analogous to the *l* in *falter*, *halt*, *jolt*."—Wedgwood; who derives it from F. *bouter*. In l. 2951 we find *Put*.

Puluere, *n.* F. a pillow, 675, 681, 684; —pulwere, 672.

Puple. *See* Peple.

Pure litel, very little, 3093.

Purli, *adv.* purely, wholly, 4219; —purliche, 4428; —purlich, † 1038.

Pursewend, *pres. part.* F. pursuant, suitable, 5028.

Purueaunce, *n.* F. provision, 1598, 1605.

Purueyed, *pp.* provided, 1605.

Quarrere, *n.* F. quarry, 2232, 2319; —quarrer, 2281, 4692.

Quaþ, *pt. s.* quoth, said, 251, 2028, 2168, † 638; quod, 3753, † 682.

Queite, *pt. s.* whisked, darted, moved swiftly, 4344. Sir F. Madden suggested a derivation from the A.S. *cwehte*, moved (which is, however, transitive), or that it might

mean *crept*, from the F. *quatir*, explained by Roquefort to mean *se tapir*, i. e. to squat. But it is rather from the W. *chwido*, to move nimbly, and is familiar to us in Lowland Scotch in the forms *quhid* and *whid*. See *quhid* in Jamieson.

Queintyse, *n.* F. cunning, skill, 4220.

Quelle, *v.* S. to kill, 1246, 2123, 2773, 2811, &c.; *pr. s.* quelles, 179; *pt. s.* quelled, 1109. *Cf.* kyllen *in* l. † 924.

Queme, *v.* S. to please, delight, satisfy, 3404, † 227, † 682, † 1181; 2 *p. s. pr.* quemest, † 593; *pp.* quemed, † 788. Ch.

Quemfull, *adv.* S. pleasing, giving delight, † 582.

Queynt, *adj.* F. quaint; i. e. cunning, skilful, 4136, 4254;—quinte, 1401. Ch.

Queyntli, *adv.* F. quaintly, i. e. cunningly, 4644; — queyntliche, 3233. Ch.

Quic, *adj.* S. alive, 1564;—quik, 1212. Ch.

Quicliche, *adv.* S. quickly, soon, 908; — quikliche, 2127.

Quinte. *See* Queynt.

Quite, *v.* F. to repay, requite, 325, 4726; *pr. s. subj.* quite, 4713. Ch.

Quitly, *adv.* freely, entirely, 2341. "Used by Ch. Cant. T. 1794 (Knightes T. 934)."—M.

Quod. *See* Quaþ.

Radde. *See* Rede, *v.*

Raddely, Radely, Raþli. *See* Redeli.

Rauȝt, *pt. s.* S. reached, 1193, 4424; raught, † 1174; *pp.* rauȝt, 4823.

Railled, *pp.* striped, decked, 1618. See *Rail* in Wedgwood, *Riolè* in Cotgrave, and cf. Norman *Railer*, to score, draw lines, streak.

Rapli, *adv.* very quickly, hastily, 3179. Du. *rap*, nimble. P. Pl. A. v. 176.

Real, *adv.* F. royal, splendid, 866, 1310, 1405, 1597, 1601; — riall, † 178, † 267; *sup.* realest, 3944. Ch.

Realy, *adv.* F. royally, 352, 1260, 1391, 1426, 1618; — reali, 5460; — rialiche, 4859; *comp.* realiere, 4852. Ch.

Realte, *n.* F. royalty, splendour, 5006; — reaute, 1926, 1959; — reaulte, 5331, 5345;—riaulte, 5057.

Reaume, *n.* F. realm, 1310, 1964, 3920, 4102.

Reching, *n.* explanation, † 599. A.S. *recan*, to say, explain.

Recuuer, *n.* F. to recover, i. e. to gain, 2801; *pt. s. intr.* recuuered (recovered), 3874.

Recuuerere, *n.* F. recovery, revival, 439.

Reddour, *n.* F. violence, injury, 2953. [The words *reddour* = violence (O.F. *roideur*), and *reddour* = fear (Suio-Goth. *rædde*), are often mistaken for each other.]

Redè, *adj.* ready, 1963.

Rede, *n.* S. advice, counsel, 803, 1458, 1692, 5115, † 356. *What is me to rede*, what is advisable for me, 903; shortened into *what to rede*, 3885; *take hire to rede*, considered as advisable for herself, 133. *Cf.* A.S. *to ræde*, s.v. *ræd* in Bosworth.

Rede, *v.* S. to advise, counsel, 1356; 1 *p. pr. pl.* rede, 1112; *pt. s.* radde, 1301; (= read), 4433; *pr. s. subj.* rede, 2262. *Too rede*, to read, to explain, † 856. Ch.

Redeles, *adj.* S. without counsel, at a loss what to do, † 394; — redles, 2915.

Redeli, *adv.* S. readily, quickly, soon, 461, 1824, 1828, 2516; — redeliche, 439, 5467; — redili, 3563; — rediliche, 1226; — redli,

2143, 2488; — redly, 866, 1153; — reddely, 1367;—radely, 41; — raddely, 810. [It occurs nearly 30 times. In l. 3179 Sir F. Madden explains *raþli* by *quickly*, but we should read *rapli, as in the* MS.]

Regal, *n.* F. regality, 282.

Reioische, *v.* F. to enjoy, 4102. Cf. *Reioshe* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Reken, *v.* S. to reckon, tell, 1597, 3179; — rekene, 336, 1934, 1958. Ch.

Remued, *pt. s. intr.* removed, went, 1325; remewed, 5106, 5317; *pt. pl.* remewed, 1297. Ch.

Renkes. *See* Rink.

Renne, *v.* S. to run, 219, 2268, 3179. Ch.

Reproue, *n.* F. reproof, 652.

Res, *n.* S. rush of emotion, conflict of mind, 439; attack, onset, † 389; violence, † 1189. A.S. *rǽs*, rush, onset, violence. Ch.

Resset, *n.* F. a place of shelter or refuge, 2801. See *Recet* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Restored, *pp.* stored, 2846.

Rette, *v.* to impute, ascribe, 461. "Rectyn, or rettyn, or wytyn. *Imputo, reputo, ascribo.*" Prom. Parv. Used by Ch. O.N. *retta.*

Reue, *v.* S. to rob, bereave, 1824, 4392; reued, 2755. Ch.

Reueles, *n. pl.* F. revels, 1953.

Reuested, *pp.* dressed, 1959, 5047.

Reuliche, *adv.* ruefully, pitiably, 86.

Reuowres, *n. pl.* S. robbers, 5478.

Reuþe, *n.* S. ruth, pity, 2115, 3270.

Reward, *n.* F. regard, 3339.

Rewes me, *pr. s.* grieves me, 562; *pt. s.* rewed him, grieved him, 4987. Ch.

Rialiche. *See* Reali.

Riaulte. *See* Realte.

Riche, *v.* F. to enrich, *or more probably*, to be rich, 3014.

Riche, *n.* S. a kingdom, † 58.

Richesse, *n.* F. riches, 1935, 3014, 5057. [It is in the sing. number.] Ch.

Richlier, *adv.* more richly, 1934.

Ridende, *pres. part.* 1954.

Rif, Rifliche. *See* Riuedli.

Rigge, *n.* S. back, † 1174. Ch.

Rink, *n.* S. a man, hero, warrior, 1193, 1935, 3563, † 105, † 480; — rynk, 1472; — ring, 5213; — ryng, † 1145; *pl.* rinkes, 1213, 1226, † 341, † 354; renkes, 1153.

Rise, *n.* Reggio, in Calabria, 2717. "See Panizzi's Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxi. *n.* The same change seems to have taken place in regard to *Riez* in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martiniere's Dictionary, sub. v. *Riez.*"—M.

Rist, *n.* S. rising; sonne rist = rising of the sun, † 791; *hence*, the East, † 855.

Rit, *adv.* right, 4268;—riȝt, 273.

Riue, *adj.* S. rife, abundant, full, 4415, 5414, † 726; — ryfe, † 268.

Riuedli, *adv.* abundantly, widely, 2953, 3840;—riuedliche, 2115;—rifliche, 1472; — rif, 1953.

Riȝt, *adv.* *See* Rit.

Riȝtes, *n. pl.* rights, 3218. At here riȝttes, exactly, rightly, suitably, 4906; — at alle riȝtes, 4255; — to þe riȝtes, 5006, 5026; — to þe riȝttes, 53; —to riȝtes, 1957; — to riȝttes, 1605, 1632;—too rightes, † 660, † 846, † 980; to rightus, † 1222. Anon riȝtes, straightway, immediately, 1306; — anon riȝttes, 235. Vp-riȝttes (upright), 1789; doun-riȝtes, 1165. Riȝtes gates, by the right way, 5322. [In *At*

all riȝtes, to riȝtes, &c., I suppose *riȝtes* to be the pl. of *riȝt*, sb.; in *anon riȝtes, vp-riȝttes, doun-riȝtes*, it is the gen. case sing. used adverbially; cf. *rihtes*, adv. in Laȝamon. In *riȝtes gates*, I think *riȝtes* is the gen. sing. of *riȝt*, adj. agreeing with *gates*, gen. of *gate*; the whole expression being used adverbially.]

Riȝtleche, *v.* S. to govern, 282, 1310. A.S. *rihtlæcan*.

Riȝtly, *adv.* directly, straightway, 232. *Cf.* Rit.

Roche, *n.* F. rock, 2367. Ch.

Rode, *n.* S. rood, cross, 1669, 1802, 2083, 2360. Ch.

Rode, *n.* complexion, † 178. O.N. *rodi*. *Cf.* A.S. *rudu*, redness.

Romed, *pt. s.* roamed, 1608; *pt. pl.* romden, 810. Ch.

Rote, *n.* S. root, 638. Ch.

Roted, *pp.* rotted, 4124.

Route, *v.* F. to trouble, harass, 5478.

Route, *n.* F. a rout, company, troop, 1213, 1616, 1942, 3354; — rouȝte, 4276; — rowte, 397. Ch.

Roum, *n.* a room, i. e. a space, while, † 1030.

Rouȝt hem, it recked them, i. e. they cared, 3353; *pl.* rought (recked), † 383.

Rowe, *adj.* S. rough, 4778. Ch.

Rudli, *adv.* rudely, 3270.

Sad, *adj.* firm, steadfast, *in various senses;* as, discreet, steady, sober, 228; firm, massive, 1072; firm, sure, 1463; severe, grievous, 2775; — sadde, firm, sure, 1371; *sup.* saddest, chiefest, 677; *in which last instance it is very nearly equivalent to* most joyous; cf. l. 3675. "In the sense of heavy, hard, or solid, it is used in the Wycliffite Bible, in the Prompt. Parv. (A.D. 1440), and in Stanbridge's Vocab. (A.D. 1513). In the North, this signification is not yet obsolete; see Brockett, and Hunter."—M. Cf. Welsh, *sad*, firm, steady, discreet. Ch.

Sadly, *adv.* firmly, 1014; seriously, 488, 557; steadfastly, 469, 524; earnestly, 418, 1165, 2388; — sadli, fixedly, 762; discreetly, 969; earnestly, 2524; seriously, 4146, 4170; purposely, 2750; heavily, 539; — saddeli, closely, 2281, 2592; — saddely, quietly, in a low tone, 311; *sup.* saddest, most earnestly, 3675; *cf.* l. 677. Ch.

Saf. *See* Sauf.

Sai, Saie. *See* Se.

Saile, *v.* to sail, 2673; — sayle, 2721; *pt. pl.* saileden, 2763.

Sake, *n.* S. cause; *hence*, for þat sake = on that account, 2019. A.S. *sacu*, a dispute, suit at law, cause.

Saluede, *pt. s.* saluted, 4017.

Samen, *adv.* S. together, 433, 909, 1288, 1907, 2267, 2445, &c.; — same, 4318, 4899; — samme, † 342. It occurs 19 times. The expressions *samen to-geder* (909), and *samen y-fere* (2267) are pleonastic. It is found in Spenser.

Samli, *adv.* together, 1835; *cf.* ll. 433, 909. A.S. *samodlice*.

Sarre, *comp. adv.* more sorely, 2025, 3441.

Sauf, *adv.* F. safe, sound, whole, 868, 1329, 2816, 4634; — saf, 1332. *Sauf and sound*, 868, 2816. *See* Fouche.

Saufly, *adv.* safely, 3051; — saufli, 2688; — saufliche, 256; — safliche, 258. Ch.

Saules, *n. pl.* souls, 3705.

Saundbruel; the name of a horse, 3585. "So named from its colour." —M.

Sauor, *n.* F. scent, perfume, 638, 818; — sawour, 849.

Sauȝt, *n.* F. assault, 2651; —

saute, † 301; *pl.* sauȝtes, 2682; sautes, 2857. Ch.

Sawe, *n.* S. saying, word, 1112, 1305, 1483, † 757; *pl.* sawes, 1439.

Say. *See* Se.

Sayle. *See* Saile.

Schal, *pr. s.* shall, 2938, 2945, &c.; 1 *p. pl. pr.* schul, 5422; 2 *p. pl. pr.* schul, 5162; schulle, 3690; chul, 3339; *pr. pl.* schul, 964, 2943, 2952; schulle (ought), 3807; 2 *p. s. pt.* schuldest, 5194; *pt. s.* schold, 2969, 2971; chold, 2014; 2 *p. pl. pt.* schuld, 3685; *pt. pl.* schuld, 3810. *See* next word.

Schaltow, shalt thou, 340, 5132; —schalstow, 325.

Schamful, *adj.* S. harmful, 1855.

Schamly, *adj.* S. shameful, 556.

Schap, *n.* S. shape, 2885.

Schape, *v.* F. to escape, 2749; *pt. pl.* schaped, 2752; *pp.* schaped, 460, 731, 1282; schapit, 2151.

Schapen, *pp.* shapen, shaped, 126, 225, 1447; —schape, 3214.

Scharplyche, *adv.* S. sharply, 178.

Schaþe, *n.* S. scathe, harm, disgrace, 3008, 3084, 4051.

Schaþeles, *adv.* S. scatheless, without injury, 1855; —scaþeles, 2749.

Schaþli, *adv.* harmfully, hardly, 2794. [But it may be a mistake for *schaþelesli.*]

Schawes, *n. pl.* groves, 178. Ch.

Schawes, *n. pl.* men, † 484. The sing. *shawe,* † 766, should rather be spelt *schawe.* A.S. *scealc,* a servant, man.

Sche, *pron.* she, 836, 837, &c.; —hue, † 34, † 35, † 36; — che, 462, 641. A.S. *heo.*

Scheche, *v.* S. to seek, 2068.

Scheld, *n.* S. shield, 3214; — schel, 3216.

Schenchip, *n.* S. shame, dishonour, 556, 1803. Ch.

Schende, *v.* S. to shame, dishonour, disgrace, 556, † 995; — schend, † 566; *pp.* schent (destroyed, dead), 2798, † 1028. Ch.

Schene, *adj.* S. fair, beautiful, bright, 3214, 3296; — scheene, † 202. Used as *sb., lady* being understood, 733, 3299. Ch.

Scheenely, *adv.* S. brightly, † 631.

Schepe, *n.* S. ship, 5088; — schipe, 5212; — schip, 2729; *pl.* schippes, 2728.

Schete, *v.* S. to shoot, 2399; — schote, 178; *pt. s.* shet (*read* schet), † 277.

Schette, *v.* S. to shut, fasten, 3649; *pt. pl.* schetten, 3267. *Cf.* Bi-schet, 2014.

Scheuered, *pp.* shivered, 3411.

Schilde, 3 *p. s. imp.* shield, 1803.

Schille, *adj.* shrill, 213; *adv.* (shrilly), 37, 3831. Du. *schel.*

Schinnes, *n. pl.* skins, 2420.

Schipmen, *n. pl.* sailors, 2768; —chipmen, 2811, 2818.

Schire, *adj.* clean, † 1008. See *Sheer* in Wedgwood.

Schoche, *v.* F. to suspect, 1398, — souche, 1983; *pt. s.* scouched, 1413; souched, 1059. O. F. *souche,* souci. Roq.

Schon, *n. pl.* shoon, shoes, 14.

Schonde, *n.* S. shame, dishonour, 555.

Schore, *n.* S. a score; foure schore, 1102, 2540; ten schore, 3909.

Schorned, *pp.* scorned, 554.

Schortely, *adv.* shortly, 1132; — chortly, 2035.

Schortet, *pp.* shortened, 1549.

Schote. *See* Schete.

Schour, *n.* S. shower; scharp

schour = shower of darts or blows, 4514; *cf.* l. 2756. Cf. *flana scuras*, showers of arrows, in the A.S. fragment of Judith.

Schoute[s], *n. pl.* flat-bottomed boats of light draught, † 484. See *Shout* in Halliwell. Du. *schuit.*

Schrewe, *n.* a wicked person, 4643; *pl.* shrews, † 80. See *Shrew* in Wedgwood. Ch.

Schrewedest, *sup. adj.* most wicked, 4643. See Wycl. Gloss.

Schuft, *pt. s. either* shifted, *from* A.S. scyftan, *or* shoved, *from* A.S. scufan, 3290. See *Shift* in Wedgwood.

Schuft, *pp.* well-shaped, † 186. A.S. *sceaft*, adj., formed, made.

Schul. *See* Schal.

Sclaunder, *n.* F. slander, 4045. Ch.

Se, *v.* S. to see, 765; — sen, 1283, 3203; sene, 759, 3834, 4487; 1 *p. s. pt.* sai, 2160; 2 *p. s. pt.* sei, 276; *pt. s.* sei, 2117; sey, 4901; seiȝ, 34, 590, 871, &c.; say, 228, 1585; seie, 1505; seiȝe, 402, 2183; seye, 26; 1 *p. pl. pt.* seiȝen, 3501; *pt. pl.* seiȝen, 1063; seien, 4503; seȝen, 2760; saie, 2232; *pp.* seie, 279, 2344, 2886; seien, 5003; seiȝen, 1792; seyn, 5058; *imp. pl.* seþ, 1715.

Seccleled, *pt. s.* sickened, 575. A.S. *sæclian.*

Sece, *v.* to cease, 2124; *pp.* seced, 2114; 1 *p. pl. imp.* sece, 2707; *pt. pl.* sesed, 2190. *See* Sese.

Seche, *v.* S. to seek, 223, 2203; *pr. s.* secheþ, 4121, 5520; *pres. pt.* sechande, 2603. *See* Souȝt.

Sechyng, *n.* S. a seeking, searching, 2190.

Sede, Seide, &c. *See* Seie.

Seemeli, Seemlich. *See* Semli.

Seg, *n.* S. a man, 226, 518, 772, 839, &c.; — segge, † 232; *pl.* segges, 1341, 2223, † 286; seges, 1063. P. Pl.

Seged, *pp.* F. besieged, 3805.

Segging, *n.* S. a saying, a repetition of words of incantation, † 531.

Seie, *v.* S. to say, 1279; — seiȝ, 60; seye, 1281; segge, † 584, † 1033; sigge, † 8; 2 *p. s. pr.* seistow, 2256; *pt. s.* seide, 70, 3191; seyde, 954; sede, 943; seyede, 2274; 2 *p. s. pt.* seidestow (= seidest þow), 267; *imp. pl.* seie, 4173; seiþ, 4170; seiȝth, 593.

Seile, *n.* S. 2731; *where* þe seile = sailing, voyage; *we find* sayle = a sail, 568.

Seiȝt, of his = out of his sight, 420. [*Probably miswritten for* siȝt.] *See* Siȝt.

Sek, *adj.* S. sick, 557, 590, 1489.

Sekly, *adj.* S. sick, 1505. [*We still use* sickly *as an adj.*]

Seknes, *n.* S. sickness, 842; — sekenes, 841; — seknesse, 593.

Selcouþ, *adj.* S. strange, wonderful, admirable, 1621, 2708; — selcouþe, 658, 700, 2329; — selcoþe, 2869, 2989; — selkouthe, † 130. *Used as sb.*, thing *being understood*, selcouþ, 2291, 2579; selcouþe, 700, 3488.

Selcouþli, *adv.* S. strangely, wonderfully, 2650, 4924, 5064; — selcouþeli, 3263; — selkouþely, 3330.

Sell, *n.* F. a seal, † 834, † 853.

Sell, *n.* F. a cell, † 525. Ch.

Selue, S. self, same, very, 1149, 1300, &c.; — self, 1839; *pl.* selue, 727, 889, &c. Selue wise, very way, same way, 462, 490, 1438. Þat selue, the very same, 3502. Þe selue duk, the duke himself, 1368. What I suppose þe selue, what if I suppose that very thing, 549.

Seluer, *n.* S. silver, 2554.

Semblant, *n.* F. outward semblance, appearance, show, 228, 841, 3502, 4512.

Sembul, *v.* F. to assemble, gather,

3555; *pp.* 2147, 3319. *In* l. 3811, *we have pt. pl.* sembled, *which probably means* encountered; *cf.* l. 3815. Semblyng = encountering *occurs in* Lancelot of the Laik, 2951.

Semes, me = it seems to me, 620; *pl.* me semen, seem to me, 1686; *pt. pl.* semde, 2880.

Semes, *n. pl.* S. horse-loads, 2554. "A sack of eight bushels is now called a *seam*, which was a horse-load—hence generally *a load, a burden.*" Bosworth, in v. *seam.* Cf. G. *saum*, a burden. F. *sommier*, a *sumpter* or pack-horse, &c. [Sir F. Madden suggests that the word (which is somewhat indistinct) may, however, be *selues.*]

Semli, *adj.* S. seemly, comely, fair, 829, 1882; — semly, 298, 765, 837, 849; — semliche, 49, 1454, 2232; — semlyche, 568; — seemelich, † 322; — seemeli, † 232. þat semly = that seemly person *or* lady, 732, 853, 871, &c. *Sup.* semlyest, 518, 551.

Semly, *adv.* in a seemly manner, courteously, 1432; — seemlich, becomingly, † 189.

Sendeth, *imp. pl.* send ye, 2068.

Sene, 3035. This can hardly mean *seen*, and I have no doubt that it is simply miswritten for *sone* = soon, which ends l. 3037 below. It is an instance of the common confusion between *e* and *o*, like *sweto* for *swete* in l. 818.

Sent, *n.* assent, agreement; *in the phr.* at o sent = with one assent, 3017, 5253; at sent = in agreement, well aware, 1983. Halliwell quotes

"Many armys were tynt,
That were never *at the sent*
To come to that tournament."
MS. Lincoln, A. i. 17. f. 134.

Sere, put for Sire, sir, 3570. *See* Sire.

Serliche, 2149, } *adv.* explained
Serreli, 3316, } by Sir F. Madden to mean "surely." But I would suggest different explanations in both places, and I take them to be distinct words: (1) serliche, closely; cf. "*Serre*, to join closely" (Halliwell), from F. *serrer;* also "*Sarreliche*, closely" (Halliwell). (2) serreli, lordly, in a *sir-like* manner, as explained by Wedgwood, s. v. *Surly:* cf. "Sike *sirly* shepherds han we none," Spenser, Sheph. Cal. July, l. 203, where the "Glosse" has "*Surly*, stately and prowde."

Sertes, *adv.* F. certainly, 268, 280, 543, 899, &c.

Serued, *pp.* deserved, 4352.

Serues, *n.* F. service, 3729.

Sese, *v.* to cease, 1516; — sece, 2124; *pt. pl.* sesed, 2190; *pp.* sesed, 648; seced, 2114; 1 *p. pl. imp.* sece, 2707.

Sese, *v.* to seize, † 135; *pr. pl.* † 299; *pt. s.* sesed, 1236; *pt. pl.* seseden, † 234. See notes to ll. † 135, † 299. In l. 5391, *sese* is explained by Sir F. Madden to mean to *take, attain;* it is rather the regular law term, to *seize* a person of a thing, i. e. to put him into legal possession of it. Cf. Ch. *Troil. and Cres.* (Aldine ed.), bk. iii. st. 57.

Seþþe, (1) *adv.* S. since, afterwards, then, 433, 902, 2047; — seþþen, 104, 206, 420; — seþen, 1370, 3672; — siþþe, 3050; — siþþen, † 308; — sithen, † 624; — sithe, † 45; *also in the sense* ago, 1647, 4210; seþþe a gret while = since a great while, 1991; (2) *conj.* since, seeing that, after that, 329, 454, 456, 516, 4207; — seþ, 973.

Set, *pt. s.* dealt (a blow), 2775; — sette (set), 2459; *pt. pl.* setten, appointed, 1462.

Sete, 1 *p. s. pt.* did sit, sat, 1622. [It implies that the reciter of the story did not stand, but sat.] *See* Sittus.

Setled, *pp.* S. settled, sunk, 2452; —setteled, settled, composed, 4562.

Seue-niȝt, *n.* seven-night, a week, 766; — seueniȝt, 573.

Seurte, *n.* F. surety, 1463. Ch.

Seute, *n.* F. suit, case, 1080, 1250.

Seute, *n.* F. pursuit, chase, 2392, 2615.

Sewe, *v.* F. to follow, pursue, 2821; — sew, 2751; — seuwe, 581; *pr. s.* sewes, 1376; sewe þ, 4897; *pt. s.* sewede, 3354; sewed, 418; sued, † 957; *pt. pl.* seweden, 2193, 2766; sewede, 204; sewed, 2190, 2388, 3506; *pp.* sewed, 1773; *imp. pl.* sewes, 1116. Ch.

Sexti, *num.* sixty, 1087.

Sigge, *v.* to say, † 8. *See* Seie.

Signifiaunce, *n.* F. significance, 2958. Ch.

Sikamour, *n.* a sycamore, 829.

Siken, *v.* S. to sigh, † 395; — sike, 691, 780; 1 *p. s. pr.* sike, 433; siȝh, 909; *pt. s.* siked, 1487, 1641, 4069; siȝt, 2971; *pres. pt.* sikande, 5448; sikand, 539, 662; sikende, 894; sikinde, 490; siking, 5189, 5209. Ch.

Siker, *adj.* S. secure, sure, 2361, 4366, 4657; *sup.* sikerest, surest, strongest, † 334. Ch.

Sikered, *pp.* secured, assured, 1463.

Siking, *n.* S. a sighing, lament, 5451; — sikyng, 601; *pl.* sikingges, 566.

Simple, *adj.* F. of low degree, 714.

Sin, *conj.* since, † 103.

Sinifieth, *pr. s.* signifieth, † 853. *Cf.* Signifiaunce.

Sire, *n.* F. sir, 326, 1250; — sir, 1095; — sere, 3570; *pl.* sires, 2248.

Siþe, *n.* S. *only in pl.* 780, 1755; (þousand) 1696, 5154; (six) 2098; *also in form* siþes, 103, 1038, 1265, 2470, 5200. Ch. [*The form* siþes = A.S. *síþas;* siþe = A.S. síþon *or* síþum, *forms which often follow numerals.*]

Sittus, *pr. s.* sits, 446; — sittes, 620; 1 *p. s. pt.* sete, 1622.

Siȝt, *n.* S. sight, 933, 1687, &c.

Siȝtes, *n. pl.* S. 924. "Sights, used for the singular."—M. But may it not mean *sighs*, which suits the context better, and requires no forcing? Cf. Du. *zucht*, a sigh; A.S. *siccet*. See *sihten* in Stratmann.

Skil, *n.* S. reason, 1680, 4098; — skille, 336. Ch.

Skoumfit, *pp.* F. discomfited, defeated, † 371; — skoumfyt (*miswritten* skoumkyt), † 86.

Slake, *v.* (1) *trans.* to slacken, relax, assuage, abate, 728, 778, 788, 1521; *pt. s.* slaked on = fell relaxingly upon, † 779; *pp.* slaked, 1507, 4796; (2) *intr. pr. s.* slakes, becomes less, 924; *pt. s.* slaked, died out, faded away, † 714. Icel. *slökva*, to extinguish, O.N. *slokna*, to die out. Suio-Goth. *släcka* (v. Ihre); Sw. *slakna*, to become slack, A.S. *slacian*. Ch.

Sle, *v.* S. to slay, 2797; *pt. s.* slow, 1196; slouȝ, 3890; *pt. pl.* slowen, 1275; slowe, 1165, 3459; *pp.* slawe, 1779, 3421, 3435; sleie, 379. Ch.

Sleiȝþe, *n.* S. sleight, 2151.

Slepend, *pres. pt.* sleeping, 2291; *pt. s.* slept, 656; *pt. pl.* slepten, 2292.

Sliȝli, *adv.* slily, secretly, insensibly, 792; — sliȝliche, 1065; — sliliche, 1413; — sleiliche, 637. Ch.

Slod, *pt. s.* S. slid, slipped, 792.

Smyland, *pres. part.* smiling, 991.

So, *adv.* S. so; *hence*, wat so = whatsoever, 607; what so = whatsoever, 621; who-so = whosoever, † 87. *See* Ho. So as = in like manner as, 338.

Soberliche, *adv.* soberly, i. e. seriously, prudently, 237; — soburli, 991. Ch.

Socoures, *imp. pl.* succour ye, 4349.

Sode, *pp.* S. sodden, 1849.

Softili, *adv.* softly, gently, 632, 677.

Soget, *n.* F. subject, 473; *pl.* sogettes, 463. Ch.

Solas, *n.* F. solace, comfort, enjoyment, 677, 1550. Ch.

Solas, *v.* F. to solace, delight, 1621.

Solempne, *adj.* F. *lit.* solemn; suitable to a great occasion, 1599; grand, famous, 1454. See *Solempne* in Roq.

Solempte, *n.* F. solemnity, solemnization of marriage, 1462.

Son. *See* Sowne.

Sond, *n.* S. *lit.* that which is *sent*, just as a *find* is that which is *found*; hence (1) a messenger, 1872; *pl.* sondes, 1078, 1308, 1594, 5271, † 291; (2) a message, 5195, 5199; (3) a God's-send, a gift, that which is sent us by God's grace, 4561; — sonde, 64, † 973; and hence we may explain the difficult phrase "seemely to sonde" in † 175 as meaning "a comely creature for a man to acquire;" cf. l. 64 of the *Werwolf*.

Sonken, *pp.* sunk, 4111; — sounk, † 1092.

Soothelich. *See* Soþli.

Sor, *n.* S. sorrow, 894; — sore, 891; *pl.* sores, 598; soris, 639. Cf. *sorwe* in l. 3543.

Sore, *adv.* S. sorely, 593; *comp.* sorer, 634.

Sorful, *adj.* S. sorrowful, 3541.

Sori, *adj.* worthless, 3509; painful, 3696.

Sorly, *adv.* 463. "Surely (?); see *Serliche*."—M. Probably miswritten for *serly*, as Sir F. Madden suggests, in which case I would explain it by *straightly*, *strictly*, *closely*; see note on *Serliche*. The French has, "sont il a lui oil por voir, et font *du tot* a son voloir."

Sorwfuliche, *adv.* sorrowfully, 2971.

Soþe, *n.* S. truth, 108, 116, 238, 772, &c. Ch.

Soþ, *adj.* S. true, 2799; soþly soþ, verily true, true indeed, 700.

Soþli, *adv.* truly, verily, 949, 1194; — soþly, 76, 379, 473; — soþliche, 1452; —soothelich, † 973.

Sotilest, *sup. adj.* most subtle, most secret, 2603.

Sotiliche, *adv.* subtly, 3117, 4783. Ch.

Souche, *v.* to suspect, 1983; *pt. s.* souched, 1059, 1065. *See* Schoche.

Soudiour, *n.* Low Lat. soldier, 3954; — sowdiour, 3951. Ch.

Souerayn, *n.* F. chief, leader, 4938; *gen. sing.* souerayne, provost's, 4695. "The title is still retained in some towns in Ireland."—M.

Souerayne st, *sup. adj.* most sovereign, chiefest, above all others, 524, 4932; *cf.* most souereyn, 518.

Souerayn li, *adv.* above all, chiefly, supremely, 1062.

Souked, *pt. s.* sucked, 2702. Ch.

Soupe, *v.* F. to sup, 3524. Ch.

Souȝt, *pt. s.* of *to seche*, but used in a peculiar manner; thus, souȝt forþ = found out his way onward, 4677; souȝt out = ventured out, went out, 4681; sought to = made for, reached, † 95; *pl.* souȝt to = reached, 2717; soute on-sunder = parted, 5455; souȝten on gate = went on their way, 5214. *Cf.* Seche.

Sowdiour. *See* Soudiour.

Sowne, *n.* F. sound, 210; — son, 39. [It is vulgar to say *gownd* for

gown, but custom has sanctioned *sound* for *soun*. Ch. has *soun*, but *sownde* is the form in the Prompt. Parv. A. D. 1440.]

Spakly, *adv.* wisely, knowingly, excellently, well, 19; *but more generally it is an expletive, meaning* quickly, soon, as in 966; — spakli, 3357, 3631; — spacly, 3399; — spacli, 3389, 3392, 3529, 4499, 4887, 5212. "The root is, apparently, to be sought in the Su-Goth. *spak*, Icel. *spakr*, sapiens. See Ihre." —M. The same root probably is that of Sc. *spae*, and of O. H. Ger. *spahi*, prudent; Dan. *spaae*, to predict; and probably also of Ger. *spähen*, Eng. *spy*, &c. The word occurs in the form *spakely* in Morte Arthur, ed. Perry, l. 2063.

Spaynols, *n. pl.* Spaniards, 3631, 3730, 3770, 5168, 5212; — spaynoles, 3399; — spaynolus, 3529; —spaynolnes, 3357.

Spede, *v.* (in *out-spede* or *out spede*) to succeed, 548; *pp.* spedde, 1293, 1715; (2) *trans.* to help, succour, in *pt. s.* spedde, 4922.

Spedeliche, *adv.* speedily, 19; — spedly, 5468, † 296.

Speiȝed, *pt. pl.* spied, saw, 3399. *Cf.* A-spie.

Speldes, *n. pl.* S. splinters, 3392, 3603, 3855. Cf. E. *spell* or *spill*, originally a chip of wood for lighting a candle. See *Spall, Spelk, Spell* in Wedgwood. "In the Prompt. Parv. we have *Spalle*, or chyppe. *Quisquilia, assula.* The latter term is still used in the North; v. Brockett."—M. See also *Spawl, Speall, Speel, Spelder, Spelk, Spelt*, in Halliwell, all meaning a *chip;* and cf. G. *spalten*, to split.

Spenen, *v.* S. to spend, † 362; *pp.* spended, distributed, 4324.

Spille, *v. trans.* to destroy, confound, overthrow, 966, 1891, 3009, 3437, 4100, 4395; *pp.* spilt, 3764; (2) *intrans.* to die, 1 *p. s. pr.* spille, 1535. Ch.

Spire, *v.* S. to inquire, seek, 4594. Sc. *speir*.

Spors, *n. pl.* spurs, 1482. Ch.

Spret, *n.* S. a boatman's pole, 2754; — sprite, a pole, † 1097. See *Spret* in Halliwell. "It is still preserved in the term bow-*sprit*." —M. A *sprit*-sail has its name from the pole that traverses it diagonally.

Stabled, *pp.* established, † 514.

Stalkeden, *pt. pl.* S. walked cautiously, one step at a time, 2728. "Dan. *stalke*, to go with high uplifted feet, with long steps;" Wedgwood. Ch.

Stalworþ, *adj.* S. strong, stout, 1950.

Standes, *imp. pl.* stand ye, 2263; *pt. pl.* stoden, 2728.

Stede, *n.* S. place, stead, 3521, † 303, † 769. Ch.

Stef, *adj.* S. stiff, strong, 2894, 3600, 3604; — styf = deep, profound, 4056;—stif, 3535.

Stelen, *adj.* of steel, 3535, 3859; — stel, † 416.

Stepchilderen, *n. pl.* 131.

Stepmoder, *n.* stepmother, 2640; *pl.* stepmoderes, 130, 4099.

Sterne, *adj.* S. stern, fierce, brave, 159, 2981, 3243; — sturne, 3409, 3780; *sup.* sturnest, 3226.

Sternely, *adv.* S. sternly, fiercely, bravely, boldly, 1158; — sternli, 2894, 3240; — sturnli, 3907. Ch.

Stert, *v.* S. to start off, gallop, 3600; 1 *p. s. pt.* sterte, I started off, I ran, 2277; *pt. s.* stert vp, started up, 4355; stirte vp, 3275. Ch.

Sterue, *v.* S. to die, † 445; *pp.* storue, died, 1515. Ch.

Stif. *See* Stef.

Stifly, *adv.* S. earnestly, eagerly,

profoundly, 736, 880; — stifli, 1657; — stiffuly, 219.

Stiked, *pp.* pierced, 3818.

Stint, *n.* S. stop, delay, 2350, 5379.

Stint, *v.* S. to stop, dwell, cease, pause, leave off, 159, 1612, 1961, 5232; — stinte, 1042; — stynt, 2781; *in transitive sense*, to make to leave off, 4056; *pt. s.* stint, 61, † 951; stinte, 1574; *pt. pl.* stinten, † 445; stint, † 386; *imp. s.* stint, 1652; *imp. pl.* stintes, 1206; stinteþ, 1113. "It is inserted in the Prompt. Parv. 'Styntyn'. *Pauso, desisto, subsisto.*'"—M. Ch.

Stirte vp. *See* Stert.

Stiþ, *adj.* S. strong, † 91.

Stiued, *pp.* baked hard, 3033. Sw. *stufva*, Dan. *stuve*, Eng. *stew*. See *Stew* in Wedgwood, and cf. F. *estuver*.

Stiward, *n.* S. a steward, 3378, 4211; *gen. sing.* stiwardes, 3446. Ch.

Stiȝt, *pp.* S. set, fixed, 4425.

Stiȝtli, *v.* S. to dispose, arrange, manage, 3841, 5379; stiȝtli togadere = arrange matters between them, 3281; *pt. s.* stiȝtled, 1199; (disposed of), 2899. *Cf.* P. Pl. Crede, 315.

Stightlich, *adv.* disposedly, in right order, in their proper place, † 293.

Stoden, *pt. pl.* stood, waited, 2728. *Cf.* Standes.

Stonen, *adj.* of stone, 1072.

Store, *n.* F. story, 4806.

Storue. *See* Sterue.

Stoteye, *n.* cunning, stratagem, 4985. Lat. *astutia*, O.F. *astuce*.

Stounde, *n.* S. a space of time, a while, 159, 1360, 1574, 1657, 2263, † 630; bi a stounde, for a short while, 1832; a stounde while, a moment, † 951. Ger. *stunde*. Ch.

Stoundemele, *adv.* = A.S. *stundmælum*, by little times, by degrees, 736. Cf. *stownd-meel* in Wycl. Gloss., and see Ch.

Stour, *n.* F. battle, conflict, 3536, 3907; — stoure, 4214; — sthoure, 3530. O.F. *estour*; cf. Icel. *styrr*, a battle. Ch.

Stoutliche, *adv.* stoutly, 1950.

Strane, *pr. pl.* strain, † 349. See the note.

Strawed, *pp.* strewn, 1617.

Strecche, *v.* S. to stretch, 219; *pt. s.* streyt, 2957; streiȝt him = went, 3279; *pp.* straiȝed, 3617; *imp. pl.* strecches, 1113.

Streiȝt, *adv.* straight, 3328; — streiȝet (*probably miswritten for* streiȝte), 3592. Ch.

Strek into a studie = fell into deep thought, 2981, 4038. A.S. *strican*, to pass on. Cf. G. *streichen*, to strike, to fly, &c. It is even applied to the flowing onward of a stream—"Ase strem that *striketh* stille:" Lyric Poetry; ed. T. Wright. Percy Soc. 1842, p. 44.

Striked, *pp.* streaked, strewn, 1617.

Striued, *pt. s.* strove, 4099.

Sturne, Sturnli. *See* Sterne, Sternely.

Studie, *n.* F. deep thought, 4038, 4056. *Cf.* l. 130.

Sty, *n.* S. a path, 212.

Sued, *pt. s.* followed, † 957. *See* Sewe.

Sufreded, *pt. s.* suffered (*miswritten for* Sufred), 783; *pp.* suffred, 1014; *imp. pl.* suffreþ, permit ye, 3337.

Sunder, *v. intr.* to part, 1052.

Sunner, *comp. adv.* sooner, 962, 3366.

Surgens of salerne = surgeons of Salerno, 964, 1576; *spelt* surgyens, 1033. *Cf.* "A surgyne of Salerne

enserches his wondes." Morte Arthure; ed. Perry, l. 4312.

Suster, *n.* S. sister, 2643, 5093, † 175; *gen. sing.* susteres, † 236. Ch.

Swapped, *pp.* struck off with a sweeping blow, 3609. Cf. A.S. *swapan*, to sweep; *swipe*, a whip. Ch.

Swelt, *pt.* s. S. fainted, 4268. "Swalteryn for hete, or febylnesse, or other cawsys. *Exalo, sincopizo.*" Prompt. Parv. A.S. *sweltan*, to die, perish.

Swenged. *See* Swinge.

Sweteliche, *adv.* sweetly, 1329.

Sweting, *n.* S. sweetheart, a term of endearment, 916, 1537, 2799, 3088.

Sweuen, *n.* S. a dream, 2312, 2869, 2916, &c.; — sweuene, 658, 915, 2294; *pl.* sweuenes, † 599. Ch.

Swiche, such, 414, 544, 710, 766, 781, &c.; — swich, 869. A.S. *swilc*. Ch.

Swifliest, *sup. adv.* swiftliest, 3454.

Swinge, *pr. pl.* they strike, 3439; *pt. s.* swenged, 3444; *pt. pl.* swonge, 3856. A.S. *swingan*, to beat.

Swiþe, *adv.* S. quickly, 41, 266, 1078, 1129, 1256, 1303, 1824, 4843, 5214; *before an adj.* swiþe = very, *as in* 1628, † 107; *and as in* † 546, † 567, † 833, *where it is spelt* swith. As swiþe = as quickly as may be, 108, 352, 837; alse swiþe, 3158. Swiþe vpon hast, very fast, very soon, 5195. [It was by his criticisms upon this word as occurring in Havelok that Mr Singer demonstrated his singular ignorance. He interprets *swiþe* to mean *a sword!* At this rate "a *swith* faire *sword*" in Alisaunder, l. 833, would be tautological indeed.]

Swowe, *n.* S. swoon, 87. Ch.

Tabours, *n. pl.* 3813.

Tach, *n.* F. spot, blemish, disgrace, † 282. Ch.

Takes, *pr. s.* bestows, gives, 866; *pt. s.* tok, delivered, gave, 4683; *pp.* take, 1271, 1289; *put for* untake, 1280.

Tale. *See* Telle.

Taliage, *n.* F. a tax, impost, 5124. O.F. *taillage*.

Talke, *v.* to tell, 1018, 1322, &c.

Talliche, *adv.* in a seemly manner, 1706. "This obsolete and unusual word, from the S. *tela*, bene, is preserved in the Prompt. Parv. *Tally*, or semely and in semely wyse. *Decenter, eleganter.*"—M. Cf. Welsh *telaid*, graceful. The Fr. *taillé* sometimes means *well proportioned*.

Tamid, *pt. pl.* tamed, subdued, † 84.

Targe, *v.* to tarry, † 211, † 410; *pt. s.* targed, † 94. O. F. *targer*, whence *targa*, which occurs at p. 210, l. 8 of this volume.

Te, put for To, 1222. *Cf.* forte= for to, note to l. 788.

Teiȝed, *pp.* S. tied, 3226;—teied, 3232.

Telle, *v.* to tell, 34;—tele, 4993; —tale, 160; *pr. pl.* tellus, 198; *pt. s.* teld, 1475; told, 2009; *pt. pl.* telden, 1662; tolde, 1469; *pp.* teld, 2009; told, 1478; i-told, 1493; *imp. pl.* telles, 1346; telleþ, 4621.

Tended, *pt. pl.* attended, regarded, 1781; *pp.* tended of all, heard by all with attention, † 997; *imp. pl.* tend, † 7.

Tene, *n.* S. (1) sorrow, trouble, grief, 607, 1107, 2369, 2476, 3013, 3735, 5192; — teene, † 142, † 241, † 285; *pl.* tenes, 1013; *also* (2) teene = anger, wrath, † 94, † 806; treie and tene, vexation and anger, 2073. Ch.

Tene, *v.* S. to vex, 2812;—teene, †380; *pt. s.* tened, 2025; *pp.* tened, 1992, 2201; teenid, †71; teened, †345. Ch.

Tenful, *adj.* S. vexatious, grievous, painful, 2666, 4712;—teenefull, †282.

Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 437;—teenfully, harmfully, †353.

Tent, *n.* intent, purpose, 1662. See *Tent* in Halliwell.

Tentifly, *adv.* attentively, diligently, 2258;—tentyfli, 5124. Cf. *tentyf* in Ch.

Tenþedel, *n.* S. tenth part, 4715;—tiþedel, 5346. Cf. *twentiþe parte*, 5354.

þa, *pron.* that, the, 765, 2458, 3059, 3422; *rel. pron.* who, which, 843, 2536, 4115; *pl.* 5274;—þe (*rel. pron.*) 1687, 4422; *conj.* that, 544, 571, 903, 1983.

þa, put for þo, then, 571. *See* þo. [*Or else misworitten for* þan.]

þai, they, 11, &c.;—þei, 24, &c.; *pl.* þaim, them, 5407. *See* Hem.

þan, the, *acc. sing. of def. art.*, 91.

þan, then, 83, 92, &c.;—þanne, 100, &c.;—þen, †730.

þan, than, 589;—þen, †319.

þarto, thereto, 808.

þat, "when prefixed to a verb in the present tense, [sometimes] gives it a subjunctive or optative signification, as in 319, 2795, &c." —M. Þat, those who, 3459. Þatou, that thou, 3128, 5159;—þatow, 285, 914, 2787;—þattow, 4060.

þe, *rel. pron.* which, 4422; *pl.* þe, 1687. A.S. *þe*, which is often a relative pronoun, and is indeclinable.

þede, *n.* S. land, country, 1658.

þeder, *adv.* thither, 2235;—þider, 33.

þederward, *adv.* thitherward, 835.

þei, they. *See* þai.

þeiȝh, *conj.* S. though, 451, 689, 3342;—þeȝh, 919, 1017;—þei, 1563;—þouȝh, 349;—þouhȝ, 2347;—ȝei, †677. Þei ȝei = though they, †511. Ch.

þemperour, put for *þe emperour*, 212, 218, &c.; but written *þe emperowr*, 205. The pl. *þemperoures* also occurs, 1612.

þen, than, †319. *See* þan.

þenchesoun = þe enchesoun, the occasion, the cause, 2624. Ch. *See* Encheson.

þende = þe ende, the end, 4869, 5092. Ch.

þenke, *v.* S. to think, 4908; 1 *p. s. pr.* þenke, 711; þenk, 1624; 2 *p. pl. pr.* thinken, †2; *pr. s. subj.* þenk, 3370; *imp. pl.* þinkes, 3701. *Impersonal*, seems, *as in* me þinkes, 430, 446, 622; me þinkeþ, 839; ȝou dere þinkes, 4727; ȝou lef þinkes, 384. Ch.

þennes, *adv.* thence, 2191;—ȝennes, †67. Ch

þer, *adv.* S. where, 1627, 3319, &c.;—þere, 216, 279, &c.

þer as, there where, 1232, 1708;—þere as, 3480.

þer a-boute, about it, 972.

þer-a-gayn, against it, 1450.

þer-mide, therewith, 5358.

þer-out, thence, 2820.

þer-tille, thereto, thereof, 2337.

þer-to-fore, before that time, until then, 3435, 2611.

þer-vnder, under it, 3034.

þer-wiȝt, therewith, 138.

þerþe, put for *þe erþe*, the earth, the ground, 3866, 5014. Ch.

þerwe, through, 107. *See* þrouȝ.

þewe, *n.* S. slave, bondman, 5514. A.S. *þeow*.

þewes, *n. pl.* S. manners, customs,

189, 342, 500, 518. A.S. *þeáw.* Ch.

þider, *adv.* thither, 33, 752, 1082;—þeder, 2235.

þilke, the same, 2954; *pl.* those, 3530. Ch.

þinkes. *See* **þenke.**

þirles, *pr. s.* S. pierces, thrills through, 612, 3512; *pr. pl.* þurlen, 910; *pt. s.* þirled, 3696; thurlude, † 608; *pp.* þirled, 826. Ch.

þies, *n. pl.* S. thighs, † 191.

þis, *used in pl.* these, 2240, 4251; —þise, 849, 889. Ch.

þo, *adv.* S. then, 1865, 3265, 3591, 4342, &c.;—þa, 571. A.S. *þa.* Ch.

þo, *pl. pron.* those, them, 1757, 2285, 3648, † 125, † 137, † 233. A.S. *þá.*

þo, *probably miswritten for* **þe**, 2901.

Þof, though, † 966. *See* **þeiȝh.**

þole, *v.* S. to suffer, 918, 1247; *pp.* þoled, 4514. Ch.

þonges, *n. pl.* thongs, 1720, 1736.

þonke, *n. sing.* S. thanks, 297.

þonke, *v.* S. to thank, 3522;—þonk, 2794; 1 *p. s. pr.* 1248; *pr. s.* þonkes, 63; *pt. s.* þonked, 1003, 1038, 1269; thonked, 2143; *pt. pl.* þonked, 1716, 2444. Ch.

þorou-oute, throughout, † 191.

þort, *pt. s.* need, might, ought, 1076, 3563, 3671;—þurt, 3355, 4441, 4541, 4705, 4821, 4960; *pt. pl.* þurte, 3788. "It is derived immediately from S. *tharf-an, thearf-an, thurf-an, thorf-ian*, making in pt. t. *thorfte*, and is allied to a large class of words in the remaining Gothic dialects. Thus, '*dar* (= *thar*) no mon hem wite,' [l. 2434] in the *pr. t.* corresponds precisely to 'no gom *thurt* him wite,' [l. 4705] in the *pt. t.* Hence may be corrected the explanation of the word in Havelok, vv. 9, 10.

He was the wicteste man at nede,
That *thurte* riden on ani stede.

A few more instances may not be out of place. In Robert of Brunne's translation of the *Manuel des Pechés*, completed in 1303, we have:

He wax so mylde and so meke,
A mylder man *thurt* no man seke.
MS. Harl. 1701, fol. 39.

So also, in the Romance of the Seven Sages:

He toke a chamber nere that stede,
Him *thurt* noght care than for his brede.
MS. Cott. Galb. E. ix. fol. 30 *b.*

In Barbour's Bruce, according to Jamieson [p. 407] is written:

For scho wes syne the best lady,
And the fayrest, that men *thurst* se.

But we evidently ought to read *thurt* se."—M. The verb occurs even in Mœso-Gothic, as, "land bauhta jah *tharf* galeithan jah saihwan thata"—"I have bought land, and I *need* to go and see it," Luke xiv. 18; and in the *past* tense, "hwa gatawida Daweid, than *thaurfta* jah gredags was"—"how David did. when he *needed* and was hungry," Mark ii. 25.

þourh, through, 4219. *See* **þrouȝ.**

þoutest, 2 *p. s. pt.* thoughtest, 1249;—þoutes, 4066; *pt. s.* þouȝt, 462; þout, 855; *impersonal*, me þout, 2298; him þouȝt, 673; þouȝt him loþ, 1255; hire þouȝt, 857; hire þout, 2908; him del þouȝt, 349.

þouȝ, *pers. pron.* thou, 312, 692.

þouȝh, þouhȝ. *See* **þeiȝh.**

þouȝt, *n.* S. thought, 4054;—þout, 4116;—ȝout (*read* þout?), 447; *pl.* þouȝtes, 861, 941, 4064.

þridde, *adj.* S. third, 2866, 4941.

þristliche, *adv.* S. *lit.* boldly; *hence*, beautifully (much as our poets use *bravely*), † 191.

þro, *adj.* vehement, eager, 3264,

3564. *Shortened from the word following.*

þroli, *adj.* S. vehement, severe, 3518;—þroly, 612. A.S. *þreá-líc*, severe, dire. Cf. *thra* in Jamieson.

þroli, *adv.* vehemently, heartily, eagerly, earnestly, 910, 1038, 3176, 3407, 3664; —þroly, 127, 1696; —þroliche, 103, † 215. It occurs in P. Pl. A. ix. 107.

þropes, *n. pl.* S. thorpes, small villages, 2141. See Halliwell.

þrouȝ, *prep.* S. through, 459; —þurth, 216, 254, 522, 635, &c.; —þurȝth, 1320, 1643;—þurh, 2149; —þurȝh, 655; —thorou, † 612, † 897. [In l. 3799 we find *ȝourh*, probably miswritten for *þourh*, (*cf.* 4219), owing to confusion with the word *ȝour* following soon after.]

þrowe, *n.* S. time, while, a trice, 462, 622, 649, 679, &c. Ch.

þrusch, *n.* a thrush, 820. } There
þrustele, *n.* a throstle, 820. } seems to be a distinction here. Palsgrave gives *gryue* (*grive*) as the French for *thrush*, and *maulvis* (*mauvis* = Sc. *mavis*) as the French for *throstle*.

þurlen, Thurlude. *See* þirles.

þurth, þurh, þurȝh, þurȝth. *See* þrouȝ.

þurth-out, throughout, 1472; —þurth-oute, 5028; — þorou-oute, † 191.

Tid. *See* Tit.

Tide, *v.* S. (*often impers.*) to befall, betide, 3017;—tyde, 326; *pr. s. subj.* tide, 137, 607; tyde, 1560; *pt. s.* tidde, 198, 797, 1067, 1416, 2496, 3962; tid, 787, 4178; (*followed by an acc. case*) *pr. s.* him tides, † 681; *pt. s.* hem tidde, 1659, 1763, 2829; ȝou tidde, 1346; *pp.* tidde, 4918. *See also* Bi-tide.

Tide, *n.* S. time, season, 859, 4952.

Tidi, *adj.* timely, seasonable; *hence, also*, fair, brave (time), 1710; (host), 3556; (men), 4166; (earldom), 5384; — tidy (child), 160; (tidings), 1339; (words), 3077;—tide (werwolf), 2496; *sup.* tidiest, 3909; tideȝist, 3556. A.S. *tíd-líc*. Du. *tijdig*. G. *zeitig*.

Tidili, *adv.* seasonably, suitably, fitly, 4454;—tidely, 5482;—tidily, † 194.

Tiding, *n.* tidings, news, 1478; *pl.* tiding, 1493, 4877; tyding, 1075, 1134, 2677; tidinges, 4942; tiþinges, 250. [*The use of* tiding, tyding *as pl. forms is worth notice.*]

Tidly. *See* Titli.

Tiffed, *pt. s.* attired, dressed, arrayed, 2995; *pp.* tiffed, 2995, 3183. Cf. O. N. *typpa*. See Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Tille, *prep.* S. unto, to, 232, 662, 864, 977, 4039; — till, † 605, † 1025;—til, 412, 788, 1475. Ch.

Timbred, *pp.* S. built, 2015.

Time, *v.* to happen, *in the phr.* so me wel time (so may it happen well to me, so may good betide me), 3570, 5433;—so me wel tyme, 279. A.S. *getimian*, Sw. *tima*, Dan. *times*, to happen. See the note in Wedgwood on the word *Beteem*. [Mr Wedgwood is of opinion that I have wrongly explained *tymen* in P. Pl. Crede, 742, and that "Y miȝt *tymen*" = I could find it in my heart to, as in the phr. "I could *teeme* it," for which see Halliwell, s. v. *Teem*. This would connect *tymen* in the *Crede* with A.S. *getimian*, to happen, not with A.S. *tymian*, to tame, compel.]

Tine, *v.* to lose, 299, 1365, † 358, † 378; — tyne, 358, 2176; 2 *p. pl. pr.* tine, 3015; *pp.* tint, † 30; tynt, 1560. O.N. *týna*. [Marked as A.S. by Halliwell, but not given by Bosworth.]

Tire, *v.* to attire, 4478; *pp.* tyred, 263.

Tiþedel. *See* Tenþedel.

Tiþinges. *See* Tiding.

Tit, *adv.* quickly, soon, 1013, 1054, 3445, 3552, 4066, † 90; — tyt, 1373, 4245; — tid, 753, 4167, 4192, 4763, † 377, † 549; — tiȝt, 133. As tit = as soon as might be, thereupon, 328, 3550; as tyt, 238, 292. As tit as, as soon as, 852, 2921; *sup.* tittest, soonest. Icel. *titt*, from *tíð*, time. Sw. *tidt*, from *tid*, time. Hence the word is nearly related to *Tidily*. *Cf.* Titli, *also spelt* Tidly.

Titli, *adv.* quickly, soon, 2666; — titly, 1416, 2694, 3388; — titliche, 2528; — tytely, † 7; — tiȝtli, 1706, 2282, 2476; — tiȝtly, 66, 285, 487, &c.; — tidly, † 640, † 809, † 974. As titly, very soon, 2108. [In ll. 66 and 1706 it is possible that *tiȝtly* or *tiȝtli* may mean tightly, closely.]

To, *adv.* too, 11, 5024.

To, two, 2877. *See* Tvo.

To-, *verbal prefix.* It does not seem to have been hitherto sufficiently noted, that there are, in A.S., two distinct prefixes spelt alike. They are (1) *to-*, O. Sax. *te-*, Mœso-Goth. *dis-*, Ger. *zer-*, Lat. *dis-*, meaning *apart, asunder, in two pieces;* and (2) *to-*, Du. *toe-*, G. *zu-*, Mœso-Goth. *du-*, which is merely the prep. *to* in composition. Examples of the *first* are common in Early Eng., but of the *second* less so, which has led to an undue disregard of its force. Of the examples below, only the two last, *To-wawe* and *To-ȝelde*, belong to the latter class; and in the Wycl. Gloss. there is but *one*, viz. to-neȝhen = to approach. The verbs with this prefix are here collected.

To-barst, *pt. s.* S. burst asunder, 374. G. *zerbersten*, O. Sax. *tebrestan*. Ch.

To-brak, *pt. s.* S. brake in pieces, 3237 (see Judges ix. 53); *pp.* to-broke, utterly broken, 3410. G. *zerbrechen*. Ch.

To-clatered, *pp.* broken to pieces with a loud clatter, 2858. "This reading is rendered certain by a passage in the Romance of Ferumbras;

Ys scheld that was wyth gold y-
batrid : & eke wyth ire
ybounde,
Sone thay had hit al *to-clatrid:*
the peeces laye on the grounde.
MS. Ashm. 60 β, fol. 12."—M.

I add another example.

"And on the hed he hym batrid
That hys hedd all *to-clatride.*"
Sir Degaré, MS. Camb. Univ.
Lib. Ff. ii. 38, fol. 259 *b.*

And see Halliwell.

Too-clef, *pt. s.* S. *intr.* broke in half, split asunder, † 1009.

To-cleued, *pt. s.* S. *trans.* clove asunder, 3865.

To-drawe, *pp.* S. drawn asunder, 1564, 2020, 2086, 2138, 3740, 4773, 5479.

To-hewe, *pp.* S. hewn to pieces, 3412. G. *zerhauen*. Ch.

To-shett, *pt. s.* S. brake in half, † 1008. *Lit.* shot asunder; *cf.* the quotation in Halliwell, "Hys fote *schett*" = his foot shot aside, slipped.

To-sprong, *pt. pl.* S. sprang asunder, cracked asunder. G. *zerspringen*.

To-tere, *v.* S. to tear in pieces, 3884; *pt. s.* to-tare, 3884. Ch.

To-twiȝt, *pt. s.* S. twitched violently, pulled up by the roots, 2097. See *To-twitch* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

To-wawe, *v.* S. move about, toddle to and fro like a child, 19. *Wawe* = *wag* is common; but it is also found in the exact sense used here.

"Thanne is the child quic anon:
of strenȝthe naveth hit noȝt
Enes for to *wawe:* er hit beo
furthe i-broȝt;

Of thulke soule hath ech man: that may *wawi* and gon," &c. Pop. Treatises on Science, ed. T. Wright, p. 139.

The prefix *to-* has here nearly the force of the G. *zu-* in *zuwanken*. The compound verb is very rare, but it is the same, I believe, as occurs in a transitive sense in the following—" weder biȝ fæger . . . beoȝ wolcen *to-wegen;*" i. e. "the weather is fair, the clouds are *removed*." *Phœnix*, pt. III. (l. 2); in Codex Exoniensis, ed. Thorpe. Cf. Sc. "*wauchle*, to move from side to side in walking, like a young child;" Jamieson. Cf. G. *zuwanken*, *zugehen*, A. S. *To-gewægan*, to carry to.

To-ȝelde, *pt. s.* yielded to; vp to-ȝelde = yielded up to, *with the* to *repeated*, 3924. Cf. G. *zugeben*, to grant, as showing the force of the prefix *to-*.

To-fore, *prep.* S. before, 2091; *also adv.* before (of time), 142, 793, 925, 2446, &c.; (of place), 2390; — to-for, 2886; — tofore, † 46, † 930. Ch.

To-gaderes, *adv.* S. together, 699; —to-geder, 909;—to-gidere, 1011.

Tokeneþ, *pr. s.* betokens, 2937.

Tol, *n.* tool; egge-tol = edged tool, weapon, 3755.

Tom, *n.* leisure, 3778. Cf. Sc. *toom*, Dan. and Sw. *tom*, vacant. The word occurs in P. Pl. A. ii. 160. "Toom. *Spacium, tempus, opportunitas.*" Prompt. Parv.

Tombled, *pt. s.* tumbled, 2776, 3866. *See* Tumbel.

Ton, *n. pl.* toes, † 194. Ch.

Too-clef. *See the word preceding* To-cleued.

Top ouer tail, head over heels, 2776. "A proverbial phrase, used also in Lyndsay, which I believe is not yet obsolete."—M. It occurs in Barbour's Brus, ed. Jamieson, v. 755. Halliwell gives another instance.

Tor, *adj.* difficult, 1428, 5143; — toor, 5066. "From the Su-G. and Isl. *tor*, difficile. This term, spelled *tore* and *teir*, occurs also in the three Romances of *Sir Gawayne*, in the *Houlate*, pt. 2. st. 9, and in *Rauf Coilzear*, ap. Laing, st. 37." —M. See *Gawayne and Grene Knizt*, ed. Morris, 165, 719.

To-riȝtes, 3066, &c. *See* Riȝtes.

Touche, *v.* F. to touch upon, talk, treat of, 5033; 1 *p. s. pt.* touched, 4108; *pt. s.* toched, 4991; *pt. pl.* touched, 4993; *pt. s.* (= belonged to), 5384; *pres. part.* touchend, 1383.

Tour, *n.* F. a tower, 2015. Ch.

Tow, *used for* þou (thou), after *þat* preceding, 4478. *Cf.* Seidestow, &c.

To-ward, *adv.* S. forward, forthcoming, ready at hand, 1443;—toward, 1101. Cf. *Toward* in Nares.

To-heuene-ward, towards heaven, 102.

Trattes, *n. pl.* old women, spoken contemptuously, 4769. "See Jamieson's notes on this word, and Tyrwhitt on Chauc. v. 7164. The most obvious etymon is Teut. *trot*, a woman, an old woman, a witch. See Wachter, *in v.*"—M. See also *Trot* in Halliwell; and cf.

"An aged *trot* and tough did marie with a lad."
Of a contrerie mariage, by G. Turberville, ab. A.D. 1567.

Trauaile, *n.* F. labour, 1560;—trauayle, 358, 2176; — trawayle, 299; *pl.* trauayles, 2666, 4712.

Traysted, *pp.* F. deceived, betrayed, 2075, 4769. "See Jamieson, in v. *Betreyss*, and Skinner. From the latter Chatterton borrowed the word, therefore Bryant might have saved himself the trouble of quoting passages from the present poem to prove the authenticity of the phan-

tom Rowley."—M. Cf. O. F. *traistre*, a traitor.

Treie, *n.* S. vexation, 2073. See the note.

Trestes, 2 *p. s. pr.* trustest, 970.

Trewe, *adj.* S. true; leue me for trewe = believe me to be true, 1562;—trew, 596.

Triacle, *n.* treacle, i. e. an antidote against poisons and diseases, † 198. See *Treacle* in Prompt. Parv., and Way's note. Ch.

Trie, *adj.* F. *lit.* tried, proved; *hence* choice, excellent, noble; (tree), 761; (attire), 1721, 4542; (lords), 1289; (order), 4465; (towers), † 16; (town), † 157; (treacle), † 198; (places), † 333; (folk), † 345;—tri (tree), 753, 789; —trye (game), 387; *sup.* triest, 1443. "The same word occurs in the Romance of *Richard Coer de Lion*, l. 6450, 'with fyn syluyr and gold ful *trye*;' in the Romance of *Octavian*, l. 1467, 'of Sarsyns stout and *trye*;' in Chaucer's *Cant. T.* 'with suger that is *trie*;' and in the poems of Friar Michael Kyldare, MS. Harl. 913, which contain the earliest instances of it I have yet met with. It is undoubtedly an abbreviation of the *pp. tried*, as shown by the various readings of the Wycliffite texts of the Bible, Exod. c. xvi. and Lev. c. ii., where is the expression *trie* or *tried* flour." — M. So also *trieste*, *triȝest*, and *tryest* are various readings for *triedest* in P. Pl. A. i. 126, q. v.

Trieliche, *adv.* choicely, excellently (*always joined with* a-tired), 4819; — triliche, 1228; — tryli, 3198; — triȝliche, 4861.

Trist, *imp. s.* S. trust thou, † 489.

Tristy, *adj.* trusty, 596, 1228, 2015, † 329, † 952.

Triȝed, *pt. s.* 3556, *in* "& triȝed him to a tidi ost." Explained by Sir F. Madden to mean "drew, joined." But I believe that *him to* is put for *to him*, (a not uncommon usage, *cf.* ll. 662, 864, &c.), and then *triȝed to him* = chose out for himself, picked out the best men he could find, which is the drift of the passage. Cotgrave gives "*Trier*, to pick, chuse, cull out from among others;" which further explains why the word *trie* bears the sense of *choice*. *See* Trie.

Trompes, *n. pl.* trumpets, 3358; —trumpes, 3813.

Trowe, *v.* S. to believe, trow, hold for a truth, 4840; 1 *p. s. pr.* trowe, 540, 1031, 1995; trow, 299; *pt. s.* trowed, 1018; trowede, 1480; *pt. pl.* trowed, † 919; *imp. s.* trowe, 4363; *imp. pl.* trowe þ, 2112. Ch. [In l. 1480 perhaps we should read *mysse-trowede* as one word; but l. 141 renders this doubtful.]

Trusse, *v.* to pack up, † 549. Cf. *Havelok*, 2017.

Trustili, *adv.* S. courageously, 3904.

Tumbel, *pr. s. subj.* tumble, 3388. *See* Tombled.

Tunnes, *n. pl.* S. casks, 2743.

Tvo, two, 1688, 1698, 1777, 2162, &c.;—to, 2877.

Tweie, two, 2008, 2147;—tweine, 2507; — tweyne, 812, 929, 1528. [The distinction between this word and *tvo* is that *tweie* is used *after the personal pronouns* vs, hem, þei, &c.; whilst *tvo* precedes a noun.]

Twentiþe, twentieth, 5354.

Twiȝes, *adv.* twice, 3721.

Twynne, *v.* S. to part, 1572. Ch.

Tyr, *n.* F. attire, 1725. *Cf.* A-tir.

Uch, each, every, 776, 884, 1488; —uche, 5000;—vch a, 511.

Venge, *v.* F. to avenge, 5197; *cf.* auenged, *pp.*, † 281.

Venorye, *n.* F. beasts of the chase, game, 1685.

Verali, *adv.* verily, 5197; — veraly, 639.

Vitayles, *n. pl.* F. victuals, 1121. Ch.

Vmbe-cast, *pp.* S. beset, surrounded, 2319, 4693. *Cf.* Bi-cast. [The prefix is the A.S. *ymb-*, Old Saxon *umbi-*, G. *um-*, Du. Dan. and Sw. *om-*, Gk. *αμφι-*.]

Unclainte, *pr. s.* † 1172. This is surely miswritten for *unclamte* = unclamped, unfastened, from A.S. *clam*, a clamp. The only difference between *m* and *in*, in the handwriting of the MS., would consist in there being a dot over the first of the three downstrokes. The copyist may have been thinking of *unchainte* = unchained.

Vndede, *pt. s.* undid, unfastened, 4846; *pp.* vndo, 2078.

Vnder-fonge, *v.* S. to take, receive, 5259.

Vndersto (*miswritten for* vnderston), *pr. pl.* they understand, 5533; *pt. s.* vnderstod, 877; *pp.* vnderston, 5262.

Vnglad, *adj.* S. joyless, 2106.

Ungome, *v.* S. to unman, to drive the men away from, † 294. [The meaning is clear, but I know of no other instance of the word.] *Cf.* Gome.

Vn-hendly, *adv.* S. discourteously, 492. *Cf.* Hende.

Un-hent, *pp.* S. uncaught, uncaptured, 1671. *Cf.* Hent.

Unkinde, *adj.* S. unnatural, † 34. Ch.

Unkouthe, *adj.* unknown, unfamiliar, strange, † 48; — unkouth, unknown, not understood, † 683. Ch.

Vnneþe, *adv.* S. scarcely, 132. Ch.

Vn-tetche, *n.* disgraceful action, 509. *Tetche* is another form of *Tach*, q. v. The O.F. *tache* means a quality or disposition, either *good* or *bad*; so in the Prompt. Parv. "*Tetche*, or maner of condycyone, *Mos, condicio.*" Hence *vn-tetche* means an *evil* habit, or *disgraceful* act. At the same time, as the word was most commonly used in a *bad* sense, we find *tack* used for a *blemish*. See *tache, tacher, teche*, in Roq.; *tacches* in P. Pl.; *tache* in Halliwell and Cotgrave.

Vntille, *prep.* unto, 2998.

Vntydi, *n. pl.* mean, poor, 1455. *Cf.* Tidi.

Unwele, *adj.* S. wicked, † 513. *Well* = good, *adj.* is given in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Vn-woundet, *pp.* unwounded, 1280.

Vowche-sauf, *imp. s.* vouchsafe, grant, 1449. *Cf.* Fouche. Ch.

Vp, *prep.* S. upon, 2378, 2809. Cf. G. *auf*.

Vp happe, perhaps, 2722.

Vp-keuerede, *pt. s.* recovered, rose again, 2759.

Vp-leped, *pt. s.* leapt up, 3283.

Vp-rise, *v.* S. to rise up, 1791; *pr. s.* vp-rises, 872. Ch.

Vp-riȝttes, upright, 1789. *Cf.* Riȝtes.

Wahan, Wan, Wanne. *See* Whan.

Waie, *miswritten for* weie, † 530. *See* Weiȝ.

Waite, *v.* F. (1) *intr.* to watch, look about, spy about, 1821, † 760; —wayte, 1023; *pt. s.* waited, 2729; waited him, 1230; waited out, 2425; wayted, 835; wayted aboute, 682; weited, 3030; *pt. pl.* wayteden out, 3300; weyteden out, 5018; waited aboute, 2231; *pres. part.* waytend out, 2982; waitende out, 3713; weytende to, 779. (2) *trans.* to be on the look-out for, watch for, seek after, *pr. s.* waites him = seeks out

for himself, † 808; *inf.* whayte, 1885; waite, 4051; wayte, 148. [*In the latter sense it generally has a* double *accusative.*] *Cf.* A-weite. O.F. *waiter, gaiter.* See *Wait* in Wedgwood; and cf. "*Waytyn* or dōne harme, waytyn to harme. *Insidior.*" Prompt. Parv.

Wake, *v.* S. to watch, keep awake, 2007.

Walken, *v.* S. to walk, go, 2129; *pres. pt.* walkende, 2427.

Wallop, *n.* F. gallop; *hence,* a wallop, on the gallop, 1770. "In the Prompt. Parv. we read, '*Waloppynge* of horse. *Voluptacio;*' and '*Waloppōn,* as horse. *Volupto.*'" —M. See Gloss. to *Romans of Partenay.*

Walt, Walte. *See* Welde.

Waltres, 2 *p. s. pr.* S. waverest, rollest about, 947. See *Welt* and *Welter* in Jamieson, *Waltrynge* and *Welwynge* in Prompt. Parv., and *Wallow, Welter* in Wedgwood. A.S. *wealtian,* to reel. See Wycl. Gloss.

Wan, Wanne (when). *See* Whan.

Wan (*pt. s.* won). *See* Winne.

War, *adv.* where, 3832. *See* Whar.

War, *adj.* S. aware, 1201, 1238, 1769, 3594, 3635, 3827;—whar, 3382.

Warchet. *See* Waryshe.

-Ward; *implying direction. See* Cheping-ward, To-ward.

Ward, *n.* F. guard, keeping, 1370, 2202;—warde, 376, 961. Ch.

Warded, *pp.* F. guarded, kept, 101.

Wardeyn, *n.* F. commander, 1104.

Ware, *pt. pl.* = were, 420.

Warfore, *adv.* S. wherefore, 2027;—werfore, 1081.

Warison, *n.* F. reward, 2259;—wareson, 2253, 2379. O. F. *warison, garison;* from *garir,* to guard. *Cf.* Garisun. Ch.

Warnestured, *pp.* furnished, provided, 1121. O. F. *warnesture,* provisions; Roq. Cf. *Warnestore* in Ch.

Warnished, *pp.* furnished, 1083. O.F. *warnir, garnir.* Roq.

Warysche, *v.* F. to cure, 4283; *pp.* warsched, 604; warchet = guarded, 2622. O.F. *garir,* guérir, préserver, garantir. Roq. "In the first sense it occurs [used intransitively] in the Prompt. Parv. '*Warschyn*' or *recuryn* of sekenesse. *Convalesco, convaleo.*'"—M. Ch. Wycl. Gloss.

Was, *used for* had, 538. "This is still provincial."—M.

Waschen, *pp.* washed, 5070;—whasche, 2997.

Wast, *in phr.* in wast = in waste, i.e. in vain, 703, 718, 802, 1660, &c.

Wat, *put for* What, 2829, 4246. Wat so, whatsoever, 607.

Wateren, *v.* S. to water, provide with water, 3234. Wycl. Gloss.

Wawe, *n.* S. wall, 19. So in Sir F. Madden's edition; but see *To-wawe,* and the note on this line.

Wax, Waxen. *See* Wexe.

Wayward, *adj.* S. (*used as sb.*) wayward, perverse, averse, 3985.

Wayned, *pt. pl.* 2386. Wayned from = got away from, departed. "The original meaning seems to be that of gaining, getting. In some O.E. works *wayne* is used like our word *get.*

Than past up the proude quene into preve chambre,
Waynes out at wyndow, and waytes aboute.
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, 944."

Quoted by Morris, Gloss. to *Allit. Poems.* The context shews that *waynes out* in this quotation = puts out her head. See also P. Pl. A. vi. 92, where for *wynne vp,* MSS. of B-type have *wayne vp. Cf.*

Winne. [*Obs.* This word is sometimes confused with *wayue*, O.F. *guesver*.]

Wede, *n.* S. clothes, armour, 585, 3535; *pl.* wedes, 1932, 2563, 3087. Ch.

Weder, *n.* S. weather, 2440; *pl.* wederes, 5216. Ch.

Wei, *n.* S. a way, road, 1578; — weie, 1732; — wey, 205, 1781; — weye, 1019; *pl.* weies, 2131, 2150; weyes, 1224; weiȝes, 2207, 3507, 4677. In a mile wei = in a short space, i.e. in a short time, 1578.

Weih, *n.* S. a balance, 947. Waltres in a weih = waverest in a balance; as we now say, tremblest in the balance. A.S. *wǽge*, *wége*, a *weighing* machine, balance. Cf. *Weihe*, Wycl. Gloss.

Weilawey, *interj.* S. alas! 935. A.S. *wa, la wa* = wo, lo! wo! *whence* wei la wey, *of which* wellaway *is an unmeaning corruption.*

Weited, Weytende. *See* Waite.

Weiȝ, *n.* S. a man, 4466;—weiȝh, 281, 745, 790, 793, &c.; — weie, † 777; — weih, † 1184; — waie, † 530; — whiȝ, 4463; — wiȝh, 565, 724, 2021, 2415; *pl.* weies, † 164, † 653; whiȝes, 1221, 3456; whieȝs, 3364; wies, 208; wiȝes, 239, 2036, 2521; wiȝhes, 1932; wieȝs, 2709; wieȝes, 3652. A.S. *wiga*, warrior, from *wig*, war.

Weiȝes, *n.* S. wise, manner, 5526. *A better spelling is* Wice, q. v.

Wel, *adv.* S. very; *thus*, wel old, very old, 4; wel long, very long, 936; wel gret, very great, 1545; wel sore, very sorely, 1552; wel wo, very woful, 1642; wel god spede, very good pace, 1846. Wel is, it is a good thing for (*the opposite of* wo is), 3303.

Welde, *v.* S. to wield, have power over; *hence*, to possess, enjoy, have, 2946, 5157, † 206; — weld, 76, 135, 717, 1356, 1385, 1453, 2017, 2253, 2959, 4741; 1 *p. s. pr.* weld, 282, 4000; *pr. s.* weldes, 712, 1651, 1873, 3313, 3752, 3753, 3832, 4466; weldes his hele, enjoys his health, 1375, 1377; weldes a wrong, enjoys a possession wrongfully, † 87; *pt. s.* walt, 144, 2990, 3887, 4730; walte, † 450; welt, 142, 230, 3710, 4835; welte, 3680; 2 *p. pl. pt.* walt, 3691; *pp.* welt, 856. [*It often has little more force than simply* to have.] *Cf.* Wycl. Gloss.

Wele, *n.* S. wealth, 1325, 3658, 4073, 5046, 5054. [*In phr.* "worchip and wele," *except in* 4073.] Ch.

Wem, *n.* S. blemish, injury, 2460. Ch.

Wen. *See* Whan.

Wende, *v.* S. to go, 320, 329, 425, 2089; — wend, 771, † 727; —wen[d], 5185; wende of, to depart, 1663; 1 *p. s. pr.* wende, 1555; 2 *p. s. pr.* wendest, 1555; *pr. s.* wendes, 232, 1640, 1897; wendes of, departs from, 5537; wendeþ, 408; *pt s.* went, 1839, 2069; wende, 259; *pt. pl.* went, 4201; *imp. pl.* wendeþ, 3338; *pres. pt.* wending, 1821. *Phrase:* be went = be gone to, *as in* is went, 701, 2064; was went, 15, 28, 376, 1984, 2109; were went, 208, 5409; be went, 2071. *We also find* was gon, 1859; *and* haue went, 1853.

Wene, *v.* S. to ween, think, expect, suppose, 554, 706, 715; 1 *p. s. pr.* wene, 931; 2 *p. s. pr.* wenestow = wenest þou, 1558; *pr. s.* weneþ, 3116; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wene, 4205; *pt. s.* wende, 680, 687, 731, 1853, 1943; wend, 229, 671, 1488, 1773, 4982, † 789; wen[d], 261; *pt. pl.* wend, 2765. Ch.

Wenne, 4263. *See* Winne.

Wepe, *v.* S. to weep, 310; *pt. s.* wepte, 38; wept, 45; wep, 50; wepud, 2914; *part. pres.* wepand, 1668; wepande, 2357, 2419. Ch.

Wer, *n.* doubt, perplexity, 3513. "Tyrwhitt considers this word, and, apparently, with reason, to be the Fr. *guerre*. See Gloss. to Chaucer, and Jamieson's examples, in v."—M. Perhaps it may be better to say, rather, that *guerre* is obviously from a Teutonic source. Cf. Du. *werre*, contention (Kilian); G. *wirre*, confused; *gewirre*, confusion. In fact, the word occurs in O. Saxon. "The thit *giuuer* frumid, he who makes a *sedition*, or *disturbance*." Heliand, ed. Schmeller, p. 148, l. 1. *Cf.* Werre.

Wer, *adv.* where, 3030; — were, 222, 4839.

Werche, *v.* to work, 650; — wirche, 1173, 1372, 2244, 2323, 3925, 4790; — wirch, † 517; — wirchen, 468, † 412; — worche, 257, 548, 809; *pr. s.* werches, 1207; wirches, 1176; worcheþ, 2579; *imp. s.* wirche, 667. *And see* Wrouȝt.

Werder, *adj.* 3185. Sir F. Madden suggests "wild," but doubtfully. By a mere guess, I suggest *werder-bestes* = harmful beasts, as if from *werder*, a harmer, from the A.S. *wyrdan*, to harm, which is used in the Ormulum in the forms *weordenn* and *werdenn*. The word is very plain in the MS., or we might conjecture it to be an error for *wonder* = wonderful, as in ll. 1873, 2786.

Werfore, wherefore, 1081.

Werne, *v.* S. to refuse, oppose, 305; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wern, † 1105; *pt. pl.* werned, † 66, † 905. Ch.

Werre, *n.* S. war, 1083, 2349, 2613, 2645; —wer, 2625.

Werre, *v.* S. to war, 1070, 1077, 1173; *pp.* werred, 3997.

Werwolf, *n.* S. man-wolf, *passim*; *pl.* werwolfs, 2540. *Cf.* P. Pl. Crede, 459.

Wery, *adj.* S. weary, 2236; wo wery, weary with woe, 793. See the note.

Weues, *pr. s. trans.* sways, causes to waver, makes to vacillate, causes to change from hope to fear and from fear to hope, keeps in agitation, 922; *infin. intr.* weue, waver or hover in the air, 4368. [*In the* latter case, Sir F. Madden calls it the *pp.*, but we may translate it, "the ashes of her body (shall) waver in the wind." The A.S. verb is *wafian*, to waver. Cf. G. *weben*, (intr.) to float about.]

Weued, *pt. s.* raised, lifted, 2978. [The word implies a *swaying* or quivering motion in the thing lifted; see the preceding word. Cf. "*wefden* up þa castles ȝate" = weighed up the castle-gate; *Laȝamon*, iii. 373; and see *Wevynge* in Prompt. Parv. In P. Pl. A. vi. 92, for *To wynne vp þe wiket-ȝat* two MSS. have *To weue out þe wyket*.]

Wexe, *v.* S. to grow, become, 124; — wex, 563, 737, † 668; *pr. s. subj.* wex, 266; *pt. s.* wax, 630, 785, 828, 1035, 1204, 1911, 2053, 2222, 4095; wex to = became, 140; *pt. pl.* waxen, 2931; *pp.* wox, 109, 798; wexen, 1776; woxen, † 54. Ch.

Whayte. *See* Waite.

Wham, *pron.* S. whom, 314, 441, 769, 1275, 4155. [In l. 4340 it is spelt *whan*, unless we supply *hire*, which is preferable.]

Whan, *pt. s.* procured, 2852. *See* Winne.

Whan, *adv.* when, 305, 308, 744, &c.; —whanne, 80, 145, &c.; — wanne, 11, 854, 1262; —wan, 2484, 4026; — wen, 2821; — wahan, (*read* whan?), 1572.

Whar, *adv.* where, 394; — war, 3832. Wharbi, why, 2256.

Whar, *adj.* aware, 3382. *See* War.

Whas, *pron.* whose, 1441.

Whas, *put for* Was, 3912.

Whasche, *pp.* washed, 2997. *See* Waschen.

What = what if, 549.

What rink so, whatsoever man, 1193.

What, *put for* Wot, knows, 1172. *See* Wite.

Whatow, *put for* What þow, what thou, 4066.

Whedir, Whederward. *See* Whider.

Whennes, *adv.* whence, 478, 3122.

Where, *put for* Were, 261, 502, 2750.

Where, *adv.* whether, 2946; — wher, 799. Ch.

Where as, where that, 1782.

Whiche, *used in the sense* what sort of, 1777, 2705, 3118. *See* Wich.

Whider, *adv.* whither, 104, 701, 948, 2689; —whedir, 2309. *Whider* sometimes has the sense of *where*, as in 2486.

Whiderward, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 105, 223, 2167; — whederward, 2827. Whiderward as, wherever, 2830.

While, *n.* S. while, time, 15, 574; —wile, 79, 487; —wille, 988.

While, *adv.* whilst, 2537; —wile, 537; — whille, 129; — wil, 1492, 2277, 5228, 5536. Ch.

Whiles, *adv.* S. meanwhile, 2736. "Is formed, like *nedes*, from the *gen. case*. Hence our *whilst*."—M. Cf. *Whilis*, Wycl. Gloss.

Whiles, *n. pl.* S. wiles, 862.

Whilum, *adv.* sometimes, at times, 1788; — whilom, in former times, formerly, 2846. [In † 521 *whilome* is a gloss for *ilome*, q. v.] As *whiles* is the *gen. sing.* of A.S. *hwíl*, so *whilum* is the *dat. plural*. Ch.

White, *v.* *See* Wite (to blame).

Whiȝ, *n.* *See* Weiȝ.

Whiȝt, *n.* *See* Wiȝt.

Wic. *See* Wicke.

Wicche, *v.* S. to practise witchcraft, use sorcery, 2539; *pp.* wicched, bewitched, 4427. A.S. *wiccian*.

Wicchecraft, *n.* S. witchcraft, 118, 120, 4427; —wichecraft, 4044.

Wice, *n.* S. wise, way, 4380. *Cf.* Weiȝes, Wise.

Wich, *pron. acc. sing.* what, 3981; *acc. pl. masc.* whom, 4093, 4161. Wiche a = what sort of a, 3354; wiche an = what sort of a (*referring to the* hart *only, and we must suppose* wiche *repeated before* an hinde), 2820.

Wicke, *adj.* wicked, evil, bad, 4599; —wic, 4652; — wicked (*applied to* ways), 3507. Ch.

Wide, *v.* S. to grow mad, 1509. The A.S. is *wedan*, and *wide* is perhaps miswritten for *wede*. *Cf.* A-wede.

Wide where a-boute, *adv.* S. abroad, everywhere, 2605, 4763; — wide wher a-boute, 82, 2202. The word wide went, 1569. "A phrase much used in our old writers. See notes to Havelok, l. 959."—M. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ix. 53, and Ch.

Wieȝs, Wieȝes. *See* Weiȝ.

Wikkedly, *adv.* S. cruelly, dangerously, 1218.

Wil, Wile, Wille. *See* While.

Willeful, *adj.* S. willing, desirous, bent upon, 5493; — wilfull, † 412. Wycl. Gloss.

Wilfulli, *adv.* S. willingly, with good will, readily, heartily, 1782, 3300, 3322, 4733; — wilsfully, † 590. Ch.

Willenyng, *n.* S. wish, desire, choice, 3983. Cf. A.S. *willnung*.

William, *gen. case*, 1221, 1372.

Wilne, *v.* S. to wish for, desire, 719, 3563, 4597, 4736; — willne, 3983, 3985; 1 *p. s. pr.* wilne,

4732; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wilne, 3343; *pr. s.* wilnes, 265, 301, † 622; *pr. pl.* wilnen after, 59; 1 *p. s. pt.* wilned, 4132; *pt. s.* wilned, 3925, 4590; *imp. s.* wilne, 4734; *pp.* wilned, 2134. Ch.

Wilsfully. *See* Wilfulli.

Wilsum, *adj.* S. loved, desirable, amiable, 5394.

Winne, *v.* S. to win, acquire, come (*used much as we use* get *colloquially*); winne in siȝt = get in sight, come in sight, 94; winne hom = get home, 2457; winne him awei = get him away, 3623; winne þe = get hold of thee, 4263; winne nere him, get near him, 3889; 1 *p. s. pt.* wan, 2026; *pt. s.* wan (got), 190, 1920, 2500; (came), 2498; wanne, 3973; whan, 2852; wan in (came in), 4237; wan bi (went by), 417; wan vp (got up), 3289; *pt. pl.* wonne, 1224, 2242; *pp.* wonne, 82, 1117.

Wirch, Wirchen, Wirches. *See* Werche.

Wirdernesse, *probably an error for* wildernesse, 3311.

Wise, *n.* S. way, manner, 485, 490, &c.;—wice, 4380. Ch.

Wisli, *adv.* S. truly, verily, 2947, 3118;—wisly, 661;—wiseli, 4615; —wisseli, 673, 721; wislich, † 754. Ch.

Wisse, *v. tr.* S. to make to know, to teach, instruct, shew, tell, 1356, 1666, 2110, 3086; (to protect), † 806; — wissen, 640; *pr. s. subj.* wisse, 1804; *pt. s.* wissed, 2207, 2716, 2727; wist, 172; *pt. pl.* wissed, 5445; *imp. s.* wisses, 4004. P. Pl.

Wisse; *phr.* i wot wel to wisse, I know for certain, 3397. *Here* wisse *seems to be an adj.* (A.S. *gewis*, Old S. *uwiss*, certain). *Cf.* l. 4114.

Wit-oute, *prep.* without, 2573.

Wite, *v.* S. to blame, 458, 530, 4705, † 972; — white, 304; 1 *p. s. pr.* wite, 900; *pp.* wited, 519; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 2069; wite, 4335, 4600, 5525. Ch.

Wite, *v.* to keep, guard, preserve, 257; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* 302; *pt. s.* wited, 176; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 3008. *See* Gloss. to Havelok and Laȝamon.

Wite, *v.* S. to know, 542, 560, 1458, 2081, 2733, &c.; 1 *p. s. pr.* wot, 105, 239, 316, 478, 697, &c.; wott, † 754; 2 *p. s. pr.* wost, 4065; wostou (= wost þou), 2274; *pr. s.* wot, 314, 1871; what, 1172; 2 *p. pl. pr.* witen, 4328; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* wite, 281; *pr. s. subj.* wite, 937; *pt. s.* wist, 40, 375, 690, 951, 1118, † 334, &c.; wiste, 145, 830, 836; *pt. pl.* wisten, 2195, 5283, † 372; wist, 1663; *imp. s.* wite, 38; white, 1884; witow (= wite þou) 68, 105, 300, &c.; wittow, 375, 752; wittou, 3178; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 4351. Lete wite, 2171. Do vs to wite, 1459. Ch.

Witerly, *adv.* plainly, openly, clearly, unmistakably, certainly, 40, 229, 289, 316, 533, 624, 680; — witerli, 5288; — witterli, 667, 815, 2705; — witterly, 491, 514, 1407. Cf. Dan. *vitterlig*, publicly known. Ch.

Wiþ, *prep.* with (*used in the sense of* by), 1060, 1367, 1492; — wiȝt, 2177; wiȝth, 163; *cf.* þerwiȝt *in* l. 138. *Observe* ll. 411, 824.

Wiþ-drow him, *pt. s. refl.* withdrew, 2993; *pt. pl.* wiþ-drow hem, 1285.

Withlich. *See* Wiȝtly.

Wiþ-oute, *prep.* besides, 1291.

With-sede, *pt. s.* gainsaid, contradicted, opposed, 3930. Ch.

Wiþ-þatow, on condition that thou, 3161.

Wiþtli. *See* Wiȝtly.

Witly. *See* Wittily.

Witte, *n.* S. senses, reason, understanding, 1204, 1483, &c.; — witt, 36, 142; *pl.* wittes, 468. Ch.

Wittened, *pt. pl.* imputed it to be, ascribed it as being, 3462. [*Placed under* Wite, to know, by Sir F. Madden, but may it not be from A.S. *wítan*, which has the sense to ascribe (honour) as well as to impute (blame)? If so, it may be connected with A.S. *witnian*, a derived form of the same *wítan*. *Cf.* "Witton' or retton'. *Imputo.*" Prompt. Parv.

Wittily, *adv.* S. wisely, prudently, sagaciously, 2602; — wittili, 3364, 4142; —witly, 259, 1259.

Witty, *adj.* S. possessed of reason, sagacious, wise, skilled, 145, 158, 2712, 2832; — witthi, 2182; — witti, 2204. Wycl. Gloss.

Wiue, *n.* S. wife, 242; *dat.* wiue, 2946.

Wiȝh, Wiȝes, Wiȝhes. *See* Weiȝ.

Wiȝt, Wiȝth, *prep.* *See* Wiþ.

Wiȝt, *n.* S. a wight, person, 407, 685, 786; — wiȝth, 758; — whiȝt, 4037; —wight, † 590; *pl.* wightes, † 598. Ch.

Wiȝt, *adj.* nimble, active, agile, brave, 2877, 3349; —wiȝht, 3293; — wyght, † 54; *comp.* wiȝtere, 3441; wiȝttere, 3576. Sw. *vig.* *See* Prompt. Parv. and Ch.

Wiȝtly, *adv.* nimbly, actively, quickly, bravely, 92, 140, 489, 669, 791, &c.; — wiȝtli, 135, 265, 1861, 4188; — wiȝtliche, 65, 310, 1195; —wightly, † 3; — withlich, † 326; — wiþtli (*or* wiytli), 1695; — wiȝttli, 3612; — wiȝtthli, 3581; — wiȝttili, 3640. [*The spelling* wiȝth *in the former edition* (*in* l. 1861) *is a misprint* for wiȝtli.]

Wlonke, *adj.* S. gay, proud, elate, grand (*spoken of* mirth), 1634; (*of* a den), 80; (*of* wits), 468. [*In the two latter places it is written* wolnk. The A.S. is *wlonc, wlanc;* the Old Saxon is *uulanc*, arrogant, proud.]

Wo, *n.* S. woe, sorrow; *spelt* woȝh, 544; woo, 1483. Him was wo, 1167. Wo is me, 1642.

Wod, *adj.* S. mad, 36, 554, 715, 1483, 1770, &c. Ch.

Wodly, *adv.* S. madly, 550; — wodli, 3883, 4026. Ch.

Wol, 1 *p. s. pr.* I will, 486, 533, 607, 906, &c.; 2 *p. s.* wolt (wilt), 324, 4263; 3 *p. s.* wol, 326, 482, 5126; wol sche = is she willing, 4203; 1 *p. pl. pr.* wol, 2260; 2 *p. pl.* wol, 4004; 1 *p. s. pt.* wold, 457, 1558; *pt. s.* wold, 529, &c.; *pt. pl.* wold, 5185. *The form* wil *also occurs, as in* 1568. [*Schal* is more often used than *wol*. *Ne wil* is contracted into *nel*, and *ne wold* into *nold*.]

Wold, *n.* S. power, possession, 4429. A.S. *wald*. G. *gewalt*.

Wolnk. *See* Wlonke.

Won, *n.* S. quantity, † 546. Ch. The A.S. is *winn*, what is acquired, a winning; in Laȝamon are the *pl.* forms *winne* and *wunnen*, possessions.

Won, *n.* S. any dwelling-place; *hence*, a town, a country, a place, † 164, † 237, † 337; —wonne, † 598, † 622. Cf. A.S. *wun-stow*, a dwelling-place.

Wonde, *v.* S. to hesitate from fear, hesitate to say, 4071, † 347; — wond, 614; *imp. s.* wonde, 275. A.S. *wandian*, to fear. *Wond* = to fear, occurs in *Kyng Alisaunder* (Weber's Metr. Rom.), l. 6525. *Cf.* Ch. Leg. Good Women. Dido, 262.

Wonded, *pp.* wounded, 1377. Ch.

Wonder, *adj.* S. wonderful, strange, 1873, 2786. Ch.

Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 1895.

Wonderli, *adv.* wonderfully, surprisingly, 1214, 1668, 2535; — wonderliche, 345; wonderly, 3682.

Wonne. *See* Winne, *and* Won.

Wonye, *v.* S. to dwell, 3312; *pr. s.* woneþ, 4471; *pl. s.* woned, 4, 1492; *pp.* woned, 3311. A.S. *wunian*. Ch.

Woode, *adj.* S. mad, † 914. *See* Wod.

Worche, Worcheþ. *See* Werche.

Worchep, *n.* S. worship, honour, 551, 4000; —worchepe, 497, 515; —worchip, 618; —worchipe, 1324, 3343.

Worchipeþ, *pr. s.* honoureth, 511.

Worchipfulli, *adv.* S. honourably, 5157.

Word, *possibly an error for* wiȝh, 883. *See* the note.

Wore, *written for* Were, 2370, 2485.

Worli, Worliche. *See* Worþliche.

Worþ, *written for* Wroþ, *adj.* 4335. *Cf.* 2002.

Worþi, *adj.* S. worthy, honoured, dear, 2792, 2795; *contracted to* worþ (= A.S. *wurð*), 2498, 2522, 2990.

Worþliche, *adj.* S. worthy, dear, 1814; —worthlich, † 596; wortlych, † 1024; worþiliche, 1642; worþili, 2786; worliche, 2700; worli, 138.

Worþli, *adv.* S. worthily, honourably, 673, 3202.

Worþe, *v.* S. to be, to become, 327, 3081; 3 *p. s. imp.* worþe, 2567; *pr. s.* worþ (*with future signification*, will become, will be), 2534, 2667, 2947, 3341; (*used as an auxiliary verb*, will be), 1673, 4181, 4253; *pl.* worþ, 2291. Wo worþ me, wo be to me, 4118. Late me worþ, let me be, let me alone, 2355, 3597; lete hym worthe, † 1186. A.S. *weorðan*. G. *werden*. Mœso-Goth. *wairthan*.

Woruȝt, *written for* Wrouȝt, 5182.

Wot, Wost, Wostou. *See* Wite.

Wox. *See* Wexe. [In l. † 337 *wox* should rather have been *wax*.]

Woȝh. *See* Wo.

Wowes, *n. pl.* S. walls, † 1122. A.S. *wáh*. Wycl. Gloss.

Wraþed, 1 *p. s. pt.* made angry, 981.

Wreche, *n.* S. revenge, vengeance, 3404, † 937. A.S. *wrace*. Ch.

Wreche, *v.* S. to revenge, avenge, wreak vengeance, † 806; —wreke, 1111, 3335; *pp.* wroke, 5431; wroken, † 76. Ch.

Wrong, *adj.* false, 706.

Wronger, *comp. adv.* more wrongly, 1176.

Wroþli, *adv.* S. angrily, wrathfully, 3683, 3738; — wroþliche, 2074.

Wrouȝt, 1 *p. s. pt.* I wrought, did, 3694; —wrout, 725; *pl.* wrouȝten, 3873; wrout, 1571; *pp.* wrought, † 76; wruȝt, 1503. *Cf.* Werche.

Wus, *n.* S. ooze, juice, † 712, † 813. A.S. *wós*.

Wynli, *adv.* pleasantly, 749. A.S. *wynlíc*, pleasant. [Explained as *laboriously, carefully*, by Sir F. Madden; as if from A.S. *win*, labour. See *wynne* in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, and *wynnelych*, pleasant, in *Gawayne and Grene Knizt*, l. 980.]

[*For past participles beginning with* I- *or* Y-, *see below, and also under* I-.]

Y-armed, armed, † 230.

Y-charged, loaded, 182.

Y-clepud, called, 121. Ch.

Y-gladed, gladdened, 850.

Ytryed, selected, choice, 1233. F. *trier*, to pick, select.

Yeeme. *See* ȝeme.

Yern, *n.* iron, † 1119, † 1133. *Cf.* Irn.

Y-fere, together, 2267. *See* I-fere.

Yie, *n.* S. eye, † 277, † 451; *pl.* yien, † 182. *See* Eiȝen.

Y-now, enough, 836, † 8, † 265. *See* I-now.

Yond, *adv.* yonder, 263;—ȝond, 846. *See* ȝond. Ch.

Youlden, *pt. pl.* yielded, † 304. *See* ȝeld.

Y-wisse, *adv.* verily, 846, 937;—y-wis, † 465. *See* I-wisse.

ȝ *in these poems is equivalent to* y *at the beginning of a word, as in* ȝa, ȝate; *to* gh *in* niȝt, burwȝ; *in* ȝhe *it seems to be a guttural; cf.* hue. *But it is also found (perhaps by mistake) in place of* þ *in the words* ȝanked, ȝout, ȝourh.

ȝa, *adv.* S. yea, 268, 326, 923, 1380, 2255, 2585, 3245, 3723, 4728, 4742, 5367, 5432;—ȝe, 2275, 3493. *See* ȝis.

ȝaf. *See* ȝeue.

ȝain-torn, *n.* S. way of escape, 3552. *Cf.* Aȝen-turn.

ȝald, ȝalde. *See* ȝelden.

ȝanked, *pt. s.* thanked, 642.

ȝare, *adj.* S. quick, nimble, ready, 895, 1963, 3265, &c.; *sup.* ȝarest, 2729.

ȝate, *n.* S. gate, 3757; *pl.* ȝates, 3267, 3649, † 304. Ch.

ȝe. *See* ȝa, ȝis. *Also, see* ȝou.

ȝede, *pt. s.* went, 1767; *pt. pl.* 1429, 2199, 2238; ȝeede, † 304. Ch.

ȝef, if, 1677. *See* ȝif.

ȝeft, *n.* S. a gift, 3664; *pl.* ȝiftes, 1061, 5357. Ch.

ȝelden, *v.* to yield, requite, 3019; ȝelde, 321, 601, 3941; ȝeld, 319, 1547; *pr. s.* ȝeldes, 234; *pt. s.* ȝalde, 3661; ȝald, 1256; *pt. pl.* ȝolde, 2708; youlden, † 304; *imp. s.* ȝeld, 1252, 3917; 3 *p. s. imp.* ȝelde, 4711. Ch.

ȝeme, *v.* S. to take care of, to take charge of, rule, provide for, 91, 2734, 3249, † 318, † 365, † 439; yeeme, † 43; *pr. s.* ȝemes, 2790; *pt. s.* ȝemed, 2806; *pt. pl.* ȝemed, 3267, 3320. Ch.

ȝepli, *adv.* S. quickly, 3346, 3649, 3896, 3941; — ȝeply, 1252. A.S. *gæp*, shrewd. P. Pl.

ȝerd, *n.* S. wand, rod (yard), † 481.

ȝere, *n. pl.* years, 1040; — ȝer, 5369;—ȝeres, 1057. P. Pl.

ȝerne, *v.* S. to yearn for, wish for, 58, 1633, 4730; *pt. s.* ȝerned, 782.

ȝerne, *adv.* eagerly, quickly, soon, fast, 1893, 2027, 2197, &c.; al so ȝern (very soon), 2043. P. Pl.

ȝer-while, *adv.* erewhile, a short time ago, 1246, 3104.

ȝete, *adv.* yet, 2274; — ȝit, 186, 577, 609; — ȝut, 515, 800, 993; — ȝutte, 1955.

ȝeue, *v.* S. to give, 1110; ȝiuen, 2963; ȝif, 5071; 3 *p. imp. s.* ȝif, 258, 876, 5536; *pt. s.* ȝaf, 5381; *pp.* ȝeuen, 2857; ȝeue, 1471, 5355; ȝiue, 2254. Ch.

ȝhe, she, 141, 172, 1983. *Cf.* Hue. 118, 119, 120 1982 1985 20

ȝif, if, 147, 172, 324, &c.; —ȝef, 1677. But ȝif (except), 472.

ȝis, yes, 697, 1567, 2260, 3184, 3490, 4731, 4746, 5149. *See* ȝa. [*There is certainly a distinction between* ȝa (ȝe) *and* ȝis. ȝa = I admit that, granted that, that's true, *or else it simply answers a simple question; but* ȝis *is an affirmative of great force* = yes, I swear it, by all means, *and is often followed by* i-wisse, certes, bi marie, bi crist, *or it answers a question involving a negative. See* Marsh, Lectures, 1st Series, p. 579.]

ȝister-neue (= ȝistern-eue), yester-eve, yesterday evening, 2160.

ȝit. *See* ȝete.

ȝolde. *See* ȝelden.

ȝomen, *n. pl.* yeomen, 3649.

ȝond, *adj.* yon, 3384; — ȝone, 4572; þe ȝond (the person yonder), 3052. *Cf.* Yond, *adv.* Mœso-Goth. *jains.* G. *jener.*

ȝore, *adv.* S. long ago, formerly, 1503, 2513, 3298;—for ȝore, 4174; —full ȝore, 4046.

ȝou, you, 262; —ȝow, 238; —ȝouȝ, 634, 2262, 3121; —ow, 106. *It is the acc. case*, the *nom. being* ȝe, 251, 269.

ȝourh (*used for* þourgh), through, 3799.

ȝout (*used for* þout), *n.* thought, 447.

ȝut, ȝutte. *See* ȝete.

NOTE. Dr Stratmann (in his Dictionary of Old English) cites examples from the poem of "William of Palerne" thus: "*hel*, a hill. *Will. Gloss.* 229." The numbers merely refer to the page *of the glossary* in which the word is found, not to the pages or lines *of the poem*. The references in the glossary to the edition by Sir F. Madden are to the *pages* of the book, and the following list is given, in order to shew *with what line each page of his book begins*. Most of his pages contain 28 lines, but page 1 contains only 16; page 16 has 24 lines; p. 131 has 27 lines; p. 170 has 26 lines; p. 177 has 27 lines; p. 196 has 27 lines; and p. 199 has 17 lines, being the last page of the text.

PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE
1	1	5	101	9	213	13	325
2	17	6	129	10	241	14	353
3	45	7	157	11	269	15	381
4	73	8	185	12	297	16	409
						17	433

To find with what line any one of the succeeding pages begins, we must multiply the *number of the page* by 28, *subtracting* 43 for pp. 18—131; *subtracting* 44 for pp. 132—170; *subtracting* 46 for pp. 171—177; and *subtracting* 47 for pp. 178—196. Thus p. 196 begins with line 196 × 28 — 47 = 5441. Page 197 begins with l. 5468; p. 198 with l. 5496; and p. 199 with l. 5524.

INDEX OF NAMES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are to the *pages* of the book; otherwise, the references are to the lines.]

Abelot, 363.

Acelone, l. 42 on p. 2; — Achillones, 4775.

Akarin, 364.

ALISAUNDRINE, daughter of the duke of Lombardy, p. 28; advises and assists Melior, pp. 28, 29; causes William to dream, p. 30; brings Melior to find William, pp. 34—41; aids the lovers to escape, pp. 59—62; excuses them to the emperor, p. 69; meets Melior again, p. 156; is betrothed to Braundnis, p. 159; is married, p. 160.

Almauns, Germans of Saxony, 1165.

ALPHOUNS (THE WERWOLF), steals William away, p. 3; leaves William in the den, p. 7; sees William adopted by the cowherd's wife, p. 9; his father was king of Spain, p. 10; he is made a WERWOLF by his stepmother, p. 10; finds that William and Melior are dressed up in bear-skins, and guards them, and provides them with food, pp. 65—67; saves them from the hounds, p. 75; brings them to Benevento, p. 75; saves their lives by stealing the provost's son, pp. 80—83; kills a hart and a hind for them, p. 86; brings them to Reggio, p. 90; helps them over the Straits, pp. 91—94; is seen by the queen of Palermo, p. 113; salutes the king of Spain, p. 129; threatens his stepmother, pp. 139, 140; is disenchanted, p. 142; is embraced by William, p. 144; he falls in love with Florence, p. 144; tells William's history, pp. 147—150; is betrothed to Florence, p. 151; is married, p. 160; is made king of Spain, p. 167; meets William for the last time, p. 168; swears friendship to William once more, p. 172.

Apulia. *See* Poyle.

Bonuent, Benevento, 2221; — Boneuent, 4692.

BRAUNDE, BRAUNDEN, *or* BRAUNDINE, is queen of Spain, and princess of Portugal, p. 10; enchants Alphouns, p. 10; receives an embassy from her lord, pp. 135, 136; goes to Palermo, p. 137; is attacked by the werwolf, p. 139; disenchants him, p. 141; returns to Spain, p. 164.

BRAUNDINIS, BRAUNDNIS, *or* BRAUNDYNS, prince of Spain, asks Florence in marriage, p. 88; is taken prisoner by William, p. 117; is betrothed to Alisaundrine, p. 159; is married, p. 160; comes to Palermo, p. 168; returns home, p. 171. [The name occurs in ll. 4944, 5299, 5411.]

Calabre, Calabria, 2628, 5512.

Cisile, Sicily, 2603, 2628.

Ebrouns. *See* Embrons.

Edwardes, (King) Edward's, 166, 5531. [Sir Humfrey de Bohun's mother was a daughter of King Edward I.]

EMBRONS, *or* EBROUNS, king of Palermo, p. 2; loses his son William, p. 3; pursues the werwolf without success, pp. 4—6; dies, p. 88; the story of his horse Saundbruel, pp. 106, 107; his resemblance to his son William, p. 119.

Englysch, English, 168.

Far, a name for the Straits of Messina. *See* page 4, and the note.

FELICE, queen of Palermo, and daughter of the emperor of Greece, p. 2; her grief at losing her son William, p. 5; is besieged in Palermo by the king of Spain, p. 94; her dream, p. 95; the dream expounded, pp. 96, 97; she encourages her knights, p. 99; she puts on a hind's skin, p. 100; she overhears about Melior's dream, p. 102; addresses William, p. 103; takes the hides off William and Melior, p. 105; sees the werwolf, p. 113; perceives a likeness between William and King Ebrouns, p. 119; discovers that William is her son, p. 147; her dream comes true, p. 174.

FLORENCE, daughter to the queen of Palermo, and sister to William, is sought in marriage by Braundyns, p. 94; is admitted to see the werwolf after his disenchantment, p. 143; marries Alphouns, p. 160. [The name occurs in l. 4490.]

Frensche, 167, 5522, 5533.

Gergeis, *n. pl.* Greeks, 2200. *Possibly misworitten for* Gregeis. *Cf.* Gryffouns.

Gloriande, l. 41 on p. 2;—Gloriauns, 4775.

Glouseter, 166.

Grece, a grom of, 1767.

GREECE, EMPEROR OF, is father to Queen Felice, p. 2; sends an embassy to Rome, p. 53; comes to Rome, p. 58; raises a hue and cry after William and Melior, p. 73; sends an embassy to Palermo, p. 157.

Greece, prince of. *See* Partenedon.

Grewes, *n. pl.* Greeks, 2080. *See* Gryffouns.

Gryffouns, *n. pl.* Greeks, 1961. Roquefort gives the forms *Gréu*, *Gréeux*, *Grégéois*, *Grifons*, &c., as equivalent to the Lat. *Græcus*. Hence the forms *Gregeis* (misworitten *Gergeis*), *Grewes*, and *Gryffouns* in the present poem.

Hereford, 5530;—Herford, 165.

Huet, 362.

Hugones, Hugo's, 363.

Hugonet, 362.

Humfray de Bowne, 165;—Humfray de Boune, 5530. [Sir Walter Scott rimes *de Boune* with *soon*; Lord of the Isles, Bk VI. c. xiv.]

Kostant-noble, Constantinople, 1425.

Krist, Christ, 1315.

Lumbardie, 585, 1315.

Marie, 838, 2229, 2698, &c.

Martynet, 363.

Meliadus, 3846, 3858, 3863, 3869.

MELIOR, *or* MELIORS, daughter of the emperor of Rome, p. 19; falls in love with William, p. 23; her soliloquy, pp. 23—26; is comforted by Alisaundrine, p. 28; goes to the garden, p. 34; and finds William asleep there, p. 35; is betrothed to William, p. 40; is wooed by the prince of Greece, p. 53; escapes with William, disguised as a bear, pp. 61—67; arrives at Benevento, p. 75; is saved by the werwolf, pp. 76—81; is disguised as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; is nearly killed by a barge-boy, p. 92; comes to Palermo, p. 93; her dream, p. 102; is received by the queen of Palermo, p. 105; her meeting with her father, p. 156; is married to William, p. 160; is crowned empress of Rome, p. 169; her children, p. 174. *See* William.

Midesomer, Midsummer, 1464.

Moyses, Moses, the name of a priest, 2918, 3025.

Nauerne, Navarre, 4076.

Palerne, Palermo, l. 61 on p. 3; 2838, 4223, 4287; *spelt* Pallerne, 2628.

PALERNE, QUEEN OF. *See* Felice.

PARTENDO, *or* PARTENEDON, son of the emperor of Greece, and brother of Queen Felice, wooes Melior, p. 53; waits at church for his bride, who does not come, p. 68; arrives at Palermo, p. 157; returns to Greece, 161. [The name occurs in lines 4930, 4939, 5039, 5078, 5088.]

Payenes, Pagan's, 364.

Petyr, cherche of seynt, 1956.

Pope, 1957.

Portingale, Portugal, 116.

Poyle, Apulia, 156, 2628, 5512.

Rise, Reggio, 2717. "It is so termed by the French and Italian Romancers of the middle ages. See Panizzi's Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxi. *n*. The same change seems to have taken place in regard to *Riez* in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martinière's Dictionary, sub v. *Riez*."—M.

Roachas, 1437.

Romaynes, Romans, 5167.

ROME, EMPEROR OF, finds William in a forest, p. 13; talks to the cowherd, p. 14; adopts William, pp. 15—19; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 42—49; consents that his daughter Melior shall marry Partenedon, p. 54; loses Melior, p. 68; his wrath, pp. 69—71; finds his daughter at Palermo, p. 155; his last advice to Melior, p. 163; his death, p. 166.

Saundbruel (a horse), 3585.

Saxoyne, duke of, 1068, 1108, 1318.

SPAYNE, KING OF, father of Alphouns the werwolf, p. 9; marries Braunde, p. 10; besieges Palermo, p. 88; seeks to revenge his son Braundinis, p. 121; is taken prisoner, p. 127; is saluted by the werwolf, p. 129; tells William his story, pp. 131, 132; escorts Melior to church, p. 160; returns to Spain p. 165; his death, p. 167.

Spain, prince of. *See* Braundinis.

Spaynols, Spaniards, 3631, 3770, 5168;—Spaynoles, 3399;—Spaynolus, 3529;—Spaynolnes, 3357.

WILLIAM (OF PALERNE), son of King Ebrouns and Queen Felice, p. 2; stolen by the werwolf, pp. 3—6; found and adopted by a cowherd, pp. 7—9; found and adopted by the emperor of Rome, pp. 13—23; is beloved by Melior, p. 23;

dreams of Melior, p. 30; betrothed to Melior, p. 40; is knighted, p. 43; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 45—49; his sickness, p. 55; is healed, p. 57; escapes with Melior, disguised as a bear, pp. 59—65; is saved by the werwolf, p. 75; hides with Melior in a quarry, p. 76; bids Melior save herself, p. 79; takes off the bear-skin, p. 81; hides with Melior in a forest, p. 82; is nearly discovered by some colliers, p. 84; disguises himself as a hart, and Melior as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; embarks secretly in a ship with Melior, p. 91; carries her to land, p. 92; is found by the queen of Palermo, p. 103; undertakes to assist her, p. 104; has a *werwolf* painted on his shield, p. 105; mounts King Ebrouns' horse, p. 107; attacks the Spaniards, pp. 110 — 112, 117 — 126; takes prisoner Prince Braundinis, p. 118; and the king of Spain, p. 127; sends for Queen Braunden to disenchant the werwolf, p. 134; embraces Alphouns, p. 144; his story and parentage, pp. 147—150; is king of Apulia, p. 154; marries Melior, p. 160; is emperor of Rome, p. 167; creates the cowherd an earl, p. 170; his wise rule, p. 173; his children, p. 174.

William (the author's name), 5521.

INDEX OF NAMES TO "ALISAUNDER."

Ægypt, 454.

Alisaunder, son of Amyntas, 22, 27, 37.

Alisaunder, son of Philip, 1034, 1049, 1095, 1148, &c.

Amon, 661, 727, 805.

Amyntas, 13.

Arabes, 498.

Arisba. *See* Erubel.

Aristote (Aristotle). *See* page 211.

Arofagi, *a corruption of* Agriophagi, i. e. eaters of *wild* animals, 500.

Artasarses, 491.

Assyriens (*a mistake for* Illyriens), 109, 130.

Assyrie (*a mistake for* Illyrie), 159.

Attenes, Athens, 157; — Attens, 898; —Attanus, 90.

Atteniens, Athenians, 415; — Attenieins, 902, 938.

Augmi *or* Augni, 498.

Barbre, Barbary (*a mistake for* Barbarians, Lat. *Barbari*), 533, 536.

Bosorij, 499.

Byzaunce, Byzantium, 1208; — Byzance, 1222.

Cappadoce, Cappadocia (*a mistake for* Chalcidice), 944, 1111.

Comothonham (*a corrupt name for* Methone). *See* Methone.

Constantine, 1225.

Constantinoble, 1223; —Constantinople, 1229.

Egipt, 486, 534, &c.

Elaine, Helen (mother of Constantine), 1226.

Enomanus, 429.

Epaminondas, 52, 75.

Erubel, 172 ;—Eruba, 240.
Ethiope, Æthiopia, 552.

Eurydice, 34.

Greece, 258, &c.

Jupiter (the planet), 1077.

Komothonham (*a corrupt spelling of* Methone). *See* Methone.

Lacedemonie, 335, 336, 417, 444 ;—Lacedemoine, 449, 879.
Lacedemonieins, 351.
Larissea, 119 ;—Larisse, 131, 161.
Latine, 458.

Macedoine, 14, 59, &c.
Medie, 495.
Mercurie (the planet), 1077.
Mesopotamie, 497.
Methone, 255, 310 ; *corruptly spelt* Comothonham, 255 ; *and* Komothonham, 310.
Molosor (*also* Malasor). *a corruption of* Molossis, 173, 204.

Nèctanabus, 459, 505, &c.

Olympias, 177, 576, &c.

Pausanias, 1218, 1246.
Perce, Persia, 492, 494 ;—Perss, 462, 471.
Perthe, Parthia, 494.
Philip, *passim.*
Philomelo, 364, 421.
Phocus, Phocis, 365, 413, 428, 446, 878 ;—Phocos, 336.
Phosus, *pl.* Phocians, 391.

Roome, 103, 1224.

Seraphin, Serapis, 557, 572.
Sparte, 1246.
Syria, 496.

Tebeniens, Thebans, 877 ;—Tebenieins, 351, 380.
Tebes, Thebes, 51, 71 ;—Tebs, 94.
Tessalonie, Thessalonica, 913.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

Alexander and Dindimus.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XXXI.

1878.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO

Alexander and Dindimus:

OR,

THE LETTERS OF ALEXANDER

TO

Dindimus, King of the Brahmans,

WITH THE REPLIES OF DINDIMUS;

BEING A SECOND FRAGMENT

OF THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF

Alisaunder;

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN, ABOUT A.D. 1340-50;

RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD.

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE; AND M.A. OF EXETER COLLEGE, OXFORD.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,

BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXVIII.

Extra Series,

XXXI.

CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, BUNGAY.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION. PAGE

§ 1. The three fragments of the Alexander-romances in alliterative verse. § 2. Description of the MS. of Fragment B. § 3. The French text of MS. Bodley 264. § 4. The apparent break in this text. § 5. Account of the meaning of this apparent break. § 6. Sources of the alliterative Alexander-romances. § 7. Fragment C. § 8. Fragments A and B by the same author. § 9. Resemblances between the language of the fragments A and B. § 10. The alliteration of the same. § 11. Mode of translation. § 12. Additional sources. § 13. Specimens from Julius Valerius and the Old High German. § 14. Abstract of the contents of fragment B. § 15. Remarks on the composition of it. § 16. On the name "Dindimus." § 17. The pictures in the Bodley MS. § 18. Conjectural date of Fragments A and B. § 19. Edition for the Roxburghe Club, by Mr. Stevenson. § 20. Variations from the MS. in that edition discussed. § 21. Mr. Stevenson's Glossary (reprinted). § 22 and § 23. On the Dialect of the Poem. § 24. Peculiarities of Alliteration in the Poem. § 25. List of French words in the poem i

ALEXANDER (FRAGMENT B) 1

NOTES TO "ALEXANDER B" 45

INDEX TO THE NOTES 59

GLOSSARIAL INDEX 61

INDEX OF NAMES 93

*** Fragment A (of the same poem) is printed at pp. 177—218 of the Romance of William of Palerne, &c., ed. by the Rev. Walter W. Skeat; E. E. T. S., Extra Series, 1867.

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. In An Essay on Alliterative Poetry, written by myself, and prefixed to vol. iii of The Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, I have explained that there are no less than *three* poems (all fragmentary) in alliterative verse on the subject of the Romance of Alexander the Great. These I denote by the letters A, B, and C; and they are as follows.[1]

A. A fragment preserved in MS. Greaves 60, in the Bodleian library, beginning—"Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes and ooþer." This was edited by me for the E. E. T. S. in 1867, being printed in the same volume with William of Palerne, pp. 177—218. It has never been printed elsewhere.

B. A fragment preserved in MS. Bodley 264, beginning—"Whan þis weith at his wil · wed*ur*ing hadde." This was edited by Mr. Stevenson for the Roxburghe Club in 1849, and is now reprinted in the present volume.

C. A fragment preserved in MS. Ashmole 44, in the Bodleian library, of which a portion is also found in MS. Dublin D. 4. 12. It begins—"When folk ere festid & fed · fayn̄ wald þai here," and was also printed by Mr. Stevenson at the same time and in the same volume; without, however, collation with the Dublin MS., which is of later date than the Ashmole MS.

It will be understood that the remarks I have now to make relate to fragment B only, unless the contrary be expressed.

§ 2. There is but one copy of fragment B, and it is imperfect both at the beginning and the end. The portion preserved has been handed down to us in rather a curious way. The MS. in which it

[1] See also p. xxx of my Preface to William of Palerne, &c.

occurs (Bodley 264) is the well-known copy of the French Romans d'Alixandre, to which is appended a copy, in another hand, of Marco Polo's travels. It is remarkable for the number and beauty of the illuminations contained in it, which have been frequently admired. Nine similar illustrations (of a later date) refer to the present poem, and are described particularly in § 17.

§ 3. The text of this French romance is mainly the same as that printed in Li Romans d'Alixandre par Lambert li Tors et Alixandre de Bernay, edited by H. Michelant, and published by the Literary Society of Stuttgart in 1846. The French version of the story varies from the English one, and our three English fragments have, I believe, little to do with it. But the condition of fol. 67 of the French MS. is very remarkable. The page is divided, as usual, into two columns. Of these, the first ends with the line—"Li veillant lieue sus si li vuet affier;" followed by the rubric—"Comment les gens alixand*re* firunt noies p*ur* le moure des fe*mm*es demorant en le lew." But the second column of the page, originally left blank, contains the following note in a later hand—"Here fayleþ a prossesse of þis rommance of alixand*er*, þe wheche prossesse þat fayleth ȝe schulle fynde at þe ende of þis bok y-wrete in engelyche ryme; and whanne ȝe han radde it to þe ende, turneþ hedur aȝen, and turneþ ouyr þis lef, and bygynneþ at þis reson: Che fu el mois de may que li tans renouele; and so rede forþ þe rommance to þe ende whylis þe frenche lasteþ."[1] This note of course only occupies a few lines of the second column of the page, the rest being blank. The verso of fol. 67 is also blank. Fol. 68, col. 1, begins, as the above note states, with the line: "Che fu el mois de may que li tans renouele."

§ 4. But the really remarkable point is, that, notwithstanding the vacant three columns in the MS., there is *not* a "failing of a process;" there is nothing omitted whatever. At p. 333 of Michelant's edition above referred to, we read as follows:—

> "li viellart salent sus, se li vont afier.
> Ce fu è l'mois de Mai que li tans renovele."

[1] The first half of this note, down to "ryme," is printed in Warton's Hist. of Eng. Poetry, ii. 103, ed. 1840. The whole note appears, with four errors, in Weber's Metrical Romances, i. xxxi; and again, with the same four errors and six more, at p. iv of Mr. Stevenson's edition.

And this plainly shews that the story runs on without any break, as may yet more easily be seen by looking at the context. Moreover, since nothing is lost, the writer of the English note is clearly in error in saying that the English alliterative poem supplies the deficiency. It is not quite easy to account for the blank space, but there it is. We can hardly suppose it was left for the purpose of introducing an illumination, because the shape of the slender column is unsuited for this. It is more likely that the scribe of the French romance imagined there was a defect in the MS. from which he was copying, and that he left a space in case he should be able to supply it.

§ 5. The truth is, that the English fragment and the French romance belong to different versions of the story. And even if the English fragment could have been introduced, it is not introduced quite in the best place; neither does it fit properly either at the beginning or the end. If the English scribe had before him a long English poem, we should have been more obliged to him if he had preserved for us more of it; but, as it is, we are thankful that he has given us a part of it. It is not difficult, by a probable conjecture, to account for the present state of things. It would appear that the English scribe, for some reason or other, set some store by the portion of the story which includes the letters of Alexander to Dindimus, and of Dindimus to Alexander. Now he could not find these epistles in the French romance, not because a "process" had "failed," but because that particular version does not, in any case, include them. Turning to the point where he expected to find them, he observed, not a great way from the most fitting place (but still not quite at the fittest place), a blank page and a half. From this he concluded that the French scribe had *omitted* the epistles, and thought that the best way of supplying the supposed defect was by copying out a sufficient portion of the English version which he possessed. At the same time, he wished to preserve further a short account of the Gymnosophists, because of the similarity between these philosophers and those of which Dindimus was the king or master. Hence the result which we have in the present poem. It contains just the whole account of the Gymnosophists, and the whole account of the letters between Alexander and Dindimus, but

purposely omits a portion of the narrative which comes *between* these, as pointed out in the footnote on p. 5. This is, however, not quite all. The scribe was determined not to lose the curious account of the trees which grew every day while daylight lasted, but disappeared every night; and, thinking this short account would seem out of place if merely added at the end of the Letters, boldly inserted it in the middle; at ll. 111—136. If this be not quite the right history of the matter, it is perhaps as nearly so as we can guess, and is quite sufficient for the purpose of understanding the present state of the text.

§ 6. I have said that the French romance follows, in the main, *one* form of the story, and the English romances *another*. The French romance is all printed, as explained above, and may now be dismissed, as we have nothing more to do with it. The three English fragments are all connected, and are founded mainly on the same Latin version. Repeating from p. xxxvii of my Introduction to William of Palerne and Alisaunder, I may remind the reader that the principal basis of these fragments is the Greek text known as the *Pseudo-Callisthenes*, whence three principal Latin versions are derived. These are (1) that by Julius Valerius; (2) the Itinerarium Alexandri (relating to Alexander's wars); and (3) that by the Archpresbyter Leo, which is also known as the "Historia de preliis." It is with the *third* of these that the three English fragments have most to do. This version begins with the words—"Sapientissimi egiptii scientes mensuram terre;" and an edition of it was printed in 1490, which has been my guide throughout, and from which I have given numerous citations. It is from this edition that the Latin text is quoted which appears at the foot of pages 1—42.

§ 7. All three English fragments are founded mainly on this Latin version, but the manner of translation is not the same in all. Fragment C may be taken first, as it is much the easiest to understand. This is a close translation of the Latin, with a brief original prologue of 22 lines only. It is of great length, extending to 5680 lines,[1] and is only slightly imperfect at the end.[2] As a result, it

[1] Only 5678 lines in Mr. Stevenson's edition, which omits two lines.

[2] That is, at first sight. But there is a gap after l. 722, where some leaves of the MS. have been lost.

contains *both* of the passages which exist also in fragments A and B. Fragment A corresponds to ll. 23—722 of C; and fragment B to ll. 4020—4067 and 4188—4715 of C. It is clear from this and from the manner of translation that C is independent of A and B, in the sense that it was made by a different translator.

§ 8. The next question is, whether there were two translators or three. As fragments A and B do not cover the same ground, but are taken, the former from a portion of the story near the beginning and the latter from a portion near the end, there is a chance that they may belong to the very same translation, and may have come from the same hand. In my Essay on Alliterative Poetry, I have observed that "the language of fragment B approaches that of fragment A, though I hardly think they belong to the same poem." In my Preface to William of Palerne, I have observed that "fragments A, B, and C, seem to be distinct from each other, and by different authors, the last bearing traces of a *northern*, the former two of a *western* dialect." That is to say that, though I had observed a similarity, both of language and dialect, between fragments A and B, I had not, at that time, made myself so closely acquainted with them as to feel sure that they could be definitely pronounced to be from the same hand. This hesitation gave rise to a paper by Dr. Moritz Trautmann, entitled "Ueber Verfasser und Entstehungszeit einiger Alliterirender Gedichte des Altenglischen,"[1] in which a great number of resemblances between these fragments are insisted upon, and there can now be little doubt about the matter. The result is satisfactory, as it introduces a simplification, reducing the number of independent versions from three to two. It may henceforth be understood that *fragments A and B are by the same author*, and that they are taken, presumably, from one and the same poem, which must, when complete, have been of very great length. It is, possibly, partly owing to this circumstance that only two fragments of it have come down to us.

§ 9. The following are a few of the more striking resemblances between fragments A and B, as pointed out by Dr. Trautmann.

[1] I have to thank Dr. Trautmann for his courtesy in sending me a copy of his paper.

Fragment A.	Fragment B.
þat all þe gomes were agrise · of his grim sight 986	þei were a-grisen of his grym 50
with skathe wer þei skoumfyt · skape þei ne myght 86	for skaþe of þe scorpionus · askape þei ne mizhte 159
þat þei gradden hur griþ · his grace to haue 151	whan ȝe greden ȝour grace · to graunte ȝour wille 606; whan ȝe hem greden of griþ 764
how þe ludus of the land · alosed for gode 331	þo þat ludus in oure land · alosed arn wise 1112
alosed in lond 139, 577	alosed in lande 665
with all þe weies in þe won 164; if any wight in þis wonne 622	and for ȝe, weihuus, of þat won · wende ne mowe 1092
lengen in bliss 44	lengeþ in blisse 628
yee þat lengen in londe 1	ȝif we lengede in ȝoure land 872
teeneful tach 282	tenful tach 566; schamfule tacchus 463
that moste was adouted 33, 400	þat most was adouted 1130
or hee fare wolde 740; pass ere hee woolde 1080	or he passe wolde 1135
hee shall grow full grim 858	þat is grimmest igrowe 252
his term was tint 30	ȝour daies to tine 589
þe dragoun dreew him awaie 998; hee drouned as a dragon · dredeful of noyes 985	dredful dragonus · drawen hem þiddire 156
and lordship of Larisse · laught too his will 131, 161	mihte lordschipe lache 264
so hee stynted þat stounde 1079	þat i mai stinte no stounde 97
too mark þe teene 497; as mich maugre and more · hee marked hem after 932	he haþ marked ȝou men · mischef on erþe 1120
for no grace hur grete God · graunte ne might 539	þei [your gods] graunte no grace 709
Olympias þe onorable queene 576, 738	Olimpias · þe onorable quene 825, 1083
as hym leefe thought 60	as him dere þoute 1133

§ 10. But though these coincidences are striking and of considerable force, the argument from them is less conclusive than the argument derived from the peculiarities of alliteration. This point is well and carefully worked out by Dr. Trautmann, and we may, I think, accept his conclusion, against which there is no antecedent probability. I ought to add here that another result of his more careful investigation is to shew that these two Alexander-fragments are *not* by the author of William of Palerne, as was supposed by Sir F. Madden, and as, at one time, believed by myself. Dr. Trautmann also expresses an opinion that the date of these fragments is later than I should put it; but here I am not convinced.

§ 11. It appears to me that there is another argument which is

also of weight. I have said that fragment C is a *close* translation from one Latin text, but the others are not so. In both of them, however, the same treatment of the Latin versions is observed. The text of the "Alexander de preliis" is taken as a general guide, on which account it is here printed *at the foot of every page of the English text*, with a summary of the latter chapters on p. 43. It is, however, supplemented from other sources, and the author seems to have aimed at telling the story in his own way, plainly with the intention of making it more interesting and attractive.[1] Even where he follows the text "de preliis," he by no means translates closely, but gives rather the general sense of the passage, with poetical interpolations ad libitum. Take, for example, a couple of lines from the Latin text printed at the foot of p. 6; and observe the result.

Latin text. "Deinde amoto exercitu venit ad fluuium bragmanorum magnum, vocatum ga[*n*]gei; et castra metata sunt ibi."

Fragment C, ll. 4188, 4189; *close translation.*

> "þen rade he in aray · remowis his ostis,
> To þe grete flode of gangem · & *gra*ythid *þer* his tents."

Fragment B, ll. 137—142; *free translation.*

> "As sone þe king sai · þat it so ferde,
> He dide him forþ to flod · þat phis*on* is called,
> þat writen is in holi wriht · & wrouht so to name.
> From perlese p*ar*adis · passeþ þe stronde;[2]
> In cost þere þe king was · men called it gena,
> As was þe langage of þe lond · wiþ lud*us* of inde."

It is evident that our author has here had further access to some other text, whence he acquired the notion of identity between the rivers Phison and Ganges. The following passage from Palladius de Bragmanibus (of which more hereafter) shews the source of his knowledge. In speaking of Alexander's approach to the Ganges, the remark is made:—"Fluvius vero Ganges iste est qui nobis vocatur Phison, ferturque in S. Literis fluviorum quatuor Paradiso exeuntium unus;" ed. Bisse, p. 2.

§ 12. This point being perceived, we next proceed to consider the *supplemental* sources of information possessed by our author. I have

[1] For numerous examples of this in fragment A, see the Notes in my edition of it.

[2] I. e. stream; *not* strand.

already pointed out that, for fragment A, he used a compilation by Radulphus of St. Alban's extant in MS. no. 219 in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and also the history of Orosius. I now point out that, for fragment C, he made use of certain Latin texts, of which three were printed by E. Bisse in 1665. These tracts, all of which bear more or less upon the matter in hand, are as follows.

(1) Palladius de Gentibus Indiæ et Bragmanibus; begins—"Ἡ πολλὴ φιλοπονία σου, καὶ φιλομαθία," with a Latin version—"Tua indefatigabili industria."

(2) S. Ambrosius de Moribus Brachmanorum; begins—"Desiderium mentis tuæ, Palladi," &c., being a letter to Palladius from St. Ambrose.

(3) Anonymus de Bragmanis; begins—"Sæpius ad aures meas fando pervenit."

The last gives the text of the letters between Alexander and Dindimus, of which there are five, viz. these.

(*a*) First letter of Alexander to Dindimus; see ll. 191—242 of our English poem.

(*b*) First answer of Dindimus to Alexander; see ll. 249—811.

(*c*) Second letter of Alexander; see ll. 822—966.

(*d*) Second answer of Dindimus; see ll. 973—1071.

(*e*) Third letter of Alexander; see ll. 1078—1127.

There is a MS. copy of these letters in the MS. C. C. C. no. 219, just mentioned above; and there are other MS. copies in the same library, viz. in MS. no. 370, at fol. 38, back, and in MS. no. 450, p. 279;[1] but these copies are imperfect. As Bisse's printed edition is a convenient one for reference, I take the opportunity of recording here the contents of a sentence which, owing to the imperfect state of the MS. used by him, he was unable to give properly. The gap occurs in col. 2, of p. 102, as indicated by dots, and may be filled up by help of the following. "Nonnunquam etiam suauitate odoris uel gustu dulcedinis aut contactus blanda mollicie refouemur. Quorum omnium suggerunt nobis elementa materiarum, que eciam uite nostre creduntur esse principia. Quorum permixtione contraria

[1] Described in Nasmith's Catalogue, p. 414, as "Epistola Originaniorum (*sic*) ad Alexandrum magnum;" certainly an odd rendering of the "Bragmanorum" of the MS.

humani generis structura conditur," &c.[1] By help of these tracts, I have been able to find, as far as can be found, the original of almost every sentence of our poem, and I have pointed out the principal results of this research in the Notes.

§ 13. For further information, see Zacher, *Pseudo-Callisthenes*, Halle, 1867; the editions of Julius Valerius by Angelo Mai (Milan, 1817), and Karl Müller (Paris, 1846); the Old High-German version edited by H. Weismann (Frankfort-on-the-Main, 1850), the second volume of which, in particular, contains much information; the introduction to Kyng Alisaunder in Weber's Metrical Romances; the remarks on the Alexander Romances in Col. Yule's edition of Marco Polo, p. cxxxvii; Vincent of Beauvais, Spec. Hist. iv. 66—71, &c. I give two passages, by way of example, for comparison with the English poem. The former, from Julius Valerius, answers to ll. 1—22. The latter, from the Old High-German Romance, written by Lamprecht in the twelfth century, and edited by Weismann, corresponds to ll. 111—136.

From Julius Valerius, De Rebus Gestis Alexandri, ed. Mai; Milan, 1817, lib. iii. cc. xvi—xxii.

"xvi. Quare domitis hostibus avectaque praeda, ad Oxydracontas, quae gens exim colit, iter suum dirigit. Non illam quidem gentem hosticam incursatur (neque enim illis studia sunt armorum) sed quod celebre esset, Indos, quos gymnosophistas appellant, hisce in partibus versari, opum quidem omnium et cuiusque pretii neglegentes, solis vero diversoriis sapientissimi, quae humi manu exhauriunt aditibus perangusta, enimvero subter capacibus spaciata, quod id genus aedium neque pretii scilicet indigens, et ad flagrantiam solis aestivam aptius habeatur. Ii igitur cum conperissent Alexandrum ad sese contendere, primates suos, quos scilicet a sapientiae modo censent, obviare adventanti iubent cum litteris huiuscemodi."

From the Old High-German Romance, beginning at l. 4946.

"Do sluge wir unze gezelt	Then we pitched our tent
uf an ein breit felt.	Upon a broad field
groz wunder ih da sah:	A great wonder I saw there;
des morgenes, do uns quam der tach	In the morning, when day came to us,
do sah ih wassen boume—	I then saw trees grow—
des nam ih rehte goume—	Of it I took good heed—
di wohssen harte scone	Which grew very finely
uzer erde unz an di none;	Out of the earth until noon;

[1] MS. C. C. C. 370 fol. 47 back; cf. MS. C. C. C. 219, fol. 70.

dar under blumen unde gras,
do die none liden was,
do sunken di boume nider
tiefe under der erde wider.
uf den boumen wohs gut fruht;
da beginc ih groz unzuht;
ih gebot minen knechten
daz si mir des obezes brechten.
groz not in dar vone bequam.
svilich irre daz obiz nam,
der wart so zebluwen
daz ime daz moste ruwen
daz er ie geboren wart.
si worden ouh an der vart
mit geislen sere zeslagen.
sine wisten, uber wen doh clagen,
wande si ne gesahen niemanne;
doh horten si eine stimme,
di gebot unde sagete,
daz nieman ne scadete
dem obize noh den boumen;
daz si des namen goume
neweder wafen noh man.
wurdiz ubir daz getan,
dar umbe solde liden not
unde den bitteren tot
oder scaden vil groz,
der des obezis nie ne genoz.
Ouh sahe wir dar
cleine fugele, daz ist war,
di waren samfte gemuot
unde ne forhten niwit den tot.
groze not er liden solde,
sver in scaden wolde,
den brante daz himelfiur,
dem wart daz leben vil sur."

Thereunder (were) flowers and grass.
When noon was past,
Then sank the trees down
Deep under the earth again.
On the trees grew good fruit;
Then I did a great evil.
I ordered my servants
To break off for me some of the fruit.
A great peril came of it.
Whoever rashly took the fruit,
He was so severely beaten
That it must repent him
That ever he was born.
They were also upon the way
With whips severely struck.
They knew not whom to accuse,
Since they saw no one.
But they heard a voice
Which commanded and said,
That no one was to harm
The fruit nor the trees;
That they should take heed of it,
Both as to weapon and man.
If aught were done against this,
The man would suffer pain for it
And bitter death
Or very great harm,
And still would not taste the fruit.
We also saw there
Little birds—it is true—
Which were of gentle mood,
And feared death no whit.
He was to suffer great pain
Whoever should harm them;
Heaven's fire should burn him;
Life should be very bitter for him.

ABSTRACT OF THE CONTENTS OF FRAGMENT B.

§ 14. The general contents of fragment B may be briefly described. After Alexander had slain Porus, king of India, he came to the country of the Oxydracæ, the people of which go naked, and are called Gymnosophists. Their king sends a letter to Alexander, representing that he has nothing to gain by subduing them. Alexander offers them peace, and promises to grant them a boon; upon which they ask him, by way of taunt, to give them everlasting life. He replies that he cannot do that, but must still fulfil his destiny. Next he sees the wonderful trees which only grew during sunlight, and at sundown disappear. These trees were guarded by birds that spat

deadly fire. He next comes to the Ganges, a river impassable except in July and August. He sees men on the other side of the river, and sends a message by boat to their king, who is called Dindimus. The rest of the poem concerns the five letters which pass between him and Alexander.

First letter; Alexander to Dindimus (pp. 8—10). Tell me some of your customs; it is good to impart knowledge; for a torch whence another is lighted loses none of its own brightness thereby.

Second letter; from Dindimus (pp. 10—30). I comply with your request. We live a simple life; we neither plough, fish, nor hunt. We live frugally, and die at a fixed age. We use no fire, avoid lusts, eat fruit, drink milk or water, speak truth, and never covet nor make war. Our wives neither paint their faces, nor use gay apparel. We dwell in caves; we dislike mirth. We admire the suns, stars, and sea, feed on the scent of flowers, and love the woods. But ye are evil; ye sacrifice your children, and make war. Your gods likewise are evil; Jupiter was lecherous; ye have as many false gods as the body of man has members. Each one presides over some member; thus Mercury is god of the tongue, Bacchus of the throat, and so of the rest. Your idols lead you into sins, for which ye shall suffer hereafter endless torment. Ye are like Cerberus or Hydra, and are born to sorrow.

Third letter; from Alexander (pp. 31—36). Why do you blame us? Your account of yourselves is a miserable one, neither to be envied nor imitated. Ye are as beasts, but we as men. We intersperse hard work with well-earned pleasure. Ye lose many joys, and dishonour the Creator. Your deeds are but folly.

Fourth letter; from Dindimus. We are but pilgrims upon earth. Your boastful deeds only make you proud. The gold which you prize cannot satisfy thirst, and we are wiser in treading it under foot. Ye know not how much ye err, and it is a kindness to tell you. The man who lives as if there were no death deserves to be struck down by lightning, as was Salmoneus.

Fifth letter; from Alexander. Ye are so set in an island, that no strangers can come to you; ye are like wretched prisoners. God

has decreed for you misery in this life, and pain hereafter. Your deeds are a woe to you.

After the letters are ended, Alexander erects a pillar of marble to mark the furthest spot which he had succeeded in reaching. His men then begin their homeward journey; and the fragment ends.

§ 15. It thus appears that the poem is principally concerned with the correspondence that passed between Alexander and the king of the Brahmans. This correspondence has really nothing to do with the story of Alexander's adventures, but is a mere excrescence. It is easy to see that it originated with an ecclesiastic, and was introduced with a moral purpose. There are two leading ideas in it, both of them theological. The former is, the common and favourite contrast between the Active Life and the Contemplative Life, which so often meets us in mediæval literature; and the latter, the contrast between the Christian life and that of the heathen worshippers of idols. The arguments are so managed that the bias of one counteracts that of the other. We are led, on the one hand, to favour the Active Life as being more useful than the Contemplative; but, lest the scale should preponderate in its favour, it is linked with Heathenism as opposed to Christianity. The life of Dindimus, in as far as it is assimilated to that of a Christian, is preferable to that of Alexander. The life of Alexander, in its Active aspect, enlists our sympathies rather than that of Dindimus. The author of this ingenious arrangement strove rather for oratorical effect than sought to inculcate a lesson. To regard the various arguments in this light is to regard them rightly. It is merely a question of seeing what can be said on both sides. There is nothing else to be learnt from the story of it.

ON THE NAME "DINDIMUS."

§ 16. Though the poem deals with India, and attempts an account of the life of the Brahmans, there is little that is eastern about it. Bisse has pointed out the references to the Gymnosophists that occur in Strabo, lib. 15; in Plutarch's Life of Alexander; in Arrian, De Expedit. Alexandri, lib. 7; in Clement of Alexandria, Stromata, lib. 3; in Porphyrius, De Abstinentia, lib. 4; in Philostratus, Vita Apollonii lib. 3, capp. 4 and 5; and in other authors. The chief point of interest

is in the name Dindimus,[1] given to the supposed king of the Brahmans. It should rather be *Dandamis*, answering to *Dandamis* in the Latin, and Δανδάμις in the Greek texts. It is not really a proper name, but a sort of title. It is the Sanskrit *dandin*, signifying 'bearing a staff,' or, as a sb., 'mace-bearer.' It occurs in the sense of 'warder' or 'door-keeper' in the Tale of Nala, iv. 25. It is an adj. formed from the sb. *danda*, a staff, mace, sceptre of justice; and this again is from the root *dand*, to chastise. It thus has the sense of 'sceptre-bearer' or 'dispenser of justice.' Even in Sanskrit it is used as an epithet of Yama, and also as a proper name. The compound *tri-dandin*, lit. 'three-staves-bearing,' was applied in particular to an ascetic, as being one who has command over the three seats of action, viz. mind, speech, and body; see Benfey's Dict., p. 385. Hence the particular application of the epithet to a chief of ascetics is very appropriate. However, the simple form *dandin* was likewise used to signify an ascetic; and Prof. Cowell kindly refers me to a passage shewing that it was, in fact, a name for a man in the fourth (and highest) stage of Brahmanical life—the religious devotee. "His nails, hair, and beard being clipped, bearing with him a dish, a *staff*, and a waterpot, his whole mind being fixed on God, let him wander about continually, without giving pain to any living thing."—Manu, vi. 32.

ACCOUNT OF THE PICTURES.

§ 17. I here attempt an account of the illuminations or coloured pictures which occur in the MS. There are nine of these, viz. at ll. 137, 249, 355, 568, 681, 822, 973, 1078, and 1139, as indicated in the text itself. The subjects of them are as follows.

I. King Alexander stands just before his tent. At his feet flows a stream, in which swims a large eel, to represent the 'hound-fish' (l. 164), and just on the further bank stand two dragons (156). A man is rowing across the stream in a boat (168); two others, both naked, stand a little back from the stream, one of them bearing an offering of fruits (165).

[1] Printed *Duidimus*, in five places, in Warton's Hist. of Eng. Poetry, ed. 1840, p. 104; this misspelling is not corrected in the edition of 1871.

II. A tent. Alexander receiving a letter from a man who kneels before him (248).

III. Two naked men, of whom one is Dindimus, who bears a crown, and sits at the mouth of a cave, writing. The other, half hid in the cave, is the messenger to whom he is to entrust his letter.

IV. King Alexander before his tent. Before him stand four naked men, of whom the foremost, bearing a crown, is Dindimus.

V. In the middle of the picture is an idol, seated on a pillar or pedestal. The idol is in a constrained posture, pointing, apparently, towards its stomach. It probably represents Cupid (686). On the right of the idol stands Alexander. On the left of it stands Dindimus, naked but crowned, who is administering a reproof.

VI. Dindimus, naked but crowned, is receiving a letter presented to him by Alexander's messenger.

VII. Alexander is seated before his tent. He receives a letter from a naked messenger.

VIII. Alexander's page is kneeling down and offering a letter to Dindimus, behind whom are four men, one of whom is issuing from the mouth of the cave. In this picture Dindimus and his men are apparently naked, but are curiously tattooed or marked all over with something that almost gives them the appearance of wearing coats of mail.

IX. Alexander is setting up a large white pillar (1135).

CONJECTURAL DATE OF THE POEM.

§ 18. The chief value of the poem is in the language of it. It is a good specimen of Alliterative English, and contains, in common with all other such poems, a number of curious and characteristic words. My original impression was that it might be referred to about the year 1340; Dr. Trautmann argues that the date should rather be about 1370. It is hardly possible to decide the matter either way; and, if it may be argued on the one hand, that there are reasons for putting it earlier than William of Palerne (written about 1350), it may be said, on the other, that alliterative poems, by their retention of archaic forms, have an appearance of antiquity which is rather deceptive.[1] It is not of much consequence either way; and it is

[1] The French romance, in MS. Bodley 264, was written out in 1338, and

quite sufficient to know the date approximately. The dialect, which is more particularly discussed in § 22, is apparently that of the West of England. On account of the usefulness of references to good specimens of Middle English, I have attempted, in the Glossarial Index, to make a list of *all* the words in the poem, but omitting multiplication of references in the case of every word. See the note prefixed to the Glossarial Index on p. 61.

EDITION FOR THE ROXBURGHE CLUB.

§ 19. The poem has been printed before, as I have said, by Mr Stevenson, for the Roxburghe Club, in 1849; but the number of copies printed was limited, and the book is scarce; for which reason it is now reprinted for the Early English Text Society. Mr. Stevenson's text is not free from faults; it would seem to have been printed from an imperfect transcript without collation of the proofs with the MS. itself. The MS. itself has also several faults.[1] In the following list of the variations from the MS. in Mr. Stevenson's edition, the *former* of the two forms gives the word as it stands in the MS.; the latter the word as it stands in his edition; the numbers referring to the lines. It does not include the editor's numerous substitutions of *v* for *u*, of *th* for *þ*, and of capital letters for small ones. 1. *MS.* wed*u*ring; Stevenson *prints* wedering. 2. rommede—roumede. 4. wondurful—wonderful. 31. mi*ȝ*ht — might. 32. wele — wel. 39. werrede — wercede. 44. sik*u*rede—sikured. 51. hiddem—hidden hem (*evidently an editorial correction; but no notice is given*). 55. Aftur—After. 65. speche —speeche. 74. my silf—myselfe. 81. skile—skill. 82. kingu*us* —kingus. 88. wrecheli—wrethelie. 100. seruaunt*us*—servantus. 106. Whan—When. 107. enchesoun—enchesonn; o*þur*—other; kingu*us* — kingus. 108, &c. ou*ur* — over. 109. o*þur*e — othur. 124. &—In. grouuede—grounede. 127. &—in. 136. spilden—spildin. 142. lud*us*—ludis. 143. mascedoni*us*—Mascedomus; (*cf. l.* 1073). 145. mascedoni*us*—Mastredomus (*sic*). 148. hem—him.

illuminated in 1344. The English copy was written out perhaps about a century later, but then it was evidently copied from an older original.

[1] The chief of these are pointed out in the margin of the present edition; see ll. 51, 69, &c. Some others are discussed in the Notes.

150. miche — muche. 151. ou*ur* — over; romme — rounne. 152. watir—water. 155. aftyr—aftter. 164. þer inne—there inne. 176. &—In. 177. þi—the. 179. couaitede—covaited. 180. ic*h*—Ic. 185. þanne whitli — Than whith; ou*ur* — over; wat*ur* — water. 187. say—saye. 193. gracious—gracious. 194. on*ur*able—onerable. 200. fram oþ*ur*—from other. 203. sesoun—sasoun. 207. tyinge (*error for* tyþinge)—tynige. 210. meruailouse—marvailouse. 213. ȝour—your. 215. ic*h*—Ic. 222. þinguus—thingus. 230. hit—it; oþ*ur*e — other. 236. vn-wasteþ — onwasteth. 245. write — writte. 248. man*er*e—manner. 250. lond—loud. 251. princis—princes. 281. time—tune. 294. forwes—forues. 307. mod*ur*—moder. 336. mihte — miht. 345. ou*ur*com*en* — overcomen. 347. nol—ne of; pro*cr*e—prince. 351. keuered—koverid. 364. wiþ oute—without. 366. pro*cr*ed—proceed. 395. y punched—ypiniched. 396. ȝour — ȝoure. 405. þei — thai. 420. sauiour — Savioure. 431. coruen—comen. 438. oþ*ur*—othir. 440. owen—usen. 442. any — ony. 443. wed*ur*es — wederes. 460. luþ*ur*ly — lutherly. 467. storri*us* — stormus. 470. game — gaine. 478. þe skiu*us*—skurus. 480. &—An. 483. wáw*us*—wavus. 496. sauo*ur*on—saveron. 514. man*er*—manir. 517. lowe—lothe. 521. alle—all. 533. ou*ur*—over. 534. mihtest—mihhest. 541. quedfulle—qued fulle. 542. souorain—soverain. 543. vnblisful—unblissful. 545. gret — grett. 547. prouede — proude. 549. miht — might. 554. lecho*ur*us — lechurous. 565. hole — hol. 568. aftur — after. 569. luþ*ur* — luther. 570. auaunt — avaunte. 573. Miche — Swiche. 574. bet*ur*e — betere. 575. ged*ur*en — gederen. 578. ket*ur*e — kecere. 580. oth*ur* — other. mirthe — in irthe. 583. ou*ur*-comeþ — overcometh. 597. leu*en* — liven. 605. For þei — For thi. 609. vnd*ur*stonde — understonde. 612. noþ*ur* — nothir (*twice*). 629. & — in; luþ*ur* — luther. 632. sinne — synne. 633. oþ*ur* — othir. 638, 639. No — Ne. 659. iaudewin—jandewin; ioiful—joyful. 662. rink—renk; wraþþe—wraythe. 663. main—mani. 664. found*ur*—founderer. 674. ȝiue — give. 682. fur — full. 685. soþ — sothe. 692. ell*us* — elles. 698. weihu*us* — weihus. 700. oþ*ur* — othir. 702. minst*ral*us — minstrelus. 717. vn — on. 722. oþ*ur* — othir. 729. spraiu*us* —

sprainus. 740. fau*ure* — favere. 742. maist*r*ie — maistire. 763. kun not—kunnot. 764. graunte—graunt. 769. any—an y. 772. wreche—wirche. 775. ar—are. 776. t*ur*ment—tourment. 777. wreche — wrethe. 786. wirche*n* — worchen. 797. ȝour — ȝoure. 799. yydra—Thydra. 810. dindim*us*—Dindunus. 816. anon riht anied — anonriht amed. 825. onorable — honorable. 834. ne — no (*which is better*). 836. seye—seth. 840. dedes—dede. 846. tulye —tulthe. 855, 865, &c. oþ*ur*—othir. 856. For-þi—Forthei. 863, 866. hung*ur* — hunger. 866. ȝou — you. 875. comine — comme. 881. hungur — hungurus. 884, 887. lech*ur*ie — lecherie. 894. chariteu*us* — chariteus. 921. ioie — joie. 928. dimme — duñne. 929. siht—riht. 930. alse—alle. 936. Whan—When. 947. siht — riht. & sau*ur* — saver. 958. þo — the. 986. kin*us* nie— kinusme[n]. 1012. grete—Grece. 1017. burn*us*—turnus. dede*us* —dedus. 1030. houngur—hounger. 1036. hit—it. 1037. cofly— coflye. 1067. wi*th*—what. 1074. seye—sethe. 1075. bragmanye brouht — Bragman ye brouht. 1082. grac*i*ose—graciouse. 1091. you — thou. 1097. ȝour — ȝoure. 1100. & skile — in skile. 1118. iuge, ioie, iugged—juge, joye, jugged. 1121. þouh—Though. 1131. romme—roume. 1137. ic*h*—Ic. 1138. *grai*e—grie.

§ 20. In several of these instances the MS. may, no doubt, be read either way. In particular, the scribe often makes but little difference between *y* and *þ*, or between *c* and *t*, and sometimes none at all between *u* and *n*, or between *m* and *in* or *ni*. Yet in most cases there can be no doubt about the matter, and I think the reader will in general be able to tell for himself why the readings in the present edition are preferable to those in the former. Thus, in l. 88, we must read *wrecheli*, i. e. wretchedly, miserably, not *wretheli*, i. e. wrathfully. In l. 124, *grouuede*=*growede*, i. e. grew; but *grounede* cannot well be explained. In l. 250, *lond* = land; but *loud* makes no sense. In l. 281, we must of course read *time*, not *tune*. In l. 467, the sense is 'to read stories,' not 'to read storms.' In l. 478, the sun and stars are visible *on þe skiuus*, in the skies; but not *on þe skurus*, which is explained to mean 'in the tempests.' In l. 578, *keture*, not an uncommon word, must be preferred to *kecere*, which does not exist. In l. 659, *iaudewin* can be explained, but *jandewin*

cannot. In l. 729, *spraiuus*, sprays, is better than *sprainus*, giving no meaning. In l. 816, *anied* means 'annoyed;' the sense of *amed* we are not told, whilst the alliteration is then lost. In l. 846, the M. E. word for 'to till' is, of course, *to tulye*, not *to tulthe*. In l. 875, *comine peple* means 'common people,' but *comme peple* makes no sense. In l. 928, days are *dimme*, i. e. dim, rather than *dunne* or brown. In l. 1074, *seye* means seen, i. e. read over; *sethe* does not exist as a past participle, but means 'to boil.' In some cases the alliteration is a guide to the right reading, giving us, in l. 573, *Miche* for *Swiche;* in l. 929 and 947, *siht* for *riht;* and in l. 1017, *burnus* for *turnus*. In all four of these places, the MS. is quite right. Perhaps the most curious variation is in l. 347, where the MS. reading *nol no gome procre* (= will procure no man) appears as *ne of no gome prince*. And in l. 769 the reading of the former edition *an y* is explained in the glossary to mean 'an egg;' that is to say, "when the gods are loath to hear your prayers, the fact that they will not hear you hatches[1] an egg for you." The reading in the MS. is *any*, i. e. annoyance, vexation; and the right sense is "breeds annoyance for you."

§ 21. A glossary is appended to Mr. Stevenson's edition, but it is not a very full one. The number of words explained in it is 63; and, for the reader's convenience, I here reprint it, with the references, as given.

Aldurfadur, an ancestor, 1050. *Atlede*, attempted to go, 15. *Auht*, increased, 936. *Bakke*, a bat, 723. *Bliken*, to make fair, 411. *Boller*, a drunkard, 675. *Bourd*, a jest, 469. *Brigg*, strife, 393. *Cof*, quickly, 42; *Cofli*, *Cofliche*, quickly, 48, 64, 1076. *Dreche*, to drench, 1032. *Dreie* [*drie* in the text], to suffer, 857. *Englayme*, to cloy, 676. *Ferk*, to go, 300. *Fon*, foes, 339, 341. *Fulsum*, satisfied, 497. *Galfull*, lustful, 389. *Gaynes us*, it avails us, 181, 1028. *Giour*, a guide, 703. *Grith*, protection, 764. *He*, she, 654, 698. *Here*, to honour, 1046. *Hery*, to praise, 358. *Hihten*, to honour, adorn, 406, 408, 418. *Hue*, she, 656.

[1] The glossary to the former edition explains *norcheth* by *paineth not*. This is hardly fair; and, even then, the sense comes out just the opposite of what it should do. Besides, *norscheþ* occurs again, in l. 309.

Jandewin (?), 659. *Karre*, to turn, 886 [*read* 986]. *Laike*, to play, 465. *Licham*, the body, 492 [*read* 592]. *Lileth* (?), 474. *Lin*, to remain, 441, 448. *Lisse*, to please, 476. *Lite*, to mock (?), 732 [*read* 932]. *Lose*, praise, 221. *Lud*, a man, 205, 645. *Ludene*, human, 773. *Menskliche*, honorably, 1073. *Minegeth*, mentions, 573, 614. *Munizе*, to teach, 514. *Namecouthe*, celebrated, 823, 979. *Norcheth*, paineth not, 769. *Quedfulle*, full of wickedness, 541. *Reke*, extended, 594. *Sake*, contention, 388. *Schalk*, a man, 432. *Sichus*, sighs, 1115. *Side*, long, wide, 481. *Skurus*, tempests, 478. *Snelle*, keen, 437. *Solow*, a ploughshare, 295. *Sote*, sweet, 128, 496. *Spousebreche*, adultery, 885. *Tacchus*, manners, 463. *Taried*, harmed, 132. *Tendeth*, inflameth, 684. *Tenful*, sorrowful, 793. *Traie*, difficult, 710. *Whon*, a quantity, 353. *Wikke*, wicked, 537. *Wilnede*, desired, 150. *Won*, abundance, 499, 557, 575, 678, 891, 957. *Wond*, to depart from, 886, 957, 990. *Y*, an egg, 769.

In the references here given three corrections must be made; *karre* occurs in l. 986; *licham* in l. 592; and *lite* in l. 932; as noted above. And the explanations may, I think, be improved in at least 13 instances. *Dreche* = to afflict. *Jandewin* should rather be *jaudewin;* see my Glossary. *Laik* in l. 465 is a sb., not a verb. For *lileth* (the MS. reading) read *liketh*. *Lisse* is a sb., signifying joy. *Lite* means 'little;' *ille can lite* = knows little ill; or, more strictly, knows evil (but a) little. *Ludene* is not an adj., but the genitive plural. *Norcheth* = nourishes. *Sake* is simply *sake*. *Skurus* is an error for *skiuus* = *skius*, skies. *Traie* is a sb., meaning 'a vexation.' *Wond* is rather 'to shun, avoid.' *Y* is due to an error; the word is *any*. The explanation of *reke* is, besides, hardly satisfactory; if 'extended' be meant, the form should rather have been *rauht* or *rauzt*.

ON THE DIALECT OF THE POEM.

§ 22. One difficulty in the way of studying the dialect of an old poem is that, when it presents mixed forms, we cannot well tell whether some of its peculiarities may not have been due merely to the scribe. We want to know which forms are original, and which have crept into the poem in course of transcription. Singularly enough, we have in the present instance a short sentence by the

scribe himself, which tells us, at any rate, something. I allude to the note mentioned in § 3, which gives us the following hints. The scribe writes *fayleþ*, *lasteþ*, in the 3rd person singular of the present tense; *turneþ*, *bygynneþ*, but also *rede*, in the 2nd person plural of the imperative mood; *y-wrete* and *radde* appear as past participles of strong verbs; and we have also the phrases *ȝe schulle* and *ȝe han*. These indications are not to be disregarded; but point to a southern dialect, or to a midland dialect strongly marked by southern forms. It seems fair to infer that the numerous western forms found in the poem, such as the suffix *-us* for the present singular or for the imperative plural, are *not* due to the scribe, but to the original which he had before him; which makes some observations upon the forms in the poem all the more necessary and useful, as well as trustworthy. The bias of the scribe towards southern forms being ascertained, we can see our way more clearly than we could have done otherwise.

§ 23. For convenience, I consider the various peculiarities of the text in much the same order as I have done those found in William of Palerne; the present remarks may therefore be compared with those in my Preface to that poem, p. xxxviii. For *references* to the words cited below, see the Glossarial Index.

The plurals of nouns generally end in *-us*, as *wynterus*, *somerus*, *holus*, *answerus*, *ludus*, *costomus*, &c.; but this ending is also curiously varied to *-uus*, as in *skiuus*, *kinguus*, *weihuus*, *foliuus*; or else to *-eus*, as in *seggeus*, *dedeus*; or even to *-ous*, as in *þouhtous* (767), *godous* (772). In some cases, we find plurals in *-ys*, as in *heuys* (hues), *cauys* (caves), *stormys*; rarely in *-es*, as in *lettres*, *weies*, *dedes*; very rarely in *-is*, as in *holis* (57). Other plurals worth notice are *oxen* (296), *hous* (434), *fon* (foes), *tren* (trees, 853), *erene* = *eren* (ears), *eldrene*, *eldren* (elders), *breþeren*, *soulen* (souls). The pl. of 'fish' appears as *fihs*, *fihcs*, *fihch*, and *fihches*. The genitive singular also commonly ends in *-us*, as in *godus* (315), *catelus* (370), *licamus* (555). The genitive plural is found ending in *-ene*, as in *haþelene*, *briddene*, *bestene*, *ludene*; cf. *wommenus* (1016).

As regards adjectives, we find plurals in *-e*, as *meke*, *pore*; and *e* is commonly added to past participles in the plural, as in *clene-mindede*, *corsede*, *bannede*; though it is also wrongly added to past

participles of weak verbs in the singular, a mark of the lateness of the transcription or of ignorance of spelling. We find the comparatives *bliþure*, *schenure*, *beture*, *keture*, *comelokur*; as also *lasse*, *werse*; and the superlatives *kiddeste*, *egrest*, *grymmest*, *grettest* (see 975, 976). The endings *-ly*, *-li*, and *-liche* are used both for adverbs and adjectives without distinction; thus we have *cofliche*, *cofli*, and *cofly*.

As to pronouns, for *I* the forms are *i*, *y*, and *ich* (1137); for *thou*, we have *þou*; pl. *ȝe* in the nominative, *ȝou*, *ȝow*, in the dative and accusative; see l. 540. The third personal pronoun is *he*, gen. *his*, *is*, dat. and acc. *him*; though in one instance (l. 703) the acc. is written *hin*, more likely by an error of the scribe than by a preservation of the *n* in the A.S. *hine*. The feminine of the third person is *hue* (as in Alexander A.), but *sche* occurs once, in l. 309; acc. *hure*. The neuter is commonly *hit*. The plural nom. is *þey* or *þei*; gen. *hure*, *hur*; dat. and acc. *hem*. We find *euerych a* = every (86). *Huo*, used for *who*, occurs interrogatively (941); *huo-so* or *ho-so* occurs for *who-so* (1001, 1060).

In the case of verbs, the infinitive ends in *-en*, as *reden*, *maken*, *forleten*; in *-e*, as *bereue*, *tine*; in *-ien*, as *tilien*; in *-ie*, as *þolie*, or *-ye*, as *tulye*; very rarely in *-yn*, as *helyn* (320). In the present tense, 2nd pers. sing., we find *-est*, as in *berest*, *bringest*, *lettest*, *sentest(e)*, *wilnest*; cf. the contracted form *wost* (516). In the 3rd pers. sing., we most often find *-us*, as *farus*, *kairus*, *lepus*, *wendus*, *romwus*; but also *-es*, as *fondes*; and even *-eþ*, as *seseþ*, *askeþ*, with which compare the contracted forms *biclipth* and *et* (= *eteth*, 862). The plural ends in *-en* or *-e*; rarely in *-in*, as *wetin* (99), *worchin*, 361; once in *-on*, as *sauouron* (496), probably by an error of the scribe for *sauouren*; see numerous examples in ll. 712—733.

The imperative plural (2nd person) ends in *-us*, as in *giuus* (972); in *-es*, as in *ȝernes* (67); but also in *-eþ* (190), which is possibly due to the scribe. Of past tenses, we may note the use *sai* and *sie*, in the sense of *saw*, in the singular; and *saien* and *sihen*, in the same sense, in the plural; *sew* (sing.) in the sense of *sowed seed*; and *wreten* (pl.) in the sense of *wrote*. The 2nd person singular of strong verbs ends in *-e*, as *þou bade* (511). Examples of weak verbs are, in the singular, *helde*, *wente*, *brente*, *wiste*, with the fuller forms *askede*,

biggede, buskede; and, in the plural, *tendide, spatten, spilden.* Of past participles, those of strong verbs end properly in *-en,* as *holden* (16), *coren* (chosen), *doluen, i-boren;* but the final *n* often drops off, as in *holde* (13), *graue, i-ȝoulde, schape, i-founde, smite* (smitten). Examples of past participles of weak verbs are *listned, i-eged, y-sustained, ydemed,* ending in *-ed; wastid,* ending in *-id;* also *i-kid, tend, iput, iset, kild, maad,* contracted forms. In two cases we actually find the ending *-eþ;* viz. in *yhanteþ,* 988, *vnwasteþ,* 236; these are probably errors. The prefix *i-* or *y-* is by no means uncommon, especially in weak verbs, as *i-kid, i-said, iput, i-set, i-eged, y-kid, y-maad, y-sustained, y-demed;* it is even found in strong verbs, as *i-ȝoulde, i-boren, ifounde.* Cf. *iset* (454) with *set* (481). The present participles end in *-inge,* as *rydinge, likinge, wastinge.* Substantives of verbal origin also end in *-inge,* as *wachinge, housinge, lesinge, swaginge, handlinge, heringe, queminge;* see ll. 948—952. We once find *-in* for *-inge,* as in *offrin,* l. 718. It is, perhaps, worthy of remark, that in the plural of the present tense of the verb signifying *to be,* we find both *arn* and *ben.* Both forms are due to the author, as is proved by the alliteration. In ll. 333, 423, 904, we find *ben,* as the alliteration requires; whilst in ll. 338, 345, 506, 1007, we find *arn,* also as required. A similar peculiarity occurs in Piers the Plowman. In ll. 446, 634, we have examples of the verb *worþen,* to become. Some peculiarities of spelling may be noted. For *fish,* we have the curious forms, *fihcs, fihs, fihch, fihches.* For *strength,* we find *strenke;* for *strengthen, strenkþen;* for *drinking, drinkinke;* for *nought, noukt.* In the word *world,* the *l* is frequently dropped, giving *word* or *worde;* but we also find the curious form *wordle,* as in some MSS. of Piers the Plowman. This form is still found in Somersetshire, as in the phrase *bĕeyaen aul dhu daiz een dhu wuurdl* (beyond all the days in the world), to quote from the representation of Somersetshire speech in glossic spelling, given by Mr. Elworthy in his Grammar of the Dialect of West Somerset, p. 103. We may also note the loss of *d* after *l,* as in *gol* for *gold;* as well as the use of *scl* for *sl,* as in *sclepe, sclowþe, sclain,* all in l. 344. Also the use of *sch* for *ch,* as in *schast* for *chast* (894), suggesting that *ch* had occasionally the sound of *sh.* The aspirate is sometimes misused, as

in *holde* for *old*, l. 327; *hauter* for *altar*, l. 728. The number of curious words in the poem is considerable, not the least remarkable being the word *done* in l. 999, on which see the note. We also see that *to punch* is short for *punish*.

It hence appears that the dialect is much the same as that of William of Palerne, the chief difference being that there are no present participles in *-ande* as well as in *-inge;* but there are not many examples to judge from. I think the dialect is plainly West Midland, but not so far north as Lancashire; rather in the direction of Shropshire or Gloucestershire, as in William of Palerne.

ON THE ALLITERATION OF THE POEM.

§ 24. I note here a few peculiarities of alliteration.[1] Perhaps the most remarkable is the run upon *vowels*, which is also a marked feature of the Alexander A-fragment; see ll. 22, 27, 230, 240, 268, 290, 415, 461, 498, 500, &c. of that text. So here, we find an alliteration of *different* vowels in ll. 3, 15, 24, 157, 251, 338, 343, 345, 440, 442, 468, 506, 526, 568, 718, 720, 754, 812, 851, 936, 975, &c. We also find alliteration of the *same* vowel in many instances. Ex: *a, a, a;* 55, 63, 170, 198, 244, 377, 701, 822, 1007; *e, e, e;* 86, 201, 262, 360, 539, 744, 757, 862, 981, 1008; *o, o, o;* 327, 533, 711, 743. To these add l. 588, in which there are but *two* vowels, both *e;* also 153, in which we have *o, e* (in *eight* = viij.), *a;* also 518, in which *a* rimes with the diphthongs *au* and *eu*. The most remarkable instance is in ll. 1007, 1008, in which two *consecutive* lines have the vowel-rime. The letter *h* is also *sometimes* associated with vowels, as in these instances; 155, 219 (where *haþel* is for *aþel*), 277 (where *haþel* is again for *aþel*), 320 (*haþelene* for *aþelene*), 348 (*haþel* for *aþel*), 669, 728, 799, 842, 856 (*haþel* for *aþel*), 1137. This is the more remarkable, because *h* is also found as an alliterative letter, as in l. 16, 51, &c.

[1] I may further refer the reader to a careful dissertation entitled Die Alliterierende Englische Langzeile im xiv. Jahrhundert, by F. Rosenthal; Halle, 1877. This contains an analysis of the alliterations in the three texts of Piers Plowman, a work of great labour. Most of the remarks here made were written before I received a copy of this dissertation, which was kindly forwarded to me by the author.

C of course answers to *k;* as in 13, 26, 29, 38, 42, 48, &c. Also *ph* to *f;* as in 457, 1070. Also soft *c* to *s;* as in the word *Ceres*, 724; cf. *syte*, written for *cyte*, i. e. city, in l. 9; see the note. Also soft *g* to *i* (= *j*); 656. Scarce rimes are those with *i* (= *j*); 462, 553, 659, 697, 1118: with *qu;* 541, 608, 950, 1047: and with *v;* 671, 693.[1] Examples of double rime-letters are numerous; examples are *bl*, 411, 523, 543, 624; *br*, 134, 287, 393, 430, 503, 521, 586, &c.; *ch*, 107, 110, 417, 727, 894,[2] 941, 1080; *cl*, 489, 625, 636, 899, &c.; *dr*, 156, 529, 1032; *gl*, 676, 790; *gr*, 7, 87, 124, 133, 252, 254, 447, 502, &c.; *pl*, 296, 495, 847, 853; *pr*, 5, 161, 225, 280, 366, 509, 547, &c.; *sch*, 294, 330, 401, 412, 416, 421, 432, &c., especially the consecutive lines 959 and 960; *scl* = *sl*, 344; *sk*, 159, 871, 1020; *sm*, 1063; *sp*, 136, 172, 367, 699; *st*, 97, 114, 429, 487, 609, 686; *sw*, 310, 493, 719, 855, 921; *tr*, 513, 829; *wr*, 139, 660, 777, 814, 1136. There are even examples of triple rime-letters, as *spr*, 123, 729; and *str*, 756; but we must not include amongst these *sch* and *scl*, already mentioned, since these are merely ways of writing *sh* and *sl* respectively. But it was not thought at all *necessary* that, if a double consonant began one rime-word, the same sound should occur throughout the line. We have *br* riming with *b*, 175, 683, 714, 723; *fr* with *f*, 352; *gl* with *g*, 391; *gr* with *g*, 193, 274, 525, 824, 1025; *sp* with *spr*, 623; *st* with *str*, 530; and numerous other examples. The strangest example is an apparent rime of *br* with *pr*, 1075; but the word *prest* may be wrong.

We sometimes find *four* rime-letters in the line; as in 499, 544, 546; these lines are not very common, and the fourth letter is not needed.

Occasionally there is a failure of one of the sub-letters, as in l. 11,[3] 22 (where it is easy to supply *tid*); 81, where *k* seems to answer (by poetical licence) to *sk;* 290; 302 (where *refe* should be *bruten*, see note); 558; 782 (where *ȝou lif* should perhaps be *ȝou silf*); 793 (unless the *t* in *Tricerberus* is counted in); 815. One or other of

[1] No example of the rime of *v* with *f*, as in Piers Plowman and Richard the Redeles.

[2] The writing of *schast* for *chast* is a mere freak of the scribe.

[3] A bad line; the *g* in *genosophistiens* is soft, and does not well rime with *gomes*.

the sub-letters is often out of place, as in ll. 12, 47, 67, 106, &c.; but a certain amount of variation of this character is rather a beauty than a blemish, as it prevents the metre from being too painfully regular. Yet this licence is sometimes carried too far; in ll. 12, 47, 130, and some others, the accent has to be rather forced to bring out the rime. The worst is when the chief-letter fails, as in ll. 6, 1046; in the latter case, there is something wrong. Other unmusical lines are those where the chief-letter is ill placed, as in ll. 54, 163, 904, where the word *bi* is too weak to bear the whole weight of the verse. Similarly, l. 363 is bad. In l. 73, we may excuse the strong emphasis upon *not*, by supposing that Alexander meant to express his refusal unmistakeably. We may note ll. 31, 50, 394, 971, as examples in which the chief-letter comes nearer than usual to the end of the line.

As usual, prefixes are commonly neglected in the alliteration; thus, in l. 19, the accent is on the syllable beginning with *s* in *for-saide*, the prefix *for* being neglected. Other examples are: the rime with *m* in *amongus*, 28; *h* in *bi-holden*, 46; and with the italicised letters in the following, viz. a*b*oute, 54; bi-*r*eue, 82; a*g*ayn, 83; i*s*aid, 100; a-*p*ere, 104; en*ch*esoun, 107; a*st*ored, 114; for*d*on, 118; a*sk*ape, 159; a*sp*ien, 172; a*l*oweþ, 212; vn*h*armed, 227; vn*w*asteþ, 236; en*d*itinge, 243; a*l*osed, 250; rihte*w*isnesse, 258 (an odd instance); a*l*owe, 259; in*p*ossible, 268; vn*l*ich, 271; bi*l*eue, 272; &c., &c.

This neglect of the prefix is, of course, right; as it brings the *accented* syllable into play. But we sometimes find a very objectionable variation, viz. cases in which, contrary to the whole spirit of alliterative poetry, the rime-letter begins an *un*accented syllable. Examples of this occur, not only in the present poem, but (as I have before observed) in other alliterative poems also. As this point probably presents a difficulty to such as do not clearly apprehend the fact, I cite some instances.

> And *s*aide, *s*eg, to us *s*ilf · *s*oſisen þis cauus; 61.
> That us *d*erye no *d*eþ · *d*esíre we nouþe; 71.
> Bigat *o*n *o*límpias · þe *o*nurable quene; 194.
> That we *d*iscórden of *d*ede · in many *d*one þinguus; 222.
> Alle þe *d*edes þat ȝe *d*on · *d*iscórden til oure; 273.

Ne oþir *d*ainteys *d*ere · *d*e*s*íre we none; 306.
To him þat *sch*op us to *sch*ap · *sch*al fáre to blisse; 330.
And *d*elíten in no *d*ede · þat *d*oþ men to sinne; 505.
*M*ichel holde ȝe of *m*iht · *M*inérua þe falce; 653; cf. 722.
*D*iuísede here on his *d*ay · a *d*osain of wondrus; 670.
That han no *r*ewárd to *r*iht · but *r*edlese wirchen; 907.
þis *s*onde þat y *s*aid haue · *s*ire álixandre riche; 967.

A crucial test is furnished by ll. 74, 75.

Of *m*é þat *m*íȝhteles am · *m*y-sílf so to kepe;
I am *s*íkur of my-*s*ílf · to *s*úffre min ende.

Here, in the same word, viz. *my-silf*, without any change of accent, we have a change in the alliterative letter.[1]

No doubt our pronunciation has changed greatly since the fourteenth century, but accent is a much more persistent thing. No one will be so hardy as to maintain that such accentuations as *désire*, *ólimpias*, *déliten*, *mínerva*, *díuisede*, *réward* could ever have been possible; and, for this reason, I refuse to believe in *sófisen*, or *díscorden* either. And I am prepared to maintain, as always, that even the chief-letter in the alliterative poetry of our forefathers sometimes fell on wholly unaccented and unimportant syllables, such as *schal* in l. 330, and *sire* in l. 967. So much the worse for the poetry, no doubt; but we must not shut our eyes to plain facts by pretending that poets could not err. Besides, it is easy to see *why* these unimportant syllables sometimes received the rime-letter. What the poet really wanted was *a help to the memory*, and this was attained quite as easily (now and then) by help of an unimportant syllable as by close attention to rule. The use of the word *schal* in l. 330 (as of *sire* in l. 967) was to give the reciter a start for his second half-line. The cue was quite sufficient for this purpose, and thus the line, though slip-shod, was allowed to pass. This is the simple explanation of the whole matter.

§ 25. I add a list (perhaps imperfect) of the principal words of *French* or *Latin* origin in the poem; omitting proper names. The list is as follows; the references to the lines where they occur will be found in the Glossarial Index.[2] Acorde, age, air, alowe, auterus

[1] We cannot shift the accent in a word like *mysilf*, as Chaucer does in the case of French words like *honour* and *fortune*. The case is quite different.

[2] The order of such words as are still in use is the alphabetical order of them in *modern* English; the *obsolete* words follow these, letter by letter.

(*altars*), amende, anied (*annoyed*), apere, armus, araie, asent, asingned, auowen. *Obsolete:* adouted, alosed, aseled, askape, aspien, astored, auaunt. Bal, best (*beast*), bochours (*butchers*). *Obs.:* bourde. Carien, cache, catel, cauys (*caves*), sese (*cease*), sertaine, sertefied, chalis, chaunce (*chance*), changede, chase, chaste, chere, chef (*chief*), chois, syte (*city*), claimen, clergie, closeþ, cost (*coast*), colour, comaundede, comine (*common*), conquerour, conscience, contre (*country*), cours, cortais (*courteous*), couaite, couaitous, cocodrillus (*crocodiles*), corone (*crown*), crye, costom. *Obs.:* sertus (*certes*), chariteuus, cheue, couaitise. Dainte, damned, degre, deliten, desire, dispit, destene, distroie, diuisede, discorden, dismembre, dite (*ditty*), diuerse, doctour, dolfinus, doute, dosain (*dozen*), dragonus, duk, dure. *Obs.:* defoule, dul (*dool*). Egre, ese, emperour, endite, endure, enemis, enforceþ, engendreþ, enquere, ensample, enuie (*envy*), erren, errours, echue (*eschew*), exkused. *Obs.:* enchesoun, englaymed, enoine (*anoint*). Fablus, face, failede, falce, faute (*fault*), fauure (*favour*), figure, fin (*fine*), flourus (*flowers*), folie, fol (*fool*), fourme (*form*), frut. *Obs.:* fenked, folliche; *and cf.* faiþ. Gay, gentil, gin (*a trap*), glose, glotenye, glotounius, grace, graciouce, graunt, *sb.*, graunte, *vb.*, grauntinge, gref (*grief*), greue (*grieve*), gruche, gile, gise. *Obs.:* gien, giour, gouernance. Hardy, haste, hastiliche, haunte, eritage, ypotamus, onurable, ost, huge. Idolus, inpossible, innocent, yle (*isle*). Iangle, iargoun, ioie (*with* ioiful, ioiles), iuge, *sb.*, iuggen, iuggement. *Obs.:* iaudewin. Langage, large, lecherie, lechour, lechourus, lettres. *Obs.:* los. Mentaine (*maintain*), manere, marbyl *or* marbre, meruailous, maistrus, maistrie (*mastery*), matere, maugre, megre, men (*mean*), mesure (*measure*), medle, medisine, membrys, mercy, message, minstralus, mischef, meven (*move*). *Obs.:* maumentrie. Nacion, nisete (*nicety*), noble, noblete, norscheþ. *Obs.:* noy, nien (*or* nye). Oxian (*ocean*), ordre. (*Add* offren, offringus, *from a Latin root.*) Pacen, paine, *sb.*, painede, paradis, part, *sb.*, parte, *vb.*, passe, pay, *sb.*, paieþ, pes (*peace*), perles (*peerless*), penance, peple, peril, perichen, philozofrus, pilegrimus, piler, pinchen (?), place, plain, plaunte, plente, point, pore, pouerte, poudur, power, praisen, praien, praiere, pres, praie (*prey*), prince, prented, presoun, preuey, procre (*procure*), profre, profit, profiteþ, proud (?), prove,

pulle (?), punched, purchas, purpre. *Obs.:* prest, prestly, prow, pris *or* prys. (*Add* preche, *of Latin origin.*) Quainte. *Obs.:* quaintise. Resoun, regne, remewid, renoun, reproue, reward, riche, richesse, rommede (*roamed*), robbed, romauncus, rout, reule. Sacrifice, saue, sauiour, sauur, *sb.*, sauouren, scole, sience, scorpionus, sel (*seal*), sesoun, seruantis, serue, simple, sengle, soile, solas, solempne, soueraine, space, spirit, spouce, stable, stat, stomak, storie, straiten, stidie (*study*), sodainly, sofisen, suffre (soffre), somme (*sum*), sur (*sure*), sustaine (sostaine). *Obs.:* swaginge. Taried, tariginge, tast, tastinge, tempren, tempest, templus, temted, tende, tendere, tentus, titelid, torche, turment, touche, touchinge, tribit (*tribute*), trye, turnen. *Obs.:* tache, tende. Vse (*use*), *sb. and vb.* *Obs.:* vndigne. Varied, verrai, vertue, vois. Werre (*war*), werrede (*warred*), wasten.

An inspection of these words may teach us some useful lessons. It is remarkable to what extent, in some cases, the language from which an English word is derived is indicated merely by its initial letter. Imperfect as is this list, and unsafe as it may be to generalise from so short a list of words as those which are included in the present glossary, I yet believe that the proportion of French to Anglo-Saxon words in Middle English is, approximately, capable of being ascertained from the above list. Thus the different words in the Glossarial Index beginning with the letter *A* are, roughly speaking, about 72; whilst the French words in the above list beginning with the same letter are 20. This gives a percentage of 27, neglecting fractions. Following out a similar calculation for the other letters, we obtain, merely as a rough guide, the following results.

Percentage of French words for each letter.

A	...	27	G	...	25	M	...	18	S	...	15
B	...	3	H	...	8	N	...	16	T	...	20
C	...	46[1]	I	...	28	O	...	12	U	...	7
D	...	29	J	...	100	P	...	80	V	...	100
E	...	43	K	...	0	Q	...	12	W	...	2
F	...	16	L	...	6	R	...	22			

Without insisting much on the accuracy of these figures, we may still see clearly that the letters under which we may most expect to

[1] Uncertain to some extent, because some words are written with initial *s*. Similarly, the percentage of the S-words is not quite clear.

find French words in fourteenth-century English are, J, V, P, C, and E; after which, probably, come D, I, A, and G. On the other hand, we may least expect to find French words under K, W, B, L, U, and H; after which, probably, come Q, O, F, N, and M. If we further take into account initial *combinations*, we may observe that SCH, SW, TH, WR, and WH are surely indicative of English origin, whilst CH is indicative of a French one.

I have little doubt that, in modern English, the percentage of French and Latin words under each letter has, in some cases, undergone a considerable change. To take an example, this is particularly the case with the letter A. Whilst the number of *English* words beginning with A remains much the same as it was, we have received a large number of additions to the *French* and *Latin* ones; the result being that the latter are now in a considerable majority. This change is due, in particular, to the very great influence of the Latin *ad* as a prefix. An investigation of this particular question is not without a certain interest, and it is of some use to the young to be told that K, W, TH, and SH, regarded as beginning a word, are essentially English, whilst J, V, P, and CH are essentially un-English. And the remark, as regards K, W, and TH, is almost equally true, in whatever part of the words those letters[1] be found. It is a good plan, with beginners, to learn the alphabet; which is not quite so easy a matter as it is commonly said to be.

[1] TH is really a *letter*, not a digraph. Add, that GH is a purely English combination, introduced into the word *delight* by a sheer blunder.

ERRATA AND ADDENDA.

P. viii. l. 14. *For* Li veillant *read* Li veillart.

P. 10, l. 240. *Dele* stop at end of line.

P. 17, l. 439. The sense of *lome* is not quite certain here. See the note and Glossary.

P. 27, l. 708. Insert a comma after *godus*.

P. 28, l. 738. 'y of reed' is the reading of the MS., as printed. Read *y-offred;* see note to the line.

P. 29, l. 774. After *schulle* insert [*wreche*]; see note to the line.

P. 30, l. 805. Insert two commas, and read:—& al is, burnus, aboute, &c.

P. 31, l. 834. The word *ne* is so in the MS.; it should rather be *no;* see note to the line.

P. 34, l. 920. The 'tenen' of the MS. should rather be 'tene'; see note to the line.

P. 35, l. 930. *For* oþur-wise *read* oþur wise; two words.

P. 37, l. 979. Insert a comma before *namkouþe*.

P. 39, l. 1042. The reading *helpe* of the MS. is certainly an error for *ȝelpe;* see note to the line.

Alexander.

How alixandre partyd þennys. [Fol. 209]

Whan þis weith at his wil · wedu*r*ing' hadde,
Ful raþe rommede he · rydi*n*ge þedirre.
To oridrace wiþ his ost · alixandre wend*us*, — Alexander comes to the Oxydraces.
þere wilde contre was wist' · & wondurful peple, 4
þat weren proued ful proude · & prys of' hem helde.
Of' bodi wente þei bar · wiþ-oute any wede, — This people go naked,
& hadde graue on þe ground · many grete cauys,
þere here wonnynge was · wyntyrus & somerus. 8
No syte nor no sur stede · soþli þei ne hadde,
But' holus holwe in þe ground · to hide*n* hem inne.
þe proude genosophistiens · were þe gom*us* called; — and live in caves. They are called the Gymnosophists.
Now is þat name to mene · þe nakid wise. 12
Wan þe kiddeste of' þe cau*us* · þat' was king' holde
Hurde tiþinge telle · & toknynge wiste,
þat alixandre wiþ his ost' · atlede þidire,
To be holden of' hem · hure hie3est' prynce, 16

Historia Alexandri magni regis macedonie de preliis;
ed. 1490; leaf *g* iii. back.

Quomodo alexander inuenit Exidraces qui dicuntur Gimnosophiste.

[E]T inde amoto exercitu venit exidraces. Exidraces siquidem homines sunt in quorum mentibus nulla superbia dominatur; vocantur itaque gimnosophiste. Non pugnant nec altricantur, et nudi ambulant; ciuitates non habent, sed in tuguriis et in speluncis montium commorantur. Cumque audisset rex huius gentis aduentum alexandri misit sibi epistolam ita continentem.

52

Their king sends a letter to Alexander,

Þanne weies of worschipe · wittie & quainte
Wiþ his lettres he let · to þe lud sende.
Þanne southte þei sone · þe forsaide prynce,
& to þe schamlese schalk · schewden hur lettres; 20

which he reads.

Þanne raþe let þe rink · reden þe sonde,
Þat newe tiþinge [tid] · it tolde in þis wise.

"The Gymnosophists greet Alexander.

"Þe gentil genosophistiens · þat goode were of witte,
To þe emperour alixandre · here answer*us* wreten, 24
Þat is worschipe of word · worþi to haue,
& is conquerour kid · in contres manie.—
Vs is sertefied, seg · as we soþ heren,

If you come to fight with us, you will get nothing by it.

Þat þou hast ment wiþ þi men · among*us* vs fare. 28
But ȝif þou, king, to us come · wiþ caire to fiȝhte,
Of us getist þou no good · gome, we þe warne.
For what richesse, rink · vs miȝht þou bi-reue
Whan no wordliche wele · is wiþ us founde? 32
We ben sengle of us silf · & semen ful bare,
Nouht welde we now · but naked we wende;

We have nothing to lose.

& þat we happili her · hauen of kynde
May no man but god · make*n* us tine. 36
Þei þou fonde wiþ þi folk · to fiȝhte wiþ us alle,
We schulle us kepe on-cauȝt · oure cau*us* wiþ-inne;
Neuere werrede we · wiþ wiȝth up-on erþe,

We shall hide in our caves."

For we ben hid in oure holis · or we harm lacche." 40
Þus saide soþli þe sonde · þat þei sente hadde;
& al so cof as þe king · kende þe sawe,

Alexander lets them know that he will come in peace.

Newe lettres he let · þe lud*us* bi-take,
& wiþ his saw*us* of soþ · he sik*u*rede hem alle, 44
Þat he wolde fare wiþ his folk · in a faire wise

"[C]Orruptibiles gimnosophiste homini Alexandro scribimus. Audiuimus quod super nos venis pugnaturus, de quo miramur non modicum, quia nihil a nobis poteris extorquere. Nam cum nihil habemus vnde corpora nostra sustentantur, quid a nobis eripies? Quod si nobiscum pugnare volueris, simplicitatem nostram nullatenus dimittemus."

Qualiter alexander scripsit gimnosophiste.

[P]Erlecta igitur, alexander epistolam misit illis dicendo quod ad

To bi-holden here hom · & non harm wirke.
So haþ þe king' to hem sente · & siþen wiþ his peple
Kair*us* cofli til hem · to kenne of' hure fare. 48
But' whan þei sien þe seg' · wiþ so manie ryde,
þei were a-grisen of' his grym · & wende gref þolie.
Faste heiede þei to holis · & hidden hem[1] þere,
& in þe cau*us* hem kepte · fro þe king' sterne. 52
þanne were*n* from hem went' · wifis & children,
Wiþ o*þur* bestus aboute · þat' hem bi ferde.
Aftur ferde alixandre · & askede hem sone,
By ludus of' þe langage · how þei leue miȝhte? 56
And ȝif' þei ne hadde none holis · on þe holw erþe,
As hadde þe weies þat' were · here wordliche mak*us*?
þanne þei caire wiþ þe king' · hur cau*us* to schewe,
& kennen þe conquerour · hur costom*us* alle, 60
& saide "seg', to us silf' · sofisen þis cau*us*,
Of' o*þur* hous þan her arne · haue we no nede."
Whan alle þei til alixandre · hadde answere i-ȝoulde,
þe king cortais i-kid · cofliche saide, 64
"For i haue founde ȝou folk · faiþful of speche
Me to lere of' ȝour lif' · with-oute les tale,
ȝernes now of' my ȝift' · þat' ȝou leue were,
& what' it' be þat' ȝe bidde · ȝour bon*us* i graunte." 68
þanne saide þei, "wordlich weiȝ · we wische of þi[2] ȝifte
Ai-lastinge lif · to lacchen up-on erþe;
þat' us derye no deþ · desire we nouþe,
For o*þur* wordliche won · at' wille we haue." 72
"Nai, sertus," saide þe noble · "þat may not' be graunted
Of' me, þat' miȝhteles am · my silf' so to kepe.

But they are afraid, and hide themselves.

[1 MS. hid lem, *an error for* hidden hem]

Their wives and children remain visible.

Alexander asks why they too do not hide in caves?

They say that they dwell in the caves too.

Alexander promises to grant them any boon whatever.

[2 MS. 'þei']

They ask for everlasting life.

He replies that he himself is but mortal.

---

eos cum pace alacriter venit et ingressus est ad eos. Alexander autem intuens illos nudos ambulare et habitare in abditis tuguriis et speluncis, filios vero et vxores separatos cum animalibus ambulantes, interrogauit eos dicens; "Non sunt sepulcra vobis?" At illi ostenderunt tuguria et speluncas in quibus habitabant, et dixerunt:—"Hic per dies singulos requiescimus." Deinde dixit Alexander, "Quid vultis petere, dabo vobis." Illi autem dixerunt, "Da nobis immortalitem, quia nihil aliud peroptamus." Quibus alexander Respondit,

I am sikur of my silf · to suffre min ende;
I ne haue no lordschipe of lif · to lengþe my daies." 76

They ask, "why then do you want to conquer the world?"

"Seg," saide þei again · "syn þou so knowist,
þat þe is demed þe deþ · to dure nouht longe,
Whi farest þou so fihtinge · folk to distroie,
& for to winne þe word · wendest so romme? 80
How miȝht þou kepe þe of sckaþe · *with* skile & *with* trouþe
Aȝeins ryht to bi-reue · rengn*us* of kingu*us*?"
þanne agayn saide þe gome · wiþ a good chere,

He says he is king by the grace of God,

"þorou þe grace of god · i gete þat .i. haue. 84
þei han demed me, or deþ · þorou dintus of miȝhte,

[1 MS. 'saide']

Of erþe to be emp*e*rour · in eueryeh a side.[1]
Sin i haue grace of þat graunt · grimmest to worþe,
I wrouthe wrecheli now · & wraþede drihte*n*, 88

and must fulfil his destiny.

ȝif i for dul of any deþ · my destene fledde,
þat is markid to me · & to no mo kingu*us*.
Men seþ wel þat þe see · seseþ & stinteþ,

[Fol. 209, back]

But whan þe wind on þe wat*ur* · þe waw*us* arereþ. 92
So wolde .i. reste me raþe · & ride ferþe,
Neuere to gete more good · no no gome derie,
Bute as þe heie heuene good*us* · wiþ herteli þouht*us*
So a-wecchen my wit · & my wil chaungen, 96

He cannot rest still anywhere.

þat .i. mai stinte no stounde · stille in o place,
þat i ne am temted ful tid · to turne me þenn*us*.

[2 MS. 'worschen']

& sin we wetin hur wil · to worchen[2] on erþe,
We mowe be soþliche isaid · hur seruaunt*us* hende. 100

Were all men wise alike,

ȝif god sente euery gome · þat goþ up-on molde
Wordliche wisdam · & wittus iliche,
Betur miȝhte no burn · be þan an o*þur*;

"Mortalis cum sim, immortalitatem nequeo exhibere." At [*ed.* Ait] illi dixerunt, "Miser, si mortalis es, quare huc et illuc discurris tot et tanta facinora committendo? Hec omnia nisi a summa prudentia gubernantur"—Alexander itaque respondit eis et dixit, "Nescitis quod mare nullatenus conturbatur, nisi cum a ventis validissimis commouetur. Uellem siquidem in pace consistere, sed habeo in me

A-pere miȝhte þe pore · to *parte* wiþ þe riche. 104
þanne ferde þe worlde as a feld · þat ful were of bestes, — all would be equal, like beasts.
Whan eueri lud liche wel · lyuede up-on erþe.
For þat enchesoun god ches · o*þur* chef kingu*us*, — But some must be kings,
þat scholde maistrus be maad · ou*ur* mene peple; 108 — and Alexander their chief.
And me is markid to be · most of alle o*þure*,
For-þi y chase to cheue · as chaunce is me demed."—

Whan þis sawe was said · þe semliche prynce
Fro þe fore-saide folk · fondes to ride. 112
þanne he far*us* to a feld · ful fair & ful large,
þat stod on an hie stede · a-stored wiþ frutus. — Alexander sees some trees,
þere sai he semliche tres · wiþ þe sonne woxe, — which bear fruit while the sun shines,
þat frut baren hem a-boue · on bow*us* ful þikke. 116
& al so sone as þe sonne · sesede to schine,
þat don[1] was þe day · fordon of þe cloudus, — [[1] MS. 'þat siȝt don']
þe tres seseden of siȝht · & sonken to gronde,
þat frek*us* miȝht no friþ · no no frut kenne. 120
As raþe as þe sonne ros · & reed gan schine,
þat his lem on þe loft · liȝht ȝaf aboute, — but disappear when it is dark.

---

spiritum, qui meo sensui tam fortiter dominatur, quod nullo modo hoc facere me permittit." Et hec dicens dimisit eos illesos.

[*A portion of the story is here omitted in the English poem; it relates to the finding of the pillars of Hercules and a nation of Amazons; to elephants in the woods of India; to a nation of bearded women; and a nation of men and women walkiny about unclothed. Then comes a description of intolerable cold and severe snowstorms, so terrible that five hundred soldiers died; there was also a great fall of rain, after which it seemed as if burning torches fell from heaven. Alexander offers sacrifices, and the storms ceuse. The story then goes on with the arrival of Alexander at the river Ganges; see l.* 137 *of our English version. The substance of ll.* 111—136 *occurs further on in the Latin, being evidently taken from the chapter I here transcribe, which begins on leaf* h 6, *back.*]

Quomodo alexander inuenit arbores que nascebantur cum sole.

[I]Nde amoto exercitu deuenit ad alium campum in quo arbores consistebant mire magnitudinis, que cum sole oriebantur et cum sole occidebant. A prima siquidem hora diei egrediebantur de sub terra et vsque ad horam sextam cressebant (*sic*) altissime. A sexta vero hora vsque ad occasum solis intantum descendebant, vt nullatenus super

þe tres spradden hure spraies · & spronngen on hizþe,
& grete grounede frut · on þe grene braunchus. 124

He sends for some of the fruit.

þan comaundede þe king · coffi to feche
Of þat freliche frut · þat þe frekus sie.[1] 128

[1 A word omitted; see l. 135.]

þanne [buskede][2] a bold knihtʼ · & to a bow stirte,
þe sote-sauerede frut · sone to pulle.

[2 MS. 'as'; see l. 117.]

The man who attempts to pluck it is slain.

But al[3] so raþe as þe rink · gan þe ris touche,
Doun fel he wiþ dul · ded in þe place;
& siþen sent was a vois · sone fro heuene,
þat non trinde þe tres · last þei taried were! 132

In each tree sat a bird,

For eueri grene growe tre · þat on þe ground sprouge
Hadde bremliche a brid · þe braunchus aloſte,
þat whan þer buskede a burn · a bow for to touche,
þei spatten sparclus of fir · & spilden him raþe. 136

that spat sparks of deadly fire.

How alixandre remewid to a flod þat is called phison.

[*A picture.* I.]

Alexander comes to the Pison,

AS sone þe king sai · þat it so ferde,
He dide him forþ to flod · þat phison is called,
þat writen is in holi wrihtʼ · & wrouhtʼ so to name.
From perlese paradis · passeþ þe stronde; 140
In cost þere þe king was · men callede hit gena,
As was þe langage of þe lond · wiþ ludus of inde.

a river of Paradise, also called the Ganges.

---

terram viderentur. Et quottidie fructus amenissimos conducebant. Has cum vidisset, Alexander precepit cuidam militi vt sibi de ipsis frondibus portaret. Ille vero, dum domini sui mandatum vellet implere, mox percussit eum spiritus malignus, et, presentibus omnibus, expirauit. Et audierunt vocem in aere dicentem, "Quicunque istis arboribus propinquus accesserit, morte velocissima morietur." Erant autem in ipso campo aues mitissime super volantes, et cum aliquis tangere vellet eas, continuo exibat ex eis ignis et eum crudeliter incendebat.

[*After this, we again turn back to leaf* g 5, *back.*]

Quomodo alexander venit ad fluuium bragmanorum, vbi habitabant yppotami, cocodrili, et serpentes.

[D]Einde amoto exercitu venit ad fluuium bragmanorum magnum,

Þere made þe mascedoni*us* king' · his men for to stinte,
And bi þe banke of' þe strem · he biggede his tent*us*.
Þanne þe mascedoni*us* me*n* · in þe men tyme 145
Bi-ȝonde phison*us* flod · saien folk rome.
For-þi bad þe bolde king' · þat' burn*us* of inde
Scholde talken hem til · & tidliche enquere 148
Þe name of' hure nac*i*on · nedli to knowe;
For miche wilnede þe weiȝht' · to witen of' here fare.
Ride miȝhte nouht' þe rink · ou*ur* þe romme stronde
For þe worm*us* þat' were · bi þe watir founde. 152
For, out'-taken .viij. wok*us* · of' al þe twelf monþe—
Þat' is soþli to saie · þe sesoun of' iuli,
And heruest' þat' hastly · aftyr him folweþ—
Dredful dragonus · drawen hem þiddire, 156
Addr*us* & ypotam*us* · & o*þur*e ille worm*us*,
& careful cocodrill*us* · þat' þe king' lette.
For skaþe of' þe scorpion*us* · askape þei ne miȝhte;
So riue romede þei · þe riuer bi-side. 160
As prest' as þe pris king' · sai his pres stinte,
Þat' he fer wiþ his folk[1] · fare ne miȝhte,
For þe bestus of' bale · þat' bi þe wat*ur* ferde,
& harm of' þe hound-fich · þat' houede þer-inne, 164
Of' þe segg*us* þat' he sai · bi-ȝonde þe side stronde
Ho dide calle ffor to come · to carpen him tille.
Whan þei hurden [h]is houp · hastiliche aftur
A lud to a litil boot' · lepus in haste, 168
And raþe to þe riche king' · romw*us* alone,
And aft*ur* of alixandre · askeþ his wille.

He sees some men beyond the river,

but cannot reach them for the serpents there.

Except in July and August,

there are dragons,

hippopotamuses,

and crocodiles there.

[1 MS. 'flok']

Alexander calls to one of the strangers to come over in a boat.

[Fol. 210]

---

vocatum gagei (*sic*); et castra metata sunt ibi. Et respicientes vltra flumen viderunt tres homines, quos iussit alexander indica lingua inquiri qui essent. At illi dixerunt, "Bragmani sumus." Desiderabat autem alexander cum eis loqui, sed ipsam latitudinem fluminis nemo poterat preterire; eo quod erant ibi yppotami multi et scorpiones agrestes et cocodrilli, qui per ipsum fluuium omni tempore discurrebant, excepto mense iulii et augusti. Cumque vidisset alexander quod nullo modo poterat ipsum fluuium transire, tristabatur valde. Statimque iussit vt nauiculam de viminibus fabricarent, et vestirent

A wel-langaged lud · let þe king sone
Aspien ful spedliche · bi speche of þe lande, 172

He asks who they are.

In what kyþ were þei kid · & what hit called were,
& ho were lord of hur land · & ledere of alle.

They say they are Brahmans, and their king is Dindimus.

"We were *in* bragmanie bred" · saide þe burn þanne,
"& dindim*us* þe dere king · our demere is holde."
"Sert*us*," saide alixandre · "þi sawe me quem*us*, 177
Me haþ longe to ȝour land · liked to wende;
Wiþ ȝou to carpe *in* þis kiþ · couaitede y ȝorne;
For miche lud*us* of ȝour lif · listned ic*h* haue." 180

Alexander gives the stranger a letter, for Dindimus.

þanne let þe lordliche king · lettres endite,
& þere-on sett*us* his sel · & siþen hem tak*us*
To þe burn on his bot · & bad him *in* haste
To þe king of hur kiþ · carien his sonde. 184
þanne whitli þe weiht · ou*ur* þe wat*ur* ster*us*,
And þe lettr*us* to his lord · led*us* ful sone.
As sone as his king say · þat sonde him yp*ro*fred,
He hit lacchus of þe lud · & lok*us* þer-inne; 188

Contents of the letter.

& ȝif ȝe lud*us* haue list · þe lettr*us* to knowe,
Tendeþ how þis tale · is titeled þer-inne.

"Alexander,

"þe kidde king alixandre · þ*a*t couþ is in erþe,
þat name haþ of noblete · & neuere ma*n* dradde, 192

son of Ammon,

þat grete god amon · in grac*i*ouce tim*us*
Bi-gat on olimpias · þe on*ur*able quene,

greets king Dindimus.

Dindim*us* þe dere king · doþ for to g*r*ete,
þat lord of bragman*us* lond · & ledere is holde, 196
& in þis same wise saiþ · & sendeþ him gon,
& til alle þat arn · aft*ur* him þare.—

We have often heard of you. You never plough,

We han, lud*us*, of ȝour lif · listned ful ofte, 199
þat michil ben ȝour maner*us* · fra*m* oþ*ur* me*n* varied.
For ȝe non erþe ne eren[1] · þat erne ȝou mizhte
Fode for to fare wiþ · as oþ*ur* folk[2] vsen.

[1 MS. oren]
[2 MS. 'flok']

---

eam de coriis animalium vt per ipsum fluuium transirent. Factum est, et intrauit in eam vnus miles, cui dedit alexander literas, vt portaret eas didimo regi Bragmanorum, continentes ita :—

[R]Ex regum et dominus dominantium Alexander filius dei

On se saile ȝe nouht · in sesoun of ȝere,
For to fihche on þe fom · or finde any praie. 204 nor fish.
But litil leue we þat · lud, i þe warne,
For-þi bi-seche y þe, seg · ȝif it soþ were, Is this true?
Send me tyþinge[1] tid · & tel me þe soþe, 207 [1 MS. 'tyinge'; see l. 240.]
þat y may witen of ȝour werk · & of ȝour wonus alle.
For ȝif men saiþ bi ȝow soþ · þe sawe þat y hirde, If so, I never heard of a more wonderful people.
Of more meruailouse men · miȝhte i nouht kenne.
ȝif y wisdam or wit · in ȝour werk finde,
þat god aloweþ ȝour lif · & likeþ ȝour dedes, 212
Y schal ȝour costomus, king · couaite to holde,
& fonde for bi[2] miȝht · ȝour fare to sinke.[3] [2 Sic; 'mi'?] [3 Sic; 'sewe'?]
For fram þe ȝouþe of my ȝer · ȝerned ich haue
Of wide werkus to wite · & wisdam lere; 216
We weren tauht in oure time · & tendide lorus, We were taught that no people are so holy that they can blame us.
Of oure doctourus dere · demed for wise,
þat non haþel vndur heuene · so holi is founde,
þat mihte a-legge any lak · our lif to reproue. 220
But for y, ludus, of ȝoure lif · swich a los hurde,
þat we discorden of dede · in many done þinguus, But you differ from us greatly.
And þat ȝour doctours dere · don ȝou to knowe
þe best lorus of lif · & lawus of wise, 224
And we ȝou praien, sire prince · prestly me sende Tell me your customs.
Alle þe lorus of ȝour lif · in lettres a-seled;
And y bi-hote ȝou her · vnharmed to leue.
For more may hit, in cas · ȝou menske þan greue; 228
Whan may hit greuen a man · þat mich good knowiþ It cannot harm

---

Amonis et regine Olimpie Didimo regi Bragmanorum gaudium. Postquam ad tantam etatem peruenimus quod inter bonum et malum potuimus discernere qualitercunque, desiderauimus repellere ignorantiam et replere sapientia mentem nostram; quia, vt nostrorum philozophorum doctrina declarat, 'Eloquentia sine sapientia nocere valet potius quam prodesse.' Hinc est quod ad aures nostras relatione plurium peruenit quod mores vestri a ceterorum nostrorum moribus sunt diuisi ita, quod nec in terra nec in mari aliquod auxilium requiratis; Aliam doctrinam quam a nostris doctoribus didicimus obseruantes. Quapropter attentius deprecamur quodque uniuersam doctrinam vestram et sapientiam nobis in vestris literis intimetis. Poteri-

any one to impart knowledge.

To carpe of þis konninge · & kenne hit' til o*þure*?
For þe wers is no weih · wis ȝif' he seme,
Þouȝ he finde o*þur* folk · folewen his dedus. 232

Take the case of a torch; its light is not lessened, though it lights others."

Of' a torche þat' is tend · tak an en-sample;
Þat' þouȝ lud*us* of þe lem · lihtede an hundred,
Hit' scholde nouht' lesen his liht' · no þe latur brenne,
While þe weke & þe waxe[1] · vn-wasteþ lasteþ. 236

[1 MS. 'waxe']

[2 MS. 'flok']

& so it' far*us* bi folk[2] · þat' fain is to teche;
Hit' wasteþ no wisdam · weihes to lere.
For-þi busiliche, burn · we bidde þe nouþe
Wiþ-oute tariginge of' time · tiþinge sende. 240
Of' þat' we ȝernen of' ȝou · ful ȝare to kenne,
To witen of' þe wisdam · þ*a*t ȝe wiþ faren."

Dindimus reads the letter,

Whan dereworþe dindim*us* · þe enditinge hurde
Of' alixandre askinge · as he write hadde, 244
Oþir lettr*us* he let' · of' hur lif' write,

and sends an answer.

& agyn to þe gome · goodliche he sente.
As cof' as hit' come was · þere þe king' dwelde,
In þis man*er*e dide þe man · þe massage arede. 248

How king dindim*us* sente lettr*us* to king alixandre.

[*A picture.* II.]

[Fol. 210, back]

"Þe dere king dindim*us* · þe doctour of' wise,
Þat' lord of' bragman*us* lond · alosed is þare,

"King Dindimus to Alexander, greeting.

To emp*e*rour alixand*re* · egrest' of' princis,
Þat' is grimmest' igrowe · and grettest' of' kingus, 252
Sendeþ lettres of' lowe · & to þe lud writes
Miche gretiþinge of' grace · & grauntinge of' ioie.—

---

mus quoque ex vestris manibus comprehendere bonitatem. Nec vestra sapientia in aliquo minuetur. Talis enim est solicitudo sapientie, qualis natura accense facule comprobatur; a qua cum plures facule ignem recipiant, nihilominus ipsa candet que facit alios coruscare.

Responsiua regis Bragmanorum missa Alexandro.

[D]Idimus Bragmanorum didascolus alexandro — Salutem; per tuarum tenorem cognouimus literarum, quod animus tuus cupit vera

Bi þi message, man · þat þou to me sentest,
Whan we sihen þi sonde · wiþ þi sel prented, 256
We kenden þi couaitise · & þat þou, king, wilnest
þe rihte-wisnesse wite · þat to a weih longus.
In þat alowe i þe, lud · þat þe lef were
þe beste lawe to lere · & lor*us* of witte; 260
For riht wisdam is worþ · al þe world riche.
For non emp*er*our on erþe · þat eu*er*e was founde,
þat wantede wisdam · his wihes to gye,
Mihte lordschipe lache · of o*þur* low peple; 264
Bute þe loweste þat liuede · his lord mihte worþe,
And wiþ him fare as a fol · þat failede his wit*us*.
Neþeles, sire noble king · y þe now warne,
To oure painede peple · in-possible hit semeþ, 268
þat ȝe oure mane*rus* mihte · mekliche endure,
Or in þe lif þat we liue · laste any while.
For oure lif & oure lawe · vnlich is to ȝoure,
And al lu*þur* bi-leue · we loþen in herte. 272
Al þe dedes þat ȝe don · discorden til oure;
For we ne grete noht þe god*us* · þat ȝe gode holden.
Of þat þou senteste, sire king · to say þe tru[t]he
Of al þe lore of our lif · wiþ-oute long dwelle, 276
Haþel, for þin hendschipe · haue vs exkused,
For we ne konne þe nouht kenne · our costom*us* alle.
þouȝh .i., lud, of our lif · lettr*us* þe sende, 279
P*r*ince, hit p*rofite*þ nouht · to preche of oure ded*us*;
ȝe ne haue no tome no time · to tende my saw*us*,
For ȝe so busiliche ben wiþ[1] · aboute þe werre.
But say þou nouht, sire king · for sake of enuie,

We have discerned your desire.

No emperor can dispense with wisdom.

Yet, I warn you,

you cannot endure our customs.

As to your request,

pray excuse us.

It profits not to tell you.

[1 *Sic*; 'wis'?]

---

scientia et sapientia perfecta informari, que omni regno meliores existunt, et nequeunt precio computari; de quo discretionem tuam non modicum commendamus. Imperator enim qui sapientiam ignorat non imperat subiectis, Sed subiecti suo dominantur imperio. Scripsisti siquidem vt vitam moresque nostros indicaremus tibi per literas seriatim; quod impossibile reputamus. Et si tibi de vita nostra aliquid scriberemus, nullatenus tamen mens tua enucleare posset saporem, eo quod mentem tuam cause bellice obtenebrarunt. Sed ne

Yet think not I grudge telling you.

þat' me were loþ of' our lif' · lud*us* to teche; 284
For as michel as y may · in minde bi-þenke,
Bi þis a-selede sonde · soþliche i telle.

We are poor Brahmans.

We, bredde breþurne in god · bragman*us* pore,
Leden clanliche our lif' · & libben as simple. 288

[1 MS. 'wolde']

We ne wilne in þis world · to welde[1] no more,

We live a simple life, in all poverty.

Bute as we simpleliche our lif' · sostaine mowe.
We ben to penance iput' · & pouerte drien; 291
We holde hit nedful to nime · þat' nouht may be wastid.
Hit' is no leue i*n* oure lawe · þ*a*t we land erie

We plough not.

Wiþ no scharpede schar · to schape þe forwes;

[2 MS. 'fled']

Ne sette solow on þe feld[2] · ne sowe none erþe,

We sow not.

In ony place of' þe plow · to plokke wiþ oxen; 296
Ne in no side of' þe se · to saile wiþ nettus,

We fish not.

Of' þe finnede fihcs · our fode to lacche.

We hunt not.

For to hauke ne hunte · haue we no leue,
Ne foure-fotede best' · ferke to kille; 300
Ne to faren in þe feld · & fonde wiþ slyhþe
For to refe þe brod · of' bridd*us* of' heuene.
& wha*n* we faren to fed · we finde no faute, 303
We han so michel at' þe mel · þ*a*t we no more wilne.
Oþir goodis to gete · giue we no tente,

We desire no dainties.

Ne oþir dainteys dere · desire we none,

[3 MS. 'vus']

þan oure mod*ur* of' mete · may vs[3] forþ bringe,
þat' we kenne*n* for kinde · & callen þe erþe. 308

The earth sustains us.

Sche vs norscheþ at' nede · & i-now sendeþ,
Wiþ-oute swet' oþ*ur* swink · swich as we hauen.
Hit' ne is no leue in our land · þ*a*t lud*us* þer-inne

---

credas quod inuidia moueamur, quantum poterimus tibi de moribus nostris duximus indicandum. nos siquidem bragmani simplicem et puram vitam deducimus; peccata non committimus, nec vltra volumus habere quam ratio nature requirit. Omnia patimur et omnia sustinemus. Id apud nos dicimus optimum, quod superfluum non probatur. Terras nostras non aramus, et ipsis semina non immittimus. Boues currui non iungimus. Retia in mari ad comprehendendum pisces non ponimus. Uenationes aliquas quadrupedum aut auium non facimus. Nihil etiam ad manducandum querimus nisi quod terra sine labore hominum producit. His etiam cibis non implemur,

Scholde more of hure mete · þan mesure take; 312 We never eat too much,
For-þi[1] sounde we be seie · & sike in no time, [1 MS. 'For-þei']
Bute helþe haue we hir · til we henne passe. and are always in health.
To god*us* pay is our peple · i*n* bett*ur* point founde,
Him to louen as hur lord · & like him to serue, 316
þan fale oþir folk ben · þat fillen hure wombe,
& nimen more þan i-now · wha*n* no ned were.
We maken no medisine · no no man p*ra*yen We make no medicine,
Wiþ ony haþelene help · to helyn oure bodius. 320 nor need any.
We han a sertaine so*m*me · a-singned of ȝerus,
Whan we schulle lese þis lif · & laste no more; We die at a fixed age.
For we mowe tell*en* our time · wha*n* þe time fallus.
For litil leng*ur*e a lud · liueþ þan an oþir; 324
But bi cominnge[2] of kynde · as heuene king dem*us*, [2 MS. *obscure;* 'co—ge,' *with* 8 *downstrokes between* o *and* g.]
We schal doute þe deþ · whan þe day fall*us*;
Bi an ordre of oure kinde · whan we holde waxen,
Whan mihte lakken our lim*us* · & lesen our hete, 328 We grow old, and then die,
We schulle for-leten oure lif · & leue þat þe soule and go to heaven.
To him þat schop vs to schap · schal fare to blisse.
For no cold þat vs comeþ · in oure kinde age,
We ne faren to no fir · our fingrus to warme; 332 We use no fire.
Of bodi hole we ben · & no bale fele.
Ay we founden to fle · flechliche lustus; We flee lusts.
We maken þorou mekenesse · alle manir þingus
þat mihte vs soile wiþ sinne · sese in a while. 336
I rede þe,[3] riche emp*er*our · ful raþe þat þou founde [3 MS. 'þat þe,' *where* þat *is superfluous.*]
To ouyr-comen enemis · þat arn þe[4] wiþ-inne; [4 MS. 'ȝe']

---

quia illicita est nobis. Nihil apud nos ventres producit. Ideo absque morbo sumus. Et dum viuimus semper fruimur corporum sanitate. Nullam facimus nobis medicinam. Nullum etiam adiutorium querimus pro nostrorum corporum sanitate. Et vno termino mortis vita nostra concluditur, quia plus altero vnus non viuit, sed secundum ordinem natiuitatis cuiuslibet mortis terminus superuenit. Ad ignem pro afflictione frigoris non sedemus. Nullum estum corpora nostra sentiunt; semper nudis corporibus ambulamus; corporis desideria non facimus. Omnia per patientiam supportamus. Omnes inimicos nostros interiores occidimus, vt exteriores nullatenus timeamus. Leuius enim capitur ciuitas quando ab interioribus et exteri-

[[1] MS. 'þei']

[Fol. 211]

For haddest þou fenked þe fon · þat in þi[1] flech dwellen,
None mihte þe now · nye wiþ-oute. 340

Thou fightest against outward foes,

But þou fihtest wiþ þi fon · þat faren þe biside,
& hem þat in þi[1] bodi ben · ay berest wiþ þe.
But if we ony enimis · wiþ-inne vs aspie, 343

we slay the foes within us.

We nolle sclepe in no sclowþe ·til we hem sclain haue;
þer-for we al ouurcomen · þat arn vs wiþ-inne,
We ne haue fere of no fon · þat faren wiþ-oute,

[[2] MS. 'do']

Ne we agayn hem to[2] go · nol no gome procre,
Ne of no haþel vndur heuene · any help seche; 348

We fear no one, and desire to conquer none.

We ne doute none douhtie · ne no dede sterne,
Ne we no wilne no win · of watur no of londe.
Wiþ trene bowus we ben · on þe body keuered,

We eat fruit and drink milk.

& vs findeþ þe frut · fode at oure nede. 352
Of mylk haue we miche whon · amongus our peple,
þat we no wante no wite · of wordliche fode.

How dindimus enditid to alixandre of here leuy[n]g.

[*A picture.* III.]

We drink of the river 'Thabeus.'

WHan we ludus in þis land · liste to drinke,
We turnen tid to flod · thabeus is called. 356
þere-of we taken a tast · what time þat vs nedeþ,
And herie þe heie god · with herte & with tounge.
What so we worchen in þis worlde · or wakes or slepe,
Or in erþeliche ese · eten oþur drinke, 360

We do all for the sake of God.

For his sake þat it sente · soþli we worchin,
To sustaine his seruantis · as him-silf likus.
We hopen haue þe lif · þat come schal her-aftur,

---

oribus impugnatur. Tu autem, imperator, cum exterioribus pugnas, vt quidem nunc porcos demones nutrias et conserues. Securi semper viuimus; in mari in terra, nullum adiutorium postulamus. Corpora nostra frondibus arborum, quarum fructibus vescimur, sunt operata. Aquam tebaliani fluminis semper bibimus et gustamus. Unum solum deum altissimum colimus, sibique assidue laudes predicamus. Uitam venturi seculi concupiscimus. Rem aliquam que vtilitati non

& derely wiþ-oute deþ · dure schal euere. 364
Tale tende we non · þat turneþ to harme,
But hit be preched for prow · & procred to goode.
We no spende no speche · but whan we speke weele;
We ne sain but soþ · & sesen by time. 368
We no recche of no ricchesse · no renoun of landus,
No catelus couaitise · comyþ at oure herte;
For þat is soþliche a sinne · þat seggus haunteþ,
& to miche mischef · many men bringeth. 372
Al we libben in loue · & loþen enuie,
& hit paieþ our peple · in pouert to libbe.
For we hit rekenen for riche · & redileche finden,
þat hit foleweþ oure folk · til þei fare hennus. 376
Ay ar we in pes · and armus forsaken,
& to no wikkede werk · woned be we fare.
þer nis no lawe in oure land · ludus to chaste,
For we no dede no don · domus to þolie. 380
We holden hit a vertu · at hom in oure lande,
Among þe men of our march · mercy vnknowe;
For we ben meved to no man · mercy to gran[t]e.
We ne gilte noht god · no no gome here, 384
Where-fore we mosten haue in minde · mercy to crye,
þat god scholde of oure gilt · for-giuen vs þe sinne
Of ony wikkede werk · þat we wroute euyre.
Ne we for sake of our sinne · no sacrifice maken 388
To oure galfule[1] god · wiþ gold nor wiþ siluer,
As ȝe dulfully don · to deuelus of paine,

We never indulge in tale-bearing.

We always speak truth.

We are not covetous.

We loathe envy.

We forsake warfare.

We shew no mercy.

We never do any sin for which we have to ask for mercy.

We do not sacrifice to devils.
[1 MS. 'galsule'; cf. l. 668.]

---

pertinet, nullatenus audire affectamus. Non multum loquimur, et cum ad loquelam prouocamur dicimus veritatem et ipsam continue predicamus. Diuitias non amamus. Inter nos nullus liuor nullaque inuidia dominatur. Nullus etiam inter nos altior vel fortior reperitur. Ex paupertate quam habemus diuites sumus, quam communiter omnes supportamus. Litem non facimus, nec arma corporalia occupamus. Pacem semper ex consuetudine retinemus. Iudicia non habemus, quia mala non facimus, vnde ad iudicium vocemur.

Una vestra lex est contraria nostre, quia misericordiam nullam facimus, eo quod nulla committimus quibus misericordiam consequi mereamur. Nullum laborem qui auaricie pertineat sustinemus,

To make hem glad of ȝoure gilt · & glose ȝou here!

We flee lusts.

Alle leccheries lust · vs loþeth to founde, 392
Or to bringe vs in brigge · for to breke spouce;
Or any mis-dede make · where-fore we miht aftur
Ben y-punched in paine · & p*a*rte [fram] blisse.

We gainsay your guilt and your false gods.

& þus we gayn-saie ȝoure gilt · & ȝour god*us* false, 396
As ȝe wolde fare by ȝoure fon · þ*a*t ȝe fals knewe.
We ben rihtful of red · & resoun alowen;
For-þi[1] ne se we no seg · sodainly deie;
For we ne liȝthe noht our lif · wiþ no luth*ur* dede, 400
Where-fore we scholde w*ith* schame · be schorted of daies.

[1 MS. 'For-þei']

We dye no cloth.

We don deie no cloþ · of diu*er*se heuys,
No i*n* no worschipful[2] wede · oure wiu*us* a-tiren, 403
Where-fore a lud mihte like · to loue*n* he*m* þe bettere,
Or þei fairere þan a-fore · [to] folk[3] miht seme;
So to hihten hem her · we holde*n* hit sinne,
To maken hem comelok*ur* corn · þan hur kynde askyþ.

[2 MS. 'worchiþ-ful']

[3 MS. 'tolk']

Our wives never paint their faces,

þere-fore þei haten to be hiht · on hed or on face 408
Wiþ ony wachinge of watur · or ony werk ell*us*,
Or fonde wiþ fals craft · hure face to enoine,
For to bliken of hur ble · þe bliþ*ur*e of chere,

nor try to look better than they are by nature.

Or hem schen*ur*e to schene · þan þei schape were 412
Of him þ*a*t lente hem hur lif · & hure lim*us* made.
For þey þat craue*n* by craft · comelok*ur* seme
þan þei ben kindeli coren · as heuene king likus,
God scholde þat him schop · schine by rihte 416
For his children he*m* to chese · þ*a*t changede his schappus.

[Fol. 211, back]

For be he burn oþ*ur* burde · þ*a*t hure bodi hihten

---

membra nostra libidini non tradimus. Adulterium non committimus, nec aliquod vicium facimus vnde ad penitentiam retrahamur. De defectibus non querimus, quia quod rectum est omnes facimus et tractamus. Subitaneam mortem non facimus, quia per sordida facta aerem non sordidamus. Aer noster nullatenus est corruptus. Nullum colorem nostris vestimentis tradimus. Femine nostre non ornantur vt placeant, cum ipsis non causa libidinis sed causa procreande sobolis commiscemus. Ipse autem nullum ornamentum querunt nisi quod eis diuina prouidentia concessit. Et quis auderet diuinum opus mutare?

Oþir-wise þan it' was · in þis word schape,
þey gayn-sain hure sauiour · þat' hem so made, 420
& ben aschamed of' his schap · & schewe*n* he*m* ell*us*.
þou douhty doutede king' · we don þe to knowe,
þat' oure bodies ne ben · in no baþ wahche. — We never use a bath.
We han while we here ben · hete of' þe sonne, 424
& vs by-dewen aday · þe dew*us* of heuene.
We ben busy of' no swink · nor no burn maken — We never labour
For to wirchen our wil · & wordliche serue.
Vs no likeþ of' no lud · lordschipe haue; 428
Non is sternere of' stat' · ne stouter þan oþir. — All are equal amongst us.
Sin we ben breþeren of' brod · brouht' i*n*to þis worde,
Alle coruen of' a king · þat' kid is in blisse,
Whi scholde any schalk · þ*a*t god schop on erþe 432
Haue maistrie of' men · more þan an-oþir?
We ne han none hous bote hol*us* · i*n* þe holou cau*us*, — We have no houses but caves.
Vndur hill*us* ful hie · to holden us inne; 435
þere comeþ no wawe of' þe wind · no wat*ur* of' þe rain*us*.
Hie boldus[1] to bulde · be we not' snelle; — [1 MS. 'holdus'; see *l.* 848.]
To legge lym oþ*ur* ston · loþ is us alle;
Vs ne likeþ no lome · in oure land vse, — We use no tools.
As oþir erþliche men · owen aboute. 440
We lin, whan us sclepe list' · lowe vnd*ur* erthe,
Al wiþ-oute any swink · of' ert[h]liche werk*us*;
Swich housinge we han · to holde out' þe wed*ures*, — Our caves keep off the weather.
& leden þerinne our lif' · þe lengþe of' our daies. 444
Whan god likeþ from lif' · lede vs to blisse,
We liggen doun in our den · þere we ded worþen.
þanne is vs g[r]ayþed no graue · in þe grounde doluen, — When we die,

---

Si quis autem naturam mutare voluerit, criminale reputamus. Balnea non facimus vt corpora nostra sanemus. Solis ardore calemus et aeris rore perfundimur. Nullam cogitationem habemus nec hominibus nec animalibus dominabimur. Crudele dicimus hominem ad seruitium premere, quia diuina dispositio sic nos liberos liberauit et creauit. Lapides in calcem non resoluimus vt nobis domos et palacia fabricemus. Uascula de terra non facimus. In fossis sine solicitudine aliqua repausamus. Nos enim tales domos habemus in qui-

We lie where we lay.

But þere we lin as we laie · whan we lif hadde. 448
Wiþ us schineþ euery schalk · in schipp*us* for to saile,

We do not go to sea.

For to winne on þe watur · wordliche fode.
For þei þat sailen on þe see · as we soþ knowen,
In gret p*eri*l ben iput · & p*eri*chen ful ofte. 452

We do not cultivate learning.

We ben lered in oure land · lore of no scole,
Ne to no sience i-set · vs silue to wisse,
þat mihte vs kenne in þis kiþ · to carpe*n* as wise,
But þat comeþ us by kinde; · we konne noht ellus. 456
We ne faren to no philozofrus · to fonde*n* hure lor*us*;
For ay longeþ þat lore · to lesinge & iangle.
Alle oure saw*us* ben simple · þat we soþ telle*n*,

We never lie.

& for to lie is us loþ · or lu*þur*ly wirche; 460
But swiche wordus of wise · we wilnen to lere,
þere nis no iargoun no iangle · ne iuggeme[n]tis falce.
Vs ne schewiþ no schalk · schamfule tacchus,
Where-wiþ we mihte mis-do · or ony man gile. 464

We dislike play and mirth.

We ne loue*n* in our land · no laik nor no mirthe;
But whanne we meue*n* our mynde · mirþe to here,

We only read romances.

We raiken to oure romaunc*us* · & reden þe storri*us*,
þat oure eldrene on erþe · or þis time wroute. 468

When the tale is a merry one,

& whan we tende*n* any tale · þat turneþ to bourde,
þat were game for a gome · or good of to lauȝe,

we are sad.

We sesen of solas · & sorwen in herte; 471
& maken mourninge of mirthe · wha*n* me*n* scholde glade.
Of o*þur* wondrus we wite*n* · *in* þis word here,

[1 MS. 'lileþ']

þat likeþ[1] us to loken on · on þe loft heie;
We sen selkouþe þing · *þat* is ta sain, heuene,

---

bus dum viuimus habitamus, et dum morimur in ipsis sepelimur. Ad negociandum maria non nauigamus. Artem huius loquendi non discimus, sed simplicitate qua fruimur que nos mentiri non sinit omnia enarramus. Philosophorum scolas non frequentamus, quorum doctrina discors est, nihilque certum aut stabile, sed super mendacia discurrunt. Ludos non amamus. Dum uero ludrica volumus exercere, nos nostra et nostrorum predecessorum facta perlegimus; et cum deberemus ridere, plangimus et turbamur. Alia vero videmus quibus corda nostra letantur. Uidemus siquidem celum stellis innumerabilibus choruscantem, solem rubicundum, cuius claritate totus mundus

þere as lem is of loft' · & lisse to gode; 476
þe sonne set' in his cours · & þe seue sterres,
And alle þat seggeus mowe sen · siþen on þe skiuus,
þat' to hure schappere hem schewen · schining' rede,
& siþen liht' fro þe loft' · to þe land caste. 480
þe side se we mow sen · set' vp-on erþe,
þat in kinde colour · a-cordeþ to purpre;
But' whan þe watur wiþ þe wind · þe wawus vp casteþ,
& þouh hit' turne any time · to tempest' of' windus, 484
Hit' ne a-wecheþ no wawe · nor no watur rereth,
As hit' amongus ȝou men · is many time founde
þat' stiue stormus of' þe wind · stiren vp þe wawus.
But' here, whan þe wind haþ · his hugeste blastus, 488
þe clere watur he bi-clipth · & closeþ hit' inne.
þer-inne soþli we sen · selcouþe kindus
Of' þe fletinge fihs · þat' in þe fom lepen.
þere maken dolfinus dine · & diuerce fihches, 492
þat' þere swimmen ful swiþe · & swangen aboute.
We han mirthe ful miche · in medus & feldus,
þere faire placus & plain · han plente of' flourus,
þat' sote sauouron til us; · & wiþ þe siht' clene 496
We ben as fulsom i-founde · as þouȝ we fed were.
Vs is likful and lef' · in landus to walke,
þere won walleþ of' watur · in þe welle-springus.
Miche wilne we wende · in þe wodus thikke, 500
For to rome vndur ris · þat' rif' is of' leuus;
þere we mowe graspen on þe grene · & gret' icie here
Of brem briddene song' · [in] þe braunchus a-lofte.
þis is oure costom of' kinde · þat' we kyþen alle, 504
& deliten in no dede · þat' doþ men to sinne.
Sire emperour alixandre · þis arn oure lawes,

We observe the sun and the seven stars,

the wide and purple sea,

which has no waves.

We see therein dolphins and other fish.

We can feed on the scent of flowers.

We love the woods,

and the songs of birds.

These are our customs.

---

splendet et calet. Mare purpureum semper videmus; Et quando tempestate moueter non dissipat vicinam terram, sicut accidit in partibus vestris. Illud vt sororem amplectimur et congirat (*sic*), et ibi varia genera piscium contemplamur. Delectamur etiam videre florigeros campos ex quibus in nostros nares suauissimus odor intrat. Delectamur etiam in optimis locis siluarum et fontium in quibus iocundissimas

Boþe oure reule & our riht · þat we þe rede holde.
ȝif þou our lif wole alowe · & oure lawe vse, 508
Hit schal þe profite, prince · whan þi[1] pres faileþ.
Hit is noht long in[2] us, lud · þei hit loþ seme,
For y haue sent þe my sonde · as þou þei-self bade.
But be þou nouht, bolde king · balful no tened, 512
þat þou miht trystli trye · þe treweste lawe.
For we schulle minnge þe, man · swiche manⁿer lorus,
þat þou miht lihtliche, lud · þe beste lawe kenne.
Whan þou hit wisliche wost · wilne hit in herte, 516
& lowe þi lordschipe · & þi lif mende.
Asie & aufrik · & europ þe grete
þou hast lowed to þe, lud · in a litil while.
þe lem of þe sonne-liht · þou lettest to schine, 520
So brem bringest þou þi men · alle in bryht armus;
& þe guldene ger · þat þi gomus vsen
Wiþ þe blasinge ble · blenden þe sonne.
þou hast robbed wiþ þi rout · ij. riche strondus, 524
þere þe grauel of þe ground · was of gold ore.
þat on was called erenus · & þat oþur large
þe peple callede paccolus · þat þou pore madest;
So fale folewen þe folk · to fonde þi heste, 528
þat with hure drinkinke drawht · whan þei drie þirsten,
ȝe maken stinte of his strem · a stronde ful huge,
þat nilus þe noble flod · namned is wide. 531
So miche holdest þou þe, man · of miht & of strenke,
þat þou miht ouur oxian · wiþ þin ost saile.
So wis wenst þou þe be · þat þou by wit mihtest

[1] MS. 'þei'.
[Fol. 212]
[2] *Sic.* Read 'of' (?)
Be not angry.
Mend thy life.
Thou preventest the sun from shining by thine armies.
Thou hast robbed two streams of gold.
Thine armies drink up the Nile.

auium audimus cantilenas. Istas siquidem naturas et consuetudines obtinemus, quas si tenere volueris, tibi vident asperum et amarum. Si autem eas obtinere nolueris et imitari, nobis aliam imponere non valebis, quia secundum tenorem tue epistole actus nostros et doctrinam tibi per presentem mittimus. Uolumus autem tibi de tua natura paululum enarrare, quia vita tua nobis dura esse videtur. Tu asyam Affricam et Europam paruo tempore te dicis concludere. Tu lumen solis facis deficere dum cursus sui terminos armatorum rabie postulas. Tu pactoli et herimi fluuios splendentes auro arentes et absque colore et pauperes reddidisti. Tu bibendo nilum fluuium minuisti; tu mon-

Þorou þi maistrie miche · make*n* to sclepe — Thou makest Cerberus to sleep.
Tricerber*us* þe helle-hound · þ*at* holden is kene 536
Boþe wakrong' & wikke · & wardain of' paine.
Ȝe no fonde no fast' · but fillen ȝoure wombis, — Ye never fast.
Eten eu*ere* whan ȝe list · & in ese libben.
Vn-kinde kiþe ȝe ȝou · to kille ȝour children, 540 — Ye sacrifice your children.
To queme quedfulle god*us* · þ*at* quenchen ȝour blisse;
& to ȝoure souorain of' sinne · sacrifice maken
Wiþ þat' vnblisful blod · þat' þei bled hauen.
Miche maugre ȝe make*n* · among' many kingus, 544 — Ye make war ever.
& gret' werre i*n* þis world · to waste þe peple.
Many men vp-on molde · ful mek & ful simple
Þorou þe, p*r*ouede p*r*ince · ful proude ben woxe.
Ȝe wene winne noht' i-now · on þis worde one, 548 — Ye cannot have enough.
But ȝif' ȝe heuene miht haue · & holde*n* hit' alse.
Michel gilte ȝe, gome · bi ȝour god*us* falce, — Your gods used to work all evil.
As þei were woned i*n* þis word · to wirche*n* i*n* hure liue.
For ensample, bi my sawe · soþ mow ȝe fonge 552
Of iubit*er* þe ioilese · iugged to paine.
He was alosed in his lif · lecho*u*rus of' kinde, — Jupiter was lecherous.
þat' in his licam*us* lust' · as a lie brente.
He hadde, while he here was · to hordom i-eged 556
Gret won in þis word · of' wommen aliue.
For-þi[1] ȝe holde him a god · þat' in helle leng*us*, — [1 MS. 'Forþei']
& þat' sorwful sinne · for his sake vsen.
Y prove hit' by p*r*oserpine · þat' ȝe praisen alle, 560 — Proserpine was equally wicked.
& holden godesse god · to gien ȝou here;
Hure was lecherie luf' · þe while hue liuede alse,

---

strasti vt horribile mare nauigaretur; tu tartareum custodem, id est canem cerberum supra posse precio confirmasti; tu in sacrificio tuo filios occidis tuos; tu inter homines humiles semper discordiam seminas. Suades hominibus vt nequaquam spacia terrarum sufficiant, sed celorum querere habitacula preparata. Per dies tuos multa committis vt illi faciunt, et fecerunt. Nam testimonium potest accipi a ioue deo tuo et proserpina dea tua quos colis. Iupiter enim multas adulteratus est feminas; Prosperina vero multos fecit sui adulterii perticipes (*sic*). Miserrime ergo colis deos tuos et aduersos et adulteros.

& many lud by hure lay · hur lust to ful-fille.
[1 MS. 'hure'] Many men vp-on molde · made hue[1] by slithe 564
To haunte hure in hordom · hur hole lif-time.
Ye imitate her. Of hure tenful tach · ȝe taken ensample,
& ay wilne*n* hire wone · in werk*us* to fonde!

How he sparep not alixandre, to telle him of his gou*er*nance.

[*A picture.* IV.]

Ye are all unjust. Alle ȝe vsen vnrith · and aftur þ*at* wirchen; 568
ȝe ben luþ*ur* of ȝour lif · & law*us* ȝe chaunge.
Of more make ȝe auaunt · þan ȝe mow forþen;
Ye esteem flatterers. Wis holde ȝe no whi · but ȝif he wel conne
Faire tempren his tounge · his tale to schew. 572
Miche matere of wit · minegeþ ȝour tounge;
But bet*ur*e holde y a burn · þat bereþ him al stille.
ȝe ged*ur*en ȝou gret won · of gol & of siluer,
Ye like to have many servants. & miche lik*us* ȝou lache · lordliche holde*us*, 576
& siþen many seruantis · ȝou-silue to abowe,
To be ket*ur*e y-kid · þan any kouþ peple.
& ȝit y liue þat ȝe liue · þorou lasse fode
þan oþ*ur* segg*us* þat semen · simple [in] mirthe. 580
Of richesse & of renoun · romme be ȝe kidde,
& ben baldere y-wist · þan any burn elles;
We surpass you in all things. But oure kinde konninge · ȝou ou*ur*-comeþ nouþe
In alle ded*us* þat ȝe don · in ȝoure daies time. 584
We witen, weies, ful wel · þat ȝe were alle

Nec permittis homines in sua viuere libertate, sed illos in seruitutem redigis et retorques. Recta iudicia minime iudicas. Leges indicis commutari. Bona dicis, et ipsa nullatenus imitaris nec operaris. Neminem reputas sapientem nisi loquendi habebat facundiam. Omnem sensum in lingua tua habes, et tota sapientia in ore tuo consistit. Aurum diligis, domos maximas construis, et habere peroptas copiam seruitorum. Intantum manducas et bibis, quod stomachus nimia perturbatione concussus in varias egritudines commutatur, et sic ante tempus mortis periculum sustentas. Omnia vis tenere, deinde omnia tenent te vt seruum. Sola Bragmanorum scientia vniuerse sapientie

Bremliché y-brouht' forþ · & bred of' þat' modur
þat' is stable to stonde · & ston*us* engendreþ, — Ye are but earth-born.
And þe erþe is called · þat' euery man helpeþ. 588 [Fol. 212, back]
Whan god demeþ 3ou deie · 3our daies to tine,
Grau*us* of' gret' prys · 3e grayþe 3ou tille— — Ye build fine tombs.
& but' hit' fair be & fin · folie 3e holden—
To legge in 3our licam · þat' lodlich[1] is founde. 592 [1 MS. 'bodilech']
& so 3our bodies 3e buren · þat' bett*ur* riht' hadde
In rouh erþe to be reke · to roten hure bon*us*.
And by þe dede*us* that men don · to þe dede bodies,
Lud*us* keneþ huo hem loue*n* · to hure liu*us* ende. 596
We, for loue of' þe lord · þat' we leue*n* inne, — We, for love of God,
None bestus i-boren · balfulli kille, — kill no beasts,
Ne no tidi a-tir · in templ*us* a-raie,
No figure of' fin gold · fourme þer-inne; 600 nor carve idols.
Where-fore þe heie heuene god · heren us scholde,
Whan any burn to him bad · [h]is bone graunte.[2] — [2 MS. 'graunde'; see l. 764.]
But 3e,[3] folliche folk · 3our fals god*us* alle — [3 MS. 'so']
Wil-fully worschipen · wiþ wordliche god*us*, 604 Ye worship your gods,
For þei scholde hasteli 3ou here · & 3ou help kiþe,
Whan 3e greden 3our grace · to graunte 3our wille,
Whan 3e for sake of' 3oure sinne · sacrifice maken, — and sacrifice to devils.
& quellen any quik best' · to queme þe deuel*us*. 608
3e ne vnd*ur*stonde nouht' þat stounde · þe storie of þis word*us*,
þat' god hereþ no gome · but' for his goode ded*us*, — God hears not man because of sacrifices.
& for no bestene blod · þat' any burn quelleþ,
Noþir of' kide, noþ*ur* of' calf · noþ*ur* of kild oxe. 612

---

tue dominatur. Quia si bene consideramus, illa mater te genuit que lapides et arbores procreauit. Tu ornas sepulcra tua et in vasa gemmea puluerem tui corporis collocas et recondis. Quid peius esse potest quam ossa que terra recipere debet, non sinis ipsam terram de corpore recipere alimentum? Nos autem in honore deorum pecudes non occidimus, templa non construimus vbi statuas aureas vel argenteas erigamus. Tu solem legem habeas vt de omnibus bonis tuis immolationem facias vt exaudiant preces tuas. Nonne intelligis quod deus non precio nec sanguine vitulorum nec arietis aut hirci, sed

But he hereþ euery haþel · þat hertely biddeþ,
& wiþ mekenesse of minde · minegeþ his nede.

[1 MS. 'wordliche'; see l. 621.]

God's Word is the Son of Man.

Godus worþliche[1] word · as we wel trowen,
Is sone soþliche of man · þat in him-silf dwelleþ, 616
By which molde is y-maad · & man vp-on erþe,
& al þat weihes in þis word · scholde wiþ fare;
Al bestus þer-by · þat lif bere mowe,

All are sustained by Him.

Ben soþliche i-sustained · as him-silf likus; 620
þat ilke worþliche word · we worschipen alle,
& hit lelliche louen · as our lif likus.

God is a Spirit.

God is spedful in speche · & a spryt clene,
Boþe blessed & blyþe · þat blendeþ alle sorwe. 624
He clameþ nouht but clennesse · & clepeþ to [h]is ioie
Clene-mindede men · þat meke ben founde.

Ye are all fools,

Where-fore we holde ȝou folk · folus echone,
þat ȝe ne leuen in þat lord · þat lengeþ in blisse, 628
& lede clanly ȝour lif · & no luþur wirche,
As ȝe haþ of us herd · holly þe dedus.

and live in lust.

But ȝe in lechoures lust · al ȝour lif spende,
And serue sory idolus · þat ȝou in sinne brynge. 632
Wiþ oþur folies fale · ȝe foulen ȝour soulen;

After death ye will suffer pain.

& so ȝe duren in ȝour dede · til ȝe ded worþeþ.
þanne schulle ȝe[2] for ȝour sinne · soffre paine,
For ȝe[3] unclene bi cleped · & cleuen in ȝour sinne. 636
þere may ȝow borewen of bale · no bost nor no pride,
No no god þat ȝe giuen · to ȝour godus falce,

No sacrifice of beasts will help you.

No no sory sacrifice · þat ȝe so maken
Wiþ any bestene blod · þat euire burn schadde. 640

[2 MS. 'scluile we']
[3 MS. 'we']

---

propter bona opera et orationis eloquium moueatur? Ex eo audit deus hominem propter verbum, quia ex verbo deo similes efficimur; deus verbum est, et ex hoc verbo omnia viuunt permanent et consistunt; nos hoc verbum semper amamus et hoc etiam veneramur. Qua propter reputamus te nimium infelicem, quia credis naturam deorum vel cum diis communicationem habere, cum ad deum fornicatione et idolorum seruitute quottidie sordides; cum hec facis, hec amas, et post mortem inde tormenta innumerabilia sustinebis. Nos vero contraria facimus et amamus, vt post mortem diuina gloria potiamur. Tu non seruis

ȝe ne herien nouht' herteli · þe heie god alone,
þat' heuene holdeþ & haþ · to his hole regne,
But' al so fale falce god*us* · ȝe fonden to queme
As a burn bereþ now · *in* his body membrys. 644
For ȝe liknen a lud · to a litil wordle,
& this sawe ȝe sain · soþliche echone,
þat', al so many as a man · haþ membrys y-schape,
Him falleþ al so fale god*us* · faiþfuly herie; 648
& so ȝe sacrifice don · to selkouþe fendus!
For euery lime þat' a lud · longeþ to haue,
ȝe kyþen carefule god*us* · & kallen hem nowþe,
Aftur dedeus þat þei dede · diu*er*se names. 652
Michel holde ȝe of' miht' · min*er*ua þe falce,
For hue[1] foundede first' · folies manye;
& þis is, segg*us*, ȝour sawe · as ȝe sain alle.
Hue was engendred wiþ gin · of' iubit*er*us hede; 656
For-þi[2] ȝe holden hure wis · & hollyche segge,
þat' hue þe hilþe of' þe heed · haþ for to kepe.
þe iaudewin iubit*er* · ioiful ȝe holde;
For he was wraþful i-wrouht' · & wried i*n* angur, 660
Gom*us* holden him god · þat' gieþ þe herte;
For þere ariseþ in a rink · þe rotus of' wraþþe.
A god mihtful of' main · martis ȝe holden;
For he was fihtere fel · & found*ur* of' werre, 664
He is alosed in lande · lord of' þe breste;
For þere þe miht' of' a man · most' is i-sene.
For mercurie miche spak · to mentaine iangle,
ȝe holden him galful & god · & god of' þe tounge. 668
For hercul*es* þe endelese · þat' euere is in paine,
Diuisede here on his day · a dosain of' wondrus,

Ye have as many false gods as a man has limbs.

Every limb is dedicated to some god.

[1 MS. 'he'; *see* l. 656.]

Minerva sprang out of Jupiter's *head*,

[2 MS. 'For-þei']

and therefore guards the *head*.

Jupiter was wrathful, and guards the seat of wrath, the *heart*.

Mars is lord of the *breast*.

Mercury is god of the *tongue*;

Hercules, with his dozen of wonders,

---

vni deo, qui regnat in celo, sed plurimis diis. Tot deos colis quot in tuo corpore membra portas. Nam hominem dicis paruum mundum; et sicut corpus hominis habet multa membra, ita et in celo dicis multos deos existere. Iunonem [*lege* Iouem] credis esse deum cordis, eo quod iracundia nimia mouebatur. Martem vero deum pectoris esse dicis, eo quod princeps extitit preliorum. Mercurium deum lingue vocas, ex eo quod plurimum loquebatur; herculem deum credis bra-

þat ȝe a-uowen verraie · & vertu*us* holden,
þat a man moste do · wiþ mihte of his arm*us*, 672
A god holde ȝe him · helplich of grace,
presides over the arms. þat haþ ȝour arm*us* to ȝeme · & may ȝou ȝiue strenke.
Bacchus the drunkard, For bacus þe bollere · þat ȝe abowen alle,
Englaymed was in glotenye · & glad to be drounke, 676
over the throat. ȝe callen him kep*e*re of þe þrote · & kinde god holden,
[Fol. 213] & wis witiere of win · þat alle won bryng*us*.
Of Cupid, ye say Cupid*us* þe corsede · þat is in care punched,
ȝe worchen al worschipe · & in þis wise tellen— 680.

How he telleþ alixandre of his maumentrie.

[*A picture.* V.]

that he loved lechery, Þat, for he leccherie louede · in his lift-time,
And þat folie fur · foundede on erthe,
A bryht brenninge brond · he bereþ on his hondis,
And alle lech*u*rus lust · of þe le*m* tendeþ. 684
And so ȝe sain þat he is · a soþ god iproued,
and presides over the stomach. þat haþ þe stomak in stat · stifly to kepe;
For þere þe hete that men han · is holden wiþ-inne,
þat enforceþ þe flech · folie to wirche! 688
Ceres, over the womb. Also, segg*us*, ȝe sain · þat ceres þe falce
Is a goodesse god · & gieþ þe wombe;
For hue tilede in hur time · on þe touh erþe,
& whete soþliche sew · or any segg*us* ell*us*. 692
Venus, over the privy members. Ful verrai of vertue · ven*us* ȝe holden;
& for hue lady was alosed · of leccherouse dede*us*,
ȝe holden hure a goodesse god · þ*a*t haþ for to kepe
[[1] MS. 'He proueþ'] þe preuey[1] membr*us* of a man · þat marke is of kin*gus*.
Juno can Iuno þe ioilese · ȝe iuggen for noble; 697

---

chiorum eo quod duodecim virtutes exercuit preliando. Bachum deum gutturis esse putas, eo quod ebrietatem primus inuenit; cupidinem esse deam (*sic*) dicis, eo quod fornicatrix extitit; tenere dicis facem ardentem cum qua libidinem exitat (*sic*) et ascendit [*lege* accendit], et ipsam deam iecoris existimas. Cererem deam ventris esse dicis; et venerem, eo quod fuit mater luxurie, deam genitalium membrorum

& wei-hu*us* sain *þat* he witeþ · *in* his worde one, — foretell things to come.
A spild spirit of þe air · þat may speke wondr*us*,
& telle what bi-tide schal · of tene o*þur* of welþe. 700
ȝe leuen alle in appolin · & also ȝe tellen — Apollo, who practised medicine and minstrelsy, is god of the *hands*.
Þat, for he medisine made · & minst*ralus* craftus,
ȝe holde hin giour ful good · & god of þe hand*us*.
So þer leueþ no lime · lasse no more, 704
Þat in ȝour power is put · but *parted* to fendus.
ȝe ne leuen not on a lord · *þat* leng*us* in heuene,
Þat al þe membr*us* of a man · made at his wille.
And þouȝ ȝe falce god*us* folk · founde*n* to serue, 708 Your false gods only grieve you.
Þei ne graunte no grace · but greue*n* ȝou ofte,
& taken of ȝou *tribit* · *þat* traie is to paie,
Of ȝoure offring*us* alle · ofte in þe ȝere.
To martis þe mithtelese · men ofren in time 712 To Mars, ye offer a boar;
A gret bor & a bold · as burn*us* han vsed.
To bacus þe balful · men bringe*n* in temple — To Bacchus, a kid;
A kide, as is costum · of comine peple.
A fair pokok of pris · men paien to iuno, 716 To Juno, a peacock;
& him wirchen þer-wiþ · worschipe vn erthe.
Þe offrin of appolin · as ȝe alle knowe, — To Apollo, a white swan;
Ys a swan swiþe whit · swich as ȝe bryngen.
ȝe schullen bi ordre of vse[1] · offren to ven*us*,[2] 720 [1 MS. 'of on vse'] [2 MS. 'vectus']
A ful derworþe douue · on his den take. — To Venus, a dove;
Minerua men worschipe*n* · in o*þur* man*er* alse, — To Minerva, a bat;
& bringe*n* hure a niht-brid · a bakke or an oule.
To ceres þe sorwful · ȝe sacrifice maken, 724 To Ceres, corn;
& carien bi costu*m* · corn to hure temple.
ȝe mensken alle mercurie[3] · wiþ mirthe & wiþ ioie, [3 MS. 'mercurie']
& him a chalis ful chois · wiþ good chere bringen. — To Mercury, a cup.

---

esse profers. Totum siquidem corpus hominis in deos diuidis, nullam in te particulam reseruando. Nec credis quod vnus deus qui est in celo corpus tuum creauerit. Deos colis alienos qui te in seruitutem redigunt, Et ipsis offers tributa. Marti enim offers aprum, Bacho hircum, Iunoni pauonem, Ioui thaurum, Appollini agnum, Ueneri columbam, Minerue noctuam, Cereri farra, Mercurio mella, Altaria herculi ex frondibus arborum plurimum coronata. Templum

Ye put boughs on Hercules' altar;

þe hauter of þe he[r]cul*es* · alle ȝe hihten, 728
& hit spreden wiþ spraiu*us* · of springinge braunch*us*.

and flowers on Cupid's.

Cupies þe corsed · wiþ comeliche flourus
ȝe herien ful hertely · & hihte*n* [h]is temple.
þus manye mihteles god*us* · & mo þan y telle, 732
For þe hope of hur help · ȝe herien on erþe.

Ye cannot serve them all at once.

& ȝit may þer no man · in any man*er* wise
Wiþ solepne sacrifice · serue hem at on*us*,
But eueri wile of a wehy · his owene wone haue, 736
Be it bole o*þur* bor · betur o*þur* werse.
Of swiche bestus þat ben · of burn*us* y of reed,
þei han miht vp-on molde · & of no mo þingus. 739

Why do ye believe in false gods?

Whi fau*ure* ȝe þanne falce god*us* · & folliche seggen
þat þei han power of peple · þat pacen on molde,
Whan þei ne han miht of no mor · nor no maist*rie on* erþe,
But of hur owne offringe · & onliche of bestes?

For your sins,

For ȝour errours on erthe · sire emp*er*our riche, 744
& for þe ded*us* vn-dingne · þ*at* ȝe don alle,

[[1] MS. 'worþei']

As ȝe ben worþi[1] of wo · whan þe word fail*us*,

ye shall be punished.

ȝe schulle be punched & put · in paine for eu*ere*!
ȝour god*us* ful of gile ben · þat ȝe so good holden, 748
On hem is help of non harm · no hap of no grace,

Your gods are butchers.

But bochours ben þei echon · ȝour body to dism*em*bre,
& euerich pinche*n* his part · þere paine is vnended.
As many mihtelese god*us* · as ȝe on molde seruen, 752

[Fol. 212, back]

As fale pain*us* in fir · ȝou fall*us* to drie.

Your idols make you sin.

For ȝour ydil idol*us* · don ȝou ille wirche;
Su*m*me to lechorus lust · ȝour likinge t*ur*neþ, 755
Su*m*me ȝou strenkþe*n* to st*r*iue · & straiten ȝour minde,
& so*m*me egge*n* in ese · to eten & to drinke.
þei by-sette ȝou so · in sinne & in gile,

---

cupidinis rosis et floribus siue frondibus ornas. Totam potestatem tuam ponis in illis, et non est in corpore tuo membrum quod illis non attribuas. Reuera non deos quos vocas adiutores, sed carnifices sunt vocandi; quoniam membra tua diuersis tormentis affligunt. Oportet enim vt tot tormenta subeas quot deos seu deorum culturas agis. Unus deus instruit te fornicari, alter bibere, alter

þat' ȝe wirchen hur wil · & worchipen alle. — Ye work their will.
&, seggus, for ȝe so don · ȝe semen vn-wise, 760
Hem to seruen in sinne · þat' mowe no seg' helpe. — Ye serve them by sin.
þei beþ vn-mihtful y-mad · men for to wisse,
And kun not saue hem-self' · fro sorwful painus.
Whan ȝe hem greden of' griþ · to graunte ȝour bone, 764
Wheþur hey hit heren or nouht' · to harme hit' ȝou turnus.
Whan ȝe hem praiere profre · ȝif' þey prest' heren, — When ye pray, they harm you.
þei casten in ȝoure consience · corsede þouhtous.
And, ludus, ȝif' hem loþ be · to listne ȝoure bonus, 768
Hit' ȝou norcheþ any · for thei ȝou nouht' heren.
So wheþur þei graunte hit' or gruche · þei greuen ȝou ofte, — Whether they hear you or not, ye suffer.
For eueri time hit' ȝou turneþ · to tene & to harme.
þo ben ȝoure gostliche godous · þat' gon to do wreche 772
Aftur ludene lif' · for hure luþur werkus.
For þei schulle in þis word · wirche for sinne,
Whan þat' burnus ar bured · þat' balfully wrouthe
Tokne of' þat' turment' · tolde ȝoure eldren, 776 — Your elders spake of torment to come.
How wreche scholde ben wrouht · for wrongful dedes,
& dul aftur þe deþ · ȝour doctourus saide,
þat' seggus scholde for sinne · suffre in þis worde;
& ȝe ben soþli þe same · of' wham þei so tolde, 780
þat' scholde lenge aftur lif · in lastinge paine. — Ye shall dwell in endless torment.
For ȝif' ȝe seggus ȝou[r] lif' · soþli bi-þenke,
Wers wirchen no folk · þan ȝe weiȝes alle.
For sake of' ȝoure sauyour · ȝe ne soffre no paine, 784
But' liuen in ȝoure likinge · & luþurli wirchen;

---

litigare. Omnes tibi imperant, et omnibus obedis; quia mala facis et non vis a malo vllatenus respicere. Igitur talis diis seruis qui mala facere hortantur. Si exaudierint te dii tui, mala tibi euenient, quia de malo rogas eos. Si vero non exaudierint te, tuis desideriis obuiabunt. Ergo si te exaudierint vel non, semper tibi inferunt detrimentum. Tales sunt dee tue que furie nuncupantur, que et peccata hominum per furorem post mortem vindicant. Hec sunt tormenta tua que tibi doctores tui dixerunt, que te velut mortuum cruciant et tormentant. Quot si vis recte considerare, nil peius quis sustinere valet quam tu sustines; quecunque enim signa doctores tui apud inferos esse dixerunt, certissime cognoscuntur pene tue in in-

ȝe waken for wikkednesse · & wirchen but' ille.

Ye commit murder, ȝe speden for to spille men · & spouce-breche fonden;

adultery, ȝou is lechurie luf' · & liben wiþ stalþe, 788

and theft. To robbe men of' hure riht' · ful redy ben alle.

ȝe ben glotounius gle · glad for to haunte,

& han no mesure on molde · of' mete ne of' drynke.

ȝe ben to þe helle-hond · holliche i-like, 792

Ye are like Cerberus. Tri-ce[r]berus þe tenful · of' wham i tolde haue;

Foure hedus ben on him · þat' haþ but' on wombe.

& so it' fareþ by ȝou folk · þat fillen ȝou-siluen;

For alle þe godus þat' ȝe geten · of' gomus vp-on erþe 796

Seruen for to sustaine · ȝour vnsely wombe.

There is an adder in hell called Hydra, Also ȝoure doctorus sain · in sawus ful olde,

þat' an addre is in helle · þat yydra is called,

To cache is couaitous · corsede soulus; 800

never glutted. & fonde he fewe oþur fale · ful is he neuere.

Ye are like him. þanne mow ȝe ludus of lif · be likned him tille;

For ȝe ben couaitouse kid · & kunne nouht' blinne,

But' euere wenden to winne · wordliche godus, 804

& al is burnus aboute · ȝour body for to fede.

[1 MS. 'sain'] Alle þe foliius, folk · þat' ȝe fain[1] wirchen,

Ben purchas of' penance · whan ȝe parte hennus.

[2 MS. 'panne'] To bale were ȝe þanne[2] bore · for bannede werkus, 808

Ye were born to sorrow." þat' schullen schamly be schent' · & schapen to paine.

þus dindimus þe dere king' · enditeþ his sonde,

& god by-secheþ to saue · þe souerainе prinse."—

When Alexander heard this, Whan emperour alixandre · wiþ erene hit' hirde, 812

& tendede þe tiþinge · þat' y told haue,

he was wroth. He was wroþ, for þe writ' · of' wrong' gan a-lose

His godus þat' he held · to gyen þe peple.

---

ferno. Tu enim vigilans penas paris, vtpote [*ed.* vtpute] furta, fornicationes, et adulteria que committis. Dicunt enim quod in inferno semper sitiunt habitantes et minime possunt satiari. Et tu tantam habens cupidinem acquirendi vt nunquam possis diuitiis recreari, Deinde omnia que in inferno esse dixerunt in te sine dubio commorantur. Heu ibi misero, qui debes post mortem tuam innumerabilia tormenta substinere! — Relata epistola Alexandro, iratus

But nouþeles anon riht · anied in his herte, 816 Being annoyed,
Sone sente he again · his sel & his lettrus. he sends a letter back.
Wiþ-oute tariynge tid · þis tiþingus come
To dindimus þe dere king · þat þe dite radde.
Now liþus, ȝe þat listene wele · þe lettrus to þe ende, Hear it!
For þus redely þe rink · a-radde þe sonde. 821

How alixandre sente answere to dindimus by letter.

[*A picture.* VI.]

"ÞE aþel king alixandre · of armus alosed, "Alexander,
þat noble is & name-kouþ · & neuere man dradde,
þat grete god amon · in graciouse timus 824 son of Ammon,
By-gat on olimpias · þe onorable quene,
Ful derely to dindimus · enditeþ his sonde, to Dindimus,
& his sawe to the seg · saiþ in þis wise.— 827 greeting.
ȝif alle þe lorus þat þou, lud · in lettrus me sentest If all is true,
Ben trewe to be trowen on · & trysty to leue, ye are very good men.
þanne be ye sykur[1] to be saf · for sake of ȝoure werkus. [1 MS. 'sykur']
For ȝe ben burnus of lif · best vp-on erþe,
ȝif ȝe nouht wirche but wel · in þis word here; 832 [Fol. 214]
Hit comeþ ȝou bi custum · so clanly to libbe.
Whi deme þanne þat we don · ne dede vp-on erþe Why deem ye that we sin?
But sinne þat is sorwful · ours soule to spille?
Whi seye ȝe seggus also · þat sinne ȝe holden 836
Any werkus to wirche · of wordliche craftus?
Whi be ȝe, ludus, so lef · to lakke þe werkus Why blame the works of man?

---

est valde propter deorum iniuriam, et continuo scripsit ei hoc modo.

Responsio Alexandri ad regem Bragmanorum.

[R]Ex regum et dominus dominantium Alexander filius dei Hamonis et regine olimpie dindimo salutem. Si omnia in vobis reperiuntur que nobis vestris literis intimasti, soli potestis homines nuncupari, qui, vt dicitis, nulla facinora perpetratis. Sed pro certo sciatis quod huiusmodi vitam non ex virtute sed ex consuetudine obtinetis, quia secundum consuetudinem aut dicitis vos deos esse aut inui-

þat' man-kinde haþ y-mad · on molde to be vsed?
ȝif' hit' be soþ þat' ȝe sain · hit' semeþ, by ȝoure dedes, 840
þat' ȝe no giuen of' no gome · no none godus trowe,
Ye are envious. Or ȝe en[u]ye to hem han · & hatien hur sondus,
For to libbe in ȝour land · as ludus aboute.
Many wondurful wonus · wisli we knowen, 844
þat' ȝe amongus ȝou men · in ȝour march vsen.
Ye say that ye plough not, ȝe telle vs þat ȝe tende nauht' · to tulye þe erþe,
Ne place erie wiþ plow · no plaunte winus,
nor build. Ne bulde boldus an hih · for burnus to wonye, 848
Ne non erthely note · nedfully wirchen.
In þat' þou leredest' me, lud · þat ȝe no land erien,
Ye have no iron. ȝe ben exkused echon · for iren ȝou wantus,
Where-wiþ mihte ȝe men · maken any boldus, 852
Or tren plaunten in place · or any plow dryue.
Ye have no tools. Whan ȝe mow take no tol · to tilien on erþe,
No swiche werkus to swinke · as oþur swainus vsen,
Ye must live hard. For-þi bi-houus ȝou, haþel · harde to libbe, 856
& wo drie in þis word · for wante & for nede!
So mowe ȝe, ludus, ȝour lif' · leden as bestus,
In gret' mischef' of mete · as ȝe mote nede.
A hungry wolf must eat earth. ȝe witen wel, whan a wolf' · wanteþ [h]is fode, 860
þat' he ne fundeþ no flech · to feden him vppe,
Of' þe erþe he et' · for ellus he scholde
Be wiþ hungur y-holde · & happily sterue. 863
þanne mow ȝe weies to þe wolf' · ful wel ben y-likned;
Ye have to do the same. þat', for ȝe finde no fode · as oþur folk vsen,
Swich hungur as ȝe han · by-houus ȝou þolie,

---

dia mouemini contra nos. Dixistis siquidem; Non aratis, non funditis semina, et non scinditis vites aut arbores plantatis. Edificia fabricare non vultis. Manifesta ratio est, quia ferramenta quibus laborare possetis penitus indigetis. Unde laborare, nauigare, construere, et seminare uobis [*ed.* nobis] omni modo [*ed.* mode] denegatur. Ideo pascentes herbas oportet vos vt pecora vitam ducere aridam et agrestem, quia frumenta, nec carnes, nec pisces habere potestis. Nonne lupi hoc faciunt, qui cum nequeunt carnibus saturari de terre penuria saturabuntur? Quot si liceret vobis ingredi terram nostram,

&, be ȝou lef' o*þur* loþ · libben in wante.
þere-fore no like no lud · of his lu*þur* fare, 868
No hope for his harde lif' · to haue no mede.
For alm*us*-dede do ȝe non · as ȝe demen alle, — Ye do no alms.
But' skarsete & skaþe · vn-skilfully fonden. 871
ȝif' we lengede in ȝoure land · ful loþ were oure best*us* — Our beasts would scorn your life!
To ben so simple of vs silf · & suffre þat tene!
We scholde folewe o*þur* folk · & fonden echone
To a-corde of' oure costom · wiþ comine peple;
But' ȝe han dainte in dul · ȝoure daies to spene, 876
& ben y-sustained so · wiþ sorwe in þis worde.
But' ȝe ben litil to a-lowe · of ȝoure lu*þur* fare; — Ye are not to be praised.
For nouht' but' nisete · nedful ȝou makus!
ȝoure owne folie, folk · doþ ȝou ful ofte 880
In hungur & in hard lif' · to holde ȝoure peple.
Also ȝe sain in ȝour sonde · þat' soþly ȝoure wiu*us* — Your wives use no gay apparel,
Ne gon in no gay tyr · as gise is of' o*þur*e,
& þat lud*us* in ȝoure land · no lech*ur*ie haunten, 884 — and no man commits adultery.
But' spare*n* alle spouse-breche · þe space of' hure liu*us*;
& þou ȝe wonde swich werk · me wondr*us* ful lite!
How miht' ȝe lech*ur*ie loue · or likinge haue, — How can he, with such fare?
Whan lu*þur* fare haþ alaid · ȝour lust*us* echone, 888
þat' ȝe megre ben maad · wiþ mischef' & hungur?
For ȝe so simple ben seie · & semen so pore,
ȝou wantus wordliche won · ȝour wiu*us* to hihte.
þere-fore as bestus ȝe ben · & of' body chaste, 892 — Ye are chaste perforce.

---

non reciperemus sapientiam de vestra penuria quam habetis, sed ipsa fames in suis finibus remaneret. Si vero in fines [*ed.* finines] vestros nostra tabernacula figeremus, paupertate sicut vos potiremur. Non enim est laudandus vir qui semper in angustia viuit, sed qui temperate diuitiis perfruitur. Quot si laudandi [*ed.* laudendi] essent viri in angustia positi, Ceci claudi et leprosi deberent super ceteros homines commendari. Dixistis etiam quod femine vestre non ornantur, et cuiusmodi ornamenta portabunt, quia non habent et nullatenus possunt habere. Item quod adulteria non committitis, sed semper in castitate manetis; quomodo fornicabuntur qui non comedunt? Libido enim non procedit nisi ex calore epatis et ciborum; vos autem non comeditis nisi herbas sicut porci, et fa-

Vn-mihty, for mischef · to medle wiþ burd*us*,
þat nis no chariteu*us* chois · so schast for to libbe;
Sin ȝe maugray ȝour miht · mote hit wiþ-drawe!
Also ȝe sente vs to saie · in þe same time 896
Of o*þur* man*er*u*s* mo · miche for to lakke;

Ye never study;

þat ȝe no stidie in no stounde · ne no stat wilne
Of clergie þat clene is · to claimen in scole;

and neither expect nor shew mercy.

& þat ȝe mercy on molde · in no man*er* wilne, 900
No mercy don to no man · a-mongus ȝou founde.
þanne hit semeþ by ȝoure sawe · ȝif ȝe soþ tellen,
þat kindely ȝoure consience · a-cordeþ to bestus.

Ye are as beasts.

For as bestes ȝe ben · by no skile reuled, 904
Ne hem of kinde no comeþ · no konninge of witte;
So be ȝe, lud*us*, by-lad · & lawe-les alse,
þat han no reward to riht · but red-lese wirche*n*.

We are wise.

But we faiþful folk · þat fare*n* as wise, 908
Ben y-demed to do · ded*us* of rihte.
For-þy vs kenneþ our kinde · to a-corde in trowþe,
In swiche law*us* to liue · þat longe*n* to gode;

We sow and plant.

For to sowe & to sette · in þe sad erthe, 912
& o*þur* wordliche werk · wisly to founde.
Sin man-kinde is y-maad · so michel & so riue,
Among so p*er*les a peple · in-possible hit were— 915
But so*m*me were reuled by ryht · as resoun hit axeþ—

Some men ought to work.

Hem-self to sostaine · wiþ selkowþe þingus,
For to liue by þe land · as lud*us* ben schape
To haue welþe aftur wo · as þe word farus.

After work comes pleasure.

For tene*n* su*m*-time tid · & su*m*time mirthe; 920
[1 MS. 'swine'] & aftur swaginge of swinc[1] · swiþe comeþ ioie.

---

mem [*ed.* famen] non expellitis et ideo nullum potestis habere stimulum luxurie et coeundi. Studium non habetis discendi nec misericordiam queritis, et hec omnia cum bestiis communiter retinetis; quia sicut a natura non habent vt aliquod bonum faciant, ita nec in bono aliquo delectantur. Nobis autem rationabilibus qui liberum habemus arbitrium in ipsa natura multe blandicie sunt concesse. Impossibile enim est vt maxima mundi machina possit absque mobilitate consistere, vt post tristiciam non succedat leticia. Humana

But so, weihu*us*, as ȝe wite*n* · þat wed*ur*inge chaungeþ, — Seasons change.
Now broun & now bright · & now breme stormys,
So is þe wit & þe wil · of wordliche peple 924 — [Fol. 214, back]
In selkouþe sesoun*us* · seen[1] for to chaunge. — [1 MS. 'fain']
Whan wedur waxeþ al bright · þat wel is to like, — In fair weather,
Mirie ben men of mod · in minde & in herte; 927 — men are merry;
But whan þe daies dimme ben · hit doþ he*m* to mourne, — but in dim days, sad.
For sight of þe sesoun · þat sem*us* vnbliþe.
ȝit chaungeþ wit of a weih · in oþ*ur*-wise alse,
þorou þe grete de-gre · þat groweþ in age. — Man changes
For when he is innocent · þat ille can lite, 932 — according to his age.
þanne haþ he solas of him-silf · simple to worþe;
For betur likede him a bal · þan a borou riche; — In youth,
& he is hardy to non harm · but haunt*us* his gam*us*. — he plays with a ball.
Whan he is eld*ur*e of age · þat auht is his strenke, 936 — In riper years,
þanne wol he p*rou*e*n* him proud · & prys of him holde, — he shews his valour.
& wexe wilde of his wil · & wikke to staunche.
Whan he is fare so forþ · fer in his age, — In old age,
þan[2] stoute is he, stedefast · & stille of his herte. 940 — he is quiet. [2 MS. 'þat']
Huo wole a cherched child · chese for hardy, — Who would look
Or a ȝoung man meek · þ*at* mirþe couaiteþ? — for hardiness in an infant?
Huo wolde wene þat a weih · woxen on elde
Were wist for vnstedefast · of word or of dede? 944
Manie mirþ*us* on molde · þat oþ*ur* men vsen, — Ye omit many joys,
ȝe leue*n* þorou ȝour luþ*ur* wit · þat longen to peple.
Su*m*me in sight þat we sen · & sau*ur* of mouþe, — of sight, savour,
Su*m*me in handlinge of hond · & heringe of ere, 948 — handling, hearing,
Su*m*me þat longen to a lud · of likinge smell*us*, — and smelling.
& q*u*eminge of quaintise · þat q*u*encheþ our tene,

---

siquidem voluntas variabilis est que cum celi mutatione mutatur, quoniam scincerus dies scinceram mentem reddit hominis et gaudentem. Tenebrosa autem dies tristem reddit sensum hominis et obscurum. Et per diuersas etates similitur variatur. Infantia siquidem in simplicitate letatur, iuuentus presumptione, senectus stabilitate commode gratulatur. Multa delectabilia visui nostro occurrunt que uobis penitus denegantur. Alia per visum contemplamur, alia percipimus per auditum, alia attrahimus per odorem, alia sentimus per

& in menskinge of mouþ · mirþe we hauen,
In tendere touchinge of þing · & tastinge of swete. 952

We enjoy fruit. & sin we frekus ben so fre · þat we frut hauen,
& al þat growus in þe ground · of gracioucе þingus;

We find fish. We finde fihch in þe se · þat vs fedeþ alle;
We lachen likinge y-now · of þe lof briddus; 956
& ȝif ȝe wonde of þat won · to winne ȝour fode,
ȝe schulle be demed þat ȝe don · dispit to þo kindus.

Ye dishonour the Creator. þanne schewe ȝe to hur schappere · schame for his sondus,
þat so schinden his schap · þat he ȝou scheweþ here.
Or ȝe han hertely hate · to oure hole peple, 961
For we ben beture of our lif · & swich bote finden;
Sin swiche godus as we sen · ben sen[t] to us alle,

[1 MS. 'do'] & nouht so to[1] ȝou now · nedful burnus. 964

Your deeds are folly." Alle þe dedus þat ȝe don · y deme þat it turnus
More to folie þan to faiþ · of any ful witte."
þis sonde þat y said haue · sire alixandre riche
Let bringe wiþ his brode sel · to bragmanus prince, 968
& raþe whan hit rad was · ful redy wiþ oþur

Dindimus replies. To þis adoutede duk · dindimus sente.
Whan hit was sent to þe seg · he dide hit sone red;

Hear his reply! Now how hit goodly by-gan · men, giuus tente! 972

How dindimus sendyd an answere to alixandre by letter.

[*A picture.* VII.]

"Dindimus "DIndimus þe dere king · the docktour of wise,
þat lord of bragmanus land · & ledere is holde,

tactum, et per gustum alia saporamus. De terra etiam omnes fructus attrahimus, de mari pisces, de aere volucres, et auium deliciis gratulamur. Si autem ab his uolueritis [*ed.* nolueritis] abstinere, aut superbia vos tenebit aut inuidia contra nos torquebimini, eo quod nobis et non vobis ista sunt donata. Ego autem secundum oppinionem meam iudico quod mores vestri ad stulticiam magis quam ad sapientiam retrahuntur.—Recepta epistola dindimus legit, et statim alexandro secundo more scripsit hoc modo.

[D]Idimus bragmanorum didascolus Alexandro salutem. Non

To emperour alixandre · egrest' of' princes, — to Alexander, greeting.
þat' is grymmest y-growe · & grettest'[1] of' kingus, 976 — [1 MS. 'greftest']
Ioie graiþus wiþ grace : & gretinge of' mouþe,
As to þe kiddeste y-core · þat' corone weldus !
We do þe namkouþe king' · to kenne & to here, 979
þat' in þis wastinge word · we ne wone nouht' euere ; — We do not always live in *this* world.
For erþe is nouht' our eritage · þat' euere schal laste,
Ne we ne ben nouht' ibor · to abide þer-inne.
But' we ben pore pilegrimus · put' in þis worde, — We are pilgrims on earth.
For we by destene of' dome · schulle deþ þolie ; 984
þanne schulle we hie to þe hous · þat' hie is in blysse,
& karre to oure kinus nie · to kenne of' oure fare.
We ben of'set' wiþ no sinne · for vnsely godus, — We do no sin.
Ne we sitte in no sete · þere sinne is y-hanteþ. 988
But for oure kinde consience · þat' kenneþ vs to goode,
We wonde wikkede werk · & wende fro skaþe.
We ne sain noukt', king', be þou sur · for sake of' our pride, — It is not pride or envy that makes us such as we are.
þat' we bolde godus ben · burnus to gie, 992
Ne enuye to hem han · ne hate in þis worde.
For we ne giue vs to no gilt' · þat' scholde god wraþe,
Ne nouht nien him her · by niht' no by day.
God, þat' alle gomus schop · & alle gode þingus, 996 — God made men of many kinds.
Made here vp-on molde · many manere choisus ;
For maad mihte hit' nouht' be · þere men scholde dwelle
Wiþ-oute diuerce dedus · of' many done þingus.
But' al þat' badde is for a burn · here abouen erþe, 1000 — He who avoids evil
Huo so haþ chaunce to echue · & chese þe betture—
As men han wit' for to wite · þe wikke & þe gode— — [Fol. 215]
He may nouht' claime to be cleped · clene god of' mihte,

---

habitamus in hoc seculo perpetuo moraturi, sed sicut perigrinantes, quia morte super-veniente pergimus ad alias regiones vel mansiones, nec manemus in perpetuis tabernaculis in hoc mundo. Nullum furtum facimus et pro nostra conscientia in publicum eximus. Non reputamus nos esse deos nec contra deum inuidia concitamur. Deus qui omnia creauit in mundo multas rerum varietates constituit, qui dedit homini liberum arbitrium vt de omnibus que sunt in mundo discernat et prouideat. Qui ergo omnia dimiserit et secutus fuerit

is God's friend. But godus frend may þe freke · frely be called; 1004
For we leden wel our lif · & louen to be simple.
Ye say we are as gods. In 3oure sonde, sire king · 3e saide þis wordus;—
þat we alle godus arn · as 3e deme nouþe,
Or euere elles til hem · enuye we haue. 1008
But þe same þat 3e so · by vs silf trowe
Longeþ, ludus, to 3ou · þat liuen so in ese.
But ye are so rather, For 3e leden 3oure lif · in lordschipe & in myrthe,
Of noble kinde for 3e come · & kid ben of grete. 1012
being rich, and gaily clad. In clene cloþus 3e gon · & claimen to be riche;
Al 3oure minde is on mirþe · & most vp-on goodus.
3oure fingrus of fin gold · 3e fullen wiþ ryngus,
As is wommenus wone · for wordliche glose. 1016
Your boastful deeds will make you proud. But, burnus, be 3e ful sur · þo bostful dedeus,
Wher-fore 3e holde 3ou her · hiest on erþe,
Schal 3ou procre to pryde · & to no profit ellus, 1019
But skaþe for 3oure vn-skile · whan 3e skapen hennus.
Gold feeds no one. Gold fedeþ no gome · ne no good soule;
But we þat selkouþus sen · & soþus mow knowe,
And kenne þe kinde of þe gold · þat corsed is founde,
We faren alle to þe flod · þere we finde mowe 1024
Gret plente of gold · on þe ground ligge.
We spurn it. þanne we wollen of þe watur · wilfully drinke,
& de-foule wiþ our fet · þe fine gold schene.
For gold, þouh it gay be · hit gaynus ful lite 1028
Of hard hongur and þirst · to helpe any peple.

---

meliora non deus sed dei amicus appellatur. De nominibus igitur et continentur (*sic*) viuimus cur dicis aut dii sumus aut contra ipsos concitamur inuidia? Hec siquidem suspitio quam de nobis habetis vos tangit. Nam ex multis prosperitatibus quas habetis multa superbia turgitati estis. Corpora vestra gloriosus (*sic*) vestibus ornatis et immittitis in digitis vestris aurea instrumenta. Sed quid vobis hoc prodest? Ex auro enim anime vestre nullatenus salue fiunt nec humana corpora satiantur. Nos vero qui vtilitatem nouimus et ipsius auri naturam discernimus; quando sitimus, pergimus ad fluuium vt bibamus. Ipsum etiam aurum si reperimus pedibus conculcamus. Aurum enim famem [*ed.* famen] non tollit nec sitim reprimit; nec potest egritudines ab humanis corporibus variare. Si sitiret homo et aurum bi-

Haue a man neu*ere* so miche · mischef of' houngur,
He may hit' staunche wiþ mete · & men*den* his paine.
þouh þirst dreche him wiþ drouhþe · drink may hi*m* helpe,
A litil wetinge of' watur · his wo wol amende. 1033
ȝif' gold were to a gome · so good of' his kinde,
Whan men hit' helde in here hand · or hadde *in* here warde,
So scholde hit be to a burn · bote of his nede, 1036
His corsede couaytise · cofly to sese.
But' now, þe more þat' a man · may þer-of' winne,
þe more ȝern*us* he[1] ȝit' · to ȝeme at' his wille;
& he is menskeb þe mor · among*us* ȝou alle, 1040
For wel lou*us* euery lud · þat' liche is him tille.
We sain þat' ȝour sory godes · of' wham ȝe so helpe,
Mow no manyr ded þing' · þorou hure miht' hele.
ȝe tende*n* michil in ȝour time · templ*us* to bulde, 1044
& riche auter*us* riue · rere þere-inne;
þanne founde ȝe ȝour falce god*us* · w*ith* sorw for to here,
& quell*en* for to quem*en* hem · of' ȝour q*u*ike bestus;
& in þat' same sacrifice · ȝe seggen þe name 1048
Of' what' burn þat' hit' be · þat' wolde bone haue.
þin ald*ur*-fadur, alixandre · al þis haþ vsed,
& alle kydde of' ȝour kin · kende*n* þis ded*us*;
þis is amongus ȝou me*n* · in þis manere knowe; 1052
For þus ȝe erren echon · in erþliche werk*us*.
Where-fore, segg*us*, we sain · for sake of' ȝour ded*us*,
How luþ*ur*ly ȝe liue*n* her · litil ȝe knowen.
þow ȝe wiþ sinne be of-set' · suffre ȝe[2] nolle, 1056
þat' we by-wepe in þis word · ȝour wikkede dedus!
& miche, þinkeþ vs, a man · menskeþ anoþ*ur*,

A hungry man eats meat, not gold.

A thirsty man drinks water.

The more gold a man has, the more he wants.

[1 MS. 'be']

Your gods cannot heal the dead.

Yet ye sacrifice to them.

Ye err, ye know not how much.

[2 MS. 'ne']

To reprove you is a kindness.

---

biberet, sitis non reprimeretur. Si esuriit et cibo refecto ex auro refectus fuerit, fames non repellitur. Si autem aurum esset bone [*ed.* hmōi (*sic*)] nature et acciperet illud homo, cupiditatis puniretur vicium. Quid ergo proficit aurum? non purgat, non reprimit, non satiat, non sustentat; nullam cordi humano confert sanitatem nec vtilitatem. Quid inde vasa aurea componitis? Nonne vasa lutea tantundem proficiunt, nisi quod mentes vestre magis propter splendorem auri in superbiam eleuantur? Malum siquidem aurum est, quia

þat a gome for his gilt · goodly by-wepeþ. 1059
For ho so woneþ in þis word · & wol nouh[t] y-knowe
He who ignores death should be struck down by lightning. þat him is demed to deie · & doom schal abide,
Hit is riht þat þe rink · be reufully ended,
& smite to þe smeþe ground · wiþ a smart poudur;
as Salmoneus was." As on sinful was seie · þat salonien*us* hiȝte, 1064
& euyl endid on erþe · and wrout ful foule.
For þe lud on his lif · a-losed him so noble,
þat he heuene hadde mihte · with hand*us* to reche;
[1 MS. 'For þei'] For-þi[1] boþe for hur bost · ben y-brend nouþe, 1068
Wiþ fir in þe fir-hil · to fend*us* by-tauhte.
þus mowe ȝe finden in fabl*us* · of philozofrus olde,
þat spoken how þo spild men · spenden hur time."
This was Dindimus' last letter. þus was þe lettere of þe lud · þat he last sente, 1072
& mascedoni*us* mihty king · menskliche hit radde.
Whan he þe sonde hadde seye · he sente forþ newe,
þat was to bragmanye brouht · & p*rest* for to rede.
Alexander thus replies. þanne radde cofly þe king · þis kariede sonde, 1076
þat þus tiþinge tolde · & tauhte þis wordus:—

How alixandre sente dindimus anoþ*ur* letter.

[*A picture.* VIII.]

"Alexander, "Þe emp*er*our alixandre · of armus a-losed,
þat noble is & name-kouþ · & neuere man dradde,
[Fol. 215, back] By godus chaunce þat ys chose · chef ou*ur* king*us*, 1080
& of burn*us* y-bore · baldest of mihte,
son of Ammon, to Dindimus. þat amon þe grete god · in gra*c*iose tim*us*
By-gat on olimpas · þe on*ur*able quene,
By-kenneþ king dindim*us* · in kiþ þere he dwell*us*, 1084
[2 MS. 'a fiedde' (!). *See* l. 286.] His a-seled[2] sonde · & saiþ in þis wise.—
ȝe sain, burn*us*, þat ȝe ben · best echone,

---

quanto maiori quantitate habetur, tanto magis illud habendi cupiditate augmentatur.

Responsiua alexandri didimo regi bragmanorum.

[R]Ex regum et dominus dominantium Alexander filius dei Hamonis et regine Olimpie Didimo dicendo mandamus. Quoniam in

þat' in ȝoure loþ-liche land · libben by kynde.
For so, segg*us*, ȝe ben · by-set' in an yle, 1088
þat þer may come*n* in ȝour kiþ · no*n* vnkouþe peple;
Ne ȝe ne mowe of' þat' march · i*n* no mane*re* wende,
But', be you loþ oþ*ur* lef' · lenge þer-inne.
& for ȝe, weihu*us*, of' þat' won · wende ne mowe, 1092
Wel a-lowe ȝe ȝour lif' · and ȝour land alse!
Al þe nede & þe noy · þat' ȝe now suffren
By a-sent' of' ȝour-silf · ȝe sain þat' ȝe dryen;
& by þe sawe þ*a*t ȝe sente · to segge of' ȝoure fare, 1096
ȝe arn liche of' ȝour lif · to swiche loþe burn*us*,
þat' ben in dep p*re*soun don · al hure daies time,
& han mirþ*us* on molde · missed ful clene!
But' lawe lereþ vs & skile · þat ȝe be*n* leþ*ur* alle, 1100
& mow for ȝoure mischef' · no mede haue;
For it' comeþ ȝou of' kinde · in care to libbe.
Sin ȝe wonen in þat' won · þere wante is of' good*us*,
þanne, segg*us*, semeþ hit' nouht' · þat ȝe so wirchen 1104
For sake of' þe same god · þat' sitt*us* in blisse.
þere-for to wo þat' is wers · wende*n* ȝe schulle,
Whanne ȝe p*ar*ten fro þis paine · þ*a*t pinncheþ ȝou here.
þanne be ȝe men vp-on molde · most' to be-wepe, 1108
þat' here to schame ben schape · & ay schulle aftur.
ȝit' wolen wikkede men · in þis word glade,
þouȝ þei ben damned to dul · whan hure day endus!
þo þat' lud*us* in oure land · a-losed arn wise 1112
ȝe holde fol*us* in faiþ · & falce of' by-leue;
Hit longeþ, ludus, til us · ȝour lif' to by-wepe,

Ye are so set in an island, that no strangers come to you.

Ye say ye suffer by choice.

Ye are like wretched prisoners.

It is natural to you to live in sorrow.

Ye shall suffer pain hereafter.

---

talia mundi pericula vestra sedes est ab initio constituta, quod extranei intrare non possunt nec vos ad eos vllatenus potestis pervenire, Idcirco vestram obseruationem laudatis, et dicitis vos esse beatos quia taliter estis inclusi vt si exire velletis et aliorum consuetudinibus vti minime liceret; et ita volentes aut nolentes vestram consuetudinem approbatis. Itaque secundum doctrinam vestram vita illorum qui in carceribus includuntur debet non modicum laudari, qui quandoque vitam penalem vsque ad exitum patiuntur. Et bona que habere dicitis cruciatibus illorum qui recluduntur in carceribus assimilantur. Et quicquid de malis hominibus lex nostra iudicat, vos ipsi naturaliter

It is for us to mourn for you.

& make for ȝoure mischef · mour[n]inge sich*us*.
For wers faren no folk · founde vp-on erþe, 1116
þan frek*us* þat no frut han · frely to libbe.

God has decreed you pain hereafter,

God þat iuge is of ioie · haþ iugged ȝou alle
To lenge aftur ȝour lif · in lastinge paine;

and misery in the present life.

& he haþ marked ȝou men · mischef on erþe, 1120
þouh ȝe wene ȝou wise · & wittie of lo*rus*!
þere-fore, segg*us*, as y saide · for sake of ȝour dedus
Mede mowe ȝe of god · in no man*ere* fonge;
ȝe ben vn-blessed of lif · for, burn*us*, y warne 1124

Your deeds are but misery to you."

þat ȝe holden so her · holsome dedes
Gret wante is of wo · & wikkede paine,
þe whiche þe heie god*us* haten · & hure hole peple."
Now tende we to touche more · of þis tale aftur; 1128

Thus ends the letter.

For of þis egre emp*er*our · þus endeþ þe lettere.
Whan þis makelese man · þat most was adouted,
þe romme riden alixandre · richest of kingus,
Hadde le[n]gged þere longe · & lettr*us* þe while 1132
Endited to dindim*us* · as him dere þoute,

Alexander bids his men build a pillar of marble;

þere his burn*us* he bad · bulden of marbre
A piler sadliche i-picht · or he passe wolde; 1135
& þat þei wrouhten a wrytte · & writ*en* þer-aboute:—
"Hidur haue ic*h*, alixandre · wiþ myn help fare."
Whan graue was þe *gra*ie ston · þe *gr*ime king rydus,

and departs thence.

& alle meven his men · fro þe marke euene. 1139

How alixandre picht a pelyr of marbyl þere.

[*A picture.* IX.]

---

sustinetis. Unde fit vt qui a vobis sapiens dicitur apud nos iudicio reus appellatur. Uere itaque non beatitudine sed miseria potest vita vestra decorari. Sed per deos immortales iuro quod si ad vos ingredi possemus, vestra miseria derelicta faceremus vos armis et equis militaribus decorari.

Qualiter alexander fecit erigi columnam marmoream in signum victorie.

[I]Nterea precepit alexander vt in eodem loco columna marmorea mire magnitudinis figeretur, et iussit in eam hunc titulum literis grecis latinis et indicis conscribi: 'Ego alexander philippi Macedonis post obitum darii vsque ad hunc locum expugnando viriliter militaui.'

[*The following are all the rubrics from this point of the story to the end.*]

Quomodo alexander inuenit homines magnos et gigantes.

Quomodo alexander inuenit hominem agrestem pilosum et vocem habentem vt porcus.

Quomodo alexander inuenit arbores que nascebantur cum sole.[1]

Qualiter alexander peruenit ad vallem obscuram et ibi inuenit basiliscum.

Quomodo alexander non potuit ultra ire.

Quomodo alexander ascendit in montem.

Qualiter alexander peruenit ad arbores solis et lune.

Epistola missa ab Alexandro filius [*sic*] dei Hamonis regine Candacis.[2]

Quomodo regina Candacis introduxit Alexandrum in triclinium et eius figuram sibi ostendit depictam in membrana.

Qualiter alexander venit ad speluncam in qua erant dii qui sibi locuti fuerunt.

Quomodo Alexander deuicit duodecim reges.

Qualiter alexander fecit se per griffones in aere leuari.

Quomodo alexander petiit profunda maris.

Quomodo alexander pugnauit cum Rinocephalis.

Quomodo equus alexandri bucifallus fuit mortuus.

Quomodo Alexander venit ad fluuium tyrum.

Quomodo Antipater emit venenum et misit illud filio suo.[3]

Testamentum alexandri.

De vita alexandri et eius statura.

Nomina ciuitatum quas construxit Alexander.

De sepultura Alexandri.

The colophon is—Historia Alexandri magni finit felicitur Anno salutis. M.cccc.lxxxx. Finita vero die .xvi. mensis Nouembris. Laus deo.

[1] This and the paragraph to which it is a title have been already cited above. See p. 5.

[2] A name evidently borrowed from Acts.

[3] The story says that Alexander was poisoned by Cassander and Roboas, sons of Antipater.

NOTES.

[In these Notes, attention is drawn chiefly to a few of the more difficult *phrases* and *constructions*. For explanation of difficult *words*, see the Glossarial Index.]

1. 'When this wight found the weather to be such as he desired.' Cf. l. 922.

3. *Oridrace.* So in the MS.; it should rather have been *Oxidrace.* But the spelling of proper names is very corrupt in nearly all writings of the 14th century, and it is quite unnecessary to suppose that such a misspelling is to be laid upon the scribe. Even in the best MSS. of Chaucer, such names assume very singular forms, and we have no ground for supposing that the case would have been any different if Chaucer had written out his poems himself. Hence all such forms are best left as they stand, though it often happens that we can interpret them correctly by seeing through the disguise. Even in the Latin texts the spellings differ. We have *Exidraces* in the text of 1490 at the bottom of p. 1. In Julius Valerius (quoted in the Preface) we have "ad *Oxydraconias* iter suum dirigit."

4. *There*, i. e. where. Perhaps there are few things which cause more difficulty to a learner than his own inattention to the force of short words and particles of this kind. The whole force of a sentence frequently depends upon them, and the right perception of their value is often the clue to an *apparently* difficult sentence. This hint is applicable to the whole poem, and to all other poems. Cf. ll. 8, 495, 525, &c.

5. By some mistake, the translator gives the converse sense to that implied by the Lat. '*nulla* superbia.'

9. *Syte*, i. e. city, not site; Lat. '*ciuitates* non habent.' Cf. *selle*, i. e. cell; Piers Plowman, C. i. 5, *footnote.*

13. *Cauus*, caves; here put for 'the men of the caves.'

18. 'He commanded to be sent to the man with his letter.' *Let sende*, commanded (men) to send, i. e. to be sent; a common idiom in this and contemporary poems; cf. l. 21, 43. See note to l. 245.

20. *Schamlese*, shameless; because he was not ashamed to go naked.

22. *Tid*, quickly; inserted to make the line run better. All words and letters between square brackets are insertions.

25. *Word*, world; a common spelling in this poem; spelt *ward* in Lancelot of the Laik, 3184. The G. *welt* preserves the *l*, but it drops the *r*.

27. *Seg*, O man. The number of words for man in this poem is considerable; and many of them are in the vocative case. Cf. *gome*, l. 30; *rink*, l. 31; *weiȝ*, l. 69; &c.

28. *Fare*, to journey, to go about among us. *To* is not used before infinitives, but only before gerunds, implying purpose. See l. 45.

35. *Happili*, by any hap or chance, haply. *Of kynde*, naturally.

50. *Wende gref þolie*, expected to suffer harm.

54. *That hem bi ferde*, that walked beside them.

62. 'Of other houses than are here we have no need.'

65. *For*, because; cf. note to l. 4.

71. 'That no death may harm us, we now ask.'

80. 'And, in order to win the world, goest so far (from home);' cf. Lat. 'discurris.'

81. 'How can you keep yourself from harm by your discernment and truth, (whilst endeavouring) wrongfully to bereave kingdoms of their kings?'

85. *Thei*, they, i. e. the gods; a sudden change of number. So in l. 100, *hur* means *their;* whilst in l. 101, *god* is again in the singular.

87. 'Since I have favour, by virtue of that grant, to become the most dreaded, I should now act like a wretch and enrage the Lord, if, for pain of any death, I were to flee from my destiny, that is marked out for me (alone), and for no other king.' *Wrouthe* and *wraþede* are past tenses subjunctive. So in l. 101 we have *sente*, i. e. were to send.

93. *Ride ferþe*, ride forth, ride away, go home.

110. 'Therefore I hasten to achieve (my lot), as my destiny is doomed for me.'

124. 'And fruit grew abundantly.' *Grow* is properly a strong verb; but *growed* is common in provincial English. "'Spec's I *growed*;" Uncle Tom's Cabin. Yet in l. 133 we have *growe* for *growen*, i. e. grown, the strong past participle.

132. 'That none should touch the trees, lest they should be delayed (in their way),' viz. by disease or death. On the verb *trinen*, to touch, see note to Piers Plowman, C. xxi. 27.

138. *Phison*, Pison; Gen. ii. 11. In l. 141 it is called *Gena* (Lat. text *gagei*, a misprint for acc. *gangen*). "Fluvius vero Ganges iste est qui nobis vocatur Phison;" Palladius de Bragmanibus, ed. Bisse, p. 2.

> "There biside, withouten lees,
> Hy founden a water y-hoten Ganges.
> There ben Inne eles strong[e],
> That beth thre hundreth fet longe;"
> King Alisaunder; ed. Weber, 5790.

"With regard to the Pison, the most ancient and most universally received opinion identifies it with the Ganges. Josephus, Eusebius, and many others held this;" Dict. of the Bible, ed. by Dr. Smith; art.

Eden. The Skt. form of Ganges is *gañgá*, i. e. the 'goer,' the flowing; from *gam*, to go.

146. 'Saw men wander about on the other side of the river.'

151. *Stronde*, i. e. river; not 'strand' in the modern sense; cf. l. 165.

"Forgane thir stannyris schane the beriall *strandis;*"

i. e. over those pebbles shone the beryl streams; Gawin Douglas, Æn. b. xii. prol. l. 60.

155. *Heruest*, harvest; here the month of August; see the Latin text. In Palladius de Bragmanibus, ed. Bisse, p. 9, it is explained that the months of July and August were colder than the rest, and therefore healthier. So also St. Ambrose; p. 62 of the same volume.

156. As to these dragons, cf. Palladius de Bragmanibus, ed. Bisse, p. 10; and p. 63 of the same volume.

158. 'And grievous crocodiles, that hindered the king.' *Cocodrill* is the usual old spelling; cf. *cokedrill*, King Alisaunder, ed. Weber, 5720. This spelling was almost universal, and not confined to English; cf. Low Lat. *cocodrillus* (see the Latin text), whence Span. *cocodrillo*, and Ital. *coccodrillo*. By a still further corruption the Low. Lat. *cocodrillus* became *cocatrix*, whence our *cockatrice;* so that the common notion of the production of a cockatrice from an egg was no fable, but a fact.

171. 'The king soon commanded a good linguist to enquire quickly, in the speech of the country;' &c.

195. *Doþ for to grete*, i. e. causes Dindimus to be greeted; viz. by means of the letter.

197. *Sendeþ him gon*, sends (a man) to go to him.

198. *Aftur him*, i. e. below him, under him, his followers.

205. 'But we little believe that.'

214. Obviously corrupt. The correction is easy; an old *w* looks extremely like *lk* or *ik*, and the word *sewe* might easily have been read as *seike*, and then turned into *sinke*. Read—'and fonde, for mi mizht, ȝour fare to sewe,' i. e. and endeavour, as far as I can, to follow your habit of life. The phrase *for my might* is the right idiom.

221. *For*, because. 'Because I heard such a praise of your life.' The anonymous Latin text edited by Bisse (p. 85) begins at this point with the words "Sæpius ad aures meas fando pervenit," &c.

222. *In many done þinguns*, in things of many kinds; as in l. 999. *Done* is the pp. of *do;* lit. 'made,' and hence, make, fashion, kind; the pp. passing into a sb. by use. As to the phrase, it is an imitation of the common M.E. *many kinnes thinges*, i. e. things of many a kind; a phrase which has been twisted into the modern form 'many a kind of thing' by a complete inversion of the form of construction. So also, we have *alles kinnes thinges*, things of every kind, corrupted to 'every kind of thing;' and again, *nones kinnes thinges*, things of no kind, corrupted to 'no kind of thing;' and again, *what kinnes thinges*, things of what kind, or 'what kind of thing.' See further in the note to

Piers Plowman, C. xi. 128. See also note to the same, B. xviii. 298, for another example of *don* in the sense of 'make;' where, moreover, the gen. form *dones* is used.

235. 'It would not lose its light, nor burn the less,' lit. the later, i. e. less readily.

236. *Vn-wasteþ*; so in the MS., probably due to the final sound of the word *lasteþ*, which the scribe had in his mind as the next word to be written. Read *vn-wasted*, unwasted. But cf. l. 988.

238—242. This is from the other Latin text, which has—"Quapropter obsecro ut præbeas responsa quæsitis;" ed. Bisse, p. 86.

240. *Sende*, to send; infinitive. Omit the full stop at the end of the line, accidentally inserted. The sense is—'to send us tidings concerning that which we desire very readily to know from you, in order to ascertain the wisdom which ye exhibit,' lit. go with. Properly, the verb *kennen* means 'to make to know, to teach,' but it is also used, like G. *kennen*, Icel. *kenna*, in the simple sense of 'to know;' see ll. 308, 515. In l. 910 the causal sense clearly appears.

245. 'He bade (men) write a second letter concerning their life.' Observe *oþir*, i. e. second; and *lettrus*, i. e. a letter, like Lat. *literæ*.

263. *Wantede*, lacked; as in Shakespeare.

265, 266. 'But the humblest that lived might become his lord, and deal with him as with a fool that wants (lit. should want) his wits.'

275. 'With regard to the message thou sentest, (which was) to tell the truth about all the teaching of our life without delay.'

281. 'Ye have no leisure nor time to attend to my sayings.'

302. Alliteration imperfect. *Refe* is obviously a substitution for something else. The right word is *bruten*, to destroy, which see in the Glossary to Will. of Palerne, and cf. Alexander, fragment A., l. 888.

310. *We;* probably an error for *ye;* see note to l. 635.

313. 'Therefore we are seen to be sound,' i. e. hale.

314. *Hir*, here. *Henne passe*, depart hence, die.

325. 'But, by the arrival of natural decay, as the king of heaven decrees, we must fear death when the day (for it) comes.' *Cominnge*, i. e. coming, may stand as the reading; the sense is the same as in *bi ordre of oure kinds*, l. 327; and cf. *comeþ vs*, i. e. comes upon us, l. 331. These expressions answer to "secundum ordinem natiuitatis cuiuslibet" in the Latin text.

327. *Holde*, old. So also *hauter* = *auter*, altar, 728; *haþel* = *aþel*, noble, l. 856.

328. 'When our limbs lack might, and (when) we lose our (natural) heat.'

347. 'Nor do we desire to procure any man to go against them.' *Procre* was misprinted *prince* in Stevenson's edition, thus destroying the sense. *Nol*, i. e. *ne wol*, was misprinted *ne of*. In l. 366, *procred* was misprinted *proceed*. In l. 1019, it was printed correctly.

349. 'We fear no doughty one, nor any stern (cruel) deed,' i. e. attack. Or the reading may be—*ne no dede sterue*, i. e. nor to die any

death. Either sense will serve, and either may be read. As to *sterne*, cf. l. 429.

351. *Keuered*, covered. Hence, in the Latin text, *operata* is an obvious error for *operta*.

353. *Whon* = *won*, i. e. quantity; see l. 499. This curious word was once in common use; see Havelok, 1791, Piers Plowman, B. xx. 170. It occurs as late as in the old version of Chevy Chase, where it is spelt *wane*. The superfluous *h* in *whon* belongs to the word *wite*, i. e. *whit*, in the next line.

356. 'We turn quickly to a flood (that) is called Thabeus;' the relative being omitted. The river is called *Taberuncus* in Bisse's volume, p. 65.

359. *What so*, whatsoever, whatever. Evidently copied from 1 Cor. x. 31.

366. *Procred to goode*, procured for good, well intended.

368. 'We speak only the truth, and cease (keep silence) in good time,' i. e. before saying too much. *By time*, betimes.

371. Here *hauntep* appears to be in the singular, like *bringeth* in the next line. *That seggus hauntep*, that haunts people. More commonly, *haunten* = to practise; and we should rather read—*þat seggus haunten*, which men practise.

375. 'For we count it (poverty) as being rich, and easily find that it follows (*or* accompanies) our people till they depart hence,' i. e. die.

380. 'Because we do no misdeed, so as to suffer judgments,' i. e. to be condemned for it; cf. Latin text.

381, 382. 'We consider it as a virtue, in our land at home, that mercy is unknown amongst the men of our country; because we are never moved to shew mercy to any.' This is a singular statement, but answers to the Latin text, and is explained in the next sentence. 'We never offend God, nor any man here, whereby we should have to think about craving mercy, that God might forgive us.' We never think about mercy, because we never commit faults worthy of punishment.

389. *Galfule*. The MS. has *galsule*, but there is no such word, and the MS. rightly has *galful* in l. 668. The prefix *gal-* is clearly the A.S. *gál*, merriness, joy, generally used as an adj. and in a bad sense, viz. luxurious, lascivious. Cf. Germ. *geil*, rank, luxurious, lascivious; but occasionally in a good sense, bold, merry, spirited (Flügel). So also Du. *geil*; and cf. Icel. *gáli*, *gála*, *gáll*. In both the passages in the present poem, we must give it a good sense, viz. joyous, full of bliss, blessed; or else joy-giving, bliss-imparting.

391. *Glose you here*, to gloss over your sins here, to speak to you smooth things.

392. 'We loathe to essay all the lust of lechery.'

393. *Brigge*, probably a bad spelling of *brike*, *briche* or *bruche*, A.S. *bryce*, a breach, rupture, violation. 'Or to bring us to a violation (of chastity), so as to commit adultery.' Mr. Stevenson explains the word by 'strife;' obviously with reference to F. *brigue*, which Cotgrave

explains by 'a canvas, private suite, underhand labouring for an office, &c.; hence, also, debate, contention, altercation, litigious wrangling about a matter.' But this is hardly the sense; rather compare *brike* in the sense of 'perilous state;' Chaucer, Cant. Tales, Group B, l. 3580. *Breke spouce*, to break espousal, is due to the (commoner) sb. *spusbreche*, i. e. spouse-breach, adultery; see ll. 787, 885; and cf. Ancren Riwle, p. 56; Ayenbite of Inwyt, p. 37.

400, 401. 'For we lighten (i. e. recreate, amuse) not our life by any wicked deed, on account of which we ought to be shamefully cut short of our days.' But this is not satisfactory. It is obvious that *lizten* is an error for *liten*, i. e. stain; a close translation of *sordidamus* in the Latin. The Latin text also has a strange error; for *aerem* read *uitam*.

402. *Don deie*, cause to be dyed.

405. The MS. *tolk* is clearly miswritten for *to folk*.

406. *Hihten*, explained by Stevenson to mean 'honour, adorn;' a rare word. So *hiht* = improved, l. 408. And see l. 418. It is difficult to find authority for the word; but it is probably a peculiar use of A.S. *hyhtan* or *hihtan*, a derivative from *hyht*, hope. Grein gives the senses of *hyhtan* as (1) to hope; (2) to exult. To these Bosworth adds 'to increase,' with a reference which clearly shews that it was considered as equivalent to Lat. *augere*. In Spelman's edition of the A.S. Psalter, Ps. civ. 22, we find 'he *gehihte* folc his' as a gloss upon '*auxit* populum suum.'

407. *Corn* is for *coren*, i. e. chosen, as in l. 415. *Comelokur corn*, chosen as being comelier. Similarly in l. 415, *kindeli coren* is literally 'naturally chosen,' i. e. chosen to be by nature, shaped by nature. *Than hur kynde askyþ*, than their nature requires; see note to Piers Plowman, C. i. 21.

415. 'As pleases the king of heaven.'

416. *Schine*, shun. So in l. 449, *schineþ* = shunneth.

417. 'To choose them for His children, who have changed the shapes He gave them.'

421. 'And shew themselves otherwise,' i. e. in another form.

426, 427. 'Nor make any man work our will, or serve us in worldly matters.'

437. The alliteration and l. 848 make the reading *boldus* (habitations) certain.

439. *Lome*, tool; cf. mod. E. *loom*. At least, such is the sense most readily suggested. But if it be intended as a translation of *Uascula de terra non facimus*, then *lome* may be loam, i. e. potter's clay. In l. 854, the word for 'tool' is *tol*.

440. *Owen aboute*, employ all round us.

442. The alliteration (a poor one) is on the vowels: *Al, any, erthliche*.

470. *Good of to lauze*, good to laugh at.

475. *Ta sain*, to say. The MS. really has *ta*.

477. *Seue sterres*, seven stars, i. e. the seven planets. We find, at different periods, three uses of this phrase. It means (1) the seven

planets, as here and in Richard de Redeles, iii. 352; with which cf. Additional Note to Piers the Plowman, p. 460 (C. xviii. 98); (2) the Pleiades, as in Cotgrave's "*Pleiade*, one of the seven stars," and in Puttenham, Arte of Poesie, lib. ii. c. 11, ed. Arber, p. 122; and (3) the seven stars in the Greater Bear, of which I cannot adduce any decisive instance, though the phrase most readily suggests this sense. The Lat. word *septentriones* refers to the Lesser Bear.

481. *Side*, wide, ample; a word retained till the 15th century. See Prompt. Parv. p. 455, note 2.

485. The translation is at fault. The sense is that the waves, however boisterous, do not eat away the sea-coast.

489. The Lat. text is clearly corrupt; and the translator is also at fault, and has given us nonsense. For in the English text, *he* can only be the wind (cf. *his* in l. 488); which gives—'the wind embraces and encloses the clear water.' He seems to have taken the reading *amplectitur*, and to have connected this sentence with the preceding one, with which it has no obvious connection beyond the reference of *illud* to *mare*. Instead of its being the *wind* which embraces the *sea*, the true reference is to the *sea* which embraces the *land*. This comes out more clearly in the other Latin text (see Preface) in Bisse's Palladius, p. 92. "Certamus etiam pelagus colore purpureo venustare, quod placidis et amicis excitatur semper fluctibus; non ferire germanam terram creditur sed amplecti, cujus multiformes pisces vagique delphini æquoris madidas undas atque saltus innocenter exercerent." It is clear that it was *this* text which suggested the mention of dolphins in l. 492.

492. 'There dolphins make a din.' Mr. Stevenson prints *diue*, against which there are two reasons:—(1) the MS. has *dine;* and (2) *maken diue* is not a correct expression. It is explained by the next line, 'that there they swim very quickly, and lash about with their tails.' The expressive word *swangen* is not mentioned in Stratmann; but Halliwell duly records the provincial "*swang*, to swing with violence," as an East of England word. Cf. G. *schwang*, a swinging motion; *schwanz*, a tail.

500. 'We much desire to go about in the dense woods.'

507. *That we the rede holde*, which we advise thee to observe.

509. *Thi pres*, thy press, i. e. throng of men, host.

510. 'Though it seem disagreeable (to you), it is not owing to us.' *Long in* must be an error either for *long on* or *long of*, i. e. along of, owing to.

512. *Balful no tened*, injurious nor vexed.

524—527. *Strondus*, streams; cf. l. 151. By the river *Erenus* is meant the Hermus (Gk. ἕρμος), a considerable river of Asia Minor, of which the still more celebrated Pactolus is a tributary.

529. *Drinkinke drawht* = drinking-draught, i. e. the draught of their drinking; not a very happily-formed compound.

533. *Oxian*, the ocean; a singular corruption. But the Latin has *horribile mare*, which can mean nothing else. Still clearer is the

sentence "Tu vero dixisti te ad Oceanum venturum et postea ad alium orbem;" Palladius, p. 27.

535. In the Latin text, for *supra* (so printed in the old edition) read *sopiri*. "Vos tartareum custodem sopiri posse pretio suggessistis;" De Bragmanis, ed. Bisse, p. 91.

540. 'Ye shew yourselves (to be) unnatural by killing your children.'

549. *But* ȝif, unless, except. *Alse*, also, as well.

550. *Gilte*, ye sin; see *gulten* in Stratmann. Instead of *Per dies tuos*, the translator has evidently had a text with the reading *Per deos tuos*, which is probably right; see *deos tuos* four lines lower down. Hence the sense is—'You greatly sin, O man, by example of (*or* by means of) your false gods, just as they were wont, when in this world, to act during their lives.' *Bi* here answers to the Latin *per*, instead of taking its commoner M.E. sense of 'with respect to,' as in l. 552.

552. 'For example, you may receive the truth as regards my saying, from (the instance of) Jupiter.'

555. *As a lie*, like a flame. See Piers Plowman, B. xvii. 207.

562. 'To her was lechery pleasing.'

570. 'Ye make boast of more than ye can perform.'

575. *Gol*, gold; the same spelling occurs in Havelok; see remarks in the Preface to my edition of that poem, p. xxxvii.

577. *You-silue to abowe*, to bow down to yourselves; cf. l. 675.

579. The first *liue*, meaning 'believe,' is better spelt *leue*; cf. *leues* in l. 597.

591. Parenthetical. 'And, except each grave be fair and fine, ye think it a folly.'

592. *Lodlick* = *lothlich*, loathsome; the MS. reading *bodilech* is clearly miswritten for this word.

596. 'People know who (are they that) love them.' This is here supposed to be a Greek opinion.

601. 'On account of which the great God of heaven would be expected to hear us, (so as) to grant a man's petition when any one prayed to him.'

605. *For*, with the expectation that. *You help kiþe*, and vouchsafe help to you.

618. 'And all that men in this world should use,' lit. go with.

635, 636. The correction of *we* to *ye* is obvious; see the Latin text.

637. 'There may no boast or pride release you from suffering.' *Borewen*, be surety for, be bail for, release on pledge.

645. *A litil wordle*, a little world; in allusion to the Gk. term μικρόκοσμος, a microcosm or 'little world,' a term by which the old astrologers denoted man, under the impression that the parts of his body corresponded to parts of the universe or *macrocosm*. Hence it followed, according to the present argument, that each part of the human body was especially under the protection of its appropriate deity. For a particular application of the same principle, compare the influence of the zodiacal signs upon parts of the human body, as

alluded to by Chaucer. "Euerich of thise 12 signes hath respecte to a certein parcelle of the body of a man and hath it in gouernance; as aries hath thin heued, & taurus thy nekke and thy throte, gemyni thyn armholes & thin armes, & so forth;" On the Astrolabie, ed. Skeat, pt. i. sect. 21, l. 48. And see Additional Notes to the same, p. 79; and Plate VII, fig. 19. The following passage from Gower's Confessio Amantis, bk. v, is so precisely to the point here that I quote it entire, for the reader's convenience.

"The king of Bragmans, Dindimus,
Wroot vnto Alisaunder thus,
In blaming of the grekes faith;
And of the misbeleue he saith,
How thei for euery membre hadden
A sondry god, to whom thei spradden
Her armes, and of help besoughten.
Minerue for the heed thei soughten,
For she was wys, and of a man
The wit and reson which he can
Is in the celles of the brayn
Wherof thei made hir souerayn.
Mercurie, which was in his dawes
A gret speker of false lawes,
On him the keping of the tonge
Thei laiden, whan thei speke or songe.
For Bacchus was a glotoun eke,
Him for the throte thei biseke,
That he it wolde wasshen ofte
With sote drinkes and with softe.
The god of shulders and of armes
Was Hercules, for he in armes
The myghtieste was to fyghte;
To him the limmes thei bihyghte.
The god, whom [that] thei clepen Mart,
The brest to kepe hath for his part;
For with the herte in his image
That he addresse to his corage.
And of the galle the goddesse,
For she was ful of hastinesse
Of wrath, and lyght to greue also,
Thei made, and seide it was Iuno.
Cupyde, which the brond of fyre
Bar in his honde, he was the sire
Of the stomak, which boileth euer,
Wherof the lustes ben the leuer.
To the goddesse Ceres
Which of the corn yaf hir encrees,
Upon the feith that tho was take,
The wombes cure was betake.
And Venus, through the lecherye
For whiche thei hir deifye,
She kepte al doun the remenant
To thilke office apperteinant."

659. *Iubiter*, Jupiter. But the Lat. text has *Juno*, and it is remarkable that Gower follows it.[1] Either the Lat. text must be wrong, or else *deum* must be changed to *deam*. Cf. l. 697.

670. 'A dozen of wonders,' i. e. his twelve labours.

675. *Bollere*, hard drinker. On this word, see Notes to Piers Plowman, C. x. 194.

679. *Cupidus* is here in the dative case; 'to Cupid ye do all worship.'

682. 'And essayed (*or* followed after), whilst upon earth, that foolish fire.' Here *folie*, lit. folly, is used as an adjective. Cf. l. 688.

684. 'And kindles with the gleam all the lust of lechers;' Lat. libidinem accendit.

692. *Or any seggus ellus*, before any other persons besides. Ll. 691, 692 are due to the other Latin text—"Cererum frumenti datricem horrea ventris incolere;" ed. Bisse, p. 95.

696. The correction is obvious.

698. *He;* Juno is here supposed to be masculine, as in l. 717. 'And men say that he keeps a condemned spirit of the air, to speak wonders and foretell what is to happen, of wo or weal.' The sense of *in his worde one* is by no means clear; it may be 'by his word alone,' in which case *in* should rather have been *bi*. Or else it may mean 'in his world (sphere) alone;' only Juno was not reckoned as a planet or possessor of a sphere. *Spild* = condemned, ruined, fallen. Concerning spirits of the air, see Notes to Piers Plowman, C. ii. 127. The corresponding passage occurs in the text in Anonymus de Bragmanis, ed. Bisse, p. 95; which, however, gives quite a different turn to the passage, and makes Jupiter the god of the nose! "Jovem quasi aereum spiritum in naribus habere prætorium, Apollinem medicinæ et musicæ præceptorem palmarum habitacula possidere."

703. *Hin;* perhaps a mere error for *him;* yet it is the right form of the accusative. Cf. A.S. *hine*, G. *ihn*, the accusative, as distinct from A.S. *him*, G. *ihm*, the dative.

704. *Leueþ*, remains. Distinct from *leuen*, to believe; cf. l. 706.

708. Insert a comma after *godus; folk* is in the vocative case.

710. *That traie is to paie*, which it is a vexation (to you) to pay.

717. *Vn;* so in MS. Put for *on*, on.

719. *A swan;* evidently a translation of *cignum*, which would closely resemble *agnum* in a MS. And the text in Bisse's Palladius, p. 95, actually has the reading *cygnus*.

720. The corrections are easy; the MS. has *on vs*, where *on* is plainly not wanted, and *vs* = *vse* = use. And of course *vectus* is for *venus;* see Lat. text and cf. l. 693.

721. *On his den take*, taken in its den, i. e. nest.

732. *Mo*, more in number. *Telle*, count.

735. *Solepne;* so in MS. Read 'solēpne' = 'solempne.'

[1] So also in Bisse's Palladius, p. 95:—"*Junonem* iracundiæ presidentem præcordia tenere."

736. Ill spelt. For *wile*, read *wol*. The sense is—'for every (one of them) expects to have from a man (i. e. worshipper) his own customary offering.' The passage in ll. 734—747 is not in the Latin text at the foot of the page, but it answers to the following passage in Bisse's edition of Palladius, p. 95: "Nec patiuntur idem, si necessitas exigat, commune sibi pulvinar offerri, sed unusquisque Deus proprios flamines et sorte sibi datum munus assequitur, si tamen Dii appellandi sunt, quibus potestas non nisi in certis sibimet offerendis animalibus est data."

738. So in the MS., but it is nonsense. The right reading has since occurred to me, and is *obvious enough* when once guessed, though not easy to guess. For *y of reed* read *y-offred;* cf. ll. 711, 712, 718, 743. The sense is, of course—'Over such animals as are offered to them by men they have power, and over no other things.' The same thing is repeated below, in ll. 742, 743.

746. 'When the world fails,' i. e. comes to an end.

751. 'And every one (of them) is to pinch (*or* torment) that part of the body over which he presides, (in the place) where pain is unending,' i. e. in hell.

753. 'So many pains in the fire it will fall to your lot to endure.'

754. 'For your idle idols make you act ill.'

769. *Anȝ*, annoy, annoyance, harm; cf. l. 816. 'It nourishes harm for you, because they hear you not.'

772. *To do wreche*, to wreak vengeance, to torment. Cf. l. 777.

773. *Aftur;* either 'after' or 'according to'; here it is merely the former; cf. ll. 778, 781.

774. A corrupt line; alliteration and sense are at fault. The right reading is easily seen. We have merely to insert the missing word *wreche* (cf. ll. 772, 777) after *schulle*. We thus get:—"For þei schulle wreche in þis word wirche for sinne," i. e. for they will have to work vengeance for sin in this world. Even thus, the words *in þis word* are not in a very good position; but the same objection applies to l. 779 below, which see.

786. *Waken*, watch; cf. *vigilans* in the Lat. text.

788. 'To you is lechery dear, and (you like) to live by stealing.'

791—801. There is no mention of Cerberus nor Hydra in the Latin text at the foot of the page; but we find in Bisse's edition of Palladius, at pp. 96, 97, the following passage: "Tantalus est inexplebilis semperque sitiens cupiditatis aviditas; Cerberus mala ventris edacitas, cui quia non sufficit unum, terna ora collata sunt. Hydræ sunt vitiorum post satietatem renascentium fœditates; viperina corona est actuum sordidorum squalor horribilis."

794. *Foure hedus*, four heads (!). Read '*thre* hedus.'

796. *Godus*, goods, property, wealth; not 'gods.' So also in l. 963.

800. '(Who) is greedy to catch condemned souls.'

801. 'And, whether he gets few or many.'

803, 804. 'For ye are famed (for being) covetous, and can never cease (from being greedy), but ever go about to acquire worldly wealth.'

805. An obscure line. Insert a comma after *is*, and another after *burnus*, thus isolating *burnus* as being a vocative case. Then take *al is* = it is all; and we get—'and it is all about (i. e. it is all done with the object), O ye men, in order to feed your body;' i. e. ye do it all to pamper the body.

834. *Ne;* so in the MS. Better *no*. On the other hand, we have *no* for *ne* very often; cf. l. 841.

842. *Enuye;* the correction is certain; see *inuidiam* in the Lat. text.

844. *Wisli*, certainly; not 'wisely,' as in l. 913.

851. *You wantus*, fails you. *You* cannot be a nominative. So in l. 891.

868. 'Wherefore let no man be pleased (satisfied) with his poor fare (in this life), nor expect to have any reward for his hard living.'

872. *Lengede*, were to remain (*or* dwell).

891. 'The custom of the world fails you;' cf. l. 851.

893. *For mischef*, on account of your hard lot.

907. *Reward*, regard; the original spelling.

916. *But*, except, unless, if it were not. The line is parenthetical.

918. *As*, according as; or, seeing that.

920. The MS. has 'tenē,' i. e. 'tenen.' But it should have been simply 'tene;' see l. 950. *Tid* is short for *tideþ*, i. e. betides, happens. 'For sometimes sorrow happens, and sometimes mirth.'

930. Read "oþur wise;" the hyphen was inserted accidentally. The sense is—'in yet another way.'

941—952. This passage is from the other Latin text, in Bisse's edition of Palladius, p. 102: "Quis enim aut audaciam requirit in puero, aut in adolescente constantiam, aut mobilitatem poscit in vetulo? Multa sunt quæ visui nostro, alia quæ auditui, nonnulla quæ odoratui, vel tactui, vel sapori voluptuosa succurrunt, quibus ærumnarum quas ex labore contrahimus mulceatur asperitas; et ita modo saltationibus, modo cantibus oblectamur, nonnunquam [etiam][1] suavitate odoris vel gustu dulcedinis aut contactus [blanda mollitie refovemur. Quorum omnium suggerunt nobis elementa materiarum, quæ etiam vite nostre creduntur esse principia. Quorum permixtione][1] contraria humani generis structura conditur," &c.

941. *Cherched*, brought to church, "received into the church" after baptism; cf. Piers Plowman, B. i. 178, and the Notes upon it.

957. *Wonde*, fear; hence, refuse. *Won*, quantity, abundance.

969. *Wiþ oþur*, with another (seal?). It seems to refer to *sel* in the preceding line.

971. *He dide*, he caused (men) soon to read it, i. e. he caused it to be read. *Not* 'he did read it.'

979. Insert a comma after "thee;" i. e. 'we cause thee to know and hear, O celebrated king.'

[1] The word 'etiam' and the passage 'blanda—permixtione' are denoted in Bisse only by dots; no doubt his MS. was imperfect. They are supplied from MS. C. C. C. Camb. no. 370, fol. 37, b.

988. *Yhanteþ*, written for *yhanted*, practised; cf. note to l. 236.

992. 'That we are (as) bold gods, to guide men.'

999. 'Of things of many a fashion,' i. e. of various kinds of things; see note to l. 222.

1002. Parenthetical. 'According as men have wisdom to know the evil and the good.'

1007. The Latin text seems corrupt. The other text has—"Cur autem, quæso, visum est tibi nos continenter et pie viventes dicere Diis [Deos?], vel certe invidere Deo, siquidem justius in vos cadit ista suspicio?" ed. Bisse, p. 98.

1020. 'But (will bring upon you) harm for your want of discernment, when ye depart hence,' i. e. die.

1029. 'To relieve any one of severe hunger or thirst.'

1041. 'For every one well loves that which is like himself.' An allusion to the old proverb—"like to like," quoted by Gascoigne; or, "like will to like," quoted by Heywood. See Hazlitt's Eng. Proverbs, p. 265; and, in particular, Ray's remarks on "Birds of a feather flock together;" id. p. 90.

1042—1071. There is nothing answering to this in the Latin text at the foot of the page. It corresponds in some extent to the following: "Nam cum superbiam vestram nimiæ felicitatis tumor inflaverit, oblitique quod ex hominibis estis, firmatis Deum non curare[1] de mortalibus. Vobismetipsis templa fundatis atque aras erigitis, et immolationibus pecudum lætamini vos [in]vocari; hoc patri videlicet, hoc avo, cunctisque parentibus certum est fieri; hoc etiam tibi pyramidum forsitan promittit instructio. Quapropter furiosos vos esse dixerim, qui quod agitis ignoratis; . . . non sinitis ut miseriis vestris lachrymas saltem, quod est extremum munus pereuntium, dependamus (*sic*). Valde enim lamentandi estis, quibus inexpiabiles pro divinitatis injuria pœnæ præparantur: quarum certissimum documentum est Salmonei justa damnatio, qui fulgorem superni luminis æmulatus, quod imitabatur, expertus est; vel Enceladi sepultura, qui dum violentis ausibus aggredi cœlum manibus voluit, premitur tumulo montis igniti. Talibus remunerantur honoribus, qui se non cognoscunt esse mortales."—Anonymus de Bragmanis, ed. Bisse, pp. 98, 99.

1042. The reading *helpe* is absurd, and obviously corrupt; the word meant is plainly *ȝelpe*, i. e. boast. And the mis-writing of the word is easily accounted for, as the scribe's eye must have caught the last word of the next line, viz. *hele*.

1046. Perhaps corrupt. The stress of the alliteration falls upon *for*, which is not good; and the word *sorw* is suspicious. As it stands, it means—'And ye endeavour, with sorrow, to (make) your false gods hear;' and, even so, the construction is strained.

1058, 1059. 'And, it seems to us, one man much respects another, who righteously mourns for that other man on account of his sin.'

[1] The translator seems to have taken *curare* very literally, in the sense of to cure (*hele*), l. 1043.

1064. *Salonienus*, Salmoneus. See note to ll. 1042—1071, where the Latin original is given. Of Salmoneus we know that "his presumption and arrogance were so great that he deemed himself equal to Zeus, and ordered sacrifices to be offered to himself; nay, he even imitated the thunder and lightning of Zeus, but the father of the gods killed him with his thunderbolt, destroyed his town, and punished him in the lower world;" Smith's Classical Dictionary.

1068. *For-þi boþe*, wherefore both of them, i. e. Salmoneus and Enceladus. But the scribe has omitted the mention of Enceladus by name; see note above.

1084. *By-kenneþ*, makes known to.

1085. The MS. has "His a fledde sonde;" but the correction is easy, by help of the alliteration and l. 286.

1088. *By-set in an yle;* one here thinks of England! One reason why Englishmen "allow their lives and land" is, apparently, because they cannot easily get away! The Latin text has an especially satirical look about it; as if we are all said to be undergoing penal servitude in a prison.

1108. *Most to be-wepe*, most to be mourned for. Cf. l. 1059.

1124—1126. 'Ye are cursed in your life; for, men, I warn you that that which ye so esteem here to be a wholesome course of action is really great and woful penury and wretched pain.' Note *þat* = that which, in l. 1125.

1131. *Romme riden*, (who had) extensively travelled. *Romme* is here an adverb, and *riden* a past participle; the whole phrase forming an epithet.

1136. *Wrouhten*, should make. *Writen*, should write.

1137. According to Palladius de Bragmanibus (ed. Bisse, p. 2), the inscription was as follows:

ΑΑΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΣ. Ο. ΤΩΝ. ΜΑΚΕΔΟΝΩΝ. ΕΦΘΑΣΑ. ΜΕΧΡΙ. ΤΟΥ. ΤΟΠΟΥ. ΤΟΥΤΟΥ.

INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

DISCUSSED IN THE NOTES.

[*Words* discussed are denoted by beginning with a small letter; *Subjects*, by beginning with a capital.]

abowe, 577.
aftur, 198, 773.
Alliteration, 302, 437, 442, 774, 1046.
alse, 549.
any = annoyance, 769.
askyþ, 407.
bewepe, 1108.
Body, parts of the, 645.
bollere, 675.
borewen, 637.
breke spouce, 393.
brigge, 393.
but, 916; but ȝif, 549.
bykenneþ, 1084.
by time, 368.
cauus, 13.
Cerberus, 791.
cherched, 941.
cocodrill, 158.
comelokur, 407.
corn, coren, 407.
dide, 971.
dine, 492.
don deie, 402.
done, 222, 999.
doþ for to grete, 195.
Dragons, 156.
Enceladus, 1068.
fare, 28.
ferþe, 93.
folie, *adj.*, 682.
for, 65, 214, 221, 605.
galfule, 389.
Ganges, 138.
gilte, *verb*, 550.
glose, 391.
godus = goods, 796.
gol = gold, 575.
Gower quoted, 645.
grow, grow'd, 124.
happili, 35.
haunten, 371.
henne passe, 314.
heruest, 155.
hihten, 406.
hin, 703.
hir = here, 314.
holde = old, 327.
Hydra, 791.
Inscription on Alexander's pillar, 1137.
Juno, 698.
kennen, 240.
keuered, 351.

kiþe, 605.
lengede, 872.
let sende, 18.
lettrus, 245.
leueþ = remains, 704.
lie = flame, 555.
'Like to like,' 1041.
liten, 400.
liue = leue, 579.
lodlich, 592.
lome, 439.
Microcosm, 645.
mischef, 893.
ne = no, 834.
of kynde, 35.
Oridrace, 3.
oþir, 245.
oxian, 533.
Oxydracontæ, 3.
Pison, 138.
pres, 509.
procre, 347, 366.
Proper names, spelling of the, 3.
reward, 907.
romme riden, 1131.
Salmoneus, 1064, 1068.
schamlese, 20.
schine = shun, 416.
seg, 27, 371.
sende, 240.
Seven Stars, 477.
side, *adj.*, 481.
spild, 698.
Spirits of the air, 698.
spusbreche, 393.
stronde, 151, 524.
swangen, 492.
syte = city, 9.
there = where, 4.
tid, 22.
tid = tideþ, 920.
to, 28.
trinen, 132.
vnwasteþ, 236.
wantede, 263; wantus, 851.
what so, 359.
wisli = certainly, 844.
won, whon, 353, 957.
wonde, 957.
word, wordle, 25, 645, 698.
wraþede, 87.
writen, 1136.
wrouthe, 87; wrouhten, 1136.
yhanteþ, 988.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[The following Index, though not quite a full concordance, is very nearly so. Though I may not have cited *every word*, I have not wittingly omitted *any*. For very common words, such as *in*, *is*, I have only supplied about a couple of references. In the case of more unusual words, I have inserted *many* references, but by no means *all*.

The following symbols are used in a special sense; viz. *v.* = infin. mood of a verb; *pr. s.* = *third* person sing. of present tense; *pr. pl.* = *third* person plu. of present tense; *pt. s.* = *third* person sing. of past tense; *pt. pl.* = *third* person plu. of past tense. In the case of other persons, the number 1 or 2 is added. Other symbols are the usual ones.

References to "Alex. A." are to the Alexander, fragment A, in my edition of William of Palerne.]

A, *emphatic*, one, 324, 706; *unemphatic*, a, 45, &c.

A, *art.* a, 45, 105, 127, 131, &c.

Abide, to abide, 982; to endure, 1061.

A-boue, *prep.* above, 116; Abouen, 1000.

Aboute, *adv.* around, 54, 122, 440; round about, 843.

Abowe, *ger.* to bow down to (yourselves), 577; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Abowen, ye bow down to, ye worship, 675. It is *not* followed by *to*; hence *to* may be omitted in Alex. A. 1167. Sometimes, however, *to* occurs after it; see *abuzen* in Stratmann, p. 2. A.S. *ábúgan* (Grein).

Acorde, *ger.* to agree, 910; *acorde of*, to agree in, 875; Acordeþ, *pr. s.* is like, 482; Acordeþ to, agrees with, 903. O. F. *acorder*.

Aday, *adv.* by day, 425.

Addre, *s.* adder, 799; *pl.* Addrus, adders, 157.

Adoutede, redoubted, dreaded, 970; Adouted, 1130.

Afore, before, 405.

Aftur, after, 778, 781; afterwards, 167, 170, 1109; according to, 652, 773; Aftyr, after, 155.

Again, *adv.* in return, 817; again, 77; Agayn, *prep.* against, 347. *See* Agyn.

Age, *s.* age, 331, 931, 936, 939.

Agrisen, *pp.* terrified, afraid, 50. Cf. A.S. *ágrisan*, to dread (Bosworth).

Agyn, again, 246. *See* Again.

Ai-lastinge, everlasting, 70.

Air, air, 699.

Al, all, 153; *pl.* Alle, 37, 701.

Alaid, laid down, put down, quenched, 888. A.S. *álecgan*, to lay down.

Aldur-fadur, ancestor, 1050.

Alegge, *v.* to allege, 220.

Aliue, alive, 557.

Almus-dede, alms-deed, 870.

Alofte, on the top of, high amongst, 134; aloft, 503.

Alone, alone, 169, 641.

A-lose, *v.* to praise, 814; *pt. s.* Alosed, boasted (himself), 1066; *pp.* Alosed, renowned, 250, 554, 822, 1078, 1112; praised (as), renowned (as), 665, 694. O. F. *aloser*, to praise; from *los*, praise, Lat. *laus*.

Alowe, *v.* to approve of, 508; *pres. s.* Aloweþ, approves of, 212; 1 *p. s.*

Alowe, I approve of, 259; 1 *p. pl.* Alowen, we approve of, praise, 398; 2 *p.* Alowe, ye praise, 1093; *ger.* Alowe, to praise = to be praised, 874. O. F. *allouer*, to praise.

Alse, also, 549, 562, 782, 930, 1093. *See* Al-so.

Al-so, as, 42, 117; al-so = as, *and is found alternating with it. See* Alse.

Am, I am, 74, 75, 98, &c.

Amende, *v.* to amend, 1033.

Amongus, *prep.* amongst, 28, 353, 486, 845, 901, 1040.

And, *conj. generally* &, 4, 5, 7, &c.

Angur, anger, 660.

Anied, *pp.* annoyed, 816. *See* Any.

Anon, anon, 816.

Anoþur, another, 1058.

Answere, *s.* answer, 63, 822 (*rubric*); *pl.* Answerus, 24.

Any, *s.* annoy, annoyance, sorrow, grief, 769. *See* Anied.

Any, any, 6, 220, &c.

Apere, *v.* to appear, 104.

Ar, we are, 377; they are, 775. *See* Arn.

Aradde, *pt. s.* read, 821. *See* Arede.

Araie, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we array, 599.

Arede, *v.* to read, read out, 248; *pt. s.* Aradde, read, 821. See *aræden* in Stratmann, p. 7.

Arereþ, *pr. s.* rears, raises, excites, 92.

Ariseþ, *pr. pl.* arise, 662.

Armus, *pl.* (1) arms (of the body), 672, 674; (2) weapons, armour, 377, 521, 822.

Arn, *pres. pl.* are, 198, 338, 1112; Arne, 62; 1 *p.* we are, 1007; 2 *p.* ye are, 1097. *See* Ar, *and* Ben.

As, *conj.* as, 27, &c.; *cf.* al-so, 42.

Aschamed, *pp.* ashamed, 421.

A-seled, *pp.* sealed, 226, 1085; Aselede, 286. *See* Asele *in* Gl. to Alex. A.

Asent, assent, 1095.

Asingned, assigned, 321.

Askape, *v.* to escape, 159.

Askeþ, *pr. s.* asks, 170; Askyþ, requires, 407; *pt. s.* Askede, 55. *See* Axeþ.

Askinge, *s.* asking, question, 244.

Aspien, *v.* to espy, enquire, ask; *let aspien*, caused to make inquiries, 172; 1 *p. pr. pl.* Aspie, espy, see, 343.

Astored, *pp.* stored, 114.

At, to, 370; at, 1, 352.

Aþel, noble, 822. A.S. *æþele*, Grein, p. 50. *See* Hathel.

Atir, attire, 599.

Atiren, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we attire, 403.

Atlede, *pt. s.* essayed to go, 15. *See* Attele *in* Gloss. to Alex. A. Icel. *ætla*, to aim at.

Auaunt, boast, 570.

Auht, *adj.* good, excellent, i. e. full, complete (said of strength), 936. See *æhte*, *ohte* in Gloss. to Layamon, and *aht* in Stratmann; and cf. *áhtlíce* = manfully, in A.S. Chron. an. 1071. [Mr. Stevenson explains it by 'increased'; but it is not easy to get the form *auht* out of A.S. *eced* or *ge-eced*.]

Auowen, ye avow to be, ye declare to be, 671.

Auterus, *s. pl.* altars, 1045.

A-wecchen, *pr. pl.* awake, arouse, 96; *pr. s.* Awecheþ, awakes, 485.

Axeþ, *pr. s.* requires, 916. *See* Askeþ.

Ay, *adv.* ever, 334, 342, 377, 567, 1109.

A eins, *prep.* against, 82.

Bad, *pt. s. subj.* should pray, 602. A.S. *biddan*, to pray.

Bad, *pt. s.* bade, 147; 2 *p. s. pt.* Bade, didst bid, 511. A.S. *beódan*, to bid.

Badde, *adj.* bad, 1000.

Bakke, *s.* a bat, 723. Cf. Dan. *aftenbakke*, a bat, lit. evening-bat.

Bal, ball, 934.

Baldere, bolder, 582; Baldest, boldest, 1081. *See* Bold.

Bale, harm, evil, 163, 637; misery, 333; misfortune, 808.

Balful, *adj.* full of evil, angry, 512; grievous, 714.

Balfulli, cruelly, 598; Balfully, evilly, 775.

Banke, bank, 144.

Bannede, *pl.* cursed, 808.

Bar, *adj.* bare, 6; Bare, 33.

Baren, *pt. pl.* bore, 116. *See* Bere.

Baþ, bath, 423.

Be, *v.* to be, 103; *pr. s. subj.* may be, 68; whether (he) be, 418; whether (it) be, 867. *See* Ben.

Ben, we be, are, 33; ye are, 1012; they are, 200, 794, 1098. *See* Be.

Bere, *v.* to bear, 619; 2 *p. pr. s.* Berest, bearest, 342; *pr. s.* Bereþ, he bears, 683; Bereþ him, conducts himself, 574; *pt. pl.* Baren, 116.

Best, best, 224, 831, 1086; *def.* Beste, 260, 515.

Best, beast, 300, 608; *pl.* Bestes, 105, 858; Bestus, beasts, cattle, 54, 163, 598, 619, 872; *gen. pl.* Bestene, of beasts, 611, 640.

Bettere; *þe bettere*, the better, 404.

Bettur, better, 315; Betture, 1001; Betur, 103, 934; Beture, 962.

Be-wepe, *ger.* to lament, i. e. to be lamented over, 1108. *See* By-wepe.

Bi, by, 325, 327; beside, 54, 144, 152; as regards, respecting, with regard to, 209, 550; By, 560.

Bi, *for* Be, ye are, 636.

Bi, *an error for* Mi, my, 214. *See* Miȝht.

Biclipth, *pr. s.* beclips, embraces, 489.

Bidde, *pr. pl. subj.* may ask, 68; 1 *p. pr. pl.* we ask, 239; *pr. s.* Biddeþ, prays, 613.

Bigat, *pt. s.* begat, 194; By-gat, 825, 1083.

Biggede, *pt. s.* built, pitched, 144. Cf. Dan. *bygge*, to build.

Bi-holden, *ger.* to behold, 46.

Bi-hote, 1 *p. s. pr.* I promise, 227. A.S. *behátan.*

Bihouus, *pr. s.* it behoves, 856.

Bileue, belief, 272.

Bi-reue, *v.* to deprive, bereave, 31; *ger.* rob, 82.

Biseche, 1 *p. s. pr.* I beseech, 206.

Bi-sette, *pr. pl.* employ, keep busy, 758. *See* Bi-setten *in* Alex. A. 437.

Bi-side, *prep.* beside, 160, 341.

Bi-þenke, *v.* to think about, 285; 2 *p. pr. pl.* ye consider, 782.

Bitide, *v.* to happen, 700.

Bi-ȝonde, *prep.* beyond, 145.

Blasinge, blazing, 523.

Blastus, blasts, 488.

Ble, *s.* complexion, 411; appearance, brightness, 523. A.S. *bleó*, hue.

Bled, *pp.* bled, 543.

Blendeþ, *pr. s.* does away with, lit. blinds, 624; *pr. pl.* Blenden, blind, 523. A.S. *blendan*, to blind.

Blessed, blessed, 624.

Bliken, *v.* to shine, look bright, 411. A.S. *blícan*, to shine, blink.

Blinne, *v.* to cease, 803. *See* Alex. A. 398.

Blisse, joy, 541; *dat.* 330, 395, 1105; Blysse, 985.

Bliþure, more blithe, 411. *See* Blyþe.

Blod, blood, 611.

Blysse, bliss, 985. *See* Blisse.

Blyþe, *adj.* glad, happy, 624.

Bochours, *pl.* butchers (Lat. text *carnifices*), 750.

Bodius, *pl.* bodies, 320; Bodies, 423. *See below.*

Body, 644, 892; Bodi, 6. *See above.*

Bold, bold, 127, 713; *pl.* Bolde, 992; *def.* Bolde, 147; *voc.* Bolde, 512. *See* Baldere.

Boldus, *pl.* buildings, habitations, 437, 848, 852. A.S. *bold*, a dwelling; Grein.

Bole, bull, 737.

Bollere, *s.* lit. bowler, i. e. fond of the bowl, tippler, hard drinker, 675. *See note.*

Bone, *s.* boon, petition, 602, 764, 1049; *pl.* Bonus, 68, 768.

Bonus, *pl.* bones, 594.

Boot, boat, 168; Bot, 183.

Bor, *s.* boar, 713, 736.

Bore, *pp.* born, 808.

Borewen, *v.* to bail, give security for a person, release on security, 637.

Borou, borough, town, 934.

Bost, boast, pride, 637, 1068.

Bostful, boastful, 1017.

Bote, *s.* advantage, profit, 962; remedy, 1036. A.S. *bót.*

Bote, but, except, 434.

Bourde, *dat.* jest, 469.

Bow, *s.* bough, 127, 135; *pl.* Bowus, 116, 351.

Braunchus, branches, 124, 134, 503, 729.

Bredde, *pp.* bred, by birth, 287; Bred, 175, 586.

Breke, *ger.* to break; *breke spouce*, to break espousals, to commit adultery, 393. *See* Spousebreche.

Brem, *adj.* loud, 503; *pl.* Breme, furious, 923. A.S. *breme*, renowned.

Brem, *adv.* mightily, furiously, 521.

Bremliche, *adv.* briskly (*but merely an expletive*), 134, 586. *See above.*

Brenne, *v.* to burn, 235; *pt. s.* Brente, burnt, 555; *pres. pt.* Brenninge, 683. A.S. *brinnan.*

Breste, *dat.* breast, 665.

Breþeren, brethren, 430; Breþurne, 287.

Brid, *s.* a bird, 134; *pl.* Briddus, 302, 956; *gen. pl.* Briddene, of birds, 503.

Brigge, *dat.*; *must be an error for* briche, i. e. breach, violation of the marriage-vow, adultery, 393. See *bruche* in Stratmann, p. 78; and cf. A.S. *bryce*, a breach, violation. And see note to l. 393.

Briht, bright, 923; Bryht, 521, 683, 926.

Bringe, *v.* to bring, 393; *pl.* Bringen, bring, 714; 2 *p. s.* Bringest, 521; 3 *p.* Bringeþ, brings, 372; *v.* Bringe forþ, to produce, 307.

Brod, *s.* brood, 302; kindred, 430.

Brode, broad, 968.

Brond, brand, 683.

Brouht, *pp.* brought, 430, 1075.

Broun, brown, dusky, 923.

Bryht, bright, 521, 683, 926.

Bryngen, ye bring, 719; *pr. pl.* Brynge, 632. *See* Bringe.

Bulde, *ger.* to build, 437, 1044; *v.* Bulden, 1134; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Bulde, ye build, 848.

Burde, *s.* bride, woman, 418; *pl.* Burdus, 893.

Buren, 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye bury, 593; *pp.* Bured, 775.

Burn, *s.* man, 103, 135, 175, 426, 574, 582; burn oþur burde = man or woman, 418; *pl.* Burnus, 147, 713.

Busiliche, *adv.* busily, 239.

Buskede, *pt. s.* got ready, endeavoured, 135. Icel. *búa-sk*, to prepare oneself.

Busy, busy, 426.

But, unless, 366; except, 10, 456; Butȝif, unless, 549, 571.

By, as regards, 795; by means of, 56.

Bydewen, *pr. pl.* bedew, 425.

Bygan, began, 972.

Bygat, *pt. s.* begat, 825, 1083.

Byhouus, *pr. s.* it behoves, 866.

By-kenneþ, *pr. s.* commends to, makes known to, 1084.

By-lad, *pp.* led astray, 906.

By-leue, belief, 1113.

By-secheþ, *pr. s.* beseeches, 811.

Byset, *pp.* beset, encompassed, 1088.

Bytauhte, *pp.* made over to, given over to, 1069.

By-wepe, *ger.* to lament over, 1114; 1 *p. pr. pl.* that we may lament over, 1057; *pr. s.* Bywepeþ, laments for, 1059. *See* Be-wepe.

Cache, *ger.* to catch, 800.

Caire, care, *i. e.* anxiety, eagerness, 29. *See* Care.

Caire, *pr. pl.* go, 59. *See* cairen *in* Stratmann, p. 85.

Calf, calf, 612.

Callede, *pt. s.* called, 141; *pt. pl.* called, 527; *pp.* Called, 11, 138, 173, 356, 526, 799, 1004; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Callen, we call, 308.

Can, *pr. s.* knows, 932.

Care, anxiety, trouble, 1102; misery, 679; Caire, eagerness, 29.

Carefule, *pl.* full of care, *i. e.* miserable, wretched, vain, 651; Careful, causing care, terrible, 158.

Carien, *v.* to carry, 184; ye carry, 725.

Carpe, *ger.* to talk, 179, 230; Carpen, 166, 455. Cf. Gl. to Alex. A.

Cas, case; *in cas*, perhaps, 228.

Casteþ, *pr. s.* casts, 483; *pl.* Casten, 767; *pt. s.* Caste, 480.

Catelus, *gen. pl.* of chattels, of goods, 370.

Cauys, *s. pl.* caves, 7; Cauus, 38, 52, 59, 434; people of the caves, 13.

Chalis, chalice, cup, 727.

Chariteuus, charitable, *or rather* meritorious, 894.

Chase, 1 *p. s. pr.* endeavour, *lit.* chase, pursue, 110.

Chaste, *adj.* 892.

Chaste, *v.* to chasten, 379.

Chaunce, chance, opportunity, 1001; fortune, 110; destiny, 1080.

Chaungeþ, *pr. s.* changes, 922; Chaunge, ye change, 569; *pr. pl.* Chaungen, 96; *pt. pl. subj.* Chaungede, should change, were to change, 417.

Chef, *adj.* chief, 107, 1080.

Cherched, *pp.* churched, *i. e.* brought to church to be baptised, 941.

Chere, *s.* cheer, face, look, cheerfulness, 83, 411, 727.

Chese, *v.* to choose, 941, 1001; *pt. s.* Ches, chose, 107; *ger.* Chese, to choose, 417.

Cheue, *ger.* to achieve, to succeed, 110.

Children, 53, 417.

Chois, choice, 894; *pl.* Choisus, 997.

Chois, *adj.* choice, precious, 727.

Chose, *pp.* chosen to be, 1080.

Claime, *v.* to claim, 1003; *ger.* Claimen, 899; ye claim, 1013. *See* Clameþ.

Clameþ, *pr. s.* claims, 625.

Clanly, *adv.* cleanly, 833; purely, 629; Clanliche, cleanly, 288.

Clene, *adj.* clean, pure, true, 1003; clean, 496; pure, 623, 899.

Clene, *adv.* clean, entirely, 1099.

Clene-mindede, *pl.* pure in mind, 626.

Clennesse, cleanness, 625.

Clepeþ, *pr. s.* calls, 625; *pp.* Cleped, 636, 1003.

Clere, clear, 489.

Clergie, learning, 899

Cleuen, ye cleave; *cleuen in*, cleave to, 636.

Closeþ, *pr. s.* closes, encloses, 489.

Cloþ, cloth, 402.

Cloþus, *s. pl.* clothes, 1013.

Cloudus, clouds, 118.

Cocodrillus, crocodiles, 158. See the note.

Cof, *adv.* quickly, soon, 42, 247. A.S. *caf*, prompt; Grein.

Cofli, *adv.* quickly, 48, 125; Cofliche, 64; Cofly, 1037, 1076.

Cold, *s.* cold, 331.

Colour, colour, 482.

Comaundede, *pl. s.* commanded, 125.

Come, *v.* to come; *come schal*, is to come, 363; *ger.* Come, 166; Come, ye come, 1012; *pr. s.* Comeþ, comes, 331, 436, 1102; it befals, 833; *no comeþ*, comes not, 905; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* Come, mayst come, 29; *pt. pl.* Come, came, 818; *pp.* Come, 247.

Comeliche, comely, 730.

Comelokur, comelier, 407, 414.

Comine, common, 715; *comine peple*, people in general, the world at large, 875.

Cominnge, *s.* coming, due course, 325. (*Reading uncertain.*)

Conne, *pr. s. subj.* may know, 571.

Conquerour, conqueror, 26, 60.

Conscience, 903; Consience, 767, 987.

Contre, country, 4; *pl.* Contres, 26.

Coren, *pp.* chosen, 415. *See below.*

Corn, *pp.* chosen; *comelokur corn*, chosen as comelier, 407; *kindeli coren*, chosen by nature, 415. *Coren* is the *pp.* of Chese, q. v.

Corn, corn, 725.

Corone, crown, 978.

Corsed, *pp.* cursed, 730, 1023; Corsede, 679, 1037; *pl.* Corsede, 767, 800.

Cortais, *adj.* courteous, 64; cortais i-kid = known to be courteous, famous for courtesy.

Coruen, *pp.* carved, *i. e.* shaped, made, 431.

Cost, *s.* coast, country, 141.

Costom, custom, wont, 504, 875; Costum, 715, 725; *pl.* Costomus, 60, 213. *See* Custum.

Couaite, *v.* to covet, desire, 213; 1 *p. s. pt.* Couaitede, I wished, 179; *pr. s.* Couaiteþ, covets, 942.

Couaitise, covetousness, 257, 370; Couaytise, 1037.

Couaitous, covetous, greedy, 800; *pl.* Couaitouse, 803.

Couþ, *pp. as adj.* known, famous, 191. A.S. *cúð*, known.

Craft, skill, 410, 414; *pl.* Craftus, crafts, trades, 837; skilful works, 702.

Crauen, *pr. pl.* crave, endeavour, 414.

Crye, *ger.* to cry, 385.

Custum, custom, 833. *See* Costom.

Daies, *s. pl.* days, 76, 444, 876, 928; days (of life), 401; *gen. pl.* days', 1098; *daies time*, course of your days, 584. *See* Day.

Daintè, pleasure, 876.

Dainteys, *s. pl.* dainties, 306.

Damned, damned, 1111.

Day, day, 118; lifetime, 670, 1111; appointed time, 326.

Ded, *adj.* dead, 130, 446, 634; Dede, 595.

Dede, *pt. pl.* did, 652. *See* Do.

Dede, *s.* deed, act, 222, 380, 400, 505, 634; *and see note to* 349; *pl.* Dedes, 212; *pl.* Dedus, 584, 595, 630, 909, 999; Dedeus, 694, 1017.

Defoule, *v.* to defoul, tread upon, 1027. O. F. *defouler*, to tread under foot.

Degre, degree, advance, 931.

Deie, *v.* to die, 399, 589, 1061.

Deie, *v.* to dye; *don deie*, we cause to be dyed, 402.

Deliten, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we delight, 505.

Deme, I judge, suppose, 965; ye suppose, 834, 1007; Demen, ye suppose, 870; *pr. s.* Demus, dooms, adjudges, decides, 325; Demeþ, 589; *pp.* Demed, adjudged, doomed, 78, 85, 110, 1060; considered, 958; *demed for wise*, accounted as wise, 218.

Demere, *s.* judge, ruler, 176.

Den, den, 446; nest, 721.

Dep, deep, 1098.

Dere, dear, 176, 218, 810.

Dere, *adv.* dearly, chiefly; *dere þoute*, seemed good, 1133.

Derely, *adv.* dearly, 364, 826.

Dereworþe, *adj.* noble, excellent, 243; Derworþe, precious, 721.

Derye, *pr. s. subj.* may harm, 71; *v.* Derie, 94. A. S. *derian*, to harm.

Desire, 1 *p. pr. pl.* we desire, 71, 306.

Destenè, destiny, 89, 984.

Deþ, death, 71.

Deuelus, *s. pl.* devils, 390, 608.

Dewus, *s. pl.* dews, 425.

Dide, *aux.* did, 248; caused; *dide hit red*, caused (men) to read it, 971; *dide calle*, caused to be called, 166; Dide him, *pt. s. refl.* put himself; *dide him forþ*, put himself forward, *i. e.* advanced, 138.

Dimme, *pl.* dim, 928.

Dine, *s.* din, noise, 492.

Dintus, *s. pl.* dints, blows, 85.

Discorden, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we disagree, 222; *pr. pl.* disagree, 273.

Dismembre, *ger.* to dismember, take limb from limb, 750.

Dispit, despite, reproach, 958.

Distroie, *ger.* to destroy, 79.

Dite, *s.* ditty, story, 819; Chaucer has *ditè;* tr. of Boethius.

Diuerse, diverse, 402; Diuerce, 492; divers, 999.

Diuisede, *pt. s.* planned, 670.

Do, cause; *we do þe to kenne*, we make thee know, 979; to do, 672. *See* Dide, Dede, Don.

Doctour, doctor, 249; Docktour, teacher, 973; *pl.* Doctourus, 778; Doctoures, 217; Docturus, 798.

Dolfinus, dolphins, 492.

Doluen, *pp.* dug, 447.

Dome, doom, 984; *pl.* Domus, judgments, 380.

Don, *v.* to do, shew (mercy), 901; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye do, 273, 649; *pr. pl.* cause, 223, 754; *don þe to knowe*, do thee to wit, 422; *pp.* Don, ended, 118; put, 1098; *we don deie*, we cause to be dyed, 402. *See* Do.

Done, *s.* kind of, 222, 999. *See* note to P. Plowman, B. 18. 298.

Doom, judgment, 1061. *See* Dome.

Dosain, dozen, 670.

Doþ, *pr. s.* causes, 505, 880, 928; *doþ for to grete, greets*, 195. *See* Don.

Douhtie, *adj. as sb.* doughty man, warrior, 349; Douhty, doughty, 422.

Doun, down, 130, 446.

Doute, *v.* to fear, 326; *pp.* Doutede, dreaded, dread, 422; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Doute, we fear, 349.

Douue, dove, 721.

Dradde, *pt. s.* dreaded, 192, 823, 1079.

Dragonus, dragons, 156.

Drawen hem, draw near, 156.

Drawht, *s.* draught, 529.

Dreche, *pr. s. subj.* may vex, may afflict, 1032. A.S. *dreccan*, to vex.

Dredful, dreadful, 156.

Drie, *adj. pl.* dry, 529.

Drie, *ger.* to suffer, 753, 857; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we endure, 291. A.S. *dreógan*, to endure.

Drihten, *s.* the Lord, 88. A.S. *drihten.*

Drinke, *ger.* to drink, 355, 757; *v.* 1026.

Drinke, *s.* drink, 1032; Drynke, 791.

Drinkinke-drawht, drinking-draught, quantity drunk, 529.

Drouhþe, drought, 1032.

Drounke, drunken, 676.

Dryen, ye endure, 1095. *See* Drie.

Drynke, *dat.* drink, 791.

Dryue, *v.* to drive, 853.

Duk, duke, 970.

Dul, *s.* dool, sorrow, grief, misfortune, mourning, 89, 130, 778, 875, 1111. F. *deuil.*

Dulfully, *adv.* sorrowfully, 390. *See* above.

Dure, *v.* to endure, 364; *ger.* to last, 78, 364; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Duren, ye remain, 634.

Dwelle, *v.* to dwell, 998; *pr. s.* Dwelleþ, dwells, 616; *pr. pl.* Dwellen, 339; *pt. s.* Dwelde, dwelt, 247.

Dwelle, *s.* delay, 276

Echon, each one, 760, 851, 1053; Echone, 626, 888.

Echue, *v.* to eschew, 1001.

Eggen, *pr. pl.* incite, egg on, 757.

Egre, eager, keen, 1129.

Egrest, most eager, most keen, 251, 975.

Elde, *dat.* old age, 943.

Eldren, *pl.* elders, ancestors, 776; Eldrene, 468.

Eldure, elder, older, 936.

Ellus, *adv.* else, besides, 409, 1019; otherwise, 421, 862, 1008.

Emperour, emperor, 24, 812.

Enchesoun, *s.* reason, 107. O.F. *enchesun*, occasion, reason.

Ende, end, 75.
Endelese, endless, immortal, 669.
Endite, *v.; let endite*, caused to be written, 181; *pr. s.* Enditeþ, endites, indites, 810, 826; *pt. s.* Endited, wrote, dictated, 1133.
Enditinge, enditing, 243.
Endure, *v.* 269.
Endus, *pr. s.* ends, 1111; Endeþ, 1129; *pt. s.* Endid, perished, 1065; *pp.* Ended, put an end to, 1062.
Enemis, enemies, 338, 343.
Enforceþ, *pr. s.* forces, 688.
Engendreþ, engenders, produces, 587; *pp.* Engendred, 656.
Englaymed, *pp.* glued fast, held as by birdlime or a viscous substance, stuck fast, 676. "Gleymyn or yngleymyn, *visco, invisco.* Gleymows, *viscosus, glutinosus;*" Prompt. Parv. p. 198, q. v.
Enoine, *ger.* to anoint, 410.
Enquere, *v.* to enquire, 148.
Ensample, example, 233, 552, 566.
Enuie, envy, 283, 373; Enuye, 842, 993, 1008.
Ere, *s.* ear, 948; *pl.* Erene, 812. A.S. *eáre*, pl. *eáran.*
Eren, 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye plough, 201. *See* Erie.
Erie, ye plough, 847; Erien, 850; 1 *p. pl. pr. subj.* Erie, we may plough, 293. A.S. *erian*, Goth. *arjan*, cognate with Lat. *arare.*
Eritage, heritage, 981.
Erne, *v.* to earn, 201.
Erren, ye err, 1053.
Errours, *pl.* errors, 744.
Erþe, *dat.* earth, 57, 70, 86, 106; *nom.* 981.
Erþliche, earthly, 440, 1053; Erþeliche, 360; Erthely, 849.
Ese, ease, 360, 539, 757.
Et, *for* Eteþ, *pr. s.* he eats, 862. *See below.*
Ete, *ger.* to eat, 757; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Eten, we eat, 360; 2 *p.* ye eat, 539. *See above.*
Euene, *adv.* exactly, *or* wholly, 1139.
Euere, for ever, 364.
Eueri, each one (severally), 106, 736; Euerich, 751; Euerych a, every, 86; Euery, 101.
Euyl, *adv.* ill, evilly, 1065.
Euyre, ever, at any time, 387.
Exkused, *pp.* excused, 277, 851.

Fablus, fables, 1070.
Face, 408, 410.
Faileþ, fails, 509; Failus, ends, 746; *pt. s.* Failede, lacked, 266.
Fain, *adj.* fain, anxious, willing, 237.
Fain, *adv.* gladly, 806.
Fair, fair, 113, 716; Faire, 45; *pl.* Faire, 495.
Faire, *adv.* fairly, 572.
Fairere, fairer, 405.
Faiþ, faith, 966; belief, 1113.
Faiþful, true, 65; faithful, 908.
Falce, false, 396, 550, 638, 643, 1046, 1113; Fals, 397.
Fale, *adj.* many, 317, 528, 633; *al so fale*, just so many, 643, 648. A.S. *fela*, much.
Falleþ, *pr. s. impers.* it falls (to him), it is (his) duty, 648; Fallus, befals, 323, 326; it suits, 753.
Fare, *v.* to go, 330; to act, go on, 266; to travel, 28, 45, 162; to act, 397; 2 *p. s. pr.* Farest, goest, comest, 79; *pr. s.* Farus, goes, comes, 113; it fares, 237; Fareþ, fares, happens, 795; 1 *p. pl.* Faren, we go, 332, 1024; 2 *p.* ye fare, go; *ȝe wiþ faren* = ye fare with, *i. e.* possess, 242; *pr. pl.* Fare, go, 376; Faren, go, 341; Fare wiþ, go with, use, 618; Faren, fare, 1116; Fare, *pp.* travelled, 1137; gone, advanced, 939; *fare wiþ*, to live upon, 202. *And see* Ferde.
Fare, *s.* fare, food, 868, 878; condition, 48, 150, 214; welfare, 986; doings, 1096.
Fast, *s.* fast, fasting, 538.
Faste, *adv.* quickly, 51.
Faute, fault, 303.
Fauure, ye favour, 740.

Feche, *ger.* to fetch, 125.

Feden, *ger.* to feed, 861; Fede, 805; Fed, to eat, 303; *pr. s.* Fedeþ, feeds, 955, 1021; *pp.* Fed, 497.

Fel, *pt. s.* fell, 130.

Fel, cruel, 664.

Feld, field, 105, 113, 295; *pl.* Feldus, 494. A.S. *feld.*

Fele, 1 *p. pr. pl.* we feel, 333.

Fendus, *pp.* fiends, 649, 705, 1069.

Fenked, *pp.* vanquished, 339. *See* Alex. A. 111. From F. *vaincre*, to conquer.

Fer, *adj.* far, 939; *adv.* farther, 162.

Ferde, *pt. s. subj.* would fare, *i. e.* would seem, 105; *pt. pl.* went, 54, 163; *pt. s.* Ferde, 55; happened, 137. *See* Fare.

Fere, fear, 346.

Ferke, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* we hasten, 300. See *ferkien* in Stratmann, and *ferke* in Gl. to Alex. A.

Ferþe, *adv.* forth, on, 93.

Fet, feet, 1027.

Figure, 600.

Fihche, *ger.* to fish, 204.

Fihs, fish, 491; Fihcs, 298; Fihch, 955; Fihches, fishes, 492.

Fihtere, fighter, warrior, 664.

Fihtinge, *pres. pt.* fighting, 79; 2 *p. s. pr.* Fihtest, fightest, 341.

Fillen, *pr. pl.* fill, 317, 795; 2 *p.* ye fill, 538.

Fin, *adj.* fine, grand, 591, 600, 1015.

Finden, *v.* to find, 1070; *ger.* Finde, 204; *pr. s.* Findeþ, supplies, 352; 1 *p. pl.* Finde, we find, 303; Finden, 962; we procure (what we want), 375; 2 *p.* Finde, ye find, 865; *pr. s. subj.* may find, 232; 1 *p.* I may find, 211.

Fingrus, *s. pl.* fingers, 332, 1015.

Finuede, *pp.* finned, furnished with fins, 298.

Fir, *s.* fire, 136, 753, 1069; Fur, 682.

Fir-hil, fire-hill, hill of fire; *it should rather be* fir-helle, *i. e.* hell of fire, 1069.

Fiȝhte, *ger.* to fight, 29, 37.

Fle, *ger.* to flee, 334.

Flech, flesh, 339, 688, 861.

Flechliche, fleshly, 334.

Fledde, 1 *p. s. pt. subj.* were to flee from, 89.

Fletinge, *pr. part.* swimming, 491. A.S. *fleótan*, to float, swim; see *fleoten* in Stratmann, *p.* 173.

Flod, *s.* flood, 531, 1023; *and rubric to l.* 137; 138, 146.

Flourus, *pl.* flowers, 495, 730.

Fode, food, 202, 298, 352, 354, 450, 860.

Fol, *s.* fool, 266; *pl.* Folus, 627, 1113.

Folewe, *v.* to follow, 232, 874; *pr. s.* Foleweþ, follows, remains with, 376; Folweþ, follows, 155; *pl.* Folewen, follow, 528.

Folie, folly, 591, 686, 880, 966; *pl.* Folies, 633; Foliuus, 806.

Folie, *adj.* foolish, 682.

Folk, folk, people, 37, 111, 146.

Folliche, foolish, 603, 740.

Fom, foam, 204, 491.

Fon, *s. pl.* foes, 339, 342, 346, 397.

Fonde, *v.* to endeavour, 214, 301 401, 567; to endeavour to fulfil, 528; Fonden, to endeavour, 874; *pr. s.* Fondes, attempts, endeavours, 112; *ger.* Fonden, to endeavour to fulfil, 457; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Fonde, try, try to achieve, 538; Fonden, ye endeavour, 643; ye seek after, 787, 871; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* Fonde, mayst attempt, 37; *pr. s. subj.* fonde he fewe othur fale, whether he may seek after (*i. e.* obtain) few or many, 801. A.S. *fandian*, to seek after, prove, try, enquire into. *See* Founde.

Fonge, *v.* to receive, 1123; to receive, take, learn; *soþ fonge*, learn the truth, 552. A.S. *fón*, for *fangan.*

For, *prep.* on account of, 159, 163; *for wise*, as wise, 218.

For, *conj.* because, inasmuch as, 65, 221, 380, 654, 660, 664, 667, 669, 1092; in order that, 605; for, 31, &c.

Fordon, *pp.* ended, put an end to, 118.

Forgiuen, *v.* to forgive, 336.

For-leten, *v.* to leave entirely, forsake, 329.

Forsaide, aforesaid, 19; Fore-saide, foresaid, 113.

Forsaken, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we forgo, 377.

Forþ, forth, 1074; forward, 138; on, 939; *forþ bringe*, bring forth, 307.

Forþen, *v.* to carry out, fulfil, 570. Cf. mod. E. *to further*.

For-þi, for that reason, therefore, 110, 147, 206, 313, 558, 1068; Forþy, 910. *Written* forþei, 313, 558.

Forwes, *s. pl.* furrows, 294.

Foule, *adv.* foully, ill, 1065.

Foulen, ye defile, 633.

Founde, *ger.* to attempt, 392, 913; *v.* to experience, follow after, 392; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Founden, we endeavour, 334; 2 *p.* Founde, ye endeavour, 901, 1046; Founden, ye endeavour, 708; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* Founde, mayst endeavour, 337; *pt. s.* Foundede, followed after, sought after, 682. *See* Fonde.

Founde, *pp.* found, 32, 152, 315, 1116; found to be, 1023.

Foundur, founder, 664.

Foure, four, 794.

Four-fotede, fourfooted, 300.

Fourme, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we form, fashion, 600.

Fram, from, 215; *see* Fro.

Fre, liberal, 953.

Freke, man, 1004; *pl.* Frekus, men, 120, 126, 953, 1117. A.S. *frec*, bold; *freca*, a hero.

Freliche, *adj.* excellent (lit. free-like), 126. (*Perhaps an error for* ferliche, *i. e.* wonderful.)

Frely, *adv.* freely, indubitably, 1004, 1117.

Frend, friend, 1004.

Friþ, *s.* frith, wood, forest of trees, 120. *See* Gl. to Alex. A.

Fro, *prep.* from, 52, 113, 480; From, 53; Fram, 215.

Frut, fruit, 116, 120, 126, 352, 953, 1117; *pl.* Frutus, 114.

Ful, full, 105.

Ful, *adv.* very, 2, 5, 113, 721.

Fulfille, *ger.* to fulfil, 563.

Fullen, ye fill, 1015.

Fulsome, *adj.* filled with food, satisfied, 497.

Fundeþ, *pr. s.* finds, 861.

Fur, fire, 682; *see* Fir.

Galful, *adj.* eloquent, 668; blissful, 389. The context in l. 668 requires the sense 'eloquent'; in l. 389 it is a mere expletive. See the note to l. 668.

Game, game, amusement, 470; *pl.* Gamus, games, 935.

Gan, *aux.* did, 121, 129.

Gay, gay, 883, 1028.

Gaynsaie, 1 *p. pr. pl.* we gainsay, speak against, 396; 3 *p.* Gaynsain, 420.

Gaynus, *pr. s.* it profits, 1028. *See* Gayne *in* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Geduren, ye gather, 575.

Gentil, gentle, 23.

Ger, *s.* gear, equipment, 522.

Gete, *ger.* to obtain, get, 305; 1 *p.* I get, acquire, 84; 2 *p.* Getist, gettest, 30; 2 *p. pl.* Geten, ye get, 796.

Gien, *ger.* to guide, govern, 561; Gie, 992; *pr. s.* Gieþ, controls, 661, 670.

Gile, *v.* to beguile, cheat, 464.

Gile, guile, 748, 758.

Gilt, *s.* guilt, 386, 994, 1059.

Gilte, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we offend, 384; 2 *p.* ye sin, 550.

Gin, *s.* contrivance, 656.

Giour, *s.* guider, ruler, 703. *See* Gien.

Gise, guise, 883.

Giue, we give, devote, 305, 994; 2 *p.* ye give, 638; Giuen no of, ye care not for, 841; *imp. pl.* Giuus, give ye, 972.

Glad, 391.

Glade, *v.* to be glad, to rejoice, 472, 1110.

Gle, *s.* glee, mirth, 789.

Glose, *v.* to flatter, 391.

Glose, flattery, 1016.

Glotenye, gluttony, 676.

Glotounius, gluttonous, 790.

God, *adj.* good, 561, 668, 690; *pl.* Gode, 274. *See* Goode.

God, *s.* property, 638; *pl.* Godus, goods, 604, 804, 987. *See* Good.

God, God, 36, 107; *dat.* to Gode, with God, before God, 476; *pl.* Godus, gods, 396, 550, 638; Goodus, 95; Godous, 772; *gen. sing.* Godus, God's, 315, 1004.

Godesse, goddess, 561; Goodesse, 690, 695.

Gol, gold, 575; Gold, 389, 1015, 1021.

Gold, *adj.* golden, 525; *or read* gold-ore, *a compound sb.*

Gome, *s.* man, 30, 83, 94, 101, 246, 550; *pl.* Gomus, 11, 522, 661, 796, 996.

Gon, *v.* to go; *sendeþ him gon*, sends (a letter) to go to him, 197. [The reading *ioie*, i. e. joy, would be far better; cf. l. 254.] *See below.*

Gon, *pr. pl.* go, walk about, 772, 883; 2 *p.* ye go, 1013.

Good, *s.* good, 30, 229; *dat.* Goode, righteousness, 989. *See* God, *s.*

Goode, *adj. pl.* good, 23. *See* God.

Goodesse, goddess, 690, 695. *See* Godesse.

Goodis, goods, property, 305; Goodus, 1103; *see* God.

Goodly, righteously, in a right spirit, 1059; well, 972; Goodliche, excellently, 246.

Goodus, *for* Goddus, i. e. gods, 95; *see* God.

Gostliche, spiritual, 772.

Goþ, *pr. s.* goes, walks, 101.

Gouernance, conduct, 568 (*rubric*).

Grace, grace, 84, 254; divine assistance, 673; *ȝour grace*, favour shewn to you, 606.

Graciouce, gracious, favourable, propitious, 193; Graciose, 1082; Graciouse, 824; Graciouce, pleasing, 954.

Graie, gray, 1138.

Graiþus, *pr. s.* prepares, makes ready, sends, 977. *See* Grayþe.

Grante (*miswritten* grane), to grant, 383. *See* Graunte.

Graspen, *v.* to grasp, snatch at (used with *on*), 502.

Graue, *s.* grave, 447; *pl.* Grauus, 590.

Graue, *pp.* graven, 1138; dug, 7.

Grauel, gravel, 525.

Graunt, *s.* grant, 87.

Graunte, *v.* to grant, 602; *ger.* 764; 1 *p. pr. s.* Graunte, I grant, 68; *pr. pl.* 709; *pp.* Graunted, 73.

Grauntinge, *s.* a granting, 254.

Grauus, *pl.* graves, 590. *See* Graue.

Grayþe, 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye prepare, 590; *pp.* Grayþed, prepared, made ready, 447. Icel. *greiþa*, to prepare.

Greden, 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye cry aloud for, implore, 606; ye pray, 764. A.S. *grǣdan*, to exclaim.

Gref, grief, harm, 50.

Grene, *pl.* green, 124.

Grene, *s.* green, i. e. green things, 502.

Gret, great, 452, 713; *pl.* Grete, 7; great men, 1012; *sing.* 124 (*or perhaps adv.*, i. e. greatly).

Grete, *ger.* to greet, 195; 1 *p. pr. pl.* we greet, worship, 274.

Gretinge, greeting, 977; *and see below.*

Gretiþinge, greeting, 254. [*Perhaps miswritten for* Gretinge, q. v.]

Grettest, greatest, 252, 976.

Greue, *v.* to grieve, 228; Greuen, 229; *pr. pl.* Greuen, grieve, 709, 770.

Grime, grim, 1138.

Grimmest, most fierce, 87, 252.

Griþ, *s.* protection, safety; *of griþ*, for their protection, 764. *See* Alex. A., 151.

Ground, *dat.* ground, 7, 10; Gronde, 119; Grounde, 447.

Groweþ, *pr. s.* grows, 931; Growus, 954; *pt. s.* Grouuede, grew, 124

(see note); *pp.* Growe, grown, 133; Igrowe, 252.

Gruche, *pr. pl.* grudge, refuse (a prayer), 770.

Grym, *s.* anger, 50.

Grymmest, grimmest, most cruel, most stern, 976.

Guldene, golden, 522.

Gyen, *v.* to guide, 815; *ger.* Gye, to govern, 263.

Hadde, *s.* had, 1, &c.; *pl.* 7, 9, 41, &c.

Haddest, 2 *p. pr. s. subj.* if thou hadst, 339. *See below.*

Han, *pl.* have, 713, 1117; 1 *p.* we have, 199.

Handlinge, *s.* handling, 948.

Handus, *pl.* hands, 703, 1067.

Hap, *s.* good fortune, 749.

Happili, *adv.* by chance, haply, 35; Happily, 863.

Harde, hard, penurious, 869.

Harde, *adv.* hardly, in a meagre way, 856.

Hardy, bold, 935.

Harm, harm, 40, 46, 164; *dat.* Harme, 366.

Hast, thou hast, 28, &c.

Haste, haste, 168.

Hastly, hastily, soon, 155; Hasteli, 605.

Hate, 961.

Haten, *pr. pl.* hate, 408, 1127; 2 *p.* Hatien, ye hate, 842.

Haþ, *pr. s.* possesses, 642; hath, 47, &c.; 2 *p. pl.* ye have, 630.

Haþel, *adj. as sb.* noble person, noble, 219, 277, 348; man, 613; *gen. pl.* Haþelene, of noble or skilful men, 320; *voc.* O noble one, 856. *The same word as* Aþel.

Haue, *ger.* to have, 25; cf. 65, 84, 189, 277, &c.

Hauen, we have, 35, 310.

Hauke, *ger.* to hawk, 299.

Haunte, *ger.* to practise, 790; to keep company with, 565; *pr. s.* Hauntus, practises, 935; Hauntеþ, haunts, clings to, 371; *pr. pl.* Haunten, practise, 884.

Hauter, *for* Auter, altar, 728.

He, he, 2, &c.

Hed, *s.* head, 408; *dat.* Hede, 656; Heed, 658; *pl.* Hedus, heads, 794.

Heie, *adj.* high, 358, 601, 641, 1127; *pl.* 95. *See* Hie.

Heiede, *pt. pl.* hied, hastened, 51.

Held, *pt. s.* held, 815; *pl.* Helde, 1035; thought, 5.

Helle, *dat.* hell, 558, 799.

Helle-hond, hell-hound, Cerberus, 792; Helle-hound, 536.

Help, *dat.* help, 320, 733; army, host, 1137.

Helpe, *ger.* to help, 1029; *v.* 761; *pr. s.* Helpeþ, helps, 588.

Helpe, *an error for* Gelpe *or* ȝelpe, i. e. boast, 1042. *See* ȝelpen *in* Stratmann, p. 235.

Helplich, helpful, 673.

Helþe, health, 314.

Helyn, *ger.* to heal, 320.

Hem, *pron.* them, 16; themselves, 5, 10.

Hem-self, themselves, 917.

Hende, *adj.* handy, dexterous, skilful, attentive, 100.

Hendschipe, *s.* courtesy, 277.

Henne, *adv.* hence, 314, 376, 807, 1020.

Her, here, 35, 1125, &c.

Her-aftur, hereafter, 363.

Here, *ger.* to hear, 466; *v.* 502, 605, 979; Heren, 601; *pr. s.* Hereþ, 610; *pl.* Heren, 765; 1 *p.* we hear, 27; *pp.* Herd, 630.

Here, their, 8, 46, 1035, &c.

Herie, *v.* to praise, 648; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we praise, 358; 2 *p.* Herien, ye praise, 641, 731, 733. A.S. *hérian;* Grein.

Heringe, *s.* hearing, 948.

Herte, *s.* heart, 816; *dat.* 272, 358.

Herteli, *adj.* hearty, encouraging, bold, 95, 961. Lit. *heart-like.*

Hertely, *adv.* heartily, 613, 641, 731,

Heruest, harvest, autumn, August, 155.
Heste, *s.* hest, 528.
Hete, heat, 328, 424, 687.
Heuene, heaven, 219, 475; *gen.* of heaven, 95, 325; *dat.* 131.
Heuys, *s. pl.* hues, 402.
Hiden, *v.* to hide, 10; *pp.* Hid, 40; *pt. pl.* Hidden, hid, 51.
Hidur, hither, 1137.
Hie, *v.* to hasten, 985.
Hie, high, 114, 435, 437, 985; *superl.* Hiest, 1018; Hieȝest, 16. *See* Hih.
Hih, high; *an hih*, on high, 848. *See* Hie.
Hihten, *ger.* to embellish, adorn, 406; Hihte, 891; *pr. pl.* Hihten, 418; 2 *p.* ye adorn, 728, 731; *pp.* Hiht, 408. Cf. A.S. *hyhtan*, to extol.
Hillus, *s. pl.* hills, 435.
Hilþe, health, 658.
Him, *dat.* to him, 727; *for* Hem, them, 416; *acc.* Hin, him (see note), 703.
Him-self, *dat.* (to) himself, 362.
Hir, *adv.* here, 314. *See* Her.
Hirde, *pt. s.* heard, 812; 1 *p.* 209. *See* Here.
His, its, 235; his, 1, &c.
Hit, it, 141, 366, 484, 485, 486, 489, 812. A.S. *hit*.
Hiȝte, *pt. s.* was named, 1064.
Hiȝþe, *dat.* height, 123.
Ho (*sic*), he, 166. [Prob. miswritten for *he*.]
Ho, who, 174.
Ho so, whoso, 1060.
Holde, *v.* to hold, 507; to observe, 213; *ger.* Holden, to protect, 435; Holde out, to keep out, 443; 2 *p. s. pr.* Holdest, hast, 532; 3 *p.* Holdeþ, possesses, 642; 1 *p. pl.* Holden, we consider, 381; 2 *p.* ye deem, esteem (as), 274, 1125; Holde, ye consider, deem, esteem, 558, 653, 1113; *pp.* Holde, held to be, 13, 176, 974; Holden, 16; kept, 687.
Holde, *for* Olde, *adj. pl.* old, 327.
Holdeus, *s. pl.* dwellings (Lat. text *domos*), 576.
Hole, *adj. pl.* whole, hale, 333; *sing.* entire, 565, 642, 961, 1127.
Holi, holy, 139, 219.
Holliche, wholly, 657, 792; Holly, 630.
Holsome, excellent, 1125.
Holus, *s. pl.* holes, 10, 434; Holis, 40, 51, 57.
Holwe, hollow, 10; Holw, 57; Holou, 434.
Hom, home, 46; *at hom*, 381.
Hondis, *pl.* hands, 683.
Hongur, hunger, 1029.
Hope, 733.
Hope, let him hope, 869; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Hopen, we hope, 363.
Hordom, whoredom, 557, 565.
Houede, *pt. s.* hovered, abode, waited about, 164. See note to P. Plowman, C. xxi. 83.
Hound-fich, dog-fish, 164.
Houngur, hunger, 1030.
Houp, whoop, call, 167.
Hous, house, 62, 434, 985.
Housinge, dwelling, habitation, 443.
How, how, 56, 887.
Hue, *pron.* she, 562, 656. A.S. *heó*.
Huge, 530; Hugeste, 488.
Hundred, 234.
Hungur, hunger, 863, 866, 881.
Hunte, *ger.* to hunt, 299.
Huo, who, 596, 943; Huo so, whosoever, 1001.
Hur, their, 407, 563. *See* Hure.
Hurde, *pt. s.* heard, 243; hurde telle, heard tell, 14; 1 *p. s. pt.* Hurde, I heard, 221.
Hure, *dat.* to her, 562, 723; *acc.* her, 657, 695.
Hure, *poss. pron.* their, 16, 48, 123, 410, 418; Hur, 407, 411, 414, 733.

I, I, 65, 68. *See* Ich.
Iangle, *s.* jangling, prattling, idle talk, slander, 456, 462, 667.

Iargoun, jargon, idle talk, 462.

Iaudewin, *adj.* (as an epithet of Jupiter, 659). The first syllable is obviously the O.F. *joe, ju*, or *jeu* (see Roquefort) still retained in F. *jeudi*, and derived from Lat. acc. *Iouem*, Jove. The rest of the word appears to be a mere variant of O.F. *devin*, Lat. *diuinus*. Thus the sense is 'divine Jove.' Stevenson prints *jandewin*, which cannot be explained.

Iboren, *pp.* born, 598; Ibor, 982.

Ich, I, 180, 215, 1137. *See* I.

Idolus, *pl.* idols, 632, 754.

I-eged, *pp.* egged on, incited, 556.

Ifounde, *pp.* found (to be), 497.

Igrowe, *pp.* grown, 252. *See* Growe.

I-kid, *pp.* known (to be), famous; *cortais ikid*, famous as being courteous, 64. *See* Kid.

Iliche, *adv.* equally, alike, 102.

I-like, like, 792.

Ille, *adj. pl.* ill, mischievous, 157.

Ille, *adv.* ill, 786.

Ille, *s.* evil, 754, 932.

In, *prep.* in, 10, 22, &c.

Inne, *adv.* within, in, 10, 435, 489; upon, 597.

Innocent, 932.

I-now, enough, 309, 318, 548.

Inpossible, impossible, 268, 915.

Ioie, joy, 502, 726, 977, 1118.

Ioiful, blissful, 659.

Ioilese, joyless, wretched, 553; miserable, 697.

Iproued, proved to be, 685.

Iput, *pp.* put, 291, 452.

Iren, iron, 851.

Is, *for* His, his, 731, 805.

Is, *pr. s.* is, 12, 26, &c.

Isaid, *pp.* said (to be), called, 100.

Isene, seen, 666.

Iset, *pp.* set, 454.

Isustained, *pp.* sustained, 620.

It, *pron.* it, 22, 68, &c.

Iuge, judge, 1118.

Iuggementis, *s. pl.* judgments, 462.

Iuggen, ye judge, esteem, 697; *pp.* Iugged, judged, 1118; condemned, 553.

Iwrouht, *pp.* wrought, made, 660.

I-ȝoulde, *pp.* yielded, given, 63.

Kairus, *pr. s.* turns, goes, 48. *See* Cairen, Karre.

Kallen, ye call, 651.

Kariede, *pp.* carried, sent, 1076.

Karre, *v.* to return, 986. *See* Kairus.

Kene, keen, bold. 536.

Kenne, *v.* (1) to know, 210, 515, 979; to perceive, 120; *ger.* to know, 48, 241; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Kenne, we know, 308, 1023; 3 *p.* Kenep, know, 596; *pt. s.* Kende, knew, 42; 1 *p. pl.* Kenden, we knew, perceived, 257; *also* (2) Kenne, *v.* to make known, teach, 230, 278, 455; tell, 986; *pr. s.* Kennep, instructs, teaches, 910, 989; *pl.* Kennen, shew, 60; *pt. pl.* Kenden, have known, *or* have shewn, made known, 1051.

Kepe, *ger.* to keep, take care of, 74, 658; preserve, 686; *v.* to guard, 38, 81; *pt. pl.* Kepte, guarded, 52.

Kepere, keeper, 677.

Keture, *adj. pl.* braver, stronger, more famous, 578. See *kete* in Stratmann, and in Gl. to Wm. of Palerne. The true sense is not quite certain, and it is used in a rather vague way.

Keuered, *pp.* covered, 351.

Kid, *pp.* made known, famous, renowned, 26, 431; manifested to be, 803; begotten, 1012; bred, 173; *badly spelt* Kidde, 191; *pl.* Kidde, 581. *See* Y-kid. Kid = cud, *pp.* of M.E. *cuðen*; Stratmann, p. 109.

Kiddeste, best known, most remarkable, most notable, 13; most renowned, 978. *See* Kid.

Kide, kid, 612, 715.

Kille, *ger.* to kill, 300, 540; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we kill, 598; *pp.* Kild, 612.

Kin, kindred, 1051; *kinus nie*, near of kin, 986.

Kinde, *nom.* nature, 910; *acc.* 1023; *dat.* 456, 1012, 1034; *of kinde*, by nature, 554, 905; *for kinde*, as (being) nature, by the name of Nature, 308. *See* Kynde.

Kinde, *adj.* natural, 331, 482, 989.

Kindeli, *adv.* naturally, 415, 903.

Kindus, *s. pl.* kinds, sorts, 490, 958.

King, king, 13; *pl.* Kinguus, 82, 90, 107.

Kiþ, *s.* country, land, 179, 455, 1084, 1089. *See* Kyþ.

Kiþe, *v.* to make known, shew, grant, 605; *kiþe ȝe ȝou*, ye prove yourselves, 540. *See* kiþen *in* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Knewe, 2 *p. pl. pt.* ye knew, 397.

Kniht, knight, 127.

Knowe, *ger.* to know, 149, 422; to know about, 189; *pr. s.* Knowiþ, knows, 229; 2 *p.* Knowist, knowest, 77; 1 *p. pl.* Knowen, we know, 451, 844; 2 *p.* Knowe, ye know, 718; *pp.* Knowe, known, 1052.

Konne, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we can, 278; i e. can do, 456. *See* Kunne.

Konninge, cunning, skill, 230, 583; knowledge, 905.

Kouþ, *adj.* known, famous, 578. A.S. *cúð*, known.

Kunne, ye can, 803; 3 *p. pl.* Kun, can, 763. *See* Konne.

Kydde, *pp.* born, produced, 1051. *See* Kid.

Kynde, *dat.* nature, 325; Kinde, 327; *of kynde*, by nature, 35; *nom.* 407. *See* Kinde.

Kyþ, *s.* kith, country, 173.

Kyþen, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we exhibit, make known, manifest, 504; 2 *p.* ye exhibit, shew, 651. *See* Kiþe.

Lacchen, *ger.* to receive, 70; Lacche, to catch, 298; *v.* Lacche, to catch, 298; *v.* Lache, 264, 576; *pr. s.* Lacchus, receives, 188; 1 *p. pl.* Lacche, we receive, 40; Lachen, we catch, 956. A.S. *læccan*, to seize.

Laie, 1 *p. pl. pt.* we lay, 448.

Laik, *s.* play, game, 465. Swed. *lek*, O. Icel. *leikr*, a game.

Lak, *s.* blame, 220. *See* Lakke.

Lakke, *ger.* to blame, 838, 897. Du. *laken*, to blame.

Lakken, *pr. pl.* lack, are deficient in, 328.

Lande, *dat.* land, 172, 665; Land, 174, 843; *pl.* Landus, 369.

Langage, language, 56, 142.

Large, large, ample, 113; i. e. large river, 526.

Lasse, less, 579; *lasse no more*, smaller nor greater, 704.

Last, *adv.* last, 1072.

Last, *conj.* lest, 132.

Laste, *v.* to last, continue, endure, 270, 322, 981; *pr. s.* Lasteþ, 236.

Lastinge, everlasting, 781, 1119.

Latur, *adv.* later, more faintly, 235.

Lauȝe, *ger.* to laugh, 470.

Lawe, law, 260, 379, 508, 513, 515, 1100; *pl.* Lawus, 506, 911; Lawes, 506.

Laweles, lawless, 906.

Lay, *pt. s.* lay, 563.

Lechoures, *gen. pl.* of lechers, 631; Lecherus, 684.

Lechourus, lecherous, 554; Leccherouse, 694; Lechorus, 755.

Lechurie, lechery, 788, 884, 887; Lecherie, 562; Leccherie, 681; *gen.* Leccheries, of lechery, 392.

Lede, *v.* to lead, 445; Leden, 858; *pr. s.* Ledus, carries, takes, 186; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Leden, we lead, 444, 1005; 2 *p.* Lede, 629; Leden, 1011.

Ledere, leader, 174, 974.

Lef, *adj.* dear, lief, 259; pleasant, 498, 1091; fond, 838; *lef oþur loþ*, pleasing or unpleasing, 867.

Legge, *ger.* to lay, 438, 592.

Lelliche, truly, 622.

Lem, *s.* gleam, brightness, 122; light, 234, 476, 520; flame, 684. A.S. *leóma*, E. g-leam.

Lenge, *ger.* to dwell, 1119; *v.* 781;

pr. s. Lengus, 558, 706; Lengeþ, 628; 2 *p. pl.* Lenge, 1091; *pt. pl. subj.* 1 *p.* Lengede, we were to dwell, 872; *pp.* Lengged, 1132. *See* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Lengþe, length, 444.

Lengþe, *ger.* to lengthen, 76.

Lengure, *adv.* longer, 324.

Lente, *pt. s.* lent, i. e. gave, 413.

Lepus, *pr. s.* leaps, 168; *pl.* Lepen, 491.

Lere, (1) *ger.* to teach, inform, 66, 238; *pr. s.* Lereþ, teaches, 1100; 2 *p. s. pt.* Leredest, didst instruct, 850; *pp.* Lered, taught, 453; (2) Lere, *ger.* to learn, 260, 461; *v.* 216. A.S. *léran*, G. *lehren*, to teach.

Les, *adj.* false, 66. A.S. *leás*.

Lesen, *v.* to lose, 235; Lese, 322; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Lesen, we lose, 328.

Lesinge, *dat.* leasing, lying, 458. A.S. *leásung*.

Let, *pt. s.* caused; let sende = caused to be sent, sent, 18; let reden = caused to be read, 21; let bitake = caused to take, 43; *and see* 171, 181, 968.

Lettere, letter, 1072. *See* Lettres.

Lettest, 2 *p. s. pr.* hinderest, 520; *pt. pl.* Lette, hindered, 158.

Lettres, *s. pl.* letters (used in the sing. sense, i. e. a letter), 18, 20, 43, 181, 226, 245; Lettrus, 817, 820.

Leþur, wicked, 1100. See *leþerly* in Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Leue, (1) *ger.* to leave, let alone, 227; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Leuen, ye let alone, 946; (2) *intrans. pr. s.* Leueþ, remains, 704.

Leue, *ger.* to believe, 829; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we believe, 205, 329; Leuen, 597; 2 *p.* Leuen, ye believe, 628, 701, 706. A.S. *lýfan*.

Leue, *v.* to live, 56.

Leue, *s.* leave, permission, 293, 299.

Leue, *adj.* dear; þat ȝou leue were, that which may be dear to you, i. e. that which you most wish for, 67.

Leuus, *s. pl.* leaves, 501.

Leuyng, *s.* living, 355 (*rubric*).

Libbe, *ger.* to live, 833, 843, 894, 1102, 1117; *v.* 374; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Libben, we live, 288, 373; 2 *p.* ye live, 539, 867; Liben, 788; 3 *p.* 1087.

Liben, *for* Libben, ye live, 788.

Licam, body, 592; *gen.* Licamus, body's, 555. A.S. *líc-hama*.

Liche, *adj.* like, 1041, 1097; *adv.* like; *liche wel*, equally well, 106.

Lie, *ger.* to tell lies, 460.

Lie, a flame, torch, 555. *See* Piers Plowman, B. xvii. 207. A.S. *líg*, flame; *lég*, flame.

Lif, life, 66, 70, 76, 180, 1119.

Liftime, lifetime, 565, 681.

Ligge, *v.* to lie, 1025; 1 *p. pl.* Liggen, we lie, 446. A.S. *licgan*.

Liht, *s.* light, 235, 480.

Lihtede, *pt. pl. subj.* should light, 234.

Lihtliche, easily, 515.

Like, *ger.* to like, to be pleased, be glad, 316; *v.* to like, 404; *wel to like*, very pleasant, 926; *pr. s.* Likeþ, likes, 212; pleases, 445; Likus, *impers.* it pleases, 362, 576; *pr. s. subj.* Like; *no like*, let him not be pleased, 868; *pt. s. subj.* Likede, would please, 934; *pp.* Liked, pleased, 178.

Likful, *adj.* pleasing, delightful, 498.

Likinge, *pl.* pleasing, 949.

Likinge, wish, will, desire, 755; pleasure, 785, 887. *See below.*

Likinge, a sufficient quantity, enough to satisfy, 956.

Liknen, ye liken, 645; *pp.* Likned, likened, 802.

Lime, *s.* limb, 650, 704; *pl.* Limus, 328, 413.

Lin, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we lie, 441, 448.

Lisse, *s.* bliss, happiness, 476. A.S. *lis*, *liss*.

List, *s.* pleasure, desire, 189.

List, *pr. s.* it pleases, 441; 1 *p. pl.* Liste, we desire, 355; 2 *p.* List, ye please, 539. A.S. *lystan*.

Listene, *v.* to listen, 820; *ger.* Listne, to listen to, 768; *pp.* Listned, heard, 180, 199.

Lite, *adv.* little, 886, 932, 1028. A.S. *lyt.*

Litil, little, 168, 645, 878.

Litil, *adv.* little, 205, 324.

Liþus, *imp. pl.* listen ye, 820.

Liue, *ger.* to live, 911; *pr. s.* Liueþ, he lives, 324; 1 *p. pl.* we live, 270; 2 *p.* Liuen, ye live, 785, 1055, 1110; *pt. s.* Liuede, lived, 265, 562.

Liue, I believe, 579.

Liue, *dat.* life, 551; *pl.* Liuus, lives, 885; *gen. pl.* Liuus, lives', 596.

Liȝht, *s.* light, 122.

Liȝthe, 1 *p. pl. pr.* lit. lighten; *but obviously an error for* Liten, i. e. stain, 400. See note.

Lodlich, loathly, 592.

Lof, air; *lof briddus*, birds of the air, 956. Written for *loft*. *See below.*

Loft, *s.* the sky, 480; air, 474; *of loft*, either (1) of the sky; or (2) put for *on loft*, aloft, 476; *on þe loft*, aloft, 122. *And see above.*

Loken, *ger.* to look, 474; *pr. s.* Lokus, looks, 188.

Lome, *s. either* (1) tool (lit. loom); *or* (2) loam, clay (which better suits the context and the Lat. text; see note), 439.

Lond, land, 142; *dat.* Londe, 350. *See* Land.

Long, *adj.* long, 276.

Long, *in phr.* long in = long of, i. e. along of, owing to, 510.

Longe, *adv.* for a long time, long since, 178; a long while, 1132.

Longeþ, *pr. s. impers.* it belongs; *a lud longeþ*, it belongs to a man, 650, 1114; belongs, 458, 1110; Longus, 258; *pr. pl.* Longen, belong, 946, 949.

Lord, lord, 174, 316, 628, 665.

Lordliche, *adj.* lordly, 181, 576.

Lordschipe, dominion, lordship, power over, 76, 264, 428, 1011.

Lore, *s.* lore, learning, 453, 458; *pl.* Lorus, teachings, lessons, 217, 224, 226, 457, 828, 1121.

Los, *s.* praise, 221.

Loþ, *adj.* loath, displeasing, distasteful, 284, 438, 460, 768, 867, 872; Loþe, hated, wretched, 1097; *be you loþ oþur lef*, be it unpleasant or pleasant to you, 1091.

Loþeth, *pr. s. impers.* it makes (us) loath, 392; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Loþen, we loathe, 272, 373.

Loþliche, loathsome, hateful, 1087.

Loue, love, 373.

Louen, *ger.* to love, 316, 404; *v.* 887; *pr. s.* Louus, 1041; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we love, 1005; 3 *p.* 596; *pt. s.* Louede, loved, 681.

Low, low, subject, inferior, 264; *pl.* Lowe, 441.

Lowe, *imp. s.* lower, let down, lay aside, 517; *pp.* Lowed, subjected, 519.

Lowe, *for* Loue, love, 253.

Loweste, most inferior, humblest, 265.

Lud, *s.* man, person, wight, 18, 106, 168, 324, 510, 515, 519; *pl.* Ludus, men, 56, 142, 284, 311, 355, 838, 843, 858, 1110, 1112, 1114; *gen pl.* Ludene, of men, 773. A.S. *leód.*

Luf, *adj.* lief, dear, pleasing, 562, 788.

Lust, lust, 392, 555, 684; *pl.* Lustus, 334.

Luþur, *adj.* bad, evil, 272, 400, 569, 773, 946; bad, meagre, 868, 878; *as sb.* evil, 629. *See* Leþur.

Luþurly, *adv.* wickedly, 460, 1055; evilly, 785. *See above.*

Lym, lime, 438.

Lyuede, *pt. s. subj.* were to live, should live, 106. *See* Liue.

Maad, *pp.* made, 108, 889, 998. *See below*

Made, *pt. s.* made, caused, 148, 413; 2 *p.* Madest, 527.

Main, strength, 663.

Maistrie, dominion, 433; supreme power, 535, 742.

Maistrus, *s. pl.* masters, 108.

Makelese, matchless, peerless, 1130. *See* Makus; *and* Alex. A., 799.

Maken, *v.* to make, 852; to cause, 36; *pr. s.* Makus, makes, 879; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we make, 319; 2 *p.* ye make, 530; *and see* Maad, Made.

Makus, *s. pl.* companions, husbands, mates, 58. *See* Make *in* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Man, a man, 36, 192; Men, 28.

Manere, *s.* manner, 248, 1123; Maner, 722; kind of (*without* of *following*), 734; Manere, 997; Manir, 335; *pl.* Manerus, 200, 897.

Man-kinde, mankind, 839, 914.

Many, many, 7; Manie, 26, &c.

Marbre, marble, 1134.

Marbyl, marble, 1139 (*rubric*).

March, *s.* mark, i. e. marches, boundary, country, 382, 845, 1090. *See* Marke.

Marke, *s.* march, i. e. region, country, 1139.

Marke, mark (?), 696.

Marked, *pp.* appointed, 1120; Markid, destined, 90, 109.

Massage, message, 248.

Matere, matter, 573.

Maugre, *s.* ill will, 544; *cf.* Maugray, in spite of, 895. F. *malgrè*.

Maumentrie, idolatry, 681 (*rubric*). Lit. Mahomet-ry.

May, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I can, 285; 3 *p.* he can, 36.

Me, *dat.* for me, 109, 178; *acc.* me, 177, &c.

Mede, reward, 869, 1101, 1123.

Medisine, medicine, 319, 702.

Medle, *ger.* to meddle, lie with, 893.

Medus, *pl.* meads, meadows, 494.

Meek, *adj.* sober, staid, 942; *pl.* Mek, 546; Meke, 626.

Megre, meagre, thin, weak, 889.

Mekenesse, meekness, 614; Meekness, 334.

Mekliche, meekly, 269.

Mel, *s.* meal, 304.

Membrus, *pl.* members, 707; Membrys, 644, 647.

Men, *s. pl.* men, 143, 433; *indef. pron.* one, people, folks (in sing. with sing. verb), 91, 141, 209.

Men, *adj.* mean, intermediate, 145.

Mende, *imp. s.* amend, 517; *v.* Menden, to mend, 1031.

Mene, *adj.* mean, common, 108.

Mene, *ger.* to mean, 12.

Menske, *v.* to grace, confer credit upon, 228; *pr. s.* Menskeþ, pays respect to, 1058; *pp.* Mensked, respected, 1040; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Mensken, ye worship, honour, 726. *See* mensk *in* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Menskinge, favour, graciousness, mannerliness, 951.

Menskliche, courteously, 1073.

Ment, *pp.* meant, 28.

Mentaine, *ger.* to maintain, 667.

Mercy, 382, 383, 385, 900.

Meruailouse, marvellous, 210.

Message, 255; Massage, 248.

Mesure, *s.* a moderate quantity, 312; moderation, 791.

Mete, meat, 307, 312, 1031; *dat.* 859, 791.

Meuen, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we move, turn, apply, 466; *pr. pl.* Meven, move, 1139; *pp.* Meved, moved, 383.

Mich, *adj.* much, 229, 353, 1030; Miche, many, 180.

Miche, *adv.* much, 150, 500, 532, 667, 897, 1058.

Michel, *adj.* much, great, 285, 653.

Michel, *adv.* much, 550; Michil, 200.

Miht, 2 *p.* mightest, 533; Mihtest, 534; 2 *p. pl.* Mihte, ye might, 852; Miht, could ye, 887; *pl.* Mihte, might, 336.

Mihte, *s.* might, power, 328, 1003; Miht, 653, 739.

Mihteles, mightless, powerless, 732.

Mihtful, mighty, 663.

Min, my, 75, &c.; My, 67.

Minde, mind, 1014; *dat.* 285, 612; *haue in minde*, have in our minds, have to remember, 385.

Minegeþ, *pr. s.* makes mention of, recounts, 573; states, 614. *See* munegen *in* Stratmann, p. 356.

Minnge, *v.* to make mention, recount, 514. *See above.*

Minstralus, *gen. pl.* of minstrels, 702.

Mirie, merry, 927.

Mirthe, mirth, 464, 465, 726; *pl.* Mirþus, games, pleasures, 945, 1099.

Mischef, misfortune, 372; hardship, affliction, 1030; want, lack, 859; hard fare, 889, 893; evil fate, 1101, 1115, 1120.

Misdeede, misdeed, 394.

Mis-do, *v.* to act amiss, do wrong, 464.

Missed, *pp.* missed, lost, 1099.

Mithtelese, *adj.* might-less, i. e. weak, 712.

Miȝht, *s.* might, 214; *for mi miȝht*, to the best of my power; Miȝhte, 85.

Miȝhte, *pt. s.* might, could, 104; *pl.* 56; 2 *p.* Miȝt, mightest, 31.

Miȝhteles, mightless, unable, 74.

Mo, more, other, 90; more in number, besides, 732, 897. A.S. *má.*

Mod, mood, 927.

Modur, mother, 307, 586.

Molde, mould, i. e. the earth, 101, 546, 791, 839, 900, 1099; the world, 617; mould, part, 739.

Mor, more (in quantity), 742; greater, 94, 704.

More, *adv.* more, 210; longer, 322; *the mor*, the more, 1040.

Most, *adj.* greatest, 109; *adv.* most, 666, 1108.

Mosten, 1 *p. pl. pt. subj.* should have to, 385. See below.

Mote, ye must, 859, 895. A.S. *mótan*, to be obliged; pt. t. *móste.*

Mourne, *ger.* to mourn, 928.

Mourninge, *pres. pt.* mourning, mournful, 1115.

Mourninge, *s.* mourning, 472.

Mouþ, mouth, 951; Mouþe, 977.

Mowe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* we may, 290, 1024; we must, 100, 323; 2 *p.* ye may, can, 1090, 1092; Mow, 854; Mow, ye must, 858, 864; 3 *p.* Mowe, can, 478, 619, 761.

My, my, 67, &c.

Mylk, milk, 353.

Myrthe, mirth, 1011.

Nacion, nation, 149.

Nai, nay, 73.

Nakid, naked, 12; Naked, 34.

Name, name, 12, 149, 1048; to name = for a name, 139; *pl.* Names, 652.

Name-kouþ, known by name, renowned, famous, 823, 1079; Namkouþe, 979.

Namned, *pp.* named, 531. A.S. *nemnan*, to name.

Ne, not, 9, 76, 201, 384.

Ne, *for* No, no, 834.

Nede, *s.* need, 62, 614; necessity, want, 318, 857, 1036; trouble, 1094; *at nede*, in our need, 309.

Nede, *adv.* of necessity, 859.

Nedeþ, *impers.* it is necessary, 357.

Nedful, needy, poor, 879, 964; necessary, 292.

Nedfully, of necessity, 849.

Nedli, *adv.* by force of necessity, compulsorily, 149.

Neþeles, nevertheless, 267.

Nettus, nets, 297.

Neuere, never, 39, 192.

Newe, new, 22; new (messages), 1074.

Nie, nigh, near; *kinus nie*, near of kin, 986.

Nien, we annoy, vex, 995. *See* Nye.

Niht-brid, night-bird, nocturnal bird, 723.

Nime, *v.* to take, 292; *pr. pl.* Nime, take, 318. A.S. *niman.*

Nis, it is not, 894; is not, 379.

Nisetè, folly, 879.

No, no, none, 9; Non, 46.

No, nor, 120, 235, 281, 403; not, 868; no no = nor no, i. e. not any, 94.

Noble, noble one, 73; noble, 531, 823, 1066.

Noblete, nobility, 192.

Noht, not, 384.

Nolle, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we will not, we desire not, 344; Nol, 347; 2 *p.* ye will not, 1056.

Non, *s.* no, 46; *pl.* None, none, 340.

Nor, nor, 9, &c.

Norscheþ, *pr. s.* nourishes, 309; Norcheþ, produces, 769.

Note, *s.* use, utility, usefulness, 849. *See* Stratmann, p. 368.

Noþir, neither, 612; Noþur, nor, 612.

Nouht, nothing, 34, 998.

Nouht, not, 78, 151, 803, 1060; Noukt, 991; Nouht but, only, 625.

Nouþe, *adv.* now, 71, 239, 583, 1007, 1068; Nowþe, 651.

Nouþeles, nevertheless, 816.

Now, 12, 1094.

Noy, annoyance, grief, 1094. See below.

Nye, *v.* annoy, injure, 340. O.F. *nuire*, Lat. *nocere*.

O, one, 97.

Of, *prep.* of (on the), 5, &c.; by, 74, 118; from, 119; some of, 126; concerning, 66, 780, 1056; out of, beyond, 1090; acorde of = agree in, 875; lauȝe of = to laugh at, 470; like of = be pleased with, 868.

Offren, *v.* to offer, 720; *pr. pl.* Ofren, 712.

Offrin, offering, 718; *pl.* Offringus, 711.

Ofset, *pp.* beset, 987.

Ofte, *adv.* often, 199, 452, 709, 711.

Olde, *pl.* old, 798.

On, *prep.* on, 7, &c.; in, 57, 548, 683, 721, 749; in the case of, 1064.

On, one, 794; *þat on*, the one, 526. *See* One.

On-cauȝt, *pp.* uncaught, 38.

One, *dat. adj.* alone, by itself, 548; alone, only, 698.

Onliche, only, 745.

Onurable, honourable, 194, 1083; Onorable, 825.

Onus, once; *at onus*, at once, 735.

Ony, any, 296, 320.

Or, ere, before, 40, 85, 468, 692, 1135.

Or . . . or, either . . or, whether . . or, 359.

Ordre, order, rule, 327, 720.

Ore, *s.* ore, 525.

Ost, host, army, 3, 15, 533.

Oþirwise, otherwise, 419.

Oþur, other, 54, 107; an oþur, another, 103; *pl.* Oþure, other, 157.

Oþur, or, 310, 360.

Oule, owl, 723.

Our, our, 176; Oure, 38, &c.

Out-taken, except, 153.

Ouur, *prep.* over, 108, 151, 533.

Ouyrcomen, *ger.* to overcome, 338; Ouurcomen, we overcome, 345; Ouurcomeþ, he overcomes, 583.

Owen, *pr. pl.* possess, 440.

Owne, own, 745, 880.

Oxe, ox, 612; *pl.* Oxen, 296.

Oxian, *s.* the ocean, 533. [Here is meant the great river Oceanus, running round the world.]

Pacen, *pr. pl.* pass, pace, walk, go about, 741.

Paie, (1) *ger.* to pay (tribute), 710; *pr. pl.* pay, 716; (2) *pr. s.* Paieþ, pleases, 374.

Paine, pain, punishment, torment, 390, 395, 537, 553; penalty, 809; *pl.* Painus, torments, 753.

Painede, *pp.* inured to hardships, 268.

Paradis, Paradise, 140.

Parte, *ger.* to share, 104; *v.* to part, 395; *pt. s.* Partyd, departed, *rubric to l.* 1; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye depart, 807; Parten, 1107; *pp.* Parted, distributed, 705.

Passe, *v.* to pass, go away, depart, 1135; 1 *p. pl. pr. subj.* Passe, may pass, go, 314; *pr. s.* Passeth, passes, flows, 140.

Pay, pleasure, 315.
Pelyr, pillar, 1139 (*rubric*).
Penance, punishment, 807; penance, 291.
Peple, people, 4, 108, 815; assembly, 1127.
Perichen, *pr. pl.* perish, 452.
Peril, 452.
Perles, peerless, 915; Perlese, 140.
Pes, peace, 377.
Philozofrus, *s. pl.* philosophers, 457, 1070.
Picht, *pt. s.* put, placed, 1139 (*rubric*).
Pilegrimus, pilgrims, 983.
Piler, pillar, 1135. *See* Pelyr.
Pinchen, *v.* to pinch, torment, 751; *pr. s.* Pinnchep, torments, 1107.
Place, place, land, 97, 130, 296, 847, 853; *pl.* Placus, 495.
Plain, *adj.* plain, flat, open, 495.
Plaunten, *v.* to plant, 853; Plaunte, ye plant, 847.
Plentè, plenty, 495, 1025.
Plokke, *ger.* to pluck, draw; *to plokke*, to draw (the plough), 296.
Plow, plough, 296, 847, 853.
Point, *dat.* point, state, 315.
Pokok, peacock, 716.
Pore, poor, 104, 527, 890, 983.
Poudur, *s.* powder, 1063.
Pouert, poverty, 374; Pouerte, 291.
Power, 705.
Praie, s. prey, 204.
Praien, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we pray, beg, 225; Prayen, 319.
Praiere, prayer, 766.
Praisen, ye praise, 560.
Preche, *ger.* to preach, 280; *pp.* Preched, 366.
Prented, *pp.* impressed, 256.
Pres, press, host, army, 161, 509.
Presoun, prison, 1098.
Prest, *adj.* ready, 1075.
Prest, *adv.* readily, soon, 161, 766.
Prestly, quickly, 225.
Preuey, *adj.* privy, 696.
Pride, 637.
Prince, 225, 509, 968; Prinse, 811; *pl.* Princis, 251; Princes, 975.
Pris, value, 716.
Pris, *adj.* noble, 161.
Procre, *v.* to procure, cause, 347; to insure, 1019; *pp.* Procred, turned, 366.
Profit, 1019.
Profite, *v.* to profit, 509; *pr. s.* Profitep, 280.
Profre, ye proffer, offer, 766.
Proud, 937; *pl.* Proude, 5, 11, 547.
Prouede, *no doubt an error for* Proude, 547; *see the word repeated in the same line.* Or it may mean "approved." Cf. l. 5.
Prouen, *v.* to prove, 937; *pp.* Proued, proved, known to be, approved, 5. *See* Prove.
Prove, 1 *p. s. pr.* I prove, test, 560. *See* Prouen.
Prow, *s.* profit, 366. O.F. *prou*, profit; Cotgrave.
Pryde, pride, 1019.
Prynce, prince, 16, 19, 111. *See* Prince.
Prys, *s.* value, esteem, 590; *prys holde of*, esteem, 937; *prys of hem helde*, thought much of themselves, 5
Pulle, *ger.* to pull, pluck, 128.
Punched, *pp.* punished, 679, 747.
Purchas, *s.* acquisition, 807.
Purpre, *s.* purple colour, 482.
Put, *pp.* put, placed, 705, 983.

Quainte, *adj. pl.* knowing, wise, 17.
Quaintise, *s.* daintiness, pleasurableness, 950. O.F. *coint*, quaint, dainty, trim.
Quedfulle, *adj.* full of evil, 541. Cf. Du. *kwaad*, evil.
Quellep, *pr. s.* kills, 611; 2 *p. pl.* Quellen, ye kill, 608, 1047. A.S. *cwellan.*
Queme, *ger.* to please, 541, 608, 643, 1047; *pr. s.* Quemus, pleases, 177. A.S. *cwéman.*

Queminge, *s.* pleasing, satisfaction, 950. A.S. *cwéman*, to please.

Quenchep, *pr. s.* quenches, does away with, 950; *pl.* Quenchen, destroy, 541.

Quene, queen, 194, 825.

Quik, *adj.* living, 608; Quike, 1047.

Radde, *pt. s.* read, 819, 1073, 1076; *pp.* Rad, 969.

Raiken, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we wander, go, betake ourselves, 467. Icel. *reika*, to wander.

Rainus, *s. pl.* rains, 436.

Rape, *adv.* soon, 2, 21, 93, 136, 337, 969; *As rape*, as soon as possible, 121; *al so rape*, 129.

Recche, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we reck, 369. A.S. *récan*, *réccan*.

Reche, *ger.* to reach, 1067.

Red, *s.* counsel, 398. A.S. *réd*.

Rede, (1) *ger.* to read, i. e. to be read, 1075; *v.* Red, 971; Reden, 21; 1 *p. s. pr.* Reed, I read, speak, 738; *pl.* Reden, we read, 467; (2) to advise; 1 *p. s. pr.* Rede, I advise, 337; *pl.* we advise, 507. A.S. *rédan*, to read, to advise. *See* Radde.

Rede, *pl.* red, 479.

Redileche, readily, easily, 375; Redely, 821.

Redlese, *adj.* devoid of *rede*, i. e. of counsel, 907.

Redy, ready, 789, 969.

Reed, *adj.* red; *or rather adv.* redly, 121.

Refe, to seize, 302. See note.

Regne, kingdom, 642; *pl.* Rengnus, 82.

Reke, *pp.* raked, raked over, buried slightly, 594.

Rekenen, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we reckon, account, 375.

Remewid, *pt. s.* removed, *rubric to l.* 137.

Rengnus, *s. pl.* kingdoms, 82. *See* Regne.

Renoun, *s.* renown, 369, 581.

Reproue, *ger.* to reprove, 220.

Rereth, *pr. s.* rears, 485; Rere, ye rear, 1045.

Resoun, *s.* reason, 398.

Reste me, rest myself, 93.

Reufully, piteously, 1062.

Reule, *s.* rule, 507.

Reuled, *pp.* ruled, 904, 915.

Reward, regard, 907.

Riche, rich, 104, 261, 337, 967; Richest, richest, 1131.

Richesse, riches, 31, 581; Ricchesse, 369.

Ride, *ger.* to ride, 112; *v.* 93; *pp.* Riden, ridden, travelled, experienced in travel, 1131.

Rif, *adj.* rife, full, 501; *pl.* Riue, abundant, 160.

Rilit, *adj.* right, true, 261.

Riht, *adv.* right, 816.

Rihte, *dat.* right, justice, 416.

Rihte-wisnesse, righteousness, 258.

Rihtful, *adj.* righteous, just, 398.

Rink, *s.* man, 21, 31, 129, 151, 662, 821. A.S. *rinc*.

Ris, *s.* bough, 129, 501. See *kris* in Stratmann, p. 278.

Riue, *adj. pl.* rife, abundant, numerous, 160, 914, 1045. *See* Rif.

Riuer, river, 160.

Robbe, *ger.* to rob, 789; *pp.* Robbed, 524.

Romauncus, *pl.* romances, 467.

Romé, *v.* to roam, range, 146; *ger.* 501; *pt. s.* Rommede, 2; *pl.* Romede, 160; *pr. s.* Romwus, roams, wanders, 169.

Romme, *adj.* wide, 151. A.S. *rúm*, roomy, wide.

Romme, *adv.* far and wide, 80, 581; *romme riden*, much travelled, 1131. See above.

Ros, *pt. s.* rose, 121.

Roten, *ger.* to rot, 594.

Rotus, *pl.* roots, 662.

Rouh, rough, 594.

Rout, *s.* company, host, 524.

Ryde, *v.* to ride, 49; *pr. s.* Rydus, 1138; *pres. pl.* Rydinge, 2. *See* Ride.

Ryht, *s.* right, justice, 82. *See* Rihte.

Ryngus, *s. pl.* rings, 1015.

Sacrifice, 388, 542, 1048.

Sad, *adj.* firm, heavy, thick, clayey (*said of* earth), 912.

Sadliche, *adv.* firmly, 1135.

Saf, safe, saved, 830.

Sai, *pt. s.* saw, 115, 137; *pl.* Saien, 146.

Saide, *pt. s.* said, 41; *pl.* 61; 2 *p.* ye said, 1006; *pp.* Said, 111. *See* Sain.

Saile, *ger.* to sail, 297, 449; *v.* 533; *pr. pl.* Sailen, sail, 451; 2 *p.* Saile, ye sail, 203.

Sain, *ger.* to say, 475; Saie, 154; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Sain, we say, 368, 991; ye say, 646, 685, 689, 1095; they say, 798. *See* Saide.

Sake, sake, 283, 361, 559, 784, 830, 1105; account, 1054, 1122.

Same, same, 197, 780, 896, 1009.

Saue, *ger.* to save, 811.

Sauiour, saviour, 420; Sauyour, 784.

Sauouron, *pr. pl.* savour, give forth a scent, 496.

Sauur, *s.* savour, taste, 947.

Sawe, *s.* saying, saw, 42, 111, 209, 552, 646, 1096; *pl.* Sawus, 44, 459, 798.

Say, *pt. s.* saw, 187. *See* Sai.

Say, *imp. s.* say, 283. *See* Sain.

Schadde, *pt. s.* shed, 640.

Schal, 1 *p. s. pr.* must, 326; *pr. s.* is to, 700; shall, 213.

Schalk, *s.* man, wight, 20, 432, 449, 463. A.S. *scealc.*

Schame, shame, 401, 1109.

Schamfull, shameful, 463.

Schamlese, shameless, 20.

Schamly, shamefully, 809.

Schap, shape; *to schap,* in our shapes, 330; shape, or creation, 960; *pl.* Schappus, created forms, 417.

Schape, *ger.* to shape, form, 294; *pp.* Schape, shaped, formed, created, 412, 419, 809, 1109; intended, 918.

Schappere, *s.* creator, 479, 959.

Schar, ploughshare, 294.

Scharpede, *pp.* sharpened, 294.

Schast, chaste, 894.

Sche, she, 309.

Schene, *ger.* to cause to shine; *hem to schene,* to cause themselves to shine, to seem to shine, 412.

Schene, *adj.* bright, 1027.

Schent, *pp.* shamed, 809. A.S. *scendan,* to put to shame.

Schenure, *adv.* more brightly, more beautifully, 412.

Schewe, *ger.* to shew, 59; *pr. s.* Schewiþ, 463; *pr. pl.* Schewen, shew, 421; Schewen hem, shew themselves, 479; 2 *p.* Schewe, ye shew, 959; *pt. pl.* Shewden, shewed, 20.

Schinden, ye shame, disgrace, 960. *See* Shent.

Schine, *v.* to shun, avoid, 416; *pr. s.* Schineþ, shuns, 449.

Schine, *ger.* to shine, 117, 520; *v.* 121.

Schining, shining, 479.

Schippus, *s. pl.* ships, 449.

Scholde, *pt. s.* ought, 416; *pt. pl.* might, 108; would have to, 781; 1 *p.* we ought, 874. *See* Schulle, Schal.

Schop, *pt. s.* shaped, created, 330, 416, 432, 996. *See* Schape.

Schorted, *pp.* shortened, 401.

Schulle, 1 *p. pl. pr.* shall, 38; we must, are to, 322, 329; 2 *p.* ye must, ought to, 1106; Schullen, 720.

Sckaþe, *dat.* scath, harm, 81. *See* Skaþe.

Sclain, *pp.* slain, 344.

Sclepe, *v.* to sleep, 344, 441; *ger.* 535.

Sclowþe, *dat.* sloth, 344.

Scole, school, 453, 899.

Scorpionus, scorpions, 159.

Se, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we see, 399.

Se, *s.* sea, 203, 297, 481, 955; See, 91, 451.

Seche, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we seek, 348.

Seg, *s.* man, 27, 49, 61, 206, 971; *pl.* Seggus, men, 165, 371, 580, 689, 1054; Seggeus, 478. A.S. *secg*, a man.

Segge, *ger.* to tell, 1096; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye say, 657, 740; Seggen, 1048.

Seie, *pp.* seen, 1064; seen (to be), 313, 890.

Sel, *s.* seal, 182, 256, 817, 968.

Selkouþe, *adj.* strange, various, 475, 649; Selcouþe, 490, 925; Selkowþe, 917. Cf. Alex. A. 130.

Selkouþus, wonders, 1022. See above.

Seme, *v.* to seem, 405, 414; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Semen, we seem, 33; *pr. s.* Semeþ, it seems, 840; Semus, 929; 2 *p. pl.* Semen, ye seem, 890; *pr. s. subj.* Seme, may seem (to be), 231.

Semliche, *adj.* seemly, 111, 115.

Sen, *v.* to see, 478, 481; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we see, 475, 947, 1022.

Sende, *v.* to send, 18, 225; *imp. s.* Send, 207; *pr. s.* Sendeþ, sends, 197, 253; *pt. s. subj.* Sente, were to send, sent, 101; *pt. s.* Sente, sent, 361, 817; Sendyd, 973 (*rubric*); 2 *p.* Sentest, didst send, 255, 828; Senteste, 275; *pp.* Sent, 131, 511; Sente, 41.

Sengle, single, i. e. simple, 33.

Sertaine, certain, 321.

Sertefied, certified, made known, 27.

Sertus, *adv.* certes, certainly, 73, 177.

Seruantis, *s. pl.* servants, 362, 577; Seruauntus, 100.

Serue, *ger.* to serve, 316, 708; *v.* 427; *pr. pl.* serve, 797; 2 *p.* ye serve, 632; *subj.* Serue, may serve, 735.

Sese, *v.* to cease, 336; *ger.* to make to cease, put a bound to, 1037; *pr. s.* Seseþ, ceaseth, leaves off, i. e. becomes quiet, 91; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Sesen, we cease, 368, 471; *pt. s.* Sesede, ceased, 117; *pl.* Seseden, 119.

Sesoun, season, 154, 929; *pl.* Sesounus, 925.

Sete, *s.* seat, place, 988.

Seþ, *pr. s.* see, 91. *See* Sen.

Sette, *v.* to set, put, 295; *ger.* Sette, to plant, 912; *pr. s.* Settus, sets, 182; *pp.* Set, set, placed, 477, 481.

Seue, seven, 477.

Sew, *pt. s.* sowed, 692.

Seye, *pp.* seen, 1074. *See* Seie.

Sichus, *s. pl.* sighs, 1115.

Side, side, part, 86, 297.

Side, *adj.* large, ample, wide, 165, 481.

Sien, *pt. pl.* saw, 49; Sie, 126; 1 *p.* Sihen, we saw, 256.

Sience, science, 454.

Sihen; *see* Sien.

Siht, sight, 929.

Sike, *adj. pl.* sick, 313.

Sikur, *adj.* sure, 75.

Sikurede, *pt. s.* secured, i. e. assured, made them assured, 44.

Silf, self, selves, 33, 61, 75, 873, 1009; Silue, 454. *See* Vs.

Siluer, silver, 389, 575.

Simple, simple, poor men, 288; simple, 580; foolish, 873, 890; innocent, 459; easily pleased, 933.

Simpleliche, simply, in a simple way, 290.

Sin, since, 87, 99, 895, 914, 953, 963, 1103. *See* Syn.

Sinful, a sinful man, sinner, 1064.

Sinke, *an error for* Siwe *or* Sewe, to follow, 214. [To mistake *w* for *nk* or *uk* was very easy.]

Sinne, sin, 336, 406, 987.

Sinne, *ger.* to sin, 505.

Sire, sir, 225.

Siþen, afterwards, next, 47, 131, 478, 480.

Sittus, *pr. s.* sits, 1105; 1 *p. pl.* Sitte, we sit, 988.

Siȝht, sight, 119.

Skapen, ye escape, 1020.

Skarsete, scarcity, 871.

Skaþe, harm, damage, 159, 871, 990, 1020.

Skile, discernment, reason, 904, 1100; skill, 81.

Skiuus, *s. pl.* skies, 478.

Slepe, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we sleep, 359.

Slithe, *dat.* sleight, 564.

Slyhþe, *dat.* sleight, 301.

Smart, *adj.* causing pain, painful; *or perhaps* swift, quick, 1063.

Smellus, *s. pl.* smells, 949.

Smeþe, smooth, 1063.

Smite, *pp.* smitten, 1063.

Snelle, *pl.* quick, 437.

So, so, 49, 420, &c.

Sodainly, suddenly, 399.

Soffre, *v.* to suffer, 635; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ye suffer, 784.

Sofisen, *pr. pl.* suffice, 61.

Soile, *v.* to soil, 336.

Solas, solace, amusements, 471, 933.

Solepne, *for* Solempne, solemn, 735.

Solow, *s.* plough, 295. A.S. *sulh*, a plough.

Somerus, summers, 8.

Somme, *s.* sum, amount, 321.

Sonde, sending, i. e. message, 21, 41, 184, 511, 810, 826, 882, 967, 1006; *pl.* Sondus, messages, commands, 842; gifts, 959.

Sone, son, 616.

Sone, soon, 19, 817; *al so sone*, as soon, 117.

Song, song, 503.

Sonken, *pt. pl.* sunk, 119.

Sonne, sun, 115, 424, 477.

Sorw, sorrow, 1046. [But apparently corrupt.]

Sorwe, sorrow, 624, 877.

Sorwen, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we sorrow, 471.

Sorwful, *adj.* miserable, disastrous, 763, 835; sorry, 724; bringing penalty, 559.

Sory, wretched, 632, 639; miserable, 1042.

Sostaine, *ger.* to sustain, 917; *v.* 290.

Sote, *adj. pl. or adv.* sweet, *or* sweetly, 496.

Sote-sauerede, *pp.* sweet-savoured, 128.

Soþ, *s.* truth, 27, 44, 368; the truth, 451, 459; Soþe, 207; *pl.* Soþus, truths, 1022.

Soþli, *adv.* verily, truly, 9, 41; Soþliche, 100, 616; Soþly, 882.

Soueraine, *adj.* sovereign, 811; Souorain, 542.

Soule, soul, 329, 1021; *pl.* Soulus, 800; Soulen, 633.

Sounde, *adj. pl.* in good health, 313.

Southte (*for* Souchte), *pt. pl.* sought, 19.

Sowe, *ger.* to sow, 912; *v.* 295.

Space, space, duration, 885.

Spak, spake, 667.

Sparclus, *s. pl.* sparkles, sparks, 136.

Sparen, *pr. pl.* spare, i. e. let alone, 885.

Spatten, *pt. pl.* spat, spat forth, emitted, 136.

Speche, speech, 65, 172, 367, 623.

Speden, ye haste, 787.

Spedful, *adj.* helpful, 623.

Spedliche, speedily, 172.

Speke, *v.* to speak, 699; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we speak, 367.

Spende, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we spend, 367; 2 *p.* ye spend, 631; 3 *p.* Spenden, 1071. *See below.*

Spene, *ger.* to spend, 876.

Spille, *ger.* to destroy, 787, 835; *pt. pl.* Spilden, destroyed, 136; *pp.* Spild, condemned, 699, 1071.

Spirit, 699.

Spoken, *pt. pl.* spake, 1071.

Spouce, *s.* espousal, wedlock, 393.

Spouce-breche, adultery, breaking of espousal, 787; Spouse-breche, 885.

Spradden, *pt. pl.* spread, 123.

Spraies, *s. pl.* sprays, sprigs, branches, 123; Spraiuus, 729.

Spreden, ye spread, 729.

Springinge, springing, sprouting, 729.

Spronge, *pt. s.* sprang, grew, 133; *pl.* Spronngen, 123.

Spryt, spirit, 623.
Stable, firm, 587.
Stalþe, *s.* stealth, i. e. stealing, robbery, 788.
Stat, state, condition, 429, 686, 890.
Staunche, *ger.* to quell, stay, withhold, check, 938; *v.* to quench, 1031.
Stede, stead, place, 9, 114.
Stedefast, stedfast, 940.
Sterne, stern, grim, 52; stern, 349; on which see the note.
Sternere, sterner, greater, 429.
Sterres, *s. pl.* stars, 477. [The *seven stars* are here the planets, then seven in number.]
Sterue, *v.* to die, starve, 863. A.S. *steorfan.*
Sterus, *pr. s.* steers, goes, 185.
Stidie, ye studie (*Lat.* studium non habetis), 898.
Stifly, firmly, well, 686.
Stille, quiet, 574, 940; *adv.* continually, 97.
Stinte, *v.* to cease, 97, 530; stop, 143, 161; *stinte of*, cease from, 530; *pr. s.* Stinteþ, is quiet, 91.
Stiren, *pr. pl.* stir, 487.
Stirte, *pt. s.* started, moved hastily, 127.
Stiue, *pl.* stiff, violent, 487.
Stod, *pt. s.* stood, 114.
Stomak, stomach, 686.
Ston, stone, 438, 1138; *pl.* Stonus, 587.
Stonde, *ger.* to stand, 587.
Storie, *s.* story, i. e. meaning, 609; *pl.* Storrius, stories, 467.
Stormus, storms, 487; Stormys, 923.
Stounde, time, space of time, 97; season, 898; *þat stounde*, at that time, 609.
Stoute, stout, 940; Stouter, 429.
Straiten, *pr. pl.* confine, make narrow, oppress, 756.
Strem, stream, 144, 530.
Strenke, strength, 532, 674, 936.
Strenkþen, *pr. pl.* strengthen, 756.
Striue, *ger.* to strive, fight, 756.
Stronde, *s.* stream, 140, 151, 165, 530; *pl.* Strondus, 524.
Suffre, *v.* to suffer, 779, 873; to permit, 1056; *ger.* 75; 1 *p. pl. pr.* ye suffer, 1094.
Summe, some, 755, 756, 947, 948, 949; Somme, 757.
Sur, sure, safe, 9, 991, 1017.
Sustaine, *ger.* to sustain, 362, 797.
Swaginge, assuaging, 921.
Swainus, *pl.* swains, men, 855.
Swan, 719.
Swangen, *pr. pl.* flap, 493.
Swet, sweat, 310.
Swete, sweetness, 952.
Swich, such, 221, 443, 719; Swiche, 855, 1097.
Swimmen, *pr. pl.* swim, 493.
Swink, toil, labour, 310, 426, 442; Swinc, 921.
Swinke, *ger.* to labour at, 855. A.S. *swincan.*
Swiþe, *adv.* quickly, 921; very, 719; *ful swiþe*, very much, 493.
Sykur, safe, sure, 830.
Syn, since, 77.
Syte (*dissyllabic*), a city, 9.

Ta, *for* To, to, 475.
Tach, *s.* habit, 566; *pl.* Tacchus, ill habits, 463.
Take, to take, 854; *pr. s.* Takus, delivers, 182; *imp.* Tak, take, 233; *pr. pl.* Taken, 710; 2 *p.* 566; *pp.* Take, taken, caught, 721.
Tale, tale, story, 190, 365, 469, 1128; account, 66.
Talken, *v.* to talk, 148.
Taried, *pp.* tarried, i. e. made to linger, hindered, harmed, 132.
Tariynge, *s.* tarrying, delay, 818; Tariginge, 240.
Tast, *s.* taste, 357.
Tastinge, taste, 952.
Tauhte, *pt. s.* taught, 1077; *pp.* Tauht, 217.
Teche, *v.* to teach, 237; *ger.* 284.

Tellen, *v.* to count, compute, be aware of, 323; Telle, tell, be told, 14; 1 *p. s. pr.* Telle, I recount, 732; 2 *p. pl.* ye tell, 846; Tellen, 680, 701; *imp. s.* Tel, tell, 207.

Tempest, 484.

Temple, 714, 725; *pl.* Templus, 599, 1044.

Tempren, *v.* temper, control, 572.

Temted, *pp.* tempted, 98.

Tende, *ger.* to attend to, heed, 281; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we attend to, heed, 365; Tenden, 469; 2 *p.* ye heed, 846, 1044; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Tendide, we attended to, 217; *imp. pl.* Tendeþ, attend, 190; 1 *p.* Tende, let us endeavour, 1128; *pt. s.* Tendede, attended to, 813.

Tendere, tender, 952.

Tendeþ, *pr. s.* kindles, 684; *pp.* Tend, kindled, 233. Cf. E. *tinder.*

Tene, sorrow, affliction, 873, 950; vexation, 771; injury, 700; *pl.* Tenen, vexations, 920 (yet used with a sing. verb). *See below.*

Tened, *pp.* vexed, 512. A.S. *týnan*, to afflict.

Tenful, harmful, 566, 793.

Tente, *s.* heed, endeavour, 305; attention, 972.

Tentus, tents, 144.

þan, than, 62.

þanne, then, 17, 19, 21, 53, 59, 69, 447, 1104.

þare, there, 250.

þat, so that, 861; *rel. pron.* that, 5, &c.; *dem. pron.* 12, &c.

þe, *art.* the, 7, 10, &c.

þe, *dat.* to thee, 259.

þe mor, the more, 1040. A.S. *þý.*

þedirre, thither, 2; þidire, 15.

þei, *conj.* though, 37, 510.

þei, they, 6, &c.

þei-self, *for* þiself, thyself, 511.

þennus, thence, 98; þennys, *rubric to l.* 1.

þer-aboute, about it, 1136.

þer-by, by it, 619.

þere, *adv.* where, 446, 476, 495, 751, 1103; there, 51, &c.

þere-on, thereon, 182.

þerfor, therefore, 345, 1106.

þer-inne, therein, 164, 444, 982.

þerwiþ, therewith, 717.

þi, thy, 28, &c.

þiddire, thither, 156; þedirre, 2.

Thikke, *pl.* thick, 500.

þikke, *adv.* thickly, close, 116.

þingus, *pl.* things, 739, 996, 999; þinguus, 222; *gen.* þingus, 335.

þinkeþ, it seems; *þinkeþ vs*, it seems to us, 1058.

þirst, thirst, 1029, 1032.

þirsten, *pr. pl.* thirst, 529.

þis, *s.* this, 1, 22; *pl.* these, 61, 609, 818.

þo, those, these, 772, 958, 1112.

þolie, *ger.* to endure, suffer, undergo, 50, 380, 866, 984. A.S. *þolian.*

þorou, *prep.* through, 84, 85, 547; by means of, upon, 579.

þou, thou, 28, &c.

þouh, though, 484. *See* þouȝ.

þouhtous, *pl.* thoughts, 767; þouhtus, 95.

þoute, *pt. s.* seemed, 1133.

þouȝ, though, 232, 234, 708, 1111.

þrote, *dat.* throat, 677.

þus, *adv.* thus, 41, 396.

Tid, *pr. s.* betides, happens, 920.

Tid, *adv.* soon, 98, 207, 818; quickly, 356. See *Tit* in Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Tidi, *adj.* tidy, i. e. excellent, gorgeous, 599.

Tidliche, *adv.* quickly, 148. *See* Tid.

Til, *prep.* to, 48, 63, 148, 1114; *badly spelt* Tille, 166, 802; *him tille*, to himself, 1041; *ȝou tille*, for yourselves, 590.

Til, *conj.* until, 314.

Tilien, *ger.* to till, 854; *pt. s.* Tilede, tilled, 691.

Time, time, season, 217, 313, 323; *in time*, in due season, 712; *by*

time, in good time, soon enough, 368; *pl.* Timus, 193

Tine, *v.* to lose, 36; *daies to tine*, to lose your lives, 589. *See* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

Titelid, *pp.* lit. titled; contained, arranged in order, 190.

Tiþinge, tidings, 14, 22, 813, 818, 1077. *See* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne.

To, *prep.* to, 3, 10, &c.

Tokne, token, 776.

Toknynge, tokening, token, 14.

Tol, *s.* tool, 854.

Tolde, *pt. s.* told, 22, 1077; *pl.* 776; *pp.* 793.

Tome, *s.* leisure, 281. *See* Gl. to Wm. of Palerne, p. 312.

Torche, torch, 233.

Touche, *ger.* to touch, touch upon, 135, 1128; *v.* 129.

Touchinge, touch, 952.

Touh, tough, 691.

Tounge, *dat.* tongue, 358, 668; *nom.* 572; *acc.* 573.

Traie, *s.* vexation, anguish, 710. A.S. *trega.*

Tre, *s.* tree, 133; *pl.* Tres, 115, 119, 123, 132; Tren, 853.

Trene, *adj. pl.* treën, of trees, 351.

Trewe, *pl.* true, 829.

Treweste, truest, 513.

Tribit, tribute, 710.

Trinde, *pt. s. subj.* should touch, 132. See the note.

Trowen, we believe, 615; Trowe, ye believe, 841, 1009; *pp.* Trowen, believed, trusted; *trowen on*, trusted in, 829.

Trowþe, truth, 910; Trouþe, 81; Truthe, 275.

Trye, *v.* to try, make trial of, 513.

Trystli, *adv.* trustfully, securely, 513.

Trysty, trusty, credible, 829.

Tuelf monþe, twelvemonth, year, 153.

Tulye, *ger.* to till, 846. *See* Tilien.

Turment, torment, 776.

Turnen, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we turn, 356; 1 *p. s.* Turne me, I turn myself, 98; *pr. s.* Turneþ, turns, 365, 469; Turnus, turns, 965; it turns, 765; *pr. pl.* Turneþ, turn, 755; *pr. s. subj.* Turne, may turn, 484.

Tyme, time, 145. *See* Time.

Tyr, attire, 883. A.S. *tír*, Icel. *tírr*, glory, ornament; whence O.F. *atir*, attire.

Tyþinge, tidings, 207; Tiþinge, 240. *See* Tiþinge.

Varied, *pp.* varied, different, 200.

Verrai, true, 693; Verraie, 671.

Vertue, divine power, 693; Vertu, virtue, 381; *pl.* Vertues, deeds of valour, 671.

Vn, *for* On, i. e. upon, 717.

Vn-blessed, unhappy, 1124.

Vnblisful, unhappy, sad, 543.

Vnbliþe, *adj.* sad, 929.

Unclene, unclean, 636.

Vndigne, unworthy, 745.

Vndur, under, 219, 435.

Vndurstonde, ye understand, 609.

Vnended, endless, 751.

Vnharmed, unharmed, 227.

Vnkinde, unnatural, 540.

Vnknowe, *pp.* unknown (an unknown thing), 382.

Vnkouþe, unknown, strange, foreign, 1089.

Vnlich, unlike, 271.

Vnmihtful, powerless, 762.

Vnmihty, feeble, 893.

Vnrith, wrong, injustice, 568.

Vnsely, *adj.* unhappy, wretched, miserable, despicable, 987; wretched, 797.

Vnskile, want of skill, i. e. want of reason, folly, 1020.

Vnskilfully, without discernment, foolishly, 871.

Vnstedefast, unstedfast, 944.

Vnwasteþ, *for* Vnwasted, unwasted, 236.

Vnwise, unwise, 760.

Vois, *s.* voice, 131.

Vp, *adv.* up, 483, 487.

Vpon, upon, 739; Upon, 39, &c.

Vppe, upon, 861.

Vs, *dat.* to us, 27, 331; for us, 447; *acc.* us, 28; Vs silf, ourselves, *an error for* hem silf, themselves, 873.

Vse, *v.* to use, 439, 508; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Vsen, ye use, 559, 845; *pr. pl.* Vsen, are wont, 865; use, are used, are wont to do, 202; use, make use of, 522; *pp.* Vsed, 839, 1050; been wont (to do), 713.

Vse, *s.* use, 720.

Wachinge, *s.* washing, 409.

Wahche, *pp.* washed, 423.

Waken, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we wake, 359; 2 *p.* ye wake, 786.

Wakrong, *adj.* wakeful, 537. Cf. A.S. *wacol*, wakeful; the suffix seems to be A.S. *ranc*, abundant; E. *rank*.

Walke, *ger.* to walk, 498.

Walleþ, *pr. s.* boils up, wells up, 499. A.S. *weallan*, to boil.

Wan, *for* Whan, when, 13.

Wante, *dat.* want, 867; penury, 857; misery, 1126; lack, 1103.

Wanteþ, *pr. s.* lacks, 860; Wantus, fails, lacks, 891; *ȝou wantus*, fails you, 851; 1 *p. pl.* Wante, we lack, 354; *pr. s.* Wanteþ, lacks, 860; *pt. s.* Wantede, lacked, 263.

Wardain, warden, 537.

Warde, *s.* keeping, 1035.

Warme, *ger.* to warm, 332.

Warne, 1 *p. s. pr.* I warn, 205; I declare, 1124; *pl.* we warn, 31.

Was, *pt. s.* was, 4, 8, &c.

Waste, *ger.* to waste, destroy, 545; *pr. s.* Wasteþ, wastes, 238; *pres. pt.* Wastinge, decaying, 980; *pp.* Wastid, wasted, 292.

Watur, water, 92, 436, 485, 1026, 1033.

Wawe, *s.* wave, 436, 485; *pl.* Wawus, 92, 483, 487.

Waxe, wax, 236.

Waxeþ, *pr. s.* grows, 926; 1 *p. pr. pl.* Waxen, we grow, 327.

We, *pron.* we, 27, &c.

Wede, garment, 6, 403.

Wedur, weather, 926; *pl.* Wedures, storms, 443.

Weduringe, weather, state of the weather, 922; Weduring, 1.

Weele, *apparently an error for* Wel, well, 367.

Weith (= weiht), wight, man, 1; Weiht, 185; Weiȝht, 150. *See* Weiȝ, Wiȝth.

Weiȝ, wight, man, 69; Weih, 231, 258, 943; Wehy, 736; *pl.* Weihes, 238, 618; Weies, 17, 58, 585, 864; Weihuus, 698, 922, 1092; Weiȝes, 783. A.S. *wiga*, a warrior.

Weke, *s.* wick, 236.

Wel, well, 91, 106; *wel to like*, very pleasant, 926.

Welde, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we wield, i. e. possess, 34; *v.* to possess, 289; *pr. s.* Weldus, possesses, 978.

Wele, *s.* wealth, 32.

Wele, *for* Wole, ye will, 820.

Wel-langaged, *pp.* learned in languages, 171.

Welle-springus, *pl.* well-springs, 499.

Welþe, *s.* weal, prosperity, 700, 919.

Wende, *v.* to wend, go, 178, 500, 1090, 1092; Wenden, 1106; *pr. s.* Wendus, goes, 3; 1 *p. pl.* Wende, 34, 990; 2 *p.* Wenden, ye turn, try, 804; 2 *p. s. pr.* Wendest, 80; *pp.* (weren) Went, 53.

Wene, *v.* to ween, suppose, 943; 2 *p. s. pr.* Wenst, thou weenest, dost suppose, 534; *pl.* Wene, ye imagine, think, suppose, 548, 1121; *pt. pl.* Wende, weened, expected, 50.

Wente, *pt. pl.* went, 6; *pp.* Went, 53. *See* Wende.

Were, *pt. pl.* were, 11; Weren, 5; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Weren, we were, 217; *pt. s. subj.* might be, 67, 470; would be, 872; should chance to be, 105; *pt. pl. subj.* Were, might be, 132.

Werk, work, 208, 378, 886; *pl.* Werkus, 567.
Werre, *s.* war, 282, 545, 664.
Werrede, 1 *p. pl. pt.* warred we, 39.
Wers, worse, 231, 783, 1106.
Wetin, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we know, we wit, 99.
Wetinge, wetting, moisture, 1033.
Wexe, *v.* to wax, grow, become, 938.
Wham, *dat.* whom, 793; *pl.* 780, 1042.
Whan, when, 1, 106; Whanne, 466, 1107.
What, 31, 173; whatsoever, 68; What so, whatsoever, 359.
Wherefore, on which account, 385, 394, 401, 404, 601.
Wherewiþ, wherewith, 852.
Whete, wheat, 692.
Wheþur, whether, 765.
Whi, *s.* man, 571. *See* Weiȝ.
Whi, why, 79, 432, 834, 836.
Whiche; *þe whiche*, which, 1127.
While, a time, period, while, 336; whilst, 236; *þe while*, whilst, 562; in the mean while, 1132.
Whit, white, 719.
Whitli, *for* Wihtli, nimbly, quickly, 185.
Whon, *for* Won, abundance, 353.
Wide, wide, i. e. great, 216.
Wide, *adv.* far and wide, 531.
Wifis, wives, 53; Wiuus, 403. *See* Wiuus.
Wihes, *s. pl.* men, 263. *See* Weiȝ.
Wikke, *adj.* wicked, 537; difficult; *wikke to staunche*, hard to check, 938; *pl.* wicked (men), 1002.
Wikkede, *adj.* wicked, 378, 1057.
Wikkednesse, wickedness, 786.
Wil, will, pleasure, 1, 96, 99, 427; Wile, 736; Wille, 72, 170, 606, 707.
Wilde, *adj.* wild, 4, 938.
Wilfully, voluntarily, by choice, 604; intentionally, 1026.
Wilne, 1 *p. pl. pr.* we desire, 289, 304, 350, 500; Wilnen, 461; 2 *p.* 898, 900; 3 *p.* Wilnen, desire, 567; *imp. s.* Wilne, desire, 516; *pt. s.* Wilnede, desired, 150; 2 *p. s. pr.* Wilnest, desirest, 257. A.S. *wilnian.*
Win, *s.* winning (*see* Lat. text), 350.
Wind, wind, 92, 436, 487, 488; *pl.* Windus, 484.
Wine, wine, 678.
Winne, *ger.* to win, 80, 450, 804; conquer, 548; to get, acquire, 1038.
Winus, *pl.* vines (Lat. *vites*), 847.
Wirche, *ger.* to work, 688; Wirchen, 427; *v.* Wirche, to do, 754; Wirchen, 551; Wirke, 46; 2 *p. pl. pr.* Wirchen, ye act, 907, 1104; Wirche, ye do, 832; ye work, 629; *pl.* Wirchen, work, do, perform, 717.
Wis, wise, 231, 534; *pl.* Wise, wise men, 12, 224, 973, 1112.
Wische, 1 *p. pr. pl.* wish, 69.
Wisdam, wisdom, 102, 211.
Wise, *s.* way, manner, 22, 45, 197, 680, 1085.
Wisliche, wisely, 516; Wisli, 844; Wisly, 913.
Wisse, *ger.* to instruct, 454; to inform, 762. A.S. *wísian.*
Wiste, *pt. s.* knew, 14; *pp.* Wist, known, 4, 944.
Wit, *s.* wisdom, intelligence, 96, 211, 534, 924; Witte, 23, 905; wit, 966; *pl.* Wittus, wits, 102, 266.
Wite, *for* Whit, whit, 354 (*or else* knowledge, acquaintance with; *but less likely*).
Witen, *ger.* to wit, know, 150; Wite, 1002; *v.* Witen, 208; Wite, 258; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Witen, we know, 473, 585; 2 *p.* ye know, 860, 922. A.S. *witan.*
Witeþ, *pr. s.* keeps, 698. See note, and Gloss. to Will. of Palerne.
Wiþ, *prep.* with, 3; against, 37, 341; along with, 342.
Withdrawe, *v.* to refrain from, 895.
Wiþinne, *prep.* within, 38, 338.
Wiþoute, *prep.* without, 66, 240.

Wiþoute, *adv.* outwardly, 340; *prep.* without, 6, &c.

Witiere, discoverer, 678.

Wittie, *adj.* wise, learned, 17, 1121.

Wiuus, *pl.* wives, 882, 891. *See* Wifis.

Wiȝth, wight, man, 39. *See* Weith.

Wo, torment, 746; woe, pain, 857, 1033, 1106.

Wodus, *pl.* woods, 500.

Wokus, *s. pl.* weeks, 153.

Wolde, *pt. s.* would, 45.

Wole, 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* thou will, 508; *pr. pl.* Wolen, will, i. e. wish, 1110; Wollen, we will, 1026.

Wolf, 860, 864.

Wombe, belly, 317, 690, 794, 797; *pl.* Wombis, 538.

Wommen, women, 557; *gen.* Wommenus, women's, 1016.

Won, *s.* plenty, fulness, abundance, 72, 499, 557, 575, 678; joy (?), 678; riches, 891. See *wán* in Stratmann, p. 548.

Won, dwelling, 1103; custom, 957. The same word as *Wone*, q. v.

Wonde, we turn aside from, forsake, 990; 2 *p.* ye shun, fear, 957; ye forsake, 886. A.S. *wandian*, to shun.

Wondrus, *pr. s. impers.* it makes me wonder, 886.

Wondrus, *pl.* wonders, 473, 670, 699.

Wondurful, wonderful, 4, 844.

Wone, *s.* custom, usage, 567, 1016; an accustomed offering, 736; *pl.* Wonus, customs, usages, 208, 844. A.S. *ge-wuna.*

Woneþ, *pr. s.* dwells, 1060; 1 *p. pl.* Wone, we dwell, 980; 2 *p.* Wonen, ye dwell, 1103; *pp.* Woned, wont, 378, 551. A.S. *wunian.*

Wonnynge, *s.* dwelling, abode, 8. See above.

Wonye, *ger.* to live in, 848. *See* Woneþ.

Worchen, *v.* to work, do, 99; 1 *p. pl. pr.* we work, do, 359; Worchin, 361; 2 *p.* Worchen, ye work, 680.

Word, word, 615, 621; Worde, 698; *pl.* Wordus, 461, 609, 1077.

Word, the world, 25, 80, 419, 473, 551, 557, 746, 832, 857; Worde, 430, 548, 779, 877. *See* World.

Wordle, world, 645. *See* World.

Wordliche, worldly, 32, 58, 72, 102, 354, 604, 804, 837, 913, 934, 1016; human, 891. *See* Word.

Wordliche, *adv.* in a worldly manner, 427.

World, 261; Worlde, 105, 359; *also* Word, Wordle, q. v.

Wormus, *s. pl.* serpents, 152, 157.

Worschipe, worship, 17, 25, 680, 717.

Worschipen, *pr. pl.* worship, 722; 2 *p.* ye worship, 604.

Worschipful, honourable, fine, 403.

Worþ, worth, 261.

Worþe, *ger.* to become, 87, 933; *v.* become, 265; 1 *p. pl. pr.* Worþen, we become, 446; 2 *p.* Worþeþ, ye become, are, 634. A.S. *weorþan.*

Worþi, worthy, 25, 746.

Worþliche, worthy, 615, 621.

Wost, 2 *p. s. pr.* knowest, 516.

Woxe, *v.* to wax, grow, 115; *pp.* Woxe, grown, 547; Woxen, 943.

Wraþe, *v.* to make angry, 994; 1 *p. s. pt. subj.* Wraþede, I should make angry, 88.

Wraþful, wrathful, 660.

Wraþþe, wrath, 662.

Wreche, vengeance, 772, 777. A.S. *wracu.*

Wrecheli, *adv.* wretchedly, very ill, 88.

Wreten, *pr. pl.* write, 24.

Wried, *pp.* turned aside, perverted, given to evil, 660. A.S. *wrigan*, to turn awry. See *wrien* in Stratmann.

Wriht, *s.* writ, 139. *See* Writ.

Writ, writ, 814; Wrytte, an inscription, 1136; Wriht, 139.

Writen, *pt. pl.* wrote, 1136; *pp* Writen, 139; Write, 244.

Wrong, *s.* wrong, 814.

Wrongful, evil, wrong, 777.
Wroþ, *adj.* wrath, 814.
Wrout, *pt. s.* wrought, acted, 1065; *pt. pl.* Wrouhten, wrought, made, inscribed, 1136; Wrouthe, 775; Wroute, did, 468; 1 *p.* Wroute, we wrought, we did, 387; *pp.* Wrouht, wrought, 139; 1 *p. s. pt. subj.* Wrouthe, I should work, should act, 88. *See* Wirchen.
Wrytte, a writing, inscription, 1136. *See* Writ.
Wyntyrus, winters, 8.

Y, *pron.* I, 110, 560, 732.
Ybore, *pp.* born, 1081.
Ybrend, *pp.* burnt, 1068.
Ybrouht forth, brought forth, 586.
Ycore, chosen (to be), 978. *See* Corn.
Ydemed, *pp.* ordained, 909.
Ydil, idle, 754.
Ygrowe, *pp.* grown (to be), become, 976.
Y-hanteþ = yhanted, *pp.* practised, 988.
Yholde, *pp.* held, possessed by, 863.
Ykid, *pp.* known to be, renowned as, 578. *See* Kid.
Yknowe, *v.* to know, learn, perceive, 1060.
Ylikned, *pp.* likened, 864.
Y-maad, *pp.* made, 617, 914; Ymad, 762, 839.
Ynow, enough, 956.
Ypotamus, *s. pl.* hippopotamuses, 157.
Yprofred, *pp.* proffered, offered, 187.
Y-punched, *pp.* punished, 395. *See* Punched.
Ys, is, 719, 1080.
Yschape, *pp.* created, made, 647.
Ysustained, sustained, 877.
Ywist, *pp.* known to be, 582.

ȝaf, *pt. s.* gave, 122.
ȝare, *adv.* quickly, yare, 241. A.S. *gearu*, prepared, ready.
ȝe, ye, 68, 242.
ȝeme, *ger.* to guard, protect, 674; to control, 1039. A.S. *gýman*, to take care of.
ȝer, life, lit. year, 215; ȝere, year, 203, 711; *pl.* ȝerus, years, 321.
ȝernus, *pr. s.* yearns, 1039; 1 *p. pl.* ȝernen, we desire, 241; *imp. pl.* ȝernes, ask ye, desire ye, 67; *pp.* ȝerned, 215.
ȝif, if, 29, 508.
ȝift, *s.* gift, 67; ȝifte, 69.
ȝit, yet, nevertheless, 734; moreover, 930.
ȝiue, *v.* to give, 674.
ȝorne, *adv.* eagerly, 179. A.S. *georn*, eager.
ȝou, *acc.* you, 65; *dat.* to you, 67; ȝow, you, 209.
ȝoung, young, 942.
ȝour, your, 178.
ȝoure, yours, 271.
ȝoursilf, yourselves, 1095.
ȝou-siluen, yourselves, 795.
ȝouþe, *dat.* youth, 215.

INDEX OF NAMES.

Alixandre, Alexander, 3, 15, 24, 55, 63, 170, 177, 191, 244; &c.
Amon, Ammon, 193, 824, 1082.
Appolin, Apollo, 701, 718.
Asie, Asia, 518.
Aufrik, Africa, 518.
Bacus, Bacchus, 675, 714.
Bragmanie, Bragmanye, the land of the Brahmans, 175, 1075.
Bragmanus, *pl.* Brahmans, 287; B. lond, 196, 250; B. prince, 968, 974.
Ceres, 689, 724.
Cupidus, Cupid, 679; Cupies, 730.
Dindimus, 176, 195, 243, 249, 810, &c.
Erenus, 526; see the note.
Europ, Europe, 518.
Gena, the Ganges, 141.
Genosophistiens, Gymnosophists, 11, 23.
Hercules, 669, 728.
Inde, India, 142, 147.
Iubiter, Jupiter, 553, 659; *gen.* Iubiterus, 656.
Iuli, July, 154.
Iuno, Juno, 697, 716.
Martis, Mars, 663, 712.
Mascedonius, Macedonian, 143, 145, 1073.
Mercurie, Mercury, 667, 726.
Minerua, Minerva, 653, 722.
Nilus, the Nile, 531.
Olimpias, Olympias (Alexander's mother), 194, 825; Olimpas, 1083.
Oridrace, 3; see note.
Oxian, the great river Oceanus, 533.
Paccolus, Pactolus, 527.
Paradis, Paradise, 140.
Phison, the river Pison, 138; *gen.* Phisonus, 146.
Proserpine, 560.
Salonienus = Salmoneus, 1064; see the note.
Thabeus (river), 536.
Tricerberus, Cerberus with the triple head, 536, 793.
Venus, 693, 720.
Ydra, Hydra, 799.

Bungay:
CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.